

THE WONDER THAT WAS INDIA

Volume II

1200-1700

ii iii

THE WONDER THAT WAS INDIA

Volume II

A survey of the history and culture of the Indian sub-continent from the coming of the Muslims to the British conquest 1200-1700

S. A. A. RIZVI

Rupa, Co

iv

Copyright © S.A.A. Rizvi 1987

First published 1987 by Sidgwick & Jackson Ltd., London

First in Rupa Paperback 1993

Eleventh impression 2001

Published by

Rupa & Co.

7/16, Ansari Road, Daryaganj

New Delhi 110 002

Offices at:

15 Bankim Chatterjee Street, Kolkata 700 073

135 South Malaka, Allahabad 211 001

PG Solanki Path, Lamington Road, Mumbai 400 007

36, Kutty Street, Nungambakkam, Chennai 600 034

Surya Shree, B-6, New 66, Shankara Park,

Basavangudi, Bangalore 560 004

3-5-612, Himayat Nagar, Hyderabad 500 029

By arrangement with Pan Macmillan Ltd., London

This edition is for sale in India only

Picture research by Deborah Pownall

Maps drawn by Neil Hyslop. For their source the publishers gratefully acknowledge An Historical Atlas of the Indian Peninsula by C. Collin Davies, published by Oxford University Press. The British place names in the source have not been changed.

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means, electronic or mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Copyright owner

Printed in India by

Gopsons Papers Ltd.

A-14 Sector 60

Noida 201 301

Rs 295

v

CONTENTS

List of Illustrations vii

Important Dates ix

List of Maps xiv

Note on Pronunciation xv

Introduction, with a Review of Sources xvii

I The Arabs and the Turks 1

Early Islam, Institutions, Law, The Arab Conquest of Sind, The Ghaznavids, The Ghurids, The Ibari Turks, The Khaljls, The Tughluq Dynasty, The Sayyids

II The Independent Ruling Dynasties 57

Bengal, Assam, Tirhut, Orissa, Rajasthan, Kashmir, Jaunpur, Malwa, Khandesh, Gujarat, The Western Coast, Ma'bar, The Bahmani Kingdom, The Five Deccan Kingdoms, The Vijayanagara Kingdom

III The Afghans and the Mughals 89

The Lodis, Babur and Humayun, Sher Khan (later Sher Shah), Sur, The Sur Sultanate, Humayun Recaptures Delhi, Akbar the Great, Jahangir, Shahjahan, Aurangzlb, Fall of the Mughal Empire

IV The State 154

Kingship, Law, The Royal Court and Household, Ministers and their Departments, The Mansabddrs and the Army, Finance, Justice, The Police, The Provincial Administration, District Administration

V Social and Economic Conditions 196

Social Structure, Women, Slavery, Villages, The Zamindars, Towns and Cities, Education, Inland Trade, Coastal Trade, Commercial Practices

vi

VI Religion 231

Philosophical Movements, Sufi Movements, The Kubrawiyya, The Qalandars, The Muslim Intellectual Perception of Hinduism, The Hindu Impact on Sufism, The Mahdawi Movement, The New Sufi Orders (the Shattariyyas), The Qadiriyya Order, The Naqshbandiyya Order, The Shi'is

VII Fine Arts 277

Pre-Mughal Architecture - the First Phase, Architecture of the Regional Kingdoms, The Lodi and Sur Monuments, The Mughal Monuments, Mughal Gardens, Painting, Music

Conclusion 308

Bibliography and References 317

Appendix with Bibliography and References 354

Index with Glossary 373

vii

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Between pages 60 and 61

1. Jami' Masjid (Werner Fortnan Archive)
2. Pietra Dura in I'timadu'd-Dawla, Agra (J. Allan Cash)
3. Screen in the Diwan-i Khass (J. Allan Cash)
4. Screen of the Sidi Sayyid Mosque (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)
5. The Panch Mahal (J. Allan Cash)
6. Throne in the Diwan-i Amm (A. F. Kersting)
7. Jami' Masjid at Mandu (Robert Harding)
8. Sikri Mosque (Werner Forman Archive)
9. Sher Shah's mosque (Y. Crowe)
10. Bidar Madrasa (College) (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)
11. Shaykh Ruknu'd-Din Multani's tomb (Archaeological Survey, Pakistan)
12. Mandu, Jahaz Mahal (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)
13. Humayun's tomb (A. F. Kersting)
14. The interior of the Jodh Bai's palace (A. F. Kersting)

Between pages 124 and 125

15. Babur supervising layout of garden (British Library)
16. Jahangir shooting (Indian Museum, Calcutta)

17. Invention of the mirror (Indian Museum, Calcutta)
18. Turkey-cock (Indian Museum, Calcutta)
19. Abu'l-Fazl presenting the Akbar-Nama (Chester Beatty Library)
20. Sword of Sultana 'Al 'u'd-Din Khalji (Prince of Wales Museum of Western India)
21. Shaykh Phul Shattari in front of his Agra house (Bharat Kala Bhavan Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi)
22. Birth of Prince Salim (Chester Beatty Library)
23. Story of the unfaithful wife (Bodleian Library)
24. Portrait of Shahjahan (Chester Beatty Library)
25. Presentation of meal (British Library)
26. Portrait of Jahangir (Chester Beatty Library)

viii

Between pages 188 and 189

27. Char Minar in Hyderabad Deccan (A. F. Kersting)
28. The Qutb Minar (A. F. Kersting)
29. Temple pillars in the cloisters of the Quwwatu'l-Islam mosque (J. Allan Cash)
30. Details of carvings, Qutb Minar (Robert Harding)
31. Tomb chamber in the Taj Mahal (A. F. Kersting)
32. Upper domes in the Birbal's house (J. Allan Cash)
33. Atala Mosque, Jaunpur (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)
34. The Buland Darwaza (Robert Harding)
35. Interior of Iltutmish's tomb (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)
36. Ala'i Darwaza, Delhi (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)

37. The Quwwatu'l Islam Mosque Screen (M. Ara and the Institute of Oriental Culture, University of Tokyo)

38. Carved pillar in one of the chambers of Fathpur-Sikri (Werner Forman Archive)

Between pages 252 and 253

39. Akbar controlling elephants (Victoria and Albert Museum)

40. Political lessons through animal behaviour (School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London)

41. Black buck (Victoria and Albert Museum)

42. Dara Shukoh with Miyan Mir, Mulla Shah and the khanqah servants (Prince of Wales Museum of Western India, Bombay)

43. Jahangir weighing Prince Khurram, (British Museum)

44. Shahjahan watching Sama (Indian Museum, Calcutta)

45. Jahangir riding (Victoria and Albert Museum)

46. Integration of Sufi music with Bhaktas (Victoria and Albert Museum)

47. Babur visiting Gorakhtari from the Babur-Nama (British Library)

48. The heroine being served by a maid from Lor Chanda (John Ryland Library)

49. Captivity of Himu (Chester Beatty Library)

50. News of the birth of Akbar communicated to Humayun (Khudabakhsh Library, Patna)

51. Workmen building Agra fort (Victoria and Albert Museum)

52. Village life from Anwar Suhayli (Bharat Kala Bhavan Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi)

ix

IMPORTANT DATES

c. 571 Birth of the Prophet Muhammad

622 Hijra (emigration) of the Prophet from Mecca to Medina

630 The Prophet conquered Mecca

632 The Death of the Prophet

632-4 Abu Bakr, the first caliph

634—44 'Umar, the second caliph

644-56 'Usman, the third caliph

656-61 'All, the fourth caliph

661-749 The Umayyads

680 The martyrdom of Imam Husayn

705-715 Caliph al-Walid

712 Conquest of Sind by Muhammad bin Qasim

749-1258 The 'Abbasids

998-1030 Mahmud of Ghazni

1150-1 Sack of Ghazni by Ghurid 'Ala'u'd-Din Jahan-suz

1178 Defeat of Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad bin Sam at Anhilwara

c. 1185-1205 Lakshmana Sena's rule in Bengal

1191 Defeat of Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad bin Sam at the first battle of Tara'in by Prithviraja Chauhan

1192 Second battle of Tara'in, defeat of Prithviraja Chauhan

1192-3 Delhi seized by Qutbu'd-Din Aybak

1200 Conquest of Bihar and Bengal by Ikhtiyaru'd-Din Bakhtiyar Khalji

1206 Death of Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad bin Sam

Ilbari Turks; 1206-90

1210 Death of Qutbu'd-Din Aybak

1221 Chingiz chases Jalalu'd-Din Mingburnu

1227 Chingiz died

1235 Death of Khwaja Qutbu'd-Din Bakhtiyar Kaki

1236 Death of Sultan Iltutmish

Death of Khwaja Mu'inu'd-Din at Ajmir

1236-40 Raziyya

1246-66 Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud Shah

1265 Death of Baba Farid

1266-87 Ghiyasu'd-Din Balban

x

Khaljis: 1290-1320

1290-6 Jalalu'd-Din Firuz Shah II

1294 Devagiri invaded by 'Ala'u'd-Din

1296-1316 'Ala'u'd-Din Muhammad Shah

1297 Conquest of Gujarat

1303 Capture of Chitor

1306-7 Expedition of Devagiri

1309-10 Malik Kafur's invasion of Warangal

1310-11 Kafur's invasion of Dvarasmudra near Bangalore

1316 Death of 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji

1316-20 Qutbu'd-Din Mubarak Shah

Tughluqs: 1320-1414

1320-5 Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq Shah

1325 Death of Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya'

Death of Amir Khusraw

1325-51 Ghiyasu'd-Din Muhammad Shah I

1327 Deogiri, renamed Daulatabad, made the second capital

1330-2 Token currency

1332 Arrival of Ibn Battuta in India

1340-1 Investiture from the 'Abbasid Caliph

1341-3 New code (Asalib)

1342 Ibn Battuta sent as ambassador to China

1347 Foundation of the Bahmani kingdom

1351-88 Firuz Shah III

1353-4 Firuz's first Bengal expedition

1356 Death of Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din Chiragh-i Dihli

1359 Firuz's second Bengal expedition

1365-6 Firuz's Thatta expedition

1367 Asoka's pillars transplanted

1370 Death of Khan-i Jahan I

1376 Levy of jizya on the brahmans

1388-1414 Successors of Firuz

1398 Timur seized Delhi

1399 Timur re-crossed the Indus

The Sayyids: 1414-51

Provincial Kingdoms

1336-1576 The Bengali Sultans

1346-1589 The Sultans of Kashmir

1391-1583 The Sultans of Gujarat

1394-1479 The Sultans of Jaunpur

1401-1531 The Sultans of Malwa

1347-1527 The Bahmanids

xi

1422 Death of Khwaja Gisu Daraz

1370-1601 The Faruqi Sultans of Khandesh

The Lodis: 1451-1526

1451-89 Bahlul Lodi

1469 Birth of Guru Nanak

1489-1517 Sikandar Lodi

1505 Death of Kabir

1517-26 Ibrahim Lodi

Early Mughals: 1526-1707

1526-30 Zahiru'd-Din Muhammad Babur

1530-40 Humayun's first reign

1539 Guru Nanak's death

The Surs: 1540-55

1540-5 Sher Shah Sur

1542 Birth of Akbar at Amarkot in Sind

1545-54 Islam Shah

1555 Humayun's second reign

1556-1605 Jalalu'd-Din Akbar

1560 Fall of Bay ram Khan

1562 Akbar's first pilgrimage to Ajmir

Akbar's marriage to Raja Bhar Mai's daughter at Sambher

Abolition of enslavement in war

1563 Remission of tax on Hindu pilgrim centres.

1564 Abolition of jizya

1565 Founding of Agra fort

1568 Fall of Chitor

1569 Birth of Prince Salim, order given to build Sikri palaces

1571 Akbar at Fathpur-Sikri supervising construction work

1572 Gujarat Campaign

1573 Akbar's lightning raid on Gujarat

1574 Mulla Bada'uni and Abu'l Fazl presented at court

1575 Building of the 'Ibadat Khana

1578 Fortress of Kumbhalmir seized

1579 The Mahzar

First Jesuit mission left Goa

1580-1 Bihar and Bengal rebellions suppressed

1585 Death of Mirza Muhammad Hakim at Kabul and

Akbar's departure for the north-west frontier

1586 Annexation of Kashmir

1590-1 Conquest of Sind

1591-2 Second Jesuit mission

1592 The millennial year of Hijra, millennial coins issued

1595 Surrender of Qandahar

Arrival of third Jesuit mission at Lahore

1598 Death of 'Abdu'llah Khan Uzbek of Transoxiana Akbar's return to Agra

1599 Akbar left Agra to command the Deccan expedition

1600 Rebellion of Prince Salim

Fall of Ahmadnagar

1601 Aslrgarh seized

Akbar's return to Agra

1602 Murder of Abu'l-Fazl

1603 Death of Khwaja Baqi Bi'llah

1605 Death of Akbar

1605-27 Nuru'd-Din Jahangir

1606 Prince Khusraw's revolt

Shaykh Nizam Thanewari's banishment Guru Arjan's execution

1610 Qazi Nuru'llah Shustari flogged to death

1611 Jahangir marries Nur Jahan

1619-20 Mujaddid imprisoned

1622 Mujaddid released

Qandahar seized by Shah 'Abbas

1624 Mujaddid's death

1626 Mahabat Khan's coup it main - foiled by Nur Jahan

1627 Death of Jahangir

1628-58 Shihabu'd-Din Shahjahan

1631 Death of Mumtaz Mahal

1635 Death of Miyan Mir

1638 Qandahar surrendered by the Iranian governor, 'Ali Mardan Khan

1642 Death of Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq Muhaddis Dihlawi

1648 Shahjahanabad founded

Qandahar recaptured by Iranians

1657 Shahjahan's serious illness

1658 Aurangzib defeats Dara Shukoh at Samugarh

1658-1707 Aurangzib

1659 Dara Shukoh executed

1660-1 Execution of Sarmad

1661 Death of Mulla Shah

1663 Death of Mir Jumla

1664 Shivaji's first sack of Surat

1665 Customs duties on Hindus doubled Jai Singh's victories over Shivaji

1666 Death of Shahjahan in captivity at Agra

xiii

Shivaji presented to Aurangzib at Agra, escapes from Agra

1667 Shivaji's second sack of Surat

1674 Aurangzib leaves for Hasan Abdal to suppress Afghan uprisings

1675 Execution of Guru Tegh Bahadur

Aurangzib returns from Hasan Abdal

1678 Jaswant Singh's death at Jamrud

1679 Jizya re-imposed on Hindus

War against Marwar

1680 Death of Shivaji

1681 Rebellion of Prince Akbar foiled Aurangzib leaves Ajmir for the Deccan

1686 Bijapur seized by Aurangzib

1697, Golkonda seized by Aurangzib

1689 Shivaji's son, Shambhaji, and his family taken captive,

Shambhaji executed

Rajaram, the Maratha king, makes Jinji his centre for operations against the Mughals

1698 Zu'lfaqar Khan seizes Jinji

1700 Rajaram dies, Tara Ba'i rules as queen mother

1707 Aurangzib's death

Later Mughals: 1707-1857

1707-12 Shah 'Alam I, Bahadur Shah

1713-19 Farrukhsiyar

1719-48 Nasiru'd-Din Muhammad Shah

1729 Death of Shah Kalimu'llah Jahanabadi

1739 Nadir Shah sacks Delhi

1757 Clive's victory at Plassey

1757—8 Ahmad Shah Durrani declared Emperor of Delhi, Delhi

and Mathura plundered

1761 Ahmad Shah Durrani crushes Maratha power at Panipat, Delhi plundered by the Afghans

1762 Death of Shah Waliu'llah

1773 Death of Ahmad Shah Durrani

1785 Mawlana Fakhru'd-Din's death

1799 Tipu died defending Seringapatam

1803 Shah 'Alam II (1760-1806) surrenders Delhi to the British

1824 Death of Shah 'Abdu'l-'Aziz

1831 Defeat and death of Sayyid Ahmad Shahid and Shah Isma'il at Balakot

1837-57 Siraju'd-Din Bahadur Shah Zafar, the last Mughal emperor

xiv

LIST OF MAPS

India at the close of the ninth century 17

India in 1236 26

India in 1398 54

The Portuguese possessions in the East and the route to India 75

The Sultanates of the Deccan and the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagara in the sixteenth century 85

The Mughal Empire at the death of Akbar, 1605 115

The Mughal Empire at the end of the seventeenth century 147

xv

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

Every Indian language has a complex phonetic system and contains phonemes which to the average speaker of English seem almost exactly the same, but to the Indian ear are completely

different. Only after long practice can the hearing be trained to recognize these differences, or the vocal organs to pronounce them accurately. The scripts of Indian languages reproduce these sounds, but they can be expressed in Roman script only by means of numerous diacritical marks below or above the letters. It is assumed that most the readers of this book will not be students of Indian languages, and therefore a simplified system of alliteration has been used, which gives some idea of the approximate sound.

Words in classical languages are transliterated according to the simplified system mentioned above. Place-names in general follow the present-day official spellings of the governments of the countries of South Asia, as given in Bartholomew's *World Travel Map, India, Pakistan, and Ceylon*, 1970. Proper names of nineteenth- and twentieth-century Indians are given in the spelling which they themselves favoured. Diacritical marks have been placed over the long vowels in such names, in order to give some ideas of the correct pronunciation. Exceptions are made only in the case of a very few Anglicized words, like Calcutta and Bombay.

Only three letters with diacritical marks are normally used: a, i, and u. These distinguish long from short vowels. In most Indian languages e and o are always long, and therefore do not need diacritics.

Vowels

a short is pronounced like u in 'hut', never like a in 'hat'. Bengali speakers usually pronounce it like a short o as in 'hot'.

a long, as in 'calm'.

e approximately as the vowel in 'same', but closer to the long e in French or German.

i as in 'pin'. The word 'Sikh', incidentally, should sound approximately like English 'sick'. The pronunciation like 'seek' seems to have been adopted by some Englishmen in India for this very reason, in order to avoid depressing overtones in the name of a tough, vigorous people.

xvi

i as in 'machine'.

o approximately as in 'so'. Close to the long o in French or German.

u as in 'bull', never as in 'but'. ('Punjab', however, is an Anglicized spelling, and is more accurately written 'Panjab'. In the case of this word we have deviated from our rule about using the accepted spelling, in order to avoid the pronunciation 'Poonjab', which one sometimes hears from speakers who are doing their best to be correct. The first syllable is like the English 'pun'.

u as in 'boot'.

Consonants

Most of the Hindi consonants are pronounced roughly as in English, but special care should be taken of the aspirated consonants kh, gh, chh, jh, th, dh, ph, and bh. These are exactly like their unaspirated counterparts, k, g, ch, j, t, d, p, and b, but with a stronger emission of breath.

Urdu has imported several sounds from Arabic and Persian. Many speakers are inclined to pronounce words in these languages according to the Indian phonetic system, but educated Muslims attempt to pronounce them correctly.* The Arabic alphabet indicates several shades of pronunciation which cannot be expressed in simple Roman script; for example, t represents two different Persian letters, s three letters, and z four letters. In works intended for specialist readers such consonants are indicated by diacritical marks; this seemed unnecessary in this work. The vowels, a, e, i, o, and u, are pronounced roughly as mentioned above.

Consonants are to be pronounced approximately as in English, with the following exceptions: kh sounds like the Scottish 'loch' or German 'buch'; gh is pronounced like the French r, q is a deep guttural unknown in most European languages, pronounced like k but with the back of the throat wider open as though swallowing. The sign ' represents a distinct letter known as ain in Arabic and Persian. It is known to phoneticians as a 'glottal stop'; a similar sound occurs in some dialects in English, as in the eastern English and 'cockney' pronunciation of 'bottle', where the t is not heard, but a momentary suppression of breath and a slight swallowing movement of the throat takes place. The raised comma ' represents the Arabic hamza, which is not strictly a letter. It normally occurs between vowels and indicates that they form separate syllables, but the swallowing sound between is much less noticeable.

* Adapted from A.L. Basham (cd.), *A Cultural History of India*, Oxford, 1975, pp. xvi, xvii.

xvii

INTRODUCTION, WITH A REVIEW OF SOURCES

India and China have the oldest cultural traditions in the world. India has enjoyed over 4,000 years of civilization, and every period of its history has contributed something to present-day life. The most significant characteristic of Indian civilization, as it evolved through the ages, is its unity in diversity. *The Wonder That Was India*, first published in 1954, now called Volume I, deals with the ancient civilization of India. It was stated there that the ancient civilization of India differed from those of Egypt, Mesopotamia, and Greece in that its traditions have been preserved without a break to the present day.* Muslim rule in India, which was firmly established in the thirteenth century and flourished until the beginning of the eighteenth century, and is now the subject of the present volume, did not destroy the ancient culture of India, as did the onslaughts of the Muslims in Persia.

Under the rule of some of the Delhi sultans of the Middle Ages there was persecution, and we read of temples being razed to the ground and brahmans put to death for practising their devotions in public; but in general the Muslims were reasonably tolerant, and at all times Hindu chiefs continued to rule in outlying parts of India, paying tribute to their Muslim overlords. Conversions to Islam were numerous, though only in a few regions were the majority of Indians persuaded to embrace the new faith. Hindus in those parts of India dominated by Muslims often accepted the situation as normal. In such conditions mutual influence was inevitable. Hindus began to learn Persian, the official language of their Muslim rulers, and Persian words found their way into the vernaculars. Well-to-do Hindu families often adopted the system of 'strict parda' from the Muslims, and made their womenfolk veil their faces in public. The surviving Hindu kings borrowed new military techniques from the Muslims, learnt to employ cavalry with greater effect, and to use heavier armour and new types of weapon. One great religious teacher of medieval India, Kabir (1425-1505), a poor weaver of Banaras, taught the brother-hood of Hindu and Muslim alike in the fatherhood of God, and opposed idolatry and caste practices, declaring that God was equally to be found in temple and mosque. Later, Nanak (1469-1539), a teacher of the Panjab, taught the same doctrine with even greater force, and founded a new faith, that of the Sikhs, designed to incorporate all that was best of both Hinduism and Islam.

* A. L. Basham, *The Wonder That Was India*, London, 1954. p. 4.

xviii

Nevertheless, the Muslim invasions, and the enforced contact with new ideas, did not have the fertilizing effect upon Hindu culture which might have been expected. Hinduism was already very conservative when the lieutenants of Muhammad of Ghur conquered the Ganges Valley. In the Middle Ages, for every tolerant and progressive teacher there must have been hundreds of orthodox brahmans, who looked upon themselves as the preservers of the immemorial Aryan Dharma against the barbarians who overran the holy land of Bharatavarsa. Under their influence the complex rules of the Hindu way of life became if anything stricter and more rigidly applied.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries the Mughal emperors unified practically the whole of North India and much of the Deccan, and built up an empire such as had not been seen since the days of the Guptas. The Mughal period was one of great splendour, which has left its mark on India in the form of many lovely buildings, wherein Islamic and Hindu motifs often blended in a perfect unity. The Taj Mahal at Agra, the Mughal capital, is of course the most famous memorial of the times. Akbar (1556-1605), the contemporary of Queen Elizabeth I and the first of the four great Mughal emperors, fully realised that the Empire could stand only on a basis of complete toleration. All religious tests and disabilities were abolished, including the hated poll-tax on unbelievers. Rajput princes and other Hindus were given high offices of state, without conversion to Islam, and inter-communal marriages were encouraged by the example at the Emperor himself. If the policy of the greatest of India's Muslim rulers had been continued by his successors, her history might have been very different.

The great-grandson of Akbar, Aurangzib (1658-1707), reversed the policy of toleration. Restrictions were placed on the free practice of Hindu rites, and preferment at court was confined to orthodox Muslims; later the tax on non-Muslims was reimposed. After nearly a century of

equality this was bitterly resented by many Hindus, especially by the chiefs, many of whom had loyally served the earlier Mughals. The main resistance came from the Western Deccan, where, around Poona. 'the Maratha chief, Sivaji (1627-80) laid the foundations of a new Hindu empire. At about the same time the Sikhs of the Panjab, incensed at the new policy and the persecution of their leaders, reformed their faith, and were welded into a closely knit martial brotherhood. When the aged Aurangzib died, the Mughal Empire was virtually at an end.

Politically the eighteenth century was one of Hindu revival. Though the Msratha successors to Sivaji could not build up a large, closely knit empire, their horsemen ranged far and wide over India, levying tribute from local chiefs, Hindu and Muslim alike. In the Panjab towards the end of the century the Sikhs built an important kingdom, and almost everywhere Islam was on the defensive. But there was still no real cultural revival in Hinduism. Sivaji, a brilliant leader, a just ruler, and a statesman of consummate craft, was conservative in his outlook, and appeared to his contemporaries rather as a restorer of the old than as a builder of the new. Unlike Akbar, he had no fresh vision of a state

xix

transcending religious differences, though he learnt much from the. Mughals in statecraft and military science and respected the faith of his adversaries. The Marathas did not encourage reforms in Hindu society, and the India of the eighteenth century was if anything more conservative than it had been in the days of the first Muslim invasions.

It was through the influence of Europe that revival came. Early in the sixteenth century the Portuguese founded the first European trading stations and settlements. They were followed by the Dutch, British, Danes, and French, and throughout the seventeenth century the number of European 'factories' increased. In the eighteenth century, with the break-up of the Mughal Empire, the Europeans began to take a greater interest in local politics, and, by the early nineteenth century, the British East India Company had virtually pushed out its rivals and dominated most of the subcontinent. The comparative ease with which the British established their supremacy is a measure of the political decadence of India at the time. By the middle of the nineteenth century the whole of India was either directly ruled by Britain, or governed indirectly through petty princes with local autonomy. A new conqueror had come, a conqueror far more alien to the Hindu than the Muslims had been, with an aggressive culture and immense technical superiority.*

The unique character of Muslim culture in India calls for separate treatment. The continuity it displays with the ancient culture discussed in *The Wonder That Was India, Volume I*, prompted us to name this work, *The Wonder That Was India, Volume II*.

This book concentrates mainly on the period between the thirteenth and seventeenth centuries. The first three chapters, dealing with the political history of the Arabs, Turks, Afghans, and Mughals, do not comprise a catalogue of invasions, rebellions, and conquests, but analyse the currents and cross-currents of the social, economic, and cultural changes in the country. This was the period when India's contact with the vast, external, Muslim world deepened and urban society developed. Nevertheless, despite the introduction of the political and economic

institutions which the Muslims in Iran and Central Asia had evolved, the dominance of the Hindu money-lender at the urban level, and the Rajput chieftains in rural areas, remained intact.

Although the struggle to regain political power was confined to the scions of former princely Rajput families, the Turkic ruling dynasties were also torn by internecine wars, to the extent that, in the fifteenth century, India was again fragmented into innumerable independent dynasties. It was Akbar who founded a strong Mughal empire, but the conceptual framework of his kingship was radically different. It was therefore important to analyse the theories of

*Ibid. pp. 479-81.

xx

kingship, together with the military and administrative institutions of both the sultans and the Mughals, and this is done in Chapter 4.

Chapter 5, on social and economic conditions, discusses the interaction between Hindus and Muslims and the forces that created Muslim social and economic groups equivalent to Hindu classes and castes. Nevertheless, both the Delhi sultans and the Mughals, in the interest of their own stability, did not concentrate solely on collecting taxes but paid due attention to agriculture and commerce. From the sixteenth century the introduction of European factories opened new trade opportunities and accelerated the growth of indigo and textile production. Although no improvement was made in manufacturing techniques, the individual skill of the artisans and craftsmen was refined.

The Muslims strictly adhered to their religious doctrines, but the analysis of the philosophical movements, sufi ideologies, and sectarian divisions discussed in Chapter 6, highlights their distinctive features and characteristics. Chapter 7, devoted to the arts, goes a long way to show that Muslim symbols in architecture, painting, and music were predominantly influenced by ancient Indian motifs. Indeed, the lacunae in literary sources regarding the life and culture of this period may be filled by a study of its monuments and paintings.

SOURCES

The sources used for this volume are varied and enormous. Broadly they can be divided into four categories: archaeological, artistic, numismatic, and literary.

At one time Indian archaeology was confined mainly to unearthing India's remote past: prehistory and proto-history. In recent decades, however, archaeologists have diverted their attention to discovering the sites of medieval towns, villages, caravanserais, and roads. The scientific restoration of dilapidated monuments has highlighted previously unknown engineering and artistic techniques in this period. The archaeological survey departments in New Delhi and the states publish survey reports and journals. These are very useful sources of information for our study of the monuments of medieval times. Some universities and individual scholars have also published reports on surveys of different sites.

Not only do medieval paintings and artefacts reveal the artistic talents of the medieval painters and craftsmen, but they illuminate

xxi

the" social and economic history of the times. Museums in London, Dublin, Paris, Berlin, New York, Boston, Washington, Calcutta, New Delhi, Lahore, Karachi, and Dacca, the Khuda Bakhsh Library of Patna, the Raza Library of Rampur, and the Sir Salar Jang Museum of Hyderabad comprise some of the important art repositories. Many of these institutions have published catalogues describing their rare exhibits.

The coins preserved in the museums in the Indian subcontinent, Europe, and North America are a most important source for the study of currency systems, trade, and commerce. They are also helpful in correcting dates of political events. Many museums have published catalogues listing their collections. The Journal of the Numismatic Society of India and journals published by other numismatic societies in the subcontinent also contain articles on the hoards of coins discovered from time to time. A unique treatise on medieval Indian coins was written by Thakkura Pheru, son of Chandra, the Master of the Mint during 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji's reign (1296-1316). Entitled Drarya-Pariksha (An Examination of Coins), it is written in Apabhramsa and deals with the technique of purifying gold, silver, mixed metals, and alloys. The work also discusses the weight and value of coins struck in different parts of India, including those minted under Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji and his successor, Qutbu'd-Din Mubarak Shah.

Literary sources remain the most important source of information, however. Original farmans (imperial decrees), notes, orders, and the correspondence of some rulers and their dignitaries have been discovered. Various manuals on polity, administration, law, and warfare, and diplomatic letters written from the reign of the Ghaznavids to the end of Mughal rule have survived; but the political chronicles are the most significant category of source material for our study. They are usually in Persian, but some are written in Arabic or in the local Indian dialects. They are generally compiled under the patronage of the central or provincial governments, but independent scholars also wrote a considerable number. Although the official chroniclers had access to their patrons' archives, some of the scholars who compiled historical works independently could draw upon documents in the possession of state dignitaries and other scholars.

British Interest in Muslim History

Some valuable bibliographical works were written in Arabic, but no such attempts were made in the realm of Persian scholarship.

xxii

Their economic and political interests led the British to discover and translate Muslim histories of India, in a process which went through three phases. The first was analysis of the principal features of Muslim rule to discover the reasons for its decline. The pioneer in this field was James Fraser (1713-54). He resided in Surat in India from 1730 to 1740 and from 1742 to 1748.

He wrote a history of Nadir Shah of Iran, who had invaded India in 1739, and collected Persian, Sanskrit, and Zend manuscripts, taking them to England when he retired. After his death they were bought for the Radcliffe Library at Oxford and are now in the Bodleian Library. At Fraser's instigation, his teacher, Shaykh Muhammad Murad, compiled a history of Aurangzib and his successors up to 1738, to serve as a background study for Fraser's history of Nadir Shah. The only copy of Shaykh Muhammad Murad's history appears to be an autograph in the Bodleian Library. It examines the history of the period objectively and critically.

After the establishment of East India Company rule in Bengal, the need to increase European competence in Persian became paramount. William Jones (1746-94) published a Persian grammar in order to promote the study of Persian among the servants of the East India Company. In addition, 150 copies of John Richardson's Dictionary of Persian, Arabic and English, published in 1777, were subscribed by the Company. Similar encouragement was given to Major Davy, the Persian secretary to the Governor-General, Warren Hastings (1774-85), who translated into English Institutes, Political and Military written . . . by the great Timour . . . first translated into Persian by Abu Taulib Alkuseini, and thence into English with notes . . . A preface and indices were compiled by J. White, and the work was published at Oxford in 1783. Although modern research questions the authenticity of the original by Timur, who invaded India in 1398-9, British authorities relied heavily upon it for their analysis of the institutions of the great conqueror.

The most popular general history of the Muslim rulers of India was written by Muhammad Qasim Hindu Shah Astarabadi, known as Firishta (d. after 1609-10). He held senior positions under the Deccan sultans of Ahmadnagar and Bijapur. In 1606-7 he wrote a history of the Delhi sultans, the Mughals, and the provincial kingdoms of fifteenth- and sixteenth-century India, entitled Gulshan-i Ibrahimi, popularly known as Tarikh-i Firishta. The importance of this work stimulated Alexander Dow (d. 1779), who had entered the service of the East India Company in 1760, to translate extracts into English. These were published in London in "1768, in two volumes, and a second edition came out in 1770-1. Dow also translated extracts from other Persian chronicles dealing

xxiii

with the reigns of Aurangzib and his successors. John Briggs (d. 1875) published his new translation of the Tarikh-i Firishta in London in 1829. Although Briggs's translation is also inaccurate, scholars who cannot read Persian still draw heavily upon it.

The Siyaru 'l-muta 'akhhirin, by Nawwab Ghulam Husayn Khan Tabataba'i (d. after 1815), was translated into English by Raymond, or Hajji Mustafa (d. 1791). Tabataba'i had served both the Mughals and the British. His Siyaru'l-muta'akhhirin was completed in 1781. It is a detailed history of eighteenth-century India and deals at great length with the fall of the Mughal empire and the conquests of the East India Company.

Warren Hastings encouraged Francis Gladwin (d. 1813), of the Bengal army, to study oriental literature, and Gladwin produced an abridged translation of the first three volumes of the A 'in-i Akbari, or The Institutes of Akbar's Reign, by Akbar's secretary, Abu'l-Fazl (d. 1602). Hastings

instigated the translation of the Muslim law book, the *Hidaya*, into English. Charles Hamilton (d. 1792) completed it in 1791. It became the basis of the East India Company's judicial system for Muslims.

In 1782 Robert Orme (d. 1801), an official historian of the East India Company and the author of the British military transactions in India, published *Historical Fragments of the Mogul Empire, of the Marathas, and of the English Concerns in Indostan from the year 1659*. His knowledge of Persian was not perfect; nevertheless his work is of value in that it examines the Mughal and Maratha institutions from a British point of view.

The growing preoccupation of the East India Company with conquering and consolidating its rule all over India prompted British intellectuals to examine and analyse the history and institutions of the Marathas and other independent princes of India. In 1784 Jonathon Scott (d. 1829), Persian secretary to Warren Hastings, helped his master to found the Asiatic Society of Bengal. Two years later he published a general history of the Deccan and the fall of the Mughal empire, comprising abridged translations of the *Tarikh-i Firishta*, the *Siyaru 'l-muta'akhhirin*, and other contemporary eighteenth-century works.

By the nineteenth century the establishment of British rule over the entire subcontinent was a foregone conclusion, and the East India Company had embarked upon a policy of Anglicizing the Indian administration. The need to understand Mughal institutions as such no longer remained. The interest of European intellectuals in Indian history deepened, and they entered the second epoch of scholarship, characterized by the authentic translation of texts. John Leyden (d. 1811) and William Erskine (d.

xxiv

1852) translated the Persian translation of Babur's memoirs into English. Major C. Stewart (d. 1837) translated the memoirs of Humayun's reign (1530-40, 1555) by Mihtar Jauhar, a eunuch-bearer to the Emperor. Erskine's deep study of the sources on the reigns of Babur and Humayun enabled him to write authoritatively his *History of India under Babur and Humayun*. After his death this work was edited and published by his son in London in 1854.

Henry George Raverty (b. 1825) joined the East India Company's 3rd Bombay Infantry in 1843 and retired in 1864. He took part in the siege of Multan, in the Panjab campaign of 1849-50, and in the first North-West Frontier expedition in 1850 against tribes on the Swat border; and he served as assistant commissioner in the Panjab from 1852 to 1859. Raverty had achieved a very high degree of competence in Pashto and Persian. His knowledge of the history and problems of the Panjab, North-West Frontier Provinces, Afghanistan, and eastern Iran was profound. He wrote a number of historical works and brought his vast understanding of the region to bear on the footnotes to the *Tabaqat-i Nasiri*, a general history of the Muslim ruling dynasties of the world written by Minhaj Abu 'Umar 'Usman bin Siraj Juzjani (b. 1193). This work deals at length with the rise of the Turkic dynasties, gives an authoritative account of the Turkic conquest of India, and brings the history of the Delhi sultans down to 1260. Major Raverty collated all the available manuscripts of the *Tabaqat-i Nasiri* before undertaking the translation.

In 1841 Mountstuart Elphinstone (1779-1859), who played an important role in liquidating Maratha power, published *The History of India*. It examines the Persian sources intensively and marshals facts to substantiate the liberality of the Muslim rulers in India.

The most comprehensive collection of Persian and Arabic sources was, however, made by Henry Miers Elliot (d. 1853). His principle objective was to remind Hindus of the atrocity of the Muslim rulers as contrasted with the blessings of the rule of the East India Company. In 1849 he brought out the first volume of his *Bibliographical Index to the Historians of Muhammedan India*; the remaining three volumes that he wrote were never published. The first volume listed 231 works, of which 31 general histories were discussed. Translations of short extracts from each of these works were also given. Some short Persian excerpts were included.

In 1853 Elliot died, leaving behind a massive collection of manuscripts and translations of extracts from the sources. These were later acquired by the British Museum. Elliot's official position had enabled him to obtain manuscripts easily from the Indian landlords, and Indian scholars collaborated with him in explaining

xxv

and translating the texts. Before his death Elliot had changed his earlier plan and had decided to publish a thirteen-volume history of India under Muslim rule. After his death, John Dowson (d. 1881), a professor of Hindustani at University College, London, edited Elliot's papers and, adding new material and notes to them, published *The History of India as Told by its Own Historians (the Muhammadan Period)* in eight volumes. Beginning with accounts of India in Arab geographical works and travelogues, Dowson's work gives extracts from 154 historical works to the end of the eighteenth century. Each of these excerpts is preceded by a note on the author and the salient features of the work. Despite inaccuracies in the translation, Elliot and Dowson's *History of India* was, and is still, drawn upon by scholars who do not know Persian or have no access to original works. Finding modern scholars misled by the inaccurate translations of Elliot and Dowson, S. H. Hodivala published a critical commentary on their *History of India*, in two massive volumes, correcting their mistakes on the basis of more authentic manuscripts and printed works.

By the end of the nineteenth century the third epoch of British scholarship in Indian history had commenced. It was marked by more accurate translations, and the stage was set for the production of analytical and scholarly monographs by both British and Indian scholars. Henry Ferdinand Blochmann (d. 1878), philological secretary to the Asiatic Society of Bengal, translated the first volume of the *A'in-i Akbari*, with extensive notes on Akbar's dignitaries. H. S. Jarrett, an assistant secretary to the Legislative Department of the Government of India from 1870 to 1894, translated the second and third volumes of the *A'in-i Akbari*. All the volumes were published in Calcutta between 1860 and 1894. The translation of the official history of Akbar's reign, the *Akbar-nama* of Abu'l-Fazl, by H. Beveridge, was published in Calcutta between 1897 and 1921. The first volume of the *Muntakhabu't-tawarikh* by Mulla 'Abdu'l-Qadir Bada'uni, an inveterate enemy of Akbar's reforms, was translated by G. S. A. Ranking and was published in Calcutta during 1895-9; the second volume, translated by W. H. Lowe, was published in Calcutta in 1884-8, and the third, translated by T. W. Haig, saw the light of day at Calcutta between 1899

and 1925. Between 1909 and 1914 the *Tuzuk-i Jahdngiri* (the memoirs of the Emperor Jahangir, 1605-27) was translated by A. Rogers and edited by H. Beveridge. It was published in London during 1909-14. In 1905 the *Bdbur-nama* (the memoirs of Babur, b. 1483, d. 1530), written in Chaghatay Turki and reproduced in facsimile from a manuscript belonging to Sir Salar Jang of Hyderabad, was published in the Gibb Memorial Series at Leyden and

xxvi

London. The English translation, by A. S. Beveridge, was published in London in 1921.

In the twentieth century more Persian chronicles were critically edited, and some were translated into English. *Persian Literature, A Bio-Bibliographical Survey, Volume I, Part I*, by C. A. Storey, first published in London between 1927 and 1939, comprises a detailed description of the manuscripts, editions, and translations of Persian historical works. The second part of Volume I discusses biographical works. Volume II deals with works on mathematics, weights and measures, astronomy, astrology, geography, encyclopaedias, arts, crafts, and science. Volume III, which is not yet complete, discusses lexicography, grammar, prosody, and poetics.

Muslim Travellers and Ambassadors

The Muslim travellers, geographers, merchants, adventurers, pilgrims, fortune-hunters, and ambassadors who visited India from the eighth century onwards have left very valuable accounts of items the political historian did not consider worth describing. Some are a mixture of cultural, social, and economic information. They were generally written in Arabic but some were in Persian.

Arab merchants had traded with India before the rise of Islam, but their accounts, if any, do not survive. After the conquest of Syria, Egypt, and Iran, the Arabs opened a sea route through their newly founded port of Basra, and the old route via Egypt was abandoned. Some travellers kept their own diaries, while others provided information to geographers who wrote valuable accounts of India. The first travel diary to attract attention was written by Sulayman Tajir (the merchant), who flourished around 851. It is entitled *Akhbaru's-Sind wa'l-Hind*.

The most important travelogue on India was written by the Moorish traveller Ibn Batutta, who was born in Tangier in 1304 and left his country in 1325 to embark on his ambitious travel project. Journeying through Egypt, Syria, Arabia, Iran, Iraq, Turkey, and Transoxiana, he arrived in the Indus Valley on 12 September 1333. He left Delhi in 1342 as an ambassador of Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq (1325-51) and, travelling by the western coast of India, the Maldives (twice), Ceylon, Bengal, Assam, and Sumatra, he reached the Chinese port of Zaytun. It is not certain that he visited Peking. He returned to his homeland via Sumatra, Malabar, the Persian Gulf, Iraq, and Syria, completing his travels in December 1353. He finished dictating his *Rihla* (The Travelogue) in December 1357. The European edition of the work, with French

xxvii

translation by C. Defremery and B. R. Sanguinetti, published in Paris in four volumes between 1853 and 1859, is still regarded as the most authentic edition, although many new ones have come out since then. Subsequently it was translated into many languages. The English version by H. A. R. Gibb, entitled *The Travels of Ibn Battuta*, is the best.

The geographer and historian al-Mas'udi (d. 956) spent his whole life travelling and wrote two works in several volumes. Of these only two volumes survive, but their substance, as given by him in *Muruju'z-zahab*, reveals them to be monumental works. In the *Muruju'z-zahab* he surpasses his predecessors' perspicacity concerning the Islamic world and gives a most accurate account of India. The text, with French translation by Barbier de Maynard and Pavet de Courtielle, was published in Paris in nine volumes. Sharif al-Idrisi (d. 1165) wrote his *Kitab Nuzhat al-mushtaq* on the orders of Roger II, the Norman king of Sicily; consequently it is also known as *Kitab Rujar* (*The Book of Roger*). It is based both on Greek works and on those of Arab geographers and astronomers, but provides many new insights into the manners and customs of India.

The Arabs in Sind and the neighbouring Hindu princes of the Gurjara-Pratihara dynasty were at war with each other. Unlike them, the southern princes, the Ballahras (Vallabh-rajās) of the Rastrakuta dynasty (who in turn were fighting the northern Hindu princes) encouraged Arab merchants and travellers to settle in their territories. Consequently there are few works by Arabs on north or central India, most being on the south.

A most comprehensive and authoritative description of Indian religions, beliefs, and social customs was given by al-Biruni (d. after 1086) of Khwarazm (*Alberuni's India* in E. Sachau's English translation, London, 1887). Al-Biruni did not travel much in India, but he wrote his magnum opus on the basis of translations from the Sanskrit classics and oral information which he obtained from brahman scholars who, like him, had been taken captive.

An encyclopaedic work on the geography, history, and social and economic condition of all the Islamic countries of the fourteenth century was written by Shihabu'd-Din al-'Umari (d. 1348) of Damascus. His work, entitled *Masalik al-absar fi mamalik al-amsar*, is in twenty-two volumes. His description of India, like that of other countries, is based on the accounts of contemporary merchants and travellers. 'Umari's masterly selection of the material he obtained has made this work indispensable for students of fourteenth-century India. On the basis of 'Umari's work, the Egyptian scholar al-Qalaqashandi (d. 1418) wrote his monumental *Subhu'l-A 'sha*,

xxviii

published in Egypt in fourteen volumes. An English translation of the chapters on India from both works was made by Otto Spies.

In 1441 Kamalu'd-Din 'Abdu'r-Razzaq was sent on a political mission to south India by Timur's son, Shah Rukh (1405-47). There he visited the Zamorin of Calicut and the King of Vijayanagara, returning to Hlrat in 1444. His historical work, entitled *Matla'-i Sa'dain* in Persian, gives a detailed account of his travels. A. Galland translated this into French, but it was not published; the manuscript is in the *Bibliothèque Nationale*, Paris. Excerpts giving an account of

these travels were translated into English by William Chambers and published in the Asiatic Miscellany, Volume I, Calcutta, 1785. R. H. Major re-edited the work, and the Hakluyt Society published it in London in 1859. Russian translations were also published.

European Travellers

In Europe after the ninth century Venice began to emerge as a trade centre. Marco Polo (1254-1324), who left Venice on his travels in 1271, took Europe by storm with his account of commercial, religious, and social conditions in the East, particularly in India. He was followed by a series of adventurers and missionaries.

The narratives of the stream of travellers who poured into India go a long way to making the history of urban growth in India from the fifteenth to the seventeenth centuries reliable and perspicacious. In 1419 Nicolo de' Conti, a Venetian, set out from Damascus upon his travels in the East, returning to his native city in 1444. He dictated his adventures to the secretary to Pope Eugene IV, and his account of the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagara, and its wars with the Muslim Bahmanid kingdom of the Deccan, is of considerable importance. In 1468 Athanasius Nikitin, a Russian, left his native town of Tver. He travelled through Iran and Central Asia, arrived at Gujarat, and stayed for four years at Bidar, which he calls 'Beuruk'. Nikitin vividly describes the Bahmani kingdom. His account of Vijayanagara, which he did not visit, is based on second-hand evidence.

During the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries innumerable Portuguese travellers visited India. The most important work to have resulted is *A Description of the Coasts of East Africa and Malabar in the Beginning of the Sixteenth Century*, by Duarte Barbosa. It is said to have been written by the voyager Magellan. Both visited India in the early days of Portuguese rule. Magellan returned to Europe in 1512, and Barbosa five years later. Some scholars ascribe this work

xxix

to several authors. Be that as it may, it reflects acute observation and analysis.

Fifteenth- and early sixteenth-century travellers mainly visited Gujarat, the west coast, the Deccan, and Bengal. The number of books on exploration and travelogues by Europeans mushroomed, as did the visitors, due to Akbar's interest in the religion and culture of different parts of the world and the commercial ramifications of the Portuguese, Dutch, English, and French. It is impossible even to list all these works; only those which made a real contribution to the history of the period are mentioned.

In 1579 a group of three priests set out from Goa: Father Rudolph Acquaviva, newly ordained and aflame with zeal for a martyrdom he was later to meet, Father Monserrate, and Father Francis Henriquez, who was to act as interpreter. The mission was involved in religious debates; it was allowed to build a chapel, and discussed theological points privately with the Emperor. Akbar admitted an interest in Christianity but he was more interested in philosophy and the sciences. The Fathers were filled with frustration when they failed to convert him to their religion. In April 1582 Akbar allowed Father Monserrate to accompany an embassy which he

proposed to send to Philip II, King of Spain and Portugal, but it never left the shores of India. Father Monserrate wrote the *Commentarius* in Latin to keep his seniors in touch with the situation. It provides illuminating details about Fathpur-Sikri, which was not yet complete, and describes court life and the customs and manners of the people. The letters written by the Fathers to Goa discuss their own reactions to the interest shown by Akbar and his favourites in Christianity.

In 1591 a second mission arrived at Akbar's request, but, finding a strong court faction opposed to Christianity, the Fathers returned to Goa. In May 1595 the third Jesuit mission arrived at Akbar's court in Lahore. After Akbar's death, Father Jerome Xavier of the third mission continued to live at court for the first twelve years of Jahangir's reign (1605-27). Unlike his father, Jahangir was not an ardent seeker of truth. During his reign the Jesuit mission assumed to all intents and purposes the character of a political agency.

The letters of Father Xavier are the main source for the study of the third Jesuit mission. The *Histoire* of Father Pierre du Jarric (1566-1617) describes the sixteenth-century Jesuit missions. The *Relations* by Father Fernao Guerreiro deals with Jesuit activity in the seventeenth century. Akbar and the Jesuits and Jahangir and the Jesuits, translated into English by G. H. Payne, comprise valuable notes from original letters and secondary sources and are very

xxx

useful for studies of the Jesuit missions at the courts of Akbar and Jahangir.

The *Itinerario de las misiones del India Oriental*, by Sebastian Manrique, an Augustine friar who, around 1612, was sent by the Portuguese with other missionaries to propagate Christianity in Bengal, merits special attention for its richness of narrative and acuteness of observation. For thirteen years Manrique travelled widely. He visited Chittagong, Arakan, Agra, Lahore, Multan, Bhakkar, and Thatta and even met such high dignitaries at Jahangir's court as the Emperor's brother-in-law, Asaf Khan. He comments on all aspects of contemporary life.

The European travellers who visited India from the end of the sixteenth to the eighteenth centuries were motivated by commercial interests. Their works are written to explore trade potential in India, and they describe the towns and villages critically. The contrast between the extravagance and luxury of the emperors, their household, and dignitaries and the dismal poverty in the villages bewildered them. They tend to exaggerate both extremes; nevertheless, their narratives are indispensable for the study of the social and economic history of sixteenth- and seventeenth-century India.

The pioneer among the English travellers to India was Ralph Fitch (1583-91). He sailed from London with a small party in February 1583. At Hurmuz (Ormuz) they were arrested and sent to Goa. The English Jesuit Father Thomas Stephens (1579-1619) and some other officials intervened on their behalf, and they were released on bail. In April 1584 Fitch and the jeweller, Leeds, escaped to Bijapur. From there they moved to Golkonda, seeking and procuring jewels. From Golkonda they made their way through Ujjain and Agra to Akbar's court at Fathpur-Sikri. Leeds entered Akbar's service. Fitch, however, travelled extensively in India from Agra to

Bengal, and voyaged to Pegu in Malacca, before returning home via Goa and Hurmuz. He landed in London at the end of April 1591.*

Ralph Fitch's accounts discuss the . apparently inexhaustible possibilities of trade with India and Hurmuz. Fitch pays glowing tribute to the prosperity of Bijapur and praises the diamonds from Golkonda. He says: 'Agra and Fatepore are two very great cities, either of them much greater than London and very populous.' At Prage (Prayaga, near Allahabad) the sight of naked beggars disgusted Fitch. He gives a detailed description of idol worship in Banaras, and remarks that cloth, particularly for turbans, was

*W. Foster (ed.), *Early Travels in India, 1583-1619*, London, 1921, pp. 1-8.

xxxix

produced there in large quantities. He describes the technique of gold-mining at Patna, and the cotton and sugar trades in the town. There he also saw a Muslim saint whom he described as a 'lasie lubber', although the people 'were much given to such prating and dissembling hypocrites'.

Nearly twenty years after the visit of Ralph Fitch and his companions, John Mildenhall or Midnall (1599-1606), a self-styled ambassador from Queen Elizabeth to Akbar, visited India twice. In a letter dated 3 October 1606 he gave an account of the trade concessions he had obtained from Akbar despite Jesuit intrigue. Modern scholarship has, however, rejected his claims. The real battle for trade concessions from the Mughal emperors commenced after the establishment of the East India Company in 1600. In August 1607 Captain William Hawkins (1608-13) landed at Surat, but Portuguese hostility made life difficult for Hawkins and his colleague, William Finch. Leaving Finch to look after the goods at Surat, Hawkins made his way to Agra, arriving in the middle of 1609. Jahangir received him graciously and listened attentively as King James's letter was read to him by a Jesuit priest. Hawkins's fluency in Turkish prompted Jahangir to invite him to stay at court as a resident ambassador. He gave him the rank of 400 horse, 'a post in the imperial service that was nominally worth over three thousand pounds a year sterling'. Hawkins's repeated attempts to obtain a royal farman (edict) for trade concessions were, however, unsuccessful. We receive from his narrative a full account of Jahangir's temperament and propensities. He describes the hierarchy of imperial officials, known as mansabdars, the income and expenditure of the Mughal emperors, and the magnificence of their court.

William Finch (1608-11), who was left at Surat by Hawkins, arrived at Agra in April 1610. He travelled to Bayana, and around the Panjab, but his enterprise when buying indigo involved him in considerable difficulties. Even his superiors became suspicious of him. He left for London but died en route at Baghdad. He had Carefully maintained his diary, which gives a detailed description of the towns he visited and the people and curiosities he observed. Historically, his journal is more important than Hawkins's narratives.

Until 1612, the year Hawkins sailed away from Surat, the prospects for English trade in India were bleak. Captain Thomas Best, who arrived at Surat in September 1612, obtained a spectacular victory over the Portuguese fleet off Swally. The Mughals of Gujarat were impressed

and decided to enter into trade negotiations with the English and the court at Agra. Early in 1613 a royal

xxxii

farman was obtained from the Emperor. Nicholas Withington (1612-16), who had learnt arabic in Morocco, was sent to Agra. He then went to Ahmadabad to assist in the purchases of indigo. His adventurous career in Cambay and Thatta in Sind began from that time. He escaped death in Sind only to be incarcerated in Ajmir. He failed to convince the Surat factors of his innocence and was forced to sail for England in February 1617. Withington's journal describes his vicissitudes at length, but also provides a lively account of Sind, the banians (Hindu merchants) and the Baluchis.

The most interesting character among the seventeenth-century English to write about India was Thomas Coryat (1612-17), a courtier of James I. In October 1612 he left on his Eastern journey, intending to write a book about his observations. He was neither a merchant nor a sailor. Travelling through Constantinople, Syria, and Iran, he arrived at Agra via Multan, Lahore, and Delhi. From Agra he visited Ajmir in order to call on the Emperor. Sir Thomas Roe, who will soon be discussed, avoided his company in the interests of British trade, for Coryat frequently offended Muslims by his indiscreet remarks about Islam, though no one harmed him. Coryat travelled widely in northern India and visited even the Hindu pilgrimage centres of Haridvar and Jwalamukhi in northeast Panjab. He spoke both Hindustani and Persian fluently. The common people called him a half-witted English fakir. He died at Surat in December 1617.

Coryat's eccentricity coloured his cynical observations, but they are very informative. Unfortunately for us, his detailed descriptions of his Indian tours have not survived; his letters, though few, are very valuable historical documents. Like all other contemporary travellers, Coryat was baffled by the extremes in Jahangir's character. He describes his cruelties and his compassion. To him Jahangir was a true patron of the poor, who readily conversed with them and offered them gifts.

Coryat's friend Edward Terry (1616-19) joined Sir Thomas Roe at Ujjain in February 1617 and served as his chaplain. He accompanied Roe to Mandu and from there to Ahmadabad. In September 1618 he left India. His account owes something to Coryat, to the gossips of the ambassador's suite and to the Surat merchants, but his own observations play no mean role.

Terry's narrative describes the Mughal empire, the most remarkable examples of art and nature it contained, the people of India, their habits and diet, women, language, learning, arts, riding, games, markets, arms, valour, mosques, and Hindu and Muslim rites and ceremonies. It gives an interesting account of potato and tobacco cultivation. Terry was impressed by Indian

xxxiii

gunpowder, but was critical of 'lesser gunnes made for footmen who are somewhat long in taking their ayme, but come as neere the marke as any I ever saw'.*

The growing intrigues against the East India Company by the Portuguese, in the wake of their declining commercial and economic influence, prompted the Company's directors to urge King James to send Sir Thomas Roe as a special plenipotentiary to Jahangir's court. Leaving England in February 1613, Roe arrived at Ajmir on 23 December 1613 and presented his credentials to the Emperor. Roe ceaselessly tried to persuade Jahangir to enter into some kind of trade agreement with the English. He travelled with the Emperor as far as Ahmadabad, until finally, at his request, the Emperor allowed him to return home, giving him a letter for King James. Although Roe had failed to obtain a formal treaty, he secured substantially improved terms, under which the English factory at Surat was maintained, and various branches opened. In February 1619 Roe left India.

Throughout his stay, Roe had tried to restore English prestige, which had been eroded by the disorderly behaviour of English officials. In his Journal and correspondence Roe gives vivid descriptions of the magnificent Mughal court and the Naw Ruz (New Year's Day) festivities. The Emperor's birthday weighing ceremony is given in minute detail. The Journal also discusses the influential Empress, Nur Jahan, and the indifference displayed by her brother, Asaf Khan, towards the British. Roe also refers to Jahangir's insatiable appetite for gifts and European novelties, as well as his extremes of character.

Among the stream of seventeenth-century European visitors to India, Francisco Pelsaert (1620-7) of Antwerp, a factor with the Dutch East India Company, deserves special mention. He worked in Agra from 1620 to 1627. His Remonstrantie, written in 1626, highlights the flourishing trade at Surat, Ahmadabad, Cambay, Broach, Burhanpur, Agra, Lahore, Multan, and Srinagar. Muslims and their sectarian beliefs and festivals are described at considerable length. John de Laet was permitted to draw upon the Remonstrantie, which he summarized in his *De Imperio Magni Mogulis*, published at Leyden in 1631.

A traveller who visited India to enrich his knowledge of the world was John Albert de Mandeslo, a German who landed at Surat in 1638. He gathered his information mostly from secondary sources and left India after only a short stay. Other notable European travellers were the Frenchmen Tavernier, Thevenot,

*Ibid p 314.

xxxiv

Bernier, and Chardin. During his first voyage in 1631 Tavernier stopped at Iran. On his second voyage he visited India briefly in 1640-1. In 1645 he came again and stayed for three years. In 1664 he made his sixth and last voyage and landed in India for the fourth time, carrying £30,000 worth of stock. In 1665 he had an audience with Aurangzib. He also met Bernier, with whom he travelled to Bengal. In 1667 he sailed for Bandar 'Abbas. The publication of *Six Voyages*, the story of his travels, made him famous, but Thevenot and Bernier ignored him, while Chardin and Careri abused him. Tavernier did not retaliate.

Tavernier's historical accounts are not original. Like Bernier he did not examine facts in the light of historical or social philosophy, but he described what he saw vividly, from the Taj Mahal to

the caravanserais. Most valuable are his notes on cotton cloth, indigo, cinnamon, and jewels, particularly diamonds.

Jean de Thevenot landed at Surat in January 1666. He travelled through Ahmadabad and Cambay, and across the Deccan peninsula through Burhanpur, Aurangabad, and Golkonda, visiting the rock-cut temples of Ellora. He was the first European to describe them; his notes on commerce and industry are welded into history. In the autumn of 1667 he left for Iran and died in a small town there.

Francois Bernier was a French physician and philosopher, who arrived in India in 1656 and stayed for twelve years. Danishmand Khan (d. 1670), one of Aurangzib's leading nobles, was his patron, and Bernier referred to him as 'my Nawwdb or Agah'. Bernier translated for Danishmand Khan the medical works of European scientists such as William Harvey (1578-1657), Jean Pecquet (1622-74), and Pierre Gassendi (1592-1655), and the works of the great philosopher Rene Descartes (1596-1650). Unlike other travellers, Bernier had a good perception of the Mughal administration, but his prejudices clouded his conclusions.

Niccolao Manucci ran away from his native city, Venice, at the age of fourteen in 1653 and three years later arrived at Surat. Although he was only sixteen years old, he obtained work as an artilleryman in the army of Dara Shukoh, whose succession to his father Shahjahan (1628-58) was challenged by his three brothers. Manucci accompanied Dara to Multan and Bhakkar but, after Dara's execution by Aurangzib in 1659, he worked on different occasions as a quack doctor, an artillery captain, an ambassador, and finally a foreign correspondent and interpreter for his English masters. He died at Madras in 1717. His adventurous career and diverse experiences made his *Storia do Mogor*, written in a mixture of Italian, French, and Portuguese and translated into English, a mine of information on seventeenth-century India.

xxxv

John Fryer, an English traveller who was in Iran and India during the nine years ending in 1681, vividly describes Bombay and Surat. What has made his narratives indispensable to the Mughal historian is his analysis of the circumstances of Shivaji's rise and the problems of Bijapur.

Gemelli Careri, an Italian, was familiar with Thevenot's works. Landing at Daman, he visited the Mughal camp at Galgala to the south of the ruins of Bijapur in 1695. Although the Marathas had been subdued, their guerrilla raids posed a threat to the unwieldy Mughal camp. Careri was admitted to the court of the ageing Emperor, now verging on his eightieth year. His remarks on the Emperor's military organization and administration are important.

The Dutch travellers Wouter Shouten and Nicholas de Graaf, and the Englishman Sir William Hedges, an East India Company agent in Bengal from 1681 to 1688, discuss the Mughal administration in Bengal and European commercial activity. Many other Europeans, including missionaries, merchants, and travellers, also wrote about seventeenth- and eighteenth-century India, usefully supplementing the Persian chronicles.

Mystical Literature

Modern works in Islam in the Indian subcontinent have not made adequate use of sufi literature in analysing the political, social, and economic history of medieval India. The enormous collection of this literature, largely in Persian, may conveniently be divided into the following categories:

- (1) Treatises written by sufis on the theory and practice of sufism.
- (2) Letters written by sufis.
- (3) Discourses by sufi leaders called malfuzat.
- (4) Biographical dictionaries of the sufi orders.
- (5) Collections of sufi poetry.

The Hindi devotional literature was composed in the local dialects and throws considerable light on the religious movements and the manners and customs of the people. Only a few of the works by sufis and Hindu sages have been translated. Sufi works have been discussed, however, in the introductions to Volumes I and II of A History of Sufism in India, by S. A. A. Rizvi.

Other significant works in different categories are mentioned in the bibliography.

xxxvi 1

I THE ARABS AND THE TURKS

EARLY ISLAM

Islam literally means 'submission'. It calls for the total surrender of the whole self to God. Those who give their heart and mind to God's will are Muslims. The Qur'an says:

Say (O Muslims): We believe in Allah and that which is revealed unto us and that which was revealed unto Abraham, and Ishmael, and Isaac, and Jacob, and the tribes, and that which Moses and Jesus received, and that which the Prophets received from their Lord. We make no distinction between any of them, and unto Him we have surrendered.¹

Islam's birthplace and spiritual centre is Mecca in the northwestern part of the Arabian Peninsula. Although Mecca is only a city in a rocky and infertile valley, its location at the intersection of busy commercial routes had made it, in the sixth century, exceedingly affluent. There was a brisk circulation of capital in Mecca, and even the humblest citizen could invest in the caravan trade. Usury at 100 per cent interest and speculation, mainly Concerning exchange rates, were rampant there. The rich Meccans owned huge capital, and even the small shopkeepers, brokers, and traders were wealthy. The commercial importance of Mecca was enhanced by the annual pilgrimage to the cube-like sanctuary called Ka'ba, whose deities were worshipped by both

tribesmen and town-dwellers. The ninth day of the last month of the lunar year was kept for pilgrimage, and the first, eleventh, and twelfth months of each year formed the period of holy truce when all tribal wars were abandoned.

The summer resort of the Meccan aristocracy was Ta'if, famous for its fruit, roses, honey, and wine. Some three hundred miles north of Mecca was Yasrib, later known as Medina, which was rich in agriculture and oases. The wealthy Judaized clans of Arabia had settled in Medina and half a dozen villages near by. About 542-3 the non-Jewish Aws and Khazraj tribes of al-Yemen also migrated to Medina.

It was the Bedouins, however, who dominated the north-western

2

part of the Arabian Peninsula. Their culture was predominant even in the main towns, and babies born in the cities were brought up in the tribal environment. The Arab's most prized possession was his language.

Muhammad, the founder of Islam, was descended from the dominant Quraysh tribe of Mecca. His father, 'Abdu'llah, died before his birth; his mother, Amina, took her last breath some seven years later. Muhammad was brought up by his uncle Abu Talib and was known as a young man for his integrity and trustworthiness in all matters. When he was about twenty-five years old, he married his employer, a wealthy widow of forty called Khadija. Wealth and comfort did not, however, change his life. He identified himself with the downtrodden section of society and saw their suffering as his own. Muhammad often retired to the nearby Hira cave and stayed there for several days, meditating on God. Whilst he was there he became conscious of a voice commanding: 'Read; In the name of the Lord who createth.' This revelation was identified as Muhammad's first call to the Prophethood. The night of that day was named 'the night of power' (laylat al-qadr). The voice came more frequently, sometimes like 'the reverberations of bells', and later identified itself as belonging to the archangel Gabriel. Muhammad was convinced that he was the messenger (rasul) of Allah, and a 'warner'. His wife, Khadija, and his cousin 'Ali became his earliest followers, although some of his friends also accepted him as the Prophet. The divine revelations he received, emphasizing monotheism, social equality, and justice, were anathema to most of the wealthy Meccans, who determined to persecute him and his followers. In 615 Muhammad permitted a group of his disciples to migrate to the Christian Negus of Ethiopia. Four years later Abu Talib died, followed in 619 by Khadija. Three years after this Muhammad migrated to Medina at the request of the Khazraj and Aws tribes, arriving on 24 September 622. Seventeen years later his emigration was made the starting-point of the Muslim hijra (immigration) era, when the date was changed to 16 July 622 to make it compatible with the first day of the first month of the Muslim lunar calendar. Muhammad's Meccan followers moved to Medina in due course. The immigrants were known as muhadjirs. The other inhabitants of Medina, except the Jews, who welcomed the immigrants were known as ansars or 'the helpers'. Muhammad's influence stopped the existing feuds and rivalries between the people of Medina and forged a remarkable Islamic brotherhood between the ansars and muhadjirs.

In Mecca the Prophet prayed facing in the direction of Jerusalem in order to distinguish his prayers from those of the pagan Arabs,

3

who faced the Ka'ba. The Muslims were permitted to eat most foods prepared by the People of the Book (Jews and Christians) and to marry their women. They were, however, prohibited from eating pork and any animal which had died naturally, had been sacrificed to idols, had had its neck wrung, or had not been slaughtered in accordance with Jewish law. Although the Jewish books promised a Messiah, they would not accept anyone who was not a Jew as Messiah. They were appalled when Muhammad recited the Qur'anic verses stating that the Jews had falsified their scriptures and that their divine revelations pertained only to a particular age. He also declared that the Christians had likewise departed from their scripture. The Jews were completely alienated, however, when early in 624, acting upon God's commands, he ordered his followers to pray facing the ancient sanctuary of Ka'ba. They also resented Muhammad's repeated condemnation of usury and hoarding.

When the caravans from Mecca passed through Medina, the travellers jeered and taunted the muhджirs as cowards for fleeing from Mecca. The Muslims were eventually forced to defend themselves. The first major trial of strength took place in March 624 at Badr Hunayn, a small town south-west of Medina. The Meccans were defeated but they avenged their humiliation the following year at Uhud near Mecca. In 627 Meccans, Bedouins, and some Ethiopian mercenaries jointly attacked Medina. On the suggestion of his Iranian companion Salman, the Prophet had a Hith dug around Medina to save it from immediate assault, while 'All's fierce sorties disheartened the invaders, and they withdrew. Next year the people of Mecca were forced to make a truce with Muhammad in order to prevent him from conquering their city. In 629 Muhammad defeated the Jews at their formidable Khaybar fort and seized their oases north of Medina. Towards the end of 630 Muhammad triumphantly entered Mecca with his followers. He died in June 632, after complaining of having a severe headache.

After Muhammad's death the muhджirs and ansdrs at Medina, who believed that Muhammad had not nominated any successor, elected Abu Bakr as caliph (Arabic khatif = 'successor'), but a number of the Prophet's companions and the members of the Prophet's Hashimite clan, who considered that the Prophet had nominated his cousin and son-in-law 'All as his heir, dissociated themselves with these proceedings. They were known as 'partisans' or Shi'as of 'All. After several decades the first group, who had no specific title, became known as Sunnis. Abu Bakr (632-4) named 'Umar al-Khattab (634-44) as his successor. Under 'Umar, the

4

Byzantine territories of Syria, Palestine, and Egypt and the Sasanid countries of Iran and Iraq were conquered.

The defeated nations were offered three choices: acceptance of Islam, payment of poll-tax (jizya), or total destruction. Since the institution of poll-tax already existed in the Byzantine and Sasanian empire, it was easily accepted by the subject nations. The Zoroastrians were also given

the status of the people of the revealed books, as afforded to the Jews and Christians. The Meccan idols had never been worshipped in these regions, so the Muslim condemnation of idolatry did not cause any religious crisis in the early stages of expansion. The Arab conquerors were either merchants or tribesmen; they had no interest in agriculture, and the farms were left with their original owners. For administrative purposes the revenue of large areas was placed under the control of military commanders. According to 'Umar's decrees, Arabs were even forbidden to settle on the land; they garrisoned the frontier forts and extended the boundaries of their empire from these points. The dihqans (chieftains) in Iraq and Iran, who controlled land assessment and the payment of khardj (land tax), enforced law and order and revenue collection in village communities in accordance with their ancient laws and practices.² They became the link between the Arab commanders and the cultivators. 'Umar then started diwan (literally a revenue register of pre-Islamic Iran) to record revenue collections and the payment of stipends to the Arab chiefs, and founded the Muslim treasury or baytu 'l-Mdl. The conversion of the local population to Islam was a complex and long-drawn-out process. The immediate problems were defence and administration, not Islamicization.

In 644 'Umar was assassinated by one of his Iranian slaves. 'Usman (644—56), one of the Prophet's senior companions, was elected caliph by a council of six members who had been nominated by 'Umar. The first six years of Usman's reign were peaceful, but civil war broke out in the second half. 'Usman had made his relations governors of various provinces; their despotism forced the people to rebel. The dissidents advanced on Medina to force 'Usman to dismiss them. The first to arrive were the Egyptians who besieged 'Usman's house and then killed him.

Subsequently, on the invitation of the Medina elite, 'All (656-61) accepted the caliphate in order to save the community from disintegration. Muhammad's wife, 'A'isha, who had initially opposed 'Usman's government, now changed her mind and became leader of 'All's enemies, who were demanding immediate vengeance for 'Usman's blood. An army of about 10,000 men under 'A'isha marched against 'All, and six months after 'Usman's

5

assassination a fierce battle was fought near Basra: 'A'isha was defeated and sent back to Medina. 'All now moved the capital from Medina to Kufa in Iraq. Mu'awiya, the governor of Syria, who was related to 'Usman, refused to submit to 'All and gave battle near Baghdad. When Mu'awiya's soldiers realized they were losing the fight, they raised the Qur'an on their spears to force 'All to make arbitration on the basis of the Qur'an. Some of 'All's followers disapproved of this arbitration and deserted him. Later they also fought 'All but were defeated. They were called the Khawarij (singular Khariji). 'All was assassinated by a Khariji while at prayers in the mosque in Kufa, and Mu'awiya renewed his attempts to seize the caliphate by military force. 'All's son, Hasan, who had been chosen as his father's successor by the people of Kufa, abdicated to avoid bloodshed, and Mu'awiya became caliph.

Mu'awiya made Damascus his capital and reduced Mecca and Medina to purely spiritual centres of Islam. Some years before his death, Mu'awiya made his son, Yazid, who was notorious for his dissipation, his successor. This constituted a major departure from the earlier tradition of

election. Hasan's brother, Husayn, and other leading Muslims opposed Yazid's succession. After Mu'awiya's death, Yazid tried to force Husayn to accept him as caliph, but Husayn refused. Instead he moved to Kufa at the invitation of the leading Muslims there who wished to make him their leader. A strong force sent by Yazid's governor in Kufa intercepted Husayn and his followers at Karbala in Iraq. On 10 October 680 they killed Husayn and his followers. The tragic circumstances of Husayn's martyrdom spread a wave of hatred against Yazid, and 'revenge' became the battle-cry of many anti-Umayyad movements. In 750 the Umayyads (the ruling dynasty founded by Mu'awiya) were overthrown by the 'Abbasids (750-1258), who had secretly built up their strength among the anti-Umayyad sections of the Iranian and Arab population. The 'Abbasids were descended from the Prophet's uncle, 'Abbas, and this gave their rule a certain legitimacy. Although the Umayyads and the 'Abbasids were called caliphs, they were hereditary monarchs, like the Iranian and Byzantine emperors preceding them. The first four rulers following the Prophet are known as Rashidun or 'rightly guided caliphs'.

INSTITUTIONS

According to the Qur'an, its divine revelations superseded all previous disclosures in the Torah, the Psalms, and the Gospel,

6

brought by Moses, David, and Jesus. The name 'Qur'an' ('the Book') occurs in the Book itself. The verses in the Qur'an were revealed during the twenty-three years of Muhammad's Prophetic mission in Mecca and Medina. Its verses and chapters were arranged by Muhammad, and the entire Qur'an was written down and memorized during his lifetime. It is divided into 114 chapters and contains 6,360 verses.

The principal objective of the Qur'an is to guide humanity to lead an ethical life and to emphasize the fact that only the spiritual force should be dominant. It does not, however, advocate any compulsion in religion. It envisages war but only 'to stop religious persecution and to protect houses of worship'. It speaks of life after death as a continuation of earthly life. Monogamy is preferable, but in special circumstances four wives can be taken at the same time. In contrast to the laws of Hinduism, females are entitled to a share in their father's and husband's property. They are not forbidden to leave their homes, but they must be modest in their dress and demeanour. The Qur'an also provides rules for male behaviour and for social, economic, and political ethics.

The Qur'an is supplemented by the Sunna, or practices of Muhammad, which were transmitted in the form of short narratives called kadis (statements or traditions). Although there is no controversy over the Qur'an, the Sunni and Shi'i hadis differ in both content and methodology. The most authentic collection of Sunni hadis was made by Muhammad bin Isma'il al-Bukhari (810-70). His work, known as the Sahih (Authentic), contains 2,762 statements, each preceded by the chain of its transmitters. They were selected from a mass of 600,000 traditions. This shows the enormous number of false statements current in Bukhari's time and the difficulties he faced. Another authentic compilation is that of his contemporary, Muslim ibn al-Hajjaj. Together

with four other accepted selections, the Sunni works of hadis are collectively known as the six canonical books.

The Shi'I works of hadis contain the sayings of 'All and his descendants, known as imams, besides those of the Prophet. According to the Shi'is, the imams were the custodians of Muhammad's knowledge, both esoteric and exoteric, so their narratives embody true Prophetic traditions. There are four works of Shi'I hadis; the earliest, by Muhammad ibn Ya'qub al-Kulayni (d. 940), is the most important.

7

LAW

In the Qur'an and hadis, law and religion exist side by side. All works of Muslim law deal with fundamental religious duties such as prayers, the payment of zakat (one-fortieth of annual savings given to the needy and to travellers), fasting in the month of Ramazan, pilgrimage to Mecca (which should be performed at least once in a lifetime), and jihad (holy war). The caliphs who followed the Prophet tried to solve the problems confronting them in the light of the Qur'anic injunctions and the precedents set by the Prophet. Their successors, the Umayyad governors, delegated their power to an army of officials. Among these were the qazis or Islamic judges, who used their own discretion or 'sound opinion' (ray), drawing upon the Qur'an, other religious norms, and the legal concepts of the conquered territories as far as they were compatible with Islamic ideals. Their main concern was to consolidate the Islamic way of life mainly through ijtihad (individual reasoning or reasoning by analogy). Their efforts made Medina, Kufa, and Damascus the early centres of Islamic jurisprudence (fiqh). This included the regulations relating to prayers and rituals ('ibadat), civil and legal obligations (mu'dmalat), and punishments ('uqubat).

The oldest corpus of Islamic law is al-Muwatta by Malik ibn Anas (c. 715-95) of Medina. It comprises some 1,700 juridical traditions, based on consensus of opinion (ijma) among those who were believed to be best acquainted with the spirit of the Prophet's decisions. Malik's followers were known as the Malikites.

From the main body of the ancient law schools of Kufa and Basra grew the Hanafiyya or the Hanafi mazhab (school of religious law) of Abu Hanifa (699-767). He is said to have been brought as a slave from Kabul to Kufa, where he was set free by a member of an Arabian tribe. Abu Hanifa did not himself write any books on law, but the works of his disciples Abu Yusuf (d. 798) and al-Shaybani (d. 805), embodying their master's views, form the basic structure of Hanafi law. Besides personal judgement and conclusion by analogy, Abu Hanifa insisted upon the right of 'preference' (istihsan). This meant departure from analogy on grounds of equity. Malik's pupil, Muhammad ibn Idris al-Shafi'i (767-820), who worked mainly in Baghdad and Cairo, carved out a middle-of-the-road system between the Maliki and Hanafi schools, while al-Shafi'i's pupil Ahmad bin Hanbal (780-855), the founder of the fourth school of fiqh known as the Hanabila, was a formidable champion of puritanism.

8

The works of the founders of the four schools of jurisprudence and their disciples and successors form the major corpus of the Sunni schools of law. After Ahmad bin Hanbal's death, an agreement developed among all four schools that all essential legal questions had finally been settled and that future jurists should abide by the laws propounded by them. This decision is known as 'the closing of the door of ijtihad'. The unquestioning acceptance of the doctrine of any of the four schools is known as taqlid or imitation; the jurists of subsequent centuries were therefore muqallids (imitators).

By the time Malik and Abu Hanifa had risen to eminence, Imam Muhammad Baqir (677-733) and Imam Ja'far al-Sadiq (702-65), the fifth and sixth Shi'i imams, who lived in Medina, had worked out the legal system which the Shi'is follow. It embodies the principles which, as 'All's direct descendants, they inherited from the Prophet Muhammad.

The 'Abbasid caliphs gave the Hanafiyya school of jurisprudence official status, and it held supreme authority in all the kingdoms as far as eastern Iran, Transoxiana, Turkey, and India. The qdzis and scholars at the 'Abbasid courts and under the Iranian and Delhi sultanate composed a large number of handbooks dealing with the application of Hanafiyya law. These are largely collections of fatwas (legal decisions) of earlier qdzis who were mainly concerned to answer questions relating to their respective environments. The most impressive collection of Hanafiyya fatwas is the Fatawa al-'Alamgiriyya compiled by a board of Indian 'ulama' (religious scholars, singular 'alim), appointed by the Mughal Emperor Aurangzib.

THE ARAB CONQUEST OF SIND

Since time immemorial, commercial relations existed between Arabia and the western coastal regions of India. Even before the advent of Islam, the Arabs had acquired a monopoly of the sea trade in several Indian ports and had established settlements there. After the Islamicization of the Arabian Peninsula, these communities built mosques, recited congregational prayers, and converted some of the indigenous people to Islam. Their children naturally were brought up as Muslims. The rulers, in the interest of trade and according to the tolerant traditions of India, took no exception to their religious activities, and relations between them remained cordial. The Muslim community at Malabar, called moplabs (from

9

mapilla, meaning a bridegroom or child), developed from the matrimonial alliances between the Arabs and the local population.

Pirates posed a potent threat to the Arab sea trade. In 636 the governor of Bahrayn and 'Umman sent an expedition to Thana, near modern Bombay. Other Arab expeditions left also for the ports of Broach and Dabol. The second caliph, 'Umar, did not favour sea wars, but the raids through Makran (Baluchistan), captured during his reign, continued. Legends wrongly assert that Muhammad bin Qasim's invasion of Sind in the early eighth century was initially a punitive expedition.³ It was, in fact, part of the forward policy of the Umayyad governor of Iraq, Hajjaj bin Yusuf (694-714), to annex the region from Sind to Transoxiana.

Sind was then ruled by Raja Dahir. He was the son of a usurper, the brahman Chach, who had overthrown Buddhist rule, although their influence was still strong in the territory. In 712 Muhammad bin Qasim, the young nephew and son-in-law of Hajjaj, marched at the head of a strong army through Shiraz (Iran) and Makran. Ballistae, one of which required five hundred trained men to operate it, were sent by sea to join the main army at Debal, an inland commercial port near modern Karachi. Dahir's garrison, entrenched in the stone fortification at Debal, offered stiff resistance, but the bombardment with rocks by the ballistae forced them to capitulate. Early in 712 Nirun, south of modern Hyderabad, was seized. Sehwan, a commercial centre, surrendered without resistance. Although the Jats of the lower Sind fought fiercely, they too were defeated. The Arab onward march, however, was balked near a tributary of the Indus by an epidemic of scurvy among the troops and disease in the horses. Hajjaj sent both reinforcements and medicines. A hotly contested battle was fought by Dahir, near Brahmanabad (north of Hyderabad) in June 712, but he was defeated and killed. Muhammad bin Qasim took Brahmanabad, married Dahir's widow, Rani Ladi, and became the master of lower Sind. In October he marched against the capital, Aror (near modern Rohri), held by the Raja's son, and seized it. Conquering upper Sind early in 713, Muhammad bin Qasim proceeded towards Multan. The garrison there resisted but finally surrendered.

Muhammad bin Qasim sent one-fifth of the booty (ghanima) to the Caliph's treasury. The rest, according to early Islamic practices, was distributed among the army. The Chach-nama details the administrative regulations Muhammad introduced into Brahmanabad. According to the author, the artisans, merchants, and common people were left alone, but all the captured soldiers were beheaded. Those civilians who had not become Muslims were then

10

divided into three categories for the imposition of poll-tax (jizya). The men in the highest income brackets paid 48 dirhams⁴ of silver per head, the middle income groups 24 dirhams, and the lowest class 12 dirhams. Tribute was fixed according to their resources on all chieftains who had surrendered. A census of merchants, artisans, and fanners was taken. The number of common people was about 10,000. Because the merchants and artisans had already lost much of their property through looting, it was decided that all classes should pay a tax (mal) of 12 silver dirhams.⁵ Village chiefs (dihqans) and headmen (ra'is) were appointed to collect it from the townspeople and villagers, and were offered a small salary.⁶ The Brahmans, encouraged at the favour shown by Muhammad to the headmen, urged him to restore their own former position and status also. Muhammad granted their request. The brahmans then visited the outlying villages, and at their persuasion the community leaders in the countryside also submitted to the Arabs and promised to pay taxes. An order was received from Hajjaj that, since the people of Sind had accepted the status of protected subjects (zimmi), no interference should be made in their lives and property. They should be permitted to worship freely in their own temples and should also be allowed to build new ones.⁷ The brahmans were permitted to collect their customary fees from the merchants, Hindu chiefs (thakuras), and common Hindus; the 3 per cent share of government revenue which they had previously received was also reinstated. Even the harsh and discriminatory treatment which the brahmans had meted out to the Jat tribe was not changed. The Jats were not allowed to put on comfortable clothes and wore rough black blankets; their chiefs were forbidden to ride horses. They were treated as brutes.⁸

Muhammad bin Qasim's victory over Sind was decisive and spectacular. It was due mainly to his better and more advanced military methods. His co-ordination of sea and ground forces was remarkably successful. Dahir's defence of his forts was feeble, and the princes and chieftains under him had no personal interest in holding them. Moreover, he remained entrenched at Brahmana-bad and did not take the opportunity to strike first when Muhammad's troops and horses were prostrated by sickness at the Indus tributary. Some of Dahir's generals were disloyal, but the importance of the betrayal of the brahman cause by the Buddhists, whom the brahmins had previously replaced as rulers cannot be overemphasized as a factor in their defeat.

Muhammad bin Qasim's lightning raids in rebellious areas, his far-sighted handling of the local chieftains, and his conciliation of the brahmins helped him consolidate his power without much

11

difficulty. The military governors he appointed in the forts and the Arab garrisons under them were also considerate and capable: Hajjaj's death in June 714, followed next year by that of his patron, Caliph Walid (705-15), led to the recall of Muhammad bin Qasim. The new Caliph put him in chains, and he died in prison in Iraq. The administration in Sind broke down.

When the Umayyad Caliph 'Umar bin 'Abdu'l-'Aziz (717-20) came to power he embarked upon a policy of converting the Hindu princes to Islam. Dahir's son, Jaisinha, embraced Islam, but then recanted and fell fighting on the battlefield. Some Hindu chieftains also became Muslims. In 724 Junayd took over the governorship of Sind. He subdued the rebellions there and embarked on a series of raids in Kathiawar and Ujjain. Junayd's incursions beyond Sind, however, failed, and he was recalled in 740. Only strong governors could rule Sind effectively and attempt, even if unsuccessfully, to extend their boundaries. Other governors became too involved in crushing local rebellions and combating the intrigues among Arab chiefs and Indian converts to contemplate further conquests. In 731 the Arabs founded a town on the river Indus named Mahfuza, to garrison their troops. Six years later they built their capital, Mansura. In 854 'Umar bin 'Abdu'l-'Aziz Hibbari established an hereditary Arab government in Sind, and the 'Abbasids of Baghdad were regarded as caliphs in name only. In 977 the Isma'ilis, who owed allegiance to the Fatimid caliphs of Egypt,⁹ seized Multan by a coup d'etat and eight years later took Sind from the Hibbari family.

Historians do not attach much importance to Arab rule in Sind, but it was remarkable in many ways. It strengthened Arab trade on the west coast of India and encouraged more Arabs to make new settlements on the east coast and even in South-East Asia. The Arabs rapidly assimilated local customs and manners. They adjusted Arab tribal life to the Sindi tribal pattern. In 886 the Qur'an was translated into Sindi on the request of a Hindu chief. Arab historians who visited the region in the tenth century noted that the urban population spoke both Arabic and Sanskrit. The cultural interchange was most productive. The Kufa leather workers trained the Makran and Sind tanners in the art of tanning leather with dates. This improved the finish of indigenous leather products and made them softer. Sind shoes now fetched a high price and were regarded as a luxury item in the caliph's territories. Sind breeds of camel were also upgraded, and the demand for them rose in neighbouring countries. . On the other hand, Sanskrit works on astronomy,

medicine, ethics, and administration were introduced by the Sindi intellectuals to the translation bureau at the 'Abbasid

12

court. The contribution by Sindi scholars to the development of Islamic sciences such as kadis and fiqh is also impressive.

THE GHAZNAVIDS

Contemporaneous with the conquest of Sind were the Arab victories over the eastern Turks of Transoxiana by Hajjaj's equally enterprising general Qutayba bin Muslim. In the north Qutayba's armies reached Shash (Tashkend) and in the south-east they penetrated deep into Kashghar, at that time part of the Chinese empire. Arab governors were appointed to administer the conquered provinces. When the Umayyad Caliph Sulayman (715-17) assumed power, Qutayba (like Muhammad bin Qasim) was disgraced, but he rebelled against his recall. He was eventually killed by his own army in 715. Proselytization in Transoxiana was more successful than in Sind. The spearhead of the proselytization movement were the sufi mystics, while the dihqans, hereditary aristocratic landholders who lived in fortified castles, responded to the call of Islam enthusiastically. The revenues remitted to the caliphate from this region were enormous, but from the ninth century their most valued contribution was the supply of Turkic slaves. Armed Turkic slaves supplanted not only the Iranians but also the Arab contingents as bodyguards and crack troops. They were loyal to none but their masters and were transferred by them like any other chattel.

From the ninth century onwards, certain enterprising leaders, backed by the Turkic slaves, began to carve out independent ruling dynasties in the eastern regions of the caliphate, paying only nominal obedience to the 'Abbasid caliphs. In Khurasan (the eastern province of Iran) and Transoxiana, Saman-Khuda, a dihqan in the Balkh district who had been converted to Islam, founded the Samanid dynasty, which ruled from 819 to 1005. Under them, Alptigin, a Turkic slave, rose to the rank of commander-in-chief of the guard (hajibu'l-hujjab) and, in the reign of the Samanid 'Abdu'l-Malik I (954-61), became the governor of Khurasan. When he was dismissed by 'Abdu'l-Malik's successor, he withdrew to Balkh, where he defeated the Samanid army in 963. He then made a dash to Ghazni on the periphery of the Samanid kingdom and vanquished Abu 'All Lawik, or Anuk, said to be a brother-in-law of the Hindu Shahi ruler of the region, Kabul Shah.

Alptigin died in 963. Three short-lived rulers followed him. In 977, however, Alptigin's slave and son-in-law, Subuktigin, seized

13

power. In the first two years of his reign he conquered the regions around Ghazni and then turned his attention to the Hindu Shahis. The latter ruled the territory from Lamghan to the river Chenab and from the hills of southern Kashmir to the frontier kingdom of Multan. Their capital was Waihind or Hund. In 986—7 their king, Jayapala, in retaliation for an earlier incursion by

Subuktigin into his territory, marched upon Ghazni, but was defeated by Subukti-gin. Jayapala made peace, promising to pay a huge indemnity, but later he repudiated his word. Then, joined by a number of other Hindu rajas, he again marched on Ghazni, but was once more badly defeated between Lamghan and Peshawar. Subuktigin died in 997, nominating his younger son, Isma'il, as his successor. Subuktigin's elder son, Mahmud, refused to accept his father's decision and ascended the throne after defeating Isrh'il in battle. Two years later Mahmud crushed the Samanid army and seized the commercially rich and agriculturally fertile region of Khurasan. The 'Abbasid Caliph al-Qadir (991-1031), whose succession to the throne had been threatened by the Samanids, out of gratitude bestowed on Mahmud the title Yaminu'd-Dawla wa Aminu'l-Mulk (Right-hand of the Empire and Trustee of the Nation). Mahmud next conquered the dynasties which had been subject to the Samanids. His conquest of Khwarazm, Sistan, and Ghur made him the most formidable power in eastern Iran and Transoxiana. Mahmud is, however, more famous for his Indian conquests, which commenced in September 1000, when he captured some forts near Lamghan. His earlier invasions of the territory of the Hindu Shahis and their supporters, as well as that of the Isma'ilis of Multan, were designed to clear a way into the rich Gangetic plains. In 1001 he fought a fierce battle against Jayapala near Peshawar and defeated him. Returning to the Panjab, Jayapala died and was succeeded by his son, Anandapala. Towards the end of 1005 the Sultan seized Bhatinda, which guarded the passage from the north-west into the rich Ganges valley. Its raja was defeated, but the Sultan's army also suffered heavy losses on the return journey.¹¹

A serious obstacle to the Sultan's entry into the Gangetic plain was Abu'l Fath bin Dawud, the Isma'ili ruler of Multan. He had entered into alliances with both Subuktigin and Mahmud, but his relations with Anandapala were also friendly. In 1006, in order to complete his mopping-up operations, Mahmud therefore marched on Multan via Peshawar. Anandapala tried to stop him but was swept away. Dawud fled from Multan; the Isma'ilis were slaughtered, and their mosques desecrated. Only the Sunnis were spared. Mahmud returned to Ghazni after installing Sukhapala, Jayapala's Islamicized grandson, on the Multan throne. The Sultan's pro-

14

longed involvement in the Khurasan wars, however prompted Sukhapala to rebel. Mahmud therefore hastened back to Multan, captured Sukhapala, and executed him in January 1008.¹² Meanwhile Anandapala had collected a vast army of neighbouring rajas. Mahmud then crossed the Indus and defeated Anandapala in the plain opposite Waihind in January 1009. The rajas fled to Nagarkot temple near Kangra, with Mahmud at their heels. Nagarkot surrendered, and the vast booty from the vaults of its temple fell into Mahmud's hands. Anandapala, however, escaped. After the Sultan's return to Ghazni, Anandapala re-established his kingdom on the northern spur of the Salt range, commanding the main route into the Gangetic doab, with Nandana as his capital. Shortly afterwards he died and was succeeded by his son Trilochanapala.¹³

Mahmud's repeated invasions over the Panjab as far as Kashmir and eastern Rajasthan destroyed Rajput resistance. Kashmir itself was saved by its difficult terrain.¹⁴ Nevertheless Mahmud's way into the Gangetic doab was now clear. In September 1018 he penetrated into the east of Delhi and conquered Baran (Buland-shahr), while Mahaban (Mathura) surrendered. The beauty of the Hindu architecture in Mathura impressed the Sultan, but his hatred of idols prevented him

from sparing any temples.¹⁵ He collected a vast amount of booty. At the end of December 1018 the Sultan seized Kanauj. On his return he conquered various forts in quick succession. Besides a huge quantity of gold, the booty he acquired included 55,000 slaves and 350 elephants.

From 1019 to 1023 Kalinjar was Mahmud's target. Deeper raids into eastern India were of no use to his mission of plunder, and in October 1025 he set out at the head of 30,000 regular cavalry and a vast army of volunteers on his famous expedition to Somnath on the coast of Kathiawar (now again known by its ancient name, Saurashtra). Elaborate arrangements were made for the journey through the inhospitable desert of Jaisalmer and Anhilwara. Bhudeva, the Chalukya raja of Anhilwara, offered no resistance.¹⁶ At Mundhir, near Anhilwara (modern Patan in the Ahmadabad district of Gujarat), some 20,000 Hindus made a strong stand but were finally routed. Early in January 1026 the Sultan was positioned before the Somnath fortress on the sea-shore. The garrison made desperate assaults on the invaders but were unable to withstand their deadly showers of arrows. About 50,000 devotees laid down their lives in vain to save their deity's honour. The idol was smashed, and the booty obtained amounted to 20,000,000 dinars, each of which contained 64.8 grains of gold.¹⁷ After staying there for a fortnight, Mahmud took a westerly route through Kacch and Sind in order to avoid a confrontation with the vengeful Hindu

15

rajas from the neighbouring states. The Isma'ili ruler of Mansura fled, but the Hindu tribes harassed the returning army and inflicted heavy losses on them. In April 1026 the Sultan arrived in Ghazni. That same year Bhimapala, who had succeeded his father Tri-lochanapala in 1021-2, died and the Hindu Shahi dynasty came to an end. Mahmud's Somnath victory made him a legendary hero in Islamic history.¹⁸ He died on 30 April 1030.¹⁹

Mahmud's conquests extended from Iraq and the Caspian Sea to the river Ganges, from the Aral Sea and Transoxiana to Sind and the Rajasthan deserts. His actual rule in India, however, was confined to the Panjab and parts of Sind. His eastern empire comprised northern Baluchistan, Sistan, Khurasan, and Transoxiana. In 1023 his standing army consisted of 54,000 cavalry and 1,300 elephants but during wartime contingents from the vassal princes, volunteers, and local militia also joined his forces. The military backbone was the corps of Turkic slaves who were paid and maintained by the state. The booty from the rich Iranian provinces and the Indian campaigns, however, did not always cover the cost of Mahmud's military expeditions. The ruinous imposts he levied on Khurasan led to the desertion of agricultural areas; irrigation works fell into decay, and some even ceased to exist.²¹

Mahmud had assumed the role of defender of Sunni orthodoxy; he boasted of annihilating the Isma'ili sect and ruthlessly plundered Hindu temples. He did not, however, hesitate to employ the Hindus in his multiracial Muslim army. They served under their own commander, called the *salar-i Hinduyan*. The anonymous history of Sistan contains complaints of the ruthless massacre of Muslims and Christians by Mahmud's pagan Indian troops.²²

Mahmud was passionately fond of erecting magnificent palaces, mosques, seminaries, and gardens. They were built largely on the proceeds of his Indian campaigns, but their maintenance

often fell on the local people, who were hard put to bear the cost. The Sultan's love of ostentation and desire for historical immortality made him extremely generous to those poets who composed glowing panegyrics on him. Scientists, however, such as Abu Rayhan al-Biruni (d. after 1086), who was taken captive after the fall of Khwarazmshah in 1017, were given little encouragement. Even Firdawsi, who completed his great Persian epic, the *Shdh-nama*, in 1010, was not adequately rewarded. The philosopher Avicenna (Ibn Sina) wisely never came near Mahmud. Despite his faults, Mahmud's personal judgements, firm will, far-sightedness, and moral courage were striking. None of his contemporaries in Iran, Transoxiana, or India could match his talents.

16

His successor's stars were not in the ascendant. The Seljuqs, a branch of the Oghuz Turkic people belonging to the steppes north of the Caspian and Aral seas,²³ seized Khurasan and Khwarazm from Mahmud's son Mas'ud I (1031-41) after defeating him on the steppes of Dandanaqan in May 1040.²⁴

During the latter part of the reign of the Ghaznavid Yamin-u'd-Dawla Bahram Shah, who ruled from 1118 to 1152, the rulers of the Ghur hill region between Hirat and Kabul became very powerful. The region had previously been conquered by Mahmud of Ghazni, and the population converted to Islam. After the rise of the Seljuqs, however, the Ghurs accepted Seljuq authority. 'Ala'u'd-Din Husayn (d. 1161), who came to power there in 1149, fought a battle against the Ghaznavid Bahram Shah, near Tiginabad (Qandahar). The Ghur infantry, with their walls of protective shields, defeated the Ghaznavid army, which relied mainly on elephants. Bahram fled to the Panjab. 'Ala'u'd-Din entered Ghazni and gave it over to a horrendous seven-day orgy of plundering and destruction which earned him the title of Jahan-Suz (Burner of the World). The corpses of all the Ghaznavid rulers, except for Mahmud, Mas'ud, and Ibrahim, were exhumed and burnt. The towns between Ghazni and Ghur were also destroyed with revolting barbarism. In 1152 Bahram was succeeded by Khusraw Shah, but the Ghurid reduced his rule to Lahore, where he died in 1160. His successor, Khusraw Malik (1160-86), was the last ruler of the Ghaznavid dynasty, which the Ghurid finally extinguished in 1186.

The Ghaznavid rule in the Panjab lasted much longer than in Khurasan and was not subject to the vicissitudes of Ghazni. It was free from external invasions for at least 150 years. The governors generally belonged to the Ghaznavid royal house. The sources do not discuss the administrative framework of Ghaznavid Panjab, but it probably did not differ greatly from that of the Samanid provinces or at least from the Ghaznavid administration in Khurasan, which is mentioned in passing in the contemporary sources. After the fall of Khurasan the most important source of Ghaznavid revenue was the Panjab. The urban economic life of the Hindu Shahi dynasty seems to have boosted the Ghaznavid financial system. Lahore became more prosperous as an entrepot for the goods and merchandise from Iran and the northern Indian plains. Muslim merchants settled in several Indian towns because of the Hindu desire to promote trade and commerce. The development of Lahore, which is reflected in both contemporary poetry and sufi works, could not have taken place without the import of agricultural products from the Panjab villages. There the counterparts of the Iranian *dihqans* (the hereditary aristocracy in the villages) were the

17

Indian hereditary village chiefs or thakuras. Those thakuras who possessed strong fortresses were crushed by the Ghaznavids and forced to pay tribute, while the more docile chiefs seem to have acted as intermediaries between the state and the farmers. Following Arab and Iranian custom, the Ghaznavids changed neither the pattern of land ownership nor the rural economy, except in the villages near Lahore. The Hindu money-lending" class, known as the Sahs and the Multanls in thirteenth- and fourteenth-century literature, also carried on their business without any interference from their Muslim rulers. In fact the Multanls and Sahs were no different from the Jews in the time of the later 'Abbasids, on whom the commercial prosperity of the caliphate and its Iranian provinces depended.

Although Mahmud was a puritanically orthodox Sunni, the Hindus continued to enjoy zimmi (protected subject) status. Initially the Isma'ilis were defeated but they were not completely crushed, and the political instability in Ghazni allowed their rule to be revived. The Panjab became increasingly important, and sufis from the Ghazni region and other areas moved there. Abu'l-Fazl Muhammad bin al-Hasan Khattali, a disciple of Husri (d. 981-2) of the school of Junayd,²⁵ ordered his disciple Shaykh Hasan Zinjanl to move to the Panjab. Khattali later asked his young disciple 'All bin 'Usman Hujwiri to follow Zinjani. Before Hujwiri's death, the sufi traditions, as we shall show in Chapter 6, were firmly rooted in India.

Among the Persian poets, Mas'ud ar-Runi (d. c. 1091) lived in Lahore. The opinion held by some scholars that Rum's rival Mas'ud Sa'd Salman compiled a collection of his own (Salman's) Hindawl (Hindi) verses is rightly contested by many, but on the basis of Salman's surviving Persian lyrics, he can undoubtedly be called the founder of the Indo-Persian style of poetry.

THE GHURIDS

'Ala'u'd-Din Jahan Suz's conquests made the Ghurid empire very extensive, but it reached its zenith under two brothers: Shamsu'd-Din (later Ghiyazu'd-Din) Muhammad (1163-1203) and Shihabu'd-Din (later Mu'izzu'd-Din) Muhammad (1173-1206). Ghiyazu'd-Din concentrated on expanding westwards to prevent the Khwarazm-Shahs, or Khans of Khiva on the lower Oxus, from moving into Khurasan. Mu'izzu'd-Din, whose capital was in Ghanzi, followed Mahmud's tradition of invading India. His army

consisted mainly of Turkic and Tajik (Persian-speaking Turks) slaves, although it included horsemen of other racial groups.

Finding the Isma'ilis a threat to his power in the east, Mu'izzu'd-Din seized Multan in 1175 and dispersed them. Then he conquered Uch. In 1178 he invaded Anhilvara or Patan, the capital of the Vaghela raja of Gujarat, Mularaja II. A battle was fought near Mount Abu, and the raja's army, which outnumbered the Turks, won the day. The invaders fled through the inhospitable

deserts in a miserable condition and endured considerable hardship. Mu'izzu'd-Din thereupon decided to give up Mahmud's plans of invasion through Sind and Multan. The Panjab offered better prospects. In 1179 he seized Peshawar. Two years later he invaded Lahore. The Ghaznavid ruler there, Khusraw Malik, made peace. In 1182 Mu'izzu'd-Din conquered Debal and made the Sumra rulers of lower Sind his vassals. After a three-year lull Mu'izzu'd-Din invaded Lahore again and, after ravaging the surrounding countryside, occupied the strategic fort of Sialkot. The deposed Khusraw Malik made an alliance with the Khokkhars, a Hindu tribe from the Salt Range,²⁶ but was unable to recapture Sialkot. Mu'izzu'd-Din invaded Lahore for the third time in 1186, captured Khusraw Malik by perfidy, and sent him to the Balarwan fort in Ghurjistan, where he was killed in 1192. With his death the Ghaznavid dynasty came to an end.

Multan, Lahore, and Sind now became part of the Ghurid empire. After consolidating his conquests, Mu'izzu'd-Din seized Tabarhinda (Bhatinda) in 1189. Prithviraja Chahamana (Chauhana), who ruled the area from Ajmir to Delhi, Sirhind (in Patiala), and Hisar, in a bid to contain Mu'izzu'd-Din, marched out at the head of a large army. Other rajas also joined him. The battle took place at Tara'in, eighty miles from Delhi, in 1190. The Rajput thrust broke both Mu'izzu'd-Din's left and right wings. The Sultan himself was about to fall when a Khalji soldier sprang upon Mu'izzu'd-Din's horse and, holding him in his arms, rushed after the fleeing Ghurid army. Prithviraja recaptured Tabarhinda but did not pursue the invaders further.

Next year, after more elaborate preparations, Mu'izzu'd-Din marched towards Bhatinda, seized the fort, and again pitched his camp at Tara'in. About 150 chieftains joined Prithviraja's army, which was several times larger than Mu'izzu'd-Din's force. The Sultan divided his troops into five divisions. Four of these consisted of mounted archers, who were ordered to attack the flanks and if possible the rear of the enemy, avoiding hand-to-hand conflict. When the enemy pressed too closely they were to feign flight. From early morning to the afternoon this force attacked continuously,

20

exhausting the cumbrous Rajput army. Then Mu'izzu'd-Din charged the enemy at the head of 12,000 fresh troopers with drawn swords and lances. The Rajputs were routed. About 100,000 Hindu soldiers died, including the brave Tomar prince of Delhi, Govindaraja. In his predicament Prithviraja alighted from his elephant, mounted a horse, and fled, but he was overtaken near the town of Sarsuti. Hasan Nizami's account states that Prithviraja was taken prisoner to Ajmir, where he ruled for some years as a Ghurid vassal;²⁷ this is corroborated by numismatic evidence. Later he was executed for treason, but his son was appointed to succeed him. Another Tomar prince, Govindaraja's son, was appointed as the Ghurid's vassal in Delhi. The conquered local chiefs, called ra'is, submitted, agreeing to pay tribute and land tax (malguzari). A military station was established at Indraprastha. The Turks captured Hansi, Kuhram, and Sarsuti and placed them too under Turkic garrisons. Ajmir was also assaulted and taken. On his return from Ajmir, the Sultan besieged Delhi again, and Govindaraja's son agreed to resume paying tribute.

The victory of Tara'in was a watershed in Indian history. It marked the beginning of Turkic rule in India proper. Previously this had been confined to the Panjab and Sind. Mu'izzu'd-Din subsequently withdrew to Ghazni, leaving his trusted general Qutbu'd-Din Aybak to consolidate

their gains and make further annexations. Aybak then seized Delhi, deposing Govindaraja's son, who had rebelled yet again. In 1193 Mu'izzu'd-Din summoned Aybak to Ghazni, possibly to draw up plans for future Indian conquests.²⁸

After his return Aybak seized Kol (Aligarh). While he was busy suppressing various Rajput uprisings, Mu'izzu'd-Din left Ghazni for Delhi, where Aybak later joined him. Although Jai Chand, the Gahadavala raja of Kanauj and Banaras, had not assisted his rival Prithviraja in attempting to overthrow the Turkic army, Mu'izzu'd-Din and Aybak marched against him. He was killed and his army was defeated in 1194 in the battle of Chandawar, between Kanauj and Etawa on the Jamuna. The victorious Ghurid army marched on to Banaras (Varanasi) and Asni. The Gahadavala's treasury was plundered. Four years later Kanauj was also captured. The Sultan then returned to Ghazni. Aybak crushed a rebellion at Kol and finally brought Ajmir under his control. Replacing Prithviraja's son with a Turkic governor, he gave him Ranthambhor instead.²⁹

In 1195-6 Mu'izzu'd-Din again marched from Ghazni and, defeating the Jadon Bhatti Rajputs, seized Bayana. The Sultan made Malik Baha'u'd-Din Tughril governor of the region.

21

Baha'u'd-Din encouraged Indian and Khurasan merchants to settle there and also to improve agriculture. He founded a new fort-town named Sultan-kot, near Bayana. Before leaving the region Mu'izzu'd-Din had made the raja of Gwalior a tributary, but Baha'u'd-Din, in obedience to the Sultan's orders, posted troops around Gwalior. Before his death around 1200, Gwalior's defences had been considerably weakened.³⁰

Ajmir rebelled again in 1195-6. Aybak, who had hastened to crush the uprising, was defeated and forced to withdraw to Ajmir fort. The timely arrival of a Ghazni contingent, however, turned the tables on the Rajputs. Aybak next marched on Anhilwara, whose Chalukya ruler had made common cause with the dissident Ajmir raja. The battle took place on the Abu mountain, where Aybak's mobility and shock tactics crowned him with success. The victory yielded considerable booty, but Anhilwara itself was not annexed until 1240.³¹

Aybak seized Bada'un from a Rastrakuta Rajput in 1197-8. He also raided Malwa. In 1202-3 Aybak besieged Kalinjar, the capital of the Chandela king, in Bundelkhand. The siege was protracted, but when the invaders cut off the water supply the garrison surrendered. Kalinjar, Mahoba, and Khajuraho were also conquered.³²

By 1200 Turkic military outposts had been set up and fort commandants appointed from Banaras to the Panjab and from Gwalior to Anhilwara. Neither Mu'izzu'd-Din nor Aybak had any plans to penetrate Bihar and Bengal. These areas were conquered by Ikhtiyaru'd-Din Muhammad bin Bakhtiyar, who belonged to the Khalji Turkic tribe of Ghur. Finding little encouragement from the master at Ghazni and later at Delhi because of his humble origins, Bakhtiyar proceeded to Bada'un. He showed promise there and at Avadh, and was awarded an iqta' near Chunar.³³ His successful incursions into Bihar, east of the river Karmanasa, encouraged other Turkic soldiers to join him. He conquered regions as far as the Buddhist university of

Odantapuri, Bihar, where he slaughtered the Buddhist monks and seized the town. He then visited Aybak in March 1203 at Bada'un and obtained permission to attempt further conquests.

Passing through the Jharkhand jungles in the south of Bihar in 1204—5, Bakhtiyar rushed to Nadia or Navadvip, one of the two capitals of Lakshmana Sena, the King of Bengal. His army was unable to keep up with him, and, according to the *Tabaqat-i Nasiri*, only eighteen horsemen were with him when he forcibly entered the palace. Lakshmana Sena, who is reported to have just sat down to his midday meal, fled through a postern door to the eastern region

22

of his kingdom, where he ruled for some years. The story of the eighteen horseman conquering Bengal is hotly disputed by Bengali authors, but it is not unlikely that Bakhtiyar's lightning raid with a small force under him struck such a terror in the king's heart as to make him fly without resistance. Bakhtiyar plundered Nadia and acquired immense booty.

Retreating northwards, Bakhtiyar took up his quarters in the Sena's western capital, Lakhnauti or Lakshmanavati, near the present site of Gaur. He established another outpost at Lakhanor or Nagar in the Birbhum district, thereby connecting Bihar with Orissa. To the north-east an outpost was established at Devakot near Dinajapur. His spectacular conquests prompted him to seize Karmapattan (possibly Kumrikotah in Bhutan) and Tibet. The enterprise was designed to ensure the supply of horses from that region. At the head of 10,000 horsemen, Bakhtiyar followed the Brahmaputra and, ignoring the advice of the Raja of Kamrup not to proceed beyond his territory, reached Karmapattan. The subsequent news of the arrival of an army of 50,000 men from the mountains of Tibet disheartened Bakhtiyar's troops. He retreated to Kamrup, where the local forces made short work of his soldiers. He himself with great difficulty reached Devakot. Bedridden as a result of his hardships, Bakhtiyar was assassinated by one of his own commanders.³⁴

Meanwhile, Ghiyasu'd-Din had died at Hirat in 1202-3. In 1204 Mu'izzu'd-Din was defeated at Andhui on the Oxus by the allies of the Khwarazm rulers and, except for Hirat, lost the whole of Khurasan. The news of the disaster encouraged the Gakkhar tribes of the Panjab to regain control over the Lahore—Ghazni route. Mu'izzu'd-Din, joined by Aybak, crushed their uprising and then marched to Lahore. After a short stay there, he sent Aybak to Delhi and himself returned to Ghazni. On 15 March 1206 he was assassinated by a Gakkhar at Damyak on the bank of the Jhelam (near modern Sohawa).³⁵

The motives for Mu'izzu'd-Din's conquests were no different from those of Mahmud of Ghazni. Both were in need of plunder from India to maintain their slave armies and to attract the wandering bands of Islamicized mercenaries known as ghazis to their forces. The Islamicization of India was not their main objective, although some tribal leaders, such as the Gakkhars, were encouraged to embrace Islam. The exaggerated accounts of Muslim historians and poets of the slaughter of infidels in the spreading of Islam are designed to give a religious colour to wars which were basically waged for political domination and plunder. Mu'izzu'd-Din's achievements were more permanent than those of Mahmud.

Before his death, the strategic centres of India from Ghazni to the borders of Assam had been conquered and the forts efficiently garrisoned.

The factors surrounding the Turkic victory are highly controversial. Hindu historians such as A. L. Srivastava divide 'causes of our defeat' under two headings. Under general causes, Srivastava says: 'lack of political unity and proper organisation and capable leadership must, therefore, remain the most important general cause of our helplessness and defeat'. As regards the particular causes, he says: 'Our rulers did not care to find loop-holes in the organisation of their common enemy.'³⁶ Srivastava's comments seek to impose modern nationalist sentiments on twelfth- and thirteenth-century India; but such sentiments did not exist in India until the nineteenth century. On the other hand, according to modern Muslim scholars, such as Muhammad Habib and K. A. Nizami:

The real cause of the defeat of the Indians lay in their social system and the invidious caste distinctions, which rendered the whole military organization rickety and weak. Caste taboos and discriminations killed all sense of unity - social or political. Even religion was the monopoly of a particular section, and the majority of the Indian people were never allowed a glimpse of the inside of a high caste Indian temple. Thus for the bulk of the Indian people there was hardly anything which could evoke patriotic responses in them when face to face with the Ghurid invader.³⁷

This theory also presupposes the existence of modern patriotic feelings or religious solidarity in other parts of the world, when even in Muslim-dominated regions they did not exist. Nizami has himself quoted the great poet Sa'di, who wrote: 'the lashkari [professional soldier] fought for the wages he got; he did not fight for king, country or religion'.³⁸ The same was true of India, and Indian caste taboos cannot be blamed for the Rajput defeat. India was then ruled by Rajput rulers who were proud of their ancient Kshatriya blood, reckless swordsmanship, and chivalric sense of honour. Their political and social systems were feudal. They fought for the safety of their own boundaries and constantly feuded with their neighbours. The Panjab, Multan, and Sind, ruled by the Muslims from the eighth century onwards, did not concern them. It was not until 1150 that Vasala Deva (Vigraharaja III) of Ajmir, who had seized Delhi from the Tomars, was prompted also to take Hansi from the Ghaznavids. The time was then ripe to wipe out the tottering Ghaznavid kingdom of the Panjab. Neither Mularaja of Anhilwara, who defeated Mu'izzu'd-Din in 1178, nor Prithviraja had the good sense to pursue and attempt to annihilate the Ghurid

invaders after delivering a crushing defeat on them. The two major defeats of Mu'izzu'd-Din show that Rajput military strength was quite formidable; their fault lay in their adherence to fighting a defensive war and their inability to take full advantage of a victory. The ponderous war machinery of the Rajputs with their slow-moving elephants was no match for the mobility and lightning attacks of the Central Asian Turkic guerrilla warriors. Separated from their homes by long distances and committed to obtaining victory for their own enrichment, the Turkic troopers fought with vigour and desperation. No such personal stake was involved for the

Rajputs. Political independence and nationalism in the twentieth-century sense meant nothing to the twelfth-century Hindus and Muslims. Nevertheless, as we shall see, the resistance of the Hindu, in order to save his hearth and home, was unending.

THE ILBARI TURKS

Mu'izzu'd-Din had no sons. According to the *Tabaqat-i Nasiri*, he had bought a large number of slaves but he did not nominate any particular one as his successor.³⁹ The most prominent slave was Taju'd-Din Yilduz, whose daughters were married to Aybak and Qabacha. Yilduz was therefore recognised as the ruler of Ghazni and, although the Indian territories had been conquered and consolidated by Aybak, Yilduz considered them his dependencies. Aybak consequently moved from Delhi to Lahore and proclaimed himself the independent ruler of the Indian territories. Yilduz thereupon invaded the Panjab but was defeated, and Aybak seized Ghazni. When Yilduz reappeared before Ghazni, however, Aybak fled to Lahore. There he remained, busily consolidating his administration, until his death in 1210 following a fall from a horse during a polo game. Aybak was a far-sighted military commander and had tactfully controlled the heterogeneous racial groups of soldiers who hailed from Khurasan, Ghur, Khalj, and India. He is also remembered for his munificence.⁴⁰

Aram Shah, who succeeded his father Aybak, was a weakling. Meanwhile, Qabacha had consolidated his rule in Multan, Uch, Bhakkar, and Sehwan and had extended his kingdom as far as Lahore. Another contestant in the struggle for power was Iltut-mish, who had been bought as a slave by Aybak in Delhi and had become his son-in-law. He commenced his career as a sar-jandar (head of the royal bodyguard) and controlled the prized *iqla'* of Bada'un. Iltutmish seized Delhi without much difficulty, defeating

25

Aram Shah, whose supporters quickly surrendered. Since he belonged to the Ilbari tribe, his successors up to 1290 are known as the Ilbari Turks. They are also called *ghulam* or *mamluk* rulers, both of which terms mean 'slaves'.

Iltutmish devoted the first ten years of his reign to securing his throne from rivals. He acted with considerable caution and patience. When Yilduz marched on Lahore and occupied the greater part of the Panjab, Iltutmish turned the ensuing war between Qabacha and Yilduz to his advantage. In 1215 Yilduz was driven out of Ghazni by Khwarazm Shah and took refuge in Lahore. His claim to overlordship there precipitated a war against Iltutmish, who was well prepared. On the battlefield of Tara'in, Iltutmish defeated Yilduz and sent him captive to Bada'un, where he was beheaded. Iltutmish then restored Lahore to Qabacha, but two years later marched against him. Qabacha fled to Mansura, and Iltutmish followed and defeated him.⁴¹

Chingiz Khan (b. 1167), the founder of the Mongol world empire, had meanwhile become supremely powerful. In the summer of 1215 the Mongols captured Peking and five years later conquered Transoxiana. In 1221 the last Khwarazm ruler, Jalalu'd-Din Mingburnu (1220-31), defeated a Mongol force in the Ghazni region. Chingiz rushed with lightning speed to avenge the defeat and chased Jalalu'd-Din as far as the Indus. Jalalu'd-Din retreated to the upper Sind Sagar

doab in the western Panjab and there married the daughter of a local Khokkhar chief. Qabacha's "rule over Sind Sagar doab ended. Jalalu'd-Din reached Lahore but could not persuade Iltutmish to send reinforcements. Fortunately for Iltutmish and Jalalu'd-Din, Chingiz turned back at the Indus and resumed the route he had been following. Jalalu'd-Din also left India in 1224, but, until Chingiz's death in August 1227,⁴² Iltutmish did not interfere with Qabacha, who remained a buffer between the Mongols and his own kingdom.

In 1228 Iltutmish ordered his governor in Lahore to invade Multan while he himself marched on Uch. Qabacha fled to the inland fortress of Bhakkar on the lower Indus. Uch was taken after a three-month siege. The vigorous assault on Bhakkar frightened Qabacha, and he was drowned crossing the Indus while fleeing for safety. Multan and Sind were thus annexed to the Delhi sultanate.

After Chingiz's departure from the Indus, Iltutmish reasserted his control over the district of Bihar south of the Ganges. In 1225 Husamu'd-Din 'Iwaz Khaljl, who had established an independent Bengal sultanate, submitted to him. As soon as Iltutmish's back was turned however, 'Iwaz again rebelled. The Sultan's son, Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud, thereupon swooped down from his base in

26

India in 1236

27

Avadh on Lakhnauti and defeated and killed 'Iwaz. Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud died in Lakhnauti in March or April 1229, and Bengal again rose in rebellion. This time Iltutmish suppressed it personally in 1229.⁴³

The Sultan also effectively quashed the uprisings by the Rajas-than chiefs. In 1226 he recovered Ranthambhor; two years later the Chauhan chief of Jalor also agreed to pay tribute. Ajmir and Sambhar were subsequently reoccupied, and Nagaur reconquered. In 1231 Gwalior surrendered again; Malik Ta'isl, a slave of Mu'izzu'd-Din, was made its commander. Contingents from Kanauj and Mahaban were also placed at his disposal, and he seized areas from Kalinjar to Chanderi. In 1234—5 Iltutmish led an expedition against Malwa and captured Bhilsa. The conquest of Ujjain was followed by the demolition of the ancient Maha-kal temple.⁴⁴

Iltutmish's military expeditions in Bada'un, Kanauj, and Banaras completely undermined the local rajas' independence. Kati-har (modern Rohekhand) was one of the few areas to offer stiff resistance before submitting. Iltutmish's son, Mahmud, whom he had appointed governor of Avadh in 1226, however, met strong opposition from the local chief Britu or Prithu. According to Minhaj Siraj, 120,000 Muslims were killed fighting Britu. This number is exaggerated, but Hindu strength in the region remained undisputed.⁴⁵

Sultan Iltutmish died on 30 April 1236. He was the greatest ruler of thirteenth-century India and a wise statesman. He transformed Mu'izzu'd-Din's Indian conquests into a cohesive hereditary

monarchy. The receipt of the deed of investiture from the 'Abbasid caliph in February 1229 gave legal status to Iltutmish's kingship. Iltutmish was welcoming and generous to the talented people, both Turkic and non-Turkic, driven from their homelands in Iran and Central Asia by Chingiz Khan's invasions. They quickly became pillars of the central administration and many settled in the areas between Lahore and Avadh. The Turkic military commanders also supported the Delhi sultanate, as well as extending its boundaries. The land tax from the territorial units known as iqta's was usually assigned to them. He appointed his own officials ('amils) to collect revenue from the areas which had not been assigned as iqta's. These were known as khalisas. He also assigned villages to troopers of his own central army. These too were known as iqta's.

Iltutmish organized court etiquette on the Samanid and Ghaznavid patterns, which made special provision for the 'ulama' (scholars of Islamic theology) and sufis. According to sufi anecdotes, Iltutmish's services to them in his youth were responsible for his

28

subsequent rise to the throne.⁴⁶ Historically the stories are untenable; nevertheless the Sultan's relations with the contemporary sufis were based on respect, and they, in their turn, supported him, counterbalancing the 'ulama' pressure groups in the bureaucracy. Iltutmish had promoted his intelligent daughter Raziyya over his incompetent sons. In 1231 he appointed her his deputy in Delhi while he was away on his Gwalior expedition. His decision was not welcomed, and perhaps he himself finally doubted its wisdom.⁴⁷

After Iltutmish's death, Shah Turkan, the mother of Iltutmish's eldest surviving son, with the help of a section of the 'ulama' and the Turkic commanders, had her son crowned as Ruknu'd-Din Firuz. Turkan was an arch-intriguer but not an administrator. She unleashed a reign of terror and vengeance on her rival queens and their supporters, while Firuz sank into a life of licentiousness. Consequently the ruler of Ghazni mounted an invasion of Sind.⁴⁸ Another son of Iltutmish rebelled in Avadh, and other iqta' holders united to overthrow the new Sultan. Ruknu'd-Din Firuz marched out of the capital to suppress the rebellion. This gave Raziyya the opportunity to seize the throne. Firuz was imprisoned and put to death in November 1236. He had ruled for only some seven months.⁴⁹

Minhaj Siraj, who was a distinguished 'alim (singular of 'ulama), comments: 'Raziyya was endowed with all the admirable attributes and qualifications necessary for kings; but, as she did not attain the destiny, in her creation, of being computed among men, of what advantage were all these excellent qualifications to her?'⁵⁰ Minhaj, however, was not hostile to her, and the other 'ulama' did not oppose her; but Nizamu'l-Mulk Junaydi, Iltutmish's vizier, rebelled, winning many important Turkic noblemen to his side. Raziyya marched out of Delhi against the rebel group and succeeded, by negotiations, in breaking the coalition. Nizamu'l-Mulk fled and died. Some important rebel leaders were killed. Raziyya then appointed Muhazzabu'd-Din, a Tajik, as deputy vizier and elevated many other Tajiks to high positions. Her subsequent appointment of Malik Jamalu'd-Din Yaqut, an Ethiopian, as superintendent of the royal horses, aroused resentment in a majority of the already disgruntled Turkic commanders. Raziyya ignored their opposition and began to appear unveiled in public, wearing a short tunic and conical hat. The people of Delhi supported her, but hostility mounted among the iqta' holders. In 1239-40 she

crushed some of the rebellious iqta.' holders, but one of them, Altunia, who held Bhatinda, killed Yaqut, took Raziyya prisoner, and had her incarcerated. The ruling party in Delhi ignored Altunia and placed Iltutmish's third son, Bahram, on the throne. Raziyya, exploiting

29

the situation to her own advantage, married Altunia. They marched against Delhi together, but their principal supporters now deserted them. They were both killed on 14 October 1240 by Hindu robbers.⁵¹

Raziyya ruled successfully for three and a half- years. She combated intrigues competently, displayed a remarkable insight into military tactics, resourcefully implemented her independent decisions, and diplomatically reconciled the recalcitrant iqta' holders. Her chief merit was her ability to rise above the prejudices of her age. The romantic tragedy of this remarkable woman is something unique in the history of India.

Raziyya's fall made the clique of Turkic maliks (military commanders), and amirs dominant in the government. Baram calls them chihalgani, or the 'family of forty', and they embarked on a scramble for supremacy.⁵² They did not form any organized groups, however, and did not even number forty. Minhaj Siraj gives the biographies of merely twenty-five of Iltutmish's leading maliks, who each struggled to dominate the government. They controlled various strategic forts, and their personal jealousies and rivalries destroyed them. They were able neither to raise one of their members to the throne nor to strengthen the royal power. The leading nobles who had placed Iltutmish's third son, Mu'izzu'd-Din Bahrain Shah (1240-2) on the throne made him create the position of regent (malik na'ib or nd'ib-i mamlakat).⁵³ The regent was intended to be the de facto ruler, the sultan merely a figurehead. Intrigue and chaos ran riot during the reigns of Bahrain Shah and his successors. The palace ladies also formed factions, and the 'ulama' too took the opportunity to fish in troubled waters.

In 1241 the Mongols crossed the Indus and reached the gates of Lahore. No help arrived from Delhi. The Mongols smashed the fort ramparts, and the governor fled. Although the citizens fought valiantly, and the Mongols suffered heavy losses, they eventually sacked the city and laid it waste. When they left, the Khokkhar tribesmen entered and plundered it mercilessly. Bahrain Shah now attempted to assert his authority over the dominant Turkic chiefs but failed.⁵⁴ He was taken captive and in May 1242 put to death. Malik 'Izzu'd-Din Balban Kishlu Khan, a leading Turkic slave commander, tried to make himself sultan, but he lacked support, and was forced to accept the governorship of Nagaur. 'Ala'u'd-Din Mas'ud, son of Ruknu'd-Din Firuz, was eventually made king. Mas'ud ruled from 1242 to 1246. Tughan Khan, who had been acknowledged as the governor of Lakhnauti by Raziyya, now proclaimed his independence and annexed Bihar and Avadh to his Bengal kingdom. The King of Jaj Nagar (Orissa) then invaded

30

Bengal.⁵⁵ Meanwhile the Mongols had crossed the Indus and besieged Uch. An army under Balban, now governor of Nagaur, was sent to Lahore, and the Mongols retreated to their own territory. After his return Balban and his supporters conspired with Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud's

mother, Malika-i Jahan, to overthrow Mas'ud. Nasiru'd-Din was the eldest son of Iltutmish's son, Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud, who had died in Lakhnauti. Mas'ud was deposed and thrown into prison, where he died.⁵⁶

Sultan Nasiru'd-Din is wrongly described as a very God-fearing, pious, and amicable person. Born in 1229, he was not more than seventeen years old when he ascended the throne. He knew the fate of his predecessors and had no alternative but to leave the administration in Balban's hands. The sultanate was in a critical condition. The Mongols had devastated the country west of the river Jhelam, and no food was available in the Panjab. In 1246-7 Balban mounted an expedition as far as the Salt Range to chastise the Khokkhars, who acted as guides to the Mongols. During the following two years he overran Kalinjar, Ranthambhor, and Mewat. In August 1249 the Sultan married Balban's daughter and made him the *nd'ib-i mamlakat* (regent of the kingdom). He was also awarded the title Great Khan (Ulugh Khan), and all the important positions were given to his relations. Balban was now ruler in all but name.⁵⁸

Before long, however, the Sultan grew resentful of Balban's power. In 1253 'Imadu'd-Din Rayhan, a Hindu convert, who was supported by both Indian Muslims and a section of Turks, managed to have Balban transferred to his *iqta'* of Nagaur. Balban's principal supporters were also dispersed and sent to distant *iqta'*s. They were appalled at the rise of an Indian Muslim to power and assembled with their forces near Hansi for a trial of strength. The Sultan, accompanied by Rayhan, arrived with his army, but the Turk and Tajik leaders succeeded in persuading him to transfer Rayhan to Bada'un. In December 1254 Balban was reconciled to his son-in-law and returned to Delhi with the Sultan.⁵⁹

Balban's efforts to assert the authority of the centre and to suppress rebellion were not successful. His repeated expeditions to Bengal failed to maintain Delhi's control over the region. Even Avadh did not remain loyal, and Bahraich followed Avadh's example. Hasan Qarlugh, the Khwarazmi prince who had ruled Multan and Uch for some years, had been expelled earlier by Balban. Kishlu Khan, who had been made governor there, was forced to surrender Sind to Hulagu Khan (1256-65), the founder of the Il-Khanid Mongol dynasty of Iran. Jalalu'd-Din Mas'ud, the

31

Sultan's brother, fled from Hulagu to the court of Mengu Khan of Qaraqorum, who ruled Mongolia and China. A strong Mongol contingent helped him to seize areas extending from the Salt Range to Lahore.⁶⁰ Mas'ud, however, was not a competent ruler, and even Mongol help could not keep him on the throne. Sher Khan, the ambitious governor of Bhatinda, who was the Sultan's cousin, was ambivalent and alternately attended the courts of Hulagu and Mongke, the ruler of south Russia and Qipchaq. Balban, however, came to an understanding with Hulagu, and the Mongol invasions were confined to the region beyond the Beas. In 1260 Hulagu's emissary was received in Delhi with a flamboyant demonstration of the sultanate's military strength.⁶¹ The *Tabaqat-i Nasiri* abruptly ends with the events of early 1260. Only 'Isami, who completed his *Futuhu's-Salatin* in 1350-1, tells us that Balban poisoned Sultan Nasiru'd-Din's drink. Some modern historians disbelieve 'Isami because of Balban's close family connections with the

Sultan.⁶² This is hardly a valid argument, for the murder of relations to gain throne and position was then the order of the day.

Balban was now proclaimed Sultan. His perception of the Delhi sultanate's problems was very realistic, and he solved them successfully. He knew that the real threat to the monarchy came from the Turkic nobles' intrigues and their scramble for power. He introduced rigorous court discipline, such as prostration before the king and kissing his feet, in order to reduce the nobles to abject servility. A picked body of fearsome soldiers with drawn swords protected the throne. The court was an austere assembly where jest and laughter were seldom heard. The Sultan was himself a paragon of severity and harshness. He persistently brought home to his sons and noblemen that the monarch was the vicegerent of God and next in sanctity only to the prophets. The Sultan was God's shadow on earth and the recipient of direct divine guidance. Only the most servile of noblemen and commanders survived; the rest were eliminated on flimsy pretexts. Malik Baqbaq, the governor of Bada'un, who had had one of his servants beaten to death, was publicly flogged. Haybat Khan, governor of Avadh, who had killed a man while drunk, was flogged and handed over to the victim's widow to dispose of as she wished. Malik Itigin Mu'i Daraz (Amin Khan), the governor of Avadh, when defeated by Tughril, the rebel governor of Bengal, was hanged at the gate of Avadh. Sher Khan, the ambitious governor of Bhatinda, was poisoned and died.⁶³ Only those junior Turkic officers who were servile to the Sultan were promoted to high positions.

Balban abandoned his earlier scheme of conquests. His military expeditions as a *nd'ib-i mamlakat* had convinced him that it was

32

impossible to retain distant territories such as Gwalior, Malwa, and Rajasthan, which had several times been conquered and lost. He instead gave top priority to restoring peace in the region surrounding Delhi.⁶⁴ In Nasiru'd-Din's reign the constant Mewati raids from the northern Alwar region into Delhi had made the people's lives miserable. Balban's repeated attacks on the Mewati strongholds and villages stopped these incursions. Military posts, manned by Afghans, were established in these regions, and the soldiers were given tax-free land.⁶⁵ The villages belonging to the rebels of the doab were also destroyed, and the peasants were encouraged to settle down to a peaceful life. The Sultan twice marched on Avadh, killing the rebel leaders and devastating the villages. Strong forts were built at Kampil, Patiali, and Bhojpur, the principal rendezvous for robbers and strongholds of rebels. These forts were also garrisoned by Afghans, who were given tax-free land in the neighbourhood to maintain themselves.⁶⁶ Muslim families were encouraged to settle there. The rebels in Bada'un, Amroha (western Uttar Pradesh), and Katihar (modern Rohilkhand) were also killed. Dense forests were cut down and burnt; the roads too were cleared. Balban's regular hunting trips, in conjunction with the newly established military posts, kept the area from Delhi to Avadh reasonably peaceful. The roads became safe for travel, and trade and agriculture improved, leading to further urbanization.⁶⁷

The Sultan reorganized the army. The loyal troops were sent to the central contingents. Expense was no consideration. A body of one thousand reckless soldiers, the counterpart of modern

commandos, who had been recruited before Balban assumed royal power, always accompanied him.

The Sultan had every reason to be pleased with his success, but his own slave, Tughril, whom he had made governor of Bengal, gave him a rude shock by rebelling in about 1275. The Sultan sent Amin Khan, governor of Avadh, to crush the rebellion, but he was defeated. Another army left Delhi but was also driven away by Tughril. In 1280-1 the Sultan went to Sunam and Samana, which were ruled by his younger son, Bughra Khan, and divided the territories into smaller iqta's to prevent the rebellion of any more powerful governors. Taking Bughra Khan with him, he proceeded to the doab. There he made Fakhru'd-Din Kotwal his regent (na'ib-ghaybat). At Avadh some 200,000 infantry, archers, and local horsemen were added to the Delhi army. Before Balban reached Lakhnauti, Tughril had fled to the east, hoping that the Sultan would return to Delhi.⁶⁸ The octogenarian Sultan was, however, determined not to leave until he had destroyed Tughril. From

33

Lakhnauti the Sultan hurried to Sunargaon. The local ruler, Danujamadhava of the Deva dynasty, refused to help unless the Sultan showed his respect when he was introduced to the court. The Sultan sat down on his throne with a falcon on his hand. When the Raja appeared he stood up. The courtiers thought the Sultan was flying the falcon; the Raja believed that Balban was demonstrating his respect.⁶⁹ Tughril was ultimately captured by Balban's army and his severed head sent to the Sultan. The army's morale quickly rose. At Lakhnauti, Tughril's followers were impaled on a row of gibbets running for about two miles beside the road. Then, appointing Bughra Khan governor of Bengal and urging him to take a lesson from the evil consequences of rebellion, the Sultan returned to Delhi after three years' absence.⁷⁰ The capital was safe in Fakhru'd-Din's hands and the frontier strongholds in the west were defended by the Sultan's brave elder son, Sultan Muhammad. The Chaghatay branch of the Mongols, ruling Transoxiana and eastern Turkistan, was locked in battle with the Il-Khanid branch which ruled Iran. Unfortunately for the Sultan, however, a Mongol army suddenly appeared in 1285, while Sultan Muhammad was busy fighting the local Sumra rebels in Sind. Muhammad returned quickly and attacked the Mongols, but was killed in battle. It was a mortal blow to his father, Sultan Balban.

Not only had Muhammad been an excellent fighter but he was a great patron of poets and scholars. Famous poets like Amir Khusraw and Amir Hasan had in their early career been employed by him. Amir Khusraw was also taken captive by the Mongols and suffered considerable hardship at their hands.⁷¹

Balban summoned his younger son, Bughra Khan, to Delhi, but after two or three months he left for Lakhnauti. The Sultan hid his misery and unremittingly discharged his duties, although it is said that he wept throughout the night for his dead elder son. On his deathbed in 1287 Balban made Kaykhusraw, Sultan Muhammad's son, his successor; but when Balban was dead the powerful kotwai of Delhi sent him to Multan and raised Kayqubad, Bughra Khan's son, to the throne.⁷²

Kayqubad was about eighteen years old and had been brought up under strict discipline by his austere grandfather. Once upon the throne, which he had never dreamt of attaining, Kayqubad sank into an orgy of profligacy and debauchery. The Sultan's favourite, Malik Nizamu'd-Din, nephew and son-in-law of Fakhru'd-Din kotwal, became virtual ruler. He beheaded all the leading noblemen of Balban's reign who posed a threat to his dominance. Muhammad's son, Kaykhusraw, was also killed. Meanwhile in Lahore a Mongol army which had arrived in the

34

vicinity was repulsed by the local commanders. Bughra Khan subsequently proclaimed himself king in Bengal and wrote to his son Kayqubad advising him to pay more serious attention to his duties. Finding no change in his son's behaviour, he marched towards Delhi. The two armies met at Avadh (Ayodhya) in 1289. War between father and son was, however, averted by Bughra Khan's fatherly kindness. Kayqubad listened respectfully to his father's wise counsel and, following his advice, transferred his favourite Nizamu'd-Din to Multan.⁷³ But he was unable to give up his dissipated life-style, and the administration broke down. Before long he was struck with paralysis. A party of Turkic noblemen thereupon elevated Kayqubad's three-year-old son, Kayumars, to the throne, but their rivals, the Khalji maliks, who were more united, proved too powerful for them. They killed the Turkic commanders but kept Kayumars on the throne for a further three months. Kayqubad was killed in pitiable circumstances, his body thrown in the Jamuna.⁷⁴ The Ilbari rule came to an end. In June 1290 Jalalu'd-Din Firuz became the first Khalji sultan of Delhi.

THE KHALJIS

Before the rise of the Mongols, the Khalj people had lived in western Turkistan and later in close proximity to the Afghan tribal lands of modern eastern Afghanistan. Their pure Turkic origin is disputed, because in the eleventh century they intermarried with the Pashto-speaking Ghalzay tribe of Afghans and became predominantly Afghan. Mahmud of Ghazni had recruited them for his army, but Mas'ud of Ghazni sent a punitive expedition against them. The Khalj tribe also fought in the Ghurid army. In the early thirteenth century they conquered Bengal.

At first the new Sultan, Jalalu'd-Din Khalji, feared the formidable Ilbari opposition, even though the principal Khalji claimants to the throne had been killed. It took him some months to conciliate the Ilbari supporters, to whom he showed a paternal and kindly attitude.⁷⁵ He gave all the high positions to his own sons, nephews, and brothers, but he did not ignore the Ilbaris altogether, and Balban's nephew, Malik Chajju, was made governor of Kara, where he soon rebelled. The Hindu chiefs with their infantry and archers joined Chajju. The disbanded army recruited by Balban for his Bengal expeditions also swelled Chajju's ranks, and they marched on Delhi to seize the throne. The Sultan sent an advance division, which defeated Chajju at Ramganga. The rebel leaders

35

were taken captive, but the Sultan, to his relations' annoyance, acted magnanimously. Chajju was simply deprived of his governorship, which the Sultan bestowed upon his nephew and son-in-law, 'Ala'u'd-Din).⁷⁶

The Sultan's magnanimity went so far that he was even merciful to a gang of thugs who were taken captive and brought to Delhi. They were merely banished to Bengal. His leniency was taken for weakness, and the disgruntled nobles began to hatch plots at their drinking parties to overthrow the old Sultan. Though news of these plots reached the Sultan, no action was taken against them either. The Sultan's near relations were shocked at his leniency, but he explained to their spokesman, Malik Ahmad Chap, that the sultanate was too weak to assert itself effectively. The best way out of the impasse was to govern the country with tolerance and mildness.⁷⁷

In 1291-2 a Mongol invasion of the Dipalpur-Multan region saw the Sultan leading his army against the invader. There his liberality so impressed a group of Mongols that they decided to embrace Islam and settle in Delhi.⁷⁸

In 1292 the Sultan mounted an expedition against Ranthambhor, where the Chauhan rulers had already greatly expanded their domain. He conquered Jha'in and destroyed the beautifully carved idol in its main temple. Ranthambhor was besieged, but, finding the siege was protracted, the Sultan abandoned it, comforting himself with the thought that the fort was not worth a single hair of a Muslim head.⁷⁹ It would seem also that the Sultan was informed of the conspiracies to kill him which were rampant in Delhi. He returned to the capital. Inquiries revealed that the arch-conspirator was the famous dervish Sidi Mawla, who enjoyed a large following of both Khalji nobles and Sultan Balban's friends. The evidence warranting his execution, however, was not conclusive. An ordeal by fire was rejected as un-Islamic by the 'ulama'. So, as the Sultan's instigation, a group of wandering dervishes called Haydari Qalandars attacked Sidi with razors, and one of the royal princes arranged for him to be trampled to death. The severe dust-storm and famine which followed were attributed by the gullible Delhi populace to divine retribution.⁸⁰

The most remarkable achievement of Jalalu'd-Din's reign was the invasion of the Yadava capital Devagiri by his nephew, 'Ala'u'd-Din, governor of Kara. Although 'Ala'u'd-Din's personal life was made miserable by the intrigues of his wife and mother-in-law against him, he was very ambitious. He recruited a large army at Kara and, towards the end of 1293, mounted an expedition against the region around Bhilsa. He collected an enormous

36

amount of booty and sent some to the Sultan to win his favour. For the next two years 'Ala'u'd-Din made preparations for another expedition and withheld the revenue due to the capital. Then he assigned the administration of Kara to 'Ala'u'l-Mulk, uncle of the historian Barani, and marched off through the comparatively unknown Elichpur route. Near Devagiri some Yadavas, including two women leaders, fought gallantly against 'Ala'u'd-Din. The Raja's main army had left to fight under his son, Sinhana, against the Raja of Warangal. Ramadeva, although a seasoned warrior, was forced in their absence to sue for peace. Sinhana, the Raja's son, subsequently returned with the main army and, contrary to his father's advice, attacked 'Ala'u'd-Din. The Sultan divided his army into two and confronted Sinhana himself at the head of one

column. The invaders were on the verge of defeat when their reserve column fell upon the Yadavas. Sinhana mistakenly took this for the arrival of the Sultan's main army. He panicked and fled. Enormous booty fell into 'Ala'u'd-Din's hands. The Raja agreed to pay a heavy tribute. When the news of Ala'u'd-Din's victory reached Delhi, the Sultan was advised to move to Chanderi, intercept 'Ala'u'd-Din's return journey, and seize the booty himself. The Sultan stopped at Gwalior, however, thereby enabling 'Ala'u'd-Din to reach Kara safely. Pretending to be sorry that he had invaded Devagiri without obtaining prior approval, 'Ala'u'd-Din succeeded in persuading his dotting uncle to visit him at Kara by boat. When Jalalu'd-Din landed, 'Ala'u'd-Din prostrated himself at his uncle's feet. Then 'Ala'u'd-Din signalled the assassins who were awaiting his orders. They immediately killed the Sultan, on the seventeenth day of the fasting month of Ramazan 695 (21 July 1296). 'Ala'u'd-Din was proclaimed king.⁸¹

In Delhi the Sultan's widow, Malika-i Jahan, proclaimed her youngest son king with the title of Ruknu'd-Din Ibrahim, passing over Arkali Khan, the rightful heir, who was at Multan. Arkali Khan and his supporters in Delhi waited passively. 'Ala'u'd-Din, who had left Kara, was emboldened to act and rushed to Delhi, scattering gold and silver coins among the people.

Ruknu'd-Din fled to Multan. 'Ala'u'd-Din thereupon ascended the throne and promoted his supporters to high positions. An army sent to Multan took Arkali Khan, Ruknu'd-Din, and their mother captive. The princes were beheaded in Delhi and their mother imprisoned. Jalalu'd-Din's other relations and adherents were also killed barbarously. In the second year of his reign 'Ala'u'd-Din wiped out those noblemen of the old regime who were still loyal to Jalalu'd-Din.⁸²

The early years of the Sultan's reign were torn by successive

37

Mongol invasions. Duwa (1291-1306), the ruler of the Chaghatay Mongols of Transoxiana, was determined to acquire as much booty as possible to finance his fight against his Il-Khanid rivals of Iran. The first two invasions by the Mongol army were beaten back, but in 1297 the third invader, Qutlugh Khwaja, son of Duwa, reached KIG near Delhi. The Sultan's army was composed mainly of cavalry trained in repulsing Hindu troops, but the Sultan, throwing prudence overboard, recklessly tackled the invaders himself. Zafar Khan, the Sultan's indefatigable commander, fell fighting the enemy, but the Sultan won the day. The commander's death was a welcome relief to the Sultan and his brother, Ulugh Khan, who were jealous of his outstanding military reputation.⁸³ The Sultan reorganized the defence of his frontier strongholds and appointed Ghazi Malik governor of Dipalpur. In 1303 the Mongol leader Targhi reached Siri but was then defeated. Two years later the Mongols marched as far as Amroha but were again beaten back. Their invasion in 1306 was stopped at the bank of the river Ravi, when Ghazi Malik, the warden of the marches, defended the frontiers stoutly.⁸⁴ On the other hand, no major invasions were launched by Duwa's successors.

'Ala'u'd-Din's success in Devagiri had convinced him of the inability of the distant Hindu kingdoms to defend themselves. Ignoring the conquest of Malwa and Rajasthan, therefore, the Sultan sent an army in February 1299 under the command of his brothers Nusrat Khan and Ulugh Khan to conquer Gujarat. Although it had been raided previously, it was never subdued.

'Ala'u'd-Din's army besieged Anhilwara, the capital of Raja Karan Vaghela of Gujarat. The Raja, who was taken by surprise, fled with his daughter to Devagiri. Kamla Devi, the Raja's wife, was taken captive and sent to Delhi, where the Sultan married her. The temple of Somnath, which had been rebuilt, was again sacked. The victorious army plundered both the Hindu and Muslim merchants in Cambay. The Hindu eunuch Kafur Hazardinari, whom the Sultan later made malik na'ib (regent), was also taken from his master. The Sultan appointed his brother-in-law Alp Khan governor of Gujarat. At Jalor the army returning from Gujarat mutinied. The rising was crushed, and the mutineers' families in Delhi were brutally slaughtered.⁸⁵

In 1299 Nusrat Khan and Ulugh Khan attacked Hamir Deva of Ranthambhor, ostensibly for refusing to surrender a couple of converted Mongols who had taken shelter there. Nusrat Khan was killed directing the siege, and Hamir Deva's sorties drove Ulugh Khan back to Jha'in. It was only after the Sultan's arrival that the siege was brought to a successful conclusion.⁸⁶

38

Barani invites us to believe that 'Ala'u'd-Din's victories undermined his mental balance. He decided to found a new religion and surpass the Prophet Muhammad, but Baram's uncle, 'Ala'u'l-Mulk, persuaded him to abandon this mad scheme. The anecdote hardly seems correct, but the Sultan was inordinately ambitious.⁸⁷ The number of rebellions by his nephews and trusted officers prompted the Sultan to take immediate steps to root out the traitors. An analysis by his trusted advisers of the causes of these rebellions convinced him that the general prosperity of his officials, intermarriages between the families of the grandees, inefficiency in the espionage system, and drinking liquor were the root causes of rebellion. 'Ala'u'd-Din therefore passed four ordinances. By the first he confiscated all grants of tax-free land and seized Muslim religious endowments. Secondly, the intelligence system was reorganized, and all secret transactions in the houses of the nobility were 'immediately reported to the Sultan. Thirdly, the Sultan himself abandoned drinking and enforced strict prohibition in Delhi. Later on, personal distilling for home consumption was tolerated, but the public sale of liquor and drugs was totally stopped. The fourth ordinance forbade social gatherings in noblemen's houses, and no senior officials were allowed to arrange marriages between members of their families without the Sultan's prior consent.⁸⁸

These regulations were directed against the Muslim noblemen, but the village headmen known as khuts and muqaddams, who lived in those areas where the revenue was reserved for the Sultan's treasury, were also very rich. They were Hindus and paid no taxes. They frequently offered military help to the rebels. The Sultan's revenue regulations reduced this class to poverty and brought them down to the level of the ordinary peasants. The over-enthusiastic Barani says that they were unable to buy horses or arms and could not afford to wear fine clothes. They were even deprived of the common luxury of chewing betel. So great was their poverty, according to Barani, that their wives were forced to work as maidservants in the houses of their Muslim neighbours.⁸⁹

The country's defence remained intact, but the Sultan could not realize his imperialistic ambitions without a well-equipped standing army. According to Barani, he fixed the annual salary for a trained armed soldier with one horse at 243 tankas,⁹⁰ with an additional 78 tankas

for those who had two horses. Firishta says that he recruited 475,000 cavalrymen. In order to keep his army satisfied with their salary, the Sultan introduced strict price-control measures based on production costs. He also established separate shopping centres in Delhi for (1) grain, (2) cloth, sugar, dried

39

fruits, herbs, butter, and oil, (3) horses, slaves, and cattle, and (4) miscellaneous commodities. The supply of grain was ensured' by collecting tax in kind in the doab and keeping it in the royal storehouses. Hoarding of grain was forbidden. Elsewhere the growers were ordered to sell their grain for cash in their fields at fixed prices and were not allowed to take any grain home for private sale. The market controller, the state intelligence officers, and the Sultan's secret agents each submitted independent reports on these shopping centres to the Sultan. Even a minor violation of the rules was not tolerated.

The shopping centre for cloth, known as the sata-i 'adl, was established near one of the royal palaces on the inner side of the Bada'un gate. All goods, including foreign imports, were first taken there and their price fixed. Every merchant was registered with the commerce ministry and had to sign a bond guaranteeing a regular supply of the goods in which they traded. The Hindu Multani merchants were advanced money by the treasury to import rare commodities for the sard-i 'adl. Some prices were subsidized. Costly fabrics and luxury goods could be sold only to those who had obtained permits from the government.⁹¹

The brokers helped the government to fix the price of horses. The horses were divided into three categories. The best were sold for 100 to 120 tonkas, the mediocre cost 80 to 90 tonkas, and poor-quality animals could be bought for 60 to 70 tonkas. Ponies were available at from 10 to 25 tonkas. All dishonest brokers and unscrupulous horse merchants were deprived of their trading rights. The price of slaves and cattle was also fixed.⁹²

The shopping centre for general commodities was under the direct control of the commerce ministry. 'Ala'u'd-Din's minister of commerce was also the superintendent of weights and measures and the controller of commercial transactions. He was assisted by superintendents for each commodity. Prices and weights and measures were checked by sending the children employed in the royal pigeon-house to buy petty articles.⁹³

The prices fixed for the Delhi market were also applied in the provincial capitals and towns. It was in the army's interest that the Delhi regulations should be enforced at other places. The success of the system depended on fixing prices in relation to production costs, although other factors, such as the growing poverty of the nobles and fear of the Sultan's atrocities, ensured obedience. An anecdote narrated by the eminent sufi Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud Chiragh of Delhi some fifty years later to a gullible sufi audience ascribed philanthropic motives to the Sultan's market regulations; but Barani's analysis of 'Ala'u'd-Din's military

40

motives,⁹⁴ reinforced by other medieval historians, is irrefutable.

The Sultan's army brought him success both against the Mongols and in his schemes of conquest. In 1302-3 he sent an army against Telingana. The army marched through Bengal and Orissa and attacked Warangal. The Kakatiya Raja Prataparudra Deva, however, defeated the invaders, and the Sultan recalled his forces.⁹⁵

At the end of January 1303 the Sultan himself marched against Chitor. The fort was formidable, the terrain mountainous. The Rajputs fought valiantly, but finally the ruler, Raja Ratan Singh, submitted. The Sultan entered the fort at the end of August 1303. The Raja's family were not persecuted, but the village headmen were slaughtered. The fort's administration was handed over by the Sultan to his son Khizr Khan.⁹⁶ According to Rajput legends, the Sultan conquered Chitor in order to seize the beautiful Padmini, Rana Ratan Singh's wife. This story is first recounted by Malik Muhammad Ja'isi in his romantic Hindi poem *Padmavat*, written in 1540. Certain sixteenth- and seventeenth-century historical works also relate this tale. It is probably based on the common stock of legends current in India from ancient times. Khizr Khan lacked sufficient forces to maintain his rule in the region; eight years later it was given to a friendly Rajput chief.

The Sultan's armies also conquered Ujjain, Mandu, Dhar, and Chanderi, and governors were appointed for these areas. Jalor was left under the control of its own Raja, but his boastful claims finally led the Sultan to annex his kingdom. 'Ala'u'd-Din himself marched against Marwar, where the ruler stoutly defended his fort of Siwana but ultimately submitted. The territory was left in his possession. The Sultan was satisfied with establishing his overlordship over the Rajput chiefs, since he wished essentially to ensure communications between Delhi and Gujarat.

The Sultan's most memorable conquest was that of the Deccan and the far south, which were ruled by three important Hindu dynasties. The Kakatiyas of Warangal ruled over eastern Deccan, while the Hoysalas of Dvarasamudra and the Pandyas of Madurai, ruling the regions adjacent to Sri Lanka, had divided the rest of the peninsula between them. The coastal trade from Kollam (Quilon) to Nellore had made them extremely wealthy. Nevertheless they were all, including the Yadava rulers, engaged in internecine wars.

'Ala'u'd-Din did not annex their countries but fleeced their treasuries and forced them to pay annual tributes. In 1306-7 the Sultan commissioned Malik Kafir to reduce to submission Raja Ramadeva, who had withheld his tribute. Early in 1307 Kafur marched through Dhar at the head of 30,000 horsemen. After a feeble resistance Ramadeva surrendered. Kafur took him to Delhi,

41

together with the enormous booty seized in Devagiri. The Sultan treated Ramadeva generously. He gave him the title Rai Rayan (leading ray or ruler). Devagiri was restored to him, and Nausari in Gujarat was also given to him as a gift. Deval Devi, the daughter of Raja Karan and Kamla Devi, who was being sent by her father to be married to Ramadeva's son, Sinhana, fell accidentally into the hands of the Sultan's troops. They sent her to Delhi, where the Sultan married her to Prince Khizr Khan.⁹⁷

In November 1309 Malik Kafur set out against Telingana, where the Sultan's army had been defeated six years earlier. Marching rapidly, Kafur reached Warangal, the capital of the Kakatiya kingdom of Raja Prataparudra Deva II. The fort there was surrounded by two ramparts, each enclosed within a moat. The outer wall was built of impacted mud and the inner one of stone. The mud wall was so tough that the stones from the ballista rebounded like nuts from it; even spears could not penetrate it. Prataprudra's army stood behind these strong defences. The invading army, however, heavily bombarded the outer ramparts with stones and, after several days, seized one of the outer mud wings. Penetration into the stone rampart was difficult, but finally the Raja surrendered. An enormous amount of gold, 20,000 highly bred horses, and one hundred elephants were taken as booty. As well as this, the Raja agreed to pay regular tribute. Leaving Warangal in March 1310, the army returned to Delhi on 10 June 1310 and received a hero's welcome from the Sultan.⁹⁸

After resting for about six months, Malik Kafur marched against the Hoysala kingdom of Dvarasamudra (Divaravallipura, near modern Bangalore), via Devagiri. The city was besieged on 26 February. Raja Vira Ballala III was taken by surprise and agreed to become the Sultan's vassal. Vast quantities of booty, including elephants, were seized.

Without losing any time, Malik Kafur marched against the Pandya kingdom in the extreme south of the Deccan peninsula. Raja Vira Pandya fled, abandoning the capital, Madurai. Temples were plundered, palaces were sacked, and enormous quantities of gold, 512 elephants, and 5,000 horses were collected as booty. There is no contemporary evidence that Kafur reached the famous Hindu shrine of Rameshvaram on Pamban Island or built a mosque there. On 19 October 1311 Kafur was accorded a royal welcome by the Sultan in Delhi. He was given the title malik na'ib. Kafur once again marched to Devagiri in 1313 to collect tribute from Ramadeva's son, who had rebelled after his father's death. Kafur invaded Devagiri and subdued the new ruler. After a short stay he returned to Delhi.⁹⁹ Although the gold coins plundered

42

from the Deccan stabilized the price controls enforced by 'Ala'u'd-Din, they also created a surplus in the capital.

The Sultan's health had rapidly deteriorated by 1315. Kaffir, as malik na'ib, seized the reins of government. He had the heir apparent, Khizr Khan, imprisoned in Gwalior fort and Alp Khan, the governor of Gujarat, summoned to Delhi and put to death. Alp Khan's brother, who was governor of Jalor, was also killed. Thereupon Alp Khan's troops in Gujarat rebelled, the Rana of Chitor declared his independence, and Harapala Deva of Devagiri drove the Turkic garrison from his territory. On 4 January 1316 'Ala'u'd-Din, the greatest Muslim conqueror to sit on the throne of Delhi, died, helplessly watching the disintegration of the kingdom he had built.

According to Barani, 'Ala'u'd-Din was a tyrant who did not hesitate to adopt ruthless means to achieve his imperialistic and military ends. He was, however, inventive and original in devising new policies and administrative systems and formidable in implementing them. Although illiterate himself, he enjoyed the company of poets such as Amir Khusraw and Amir Hasan. His passion for immortality is reflected in his grandiose architectural monuments. At the end of his

life he lost his remarkable power of independent decision and was unable to combat Malik Kafur's intrigues to seize power.¹⁰⁰

Before 'Ala'u'd-Din's eyes were sealed in death, Malik Kaffir had nominated Shihabu'd-Din, 'Ala'u'd-Din's six-year-old son by Ramadava's daughter, Jhita'i, as ruler. Khizr Khan was blinded in Gwalior fort, as was his half-brother, Shadi Khan. Mubarak Khan, another of 'Ala'u'd-Din's sons, who like Khizr Khan was about seventeen, was imprisoned but; before he could be blinded Malik Kaffir was killed by 'Ala'u'd-Din's loyal bodyguards in order to save their late king's family from annihilation.

Mubarak was released from prison. For some weeks he worked as regent for his brother, Shihabu'd-Din, but then he sent him back to prison in Gwalior, where his eyes were put out.¹⁰¹ On 18 April, Mubarak Shah ascended the throne. Some 17,000 to 18,000 political prisoners from 'Ala'u'd-Din's reign were released. Grants to the 'ulama' were increased, villages earlier resumed to the khdlisa were restored to their owners,¹⁰² and 'Ala'u'd-Din's economic laws were abolished. Mubarak Shah could have ruled for many years without much problem but, although he was fond of pretty girls, he was also passionately homosexual. He fell deeply in love with two Islamicized Baradus brothers, Hasan and Husamu'd-Din. According to Amir Khusraw, the Baradus belonged to the Hindu military caste and had served as 'commandos' under the Hindu Ra'is.¹⁰³

43

Mubarak Shah gave Hasan the title Khusraw Khan and transferred Malik Kafur's iqta' and army to him.

The first two years of the Sultan's reign were very successful. Peace was restored in Gujarat. In 1319 Mubarak conquered Devagiri and, departing from his father's policy, made an Islamicized slave officer, Yaklakhl, governor there. Khusraw was sent to Warangal, where he collected the arrears and obtained a bond guaranteeing regular tribute payments. The Sultan waited for him on the Deccan border. They returned to Delhi together. There, the discovery of a conspiracy to kill the Sultan so deeply alarmed him that he had all his brothers and near relations murdered. He then sent Khusraw to Devagiri again to suppress Yaklakhi's rebellion and to march against Ma'bar (the coastal area of what is now Tamilnadu). Yaklakhi was taken captive and handed over to the imperial army. Khusraw's invasion of Ma'bar yielded little booty, and the army commanders would not co-operate with him. The unsuccessful army returned empty-handed, but the Sultan, who had grown impatient at his separation from Khusraw, was overjoyed to see him. At Khusraw's request about 10,000 Baradus were recruited from Malwa, Rajasthan, and Gujarat to act as palace guards. They obtained full control over the Sultan's palace. On 9 July 1320 Khusraw killed Mubarak with the help of his Baradu chiefs and had himself proclaimed Sultan, assuming the title Nasiru'd-Din.¹⁰⁴

Barani and, following him, other historians, including modern Muslim scholars, accuse Khusraw of introducing idolatry into the palace and insulting Islam and the Qur'an, but this view is unfounded. A section of the leading Turkic nobles and commanders supported Khusraw enthusiastically. Only Ghazi Malik, the governor of Dipalpur, and his son, Fakhru'd-Din Jauna,

who was At that time in Delhi, were strongly opposed to him. Jauna managed to flee with the son of Bahram Ayba, the governor of Uch, to Dipalpur. Ghazi Malik wrote letters to the neighbouring Turkic commanders and noblemen at Delhi, but the majority remained loyal to Khusraw. Beside his own family and Bahram Ayba, the Khokkhars and the Mewatis were Ghazi Malik's main supporters.

Khusraw sent an army to Sirsa to fight Ghazi Malik. The Khokkhars in Ghazi Malik's army broke Khusraw's ranks, and his soldiers fled in panic. In the second battle, however, Khusraw's mixed Hindu and Muslim army fought fiercely near Delhi and dispersed Ghazi Malik's forces. While the victorious troops were looting the baggage they had captured, Ghazi Malik reassembled his army and turned the tables on Khusraw Malik. Khusraw fled out was discovered lurking in a garden. He was brought before

44

Ghazi Malik and beheaded. In 'Ala'u'd-Din's palace Ghazi Malik Wept after seeing the scenes of the Khalji family's destruction. After showing formal reluctance, Malik ascended the throne in September 1320 under the title of Sultan Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq Shah.

THE TUGHLUQ DYNASTY

Barani correctly credits Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq's reign with moderation. The Sultan recovered the treasure which Khusraw had squandered in buying support. This brought him into conflict with Shaykh Nizamud-Din Awliya', the most influential sufi in Delhi.¹⁰⁵ Like many other notable sufis, the Shaykh had been given money by Khusraw to pray for his success. The rest had kept the money safely, intending to return it to the next ruler if Khusraw lost, but the Shaykh, according to his custom, had distributed it among the needy townspeople and dervishes. Naturally he could not return it. He told the Sultan that the money belonged to the treasury of the Muslims, and he had himself distributed it to poor Muslims. He had kept nothing for himself. The Sultan was not appeased.

The Sultan modified 'Ala'u'd-Din's revenue regulations so that they benefited both farmers and headmen without undermining treasury interests. His officials encouraged the farmers to extend cultivation and kept taxes down to a reasonable level. He was kind and affectionate to his subjects.

In 1321 he sent his heir apparent, Jauna Khan, who was given the title Ulugh Khan, to reassert Delhi's authority over the rebellious Prataparudra Deva, the Kakatiya ruler of Warangal. Ulugh Khan was not satisfied with imposing suzerainty and collecting tribute. He wished to annex the country. The Hindu garrison resolutely defended the fort. The villagers cut off all supplies to the army and destroyed postal centres. The siege was protracted, and news from Delhi ceased. The troops were struck with panic; wild rumours that the Sultan had died began to circulate in the imperial camp. Ulugh Khan was forced to raise the siege and marched to Devagiri, much harassed by the local chiefs. There he was reassured of the Sultan's safety.¹⁰⁶

Ulugh Khan returned to Delhi. In 1323 the Prince marched out again to strengthen the communication line and postal centres to the south. Prataparudra defended Warangal for about five months, but then had to surrender. He was sent to Delhi and imprisoned, and Telingana became part of the Delhi sultanate. The Hindu

45

officials there were retained, but Delhi's hold on Telingana was still precarious. On his way back to Delhi, Ulugh Khan invaded Jajnar in Orissa and seized fifty elephants.¹⁰⁷

During Ulugh Khan's absence in the Deccan, a Mongol invasion was repelled at Samana, and a Gujarat rebellion was suppressed. Bengal was torn by civil war between the various contenders for the throne. Appointing a council of regents, including Ulugh Khan, the Sultan himself marched against Bengal, where he was victorious. On his return from Bengal the Sultan attacked Raja Har Singh Deva of Tirhut (north Bihar). The Raja fled, and the Sultan, appointing a governor there, returned to Delhi. His son Ulugh Khan hastily built a temporary wooden pavilion in the Afghanpur village near Tughluqabad, now New Delhi. He received his father and took him to the pavilion. After lunch the Sultan ordered that the elephants he had captured be paraded there. The wooden pavilion, however, was not strong enough to bear the vibrations caused by the elephant race and collapsed. Both the Sultan and his younger son were crushed to death. The story is described in detail by 'Isami¹⁰⁸ and Ibn Battuta.¹⁰⁹ Both accuse Ulugh Khan of parricide. Barani is cryptic and laconic.¹¹⁰ The fifteenth- and sixteenth-century Persian historians agreed with 'Isami and Ibn Battuta,¹¹¹ but some later writers consider Ulugh Khan to have been innocent. Modern scholars are also divided, but the delay in rescuing the Sultan does suggest Ulugh Khan's guilt. Also the fact that the pavilion collapsed at all, and that Ghiyas was killed, is suspicious. If it were really a light pavilion, it is surprising that its fall should have killed anyone. Barani's ambiguity is quite understandable in the circumstances.

After Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq's death in July 1325, Ulugh Khan Succeeded his father under the title of Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq. According to his contemporaries, his character was a heterogeneous combination of arrogance and piety, pride and humility, cruelty and kindness, generosity and greed. Historians were unable to assess his personality and left their readers confused. Of the three authors of this period, 'Isami was an avowed enemy of the Sultan; Ibn Battuta was continually amazed at his actions; and although Barani basked in the sunshine of the Sultan's patronage, his ideal monarch was Muhammad's successor, Firuz. in fact neither Barani nor Ibn Battuta took pains to examine all aspects of the Sultan's personality in the correct perspective.

Of all the Delhi sultans, Muhammad bin Tughluq was the only ruler who had received a comprehensive literary, religious, and philosophical education, as well as military training. He believed that the time was ripe to replace the local tributary chiefs with

46

centrally appointed governors and iqta' holders, but unfortunately for him there were not enough competent officials. Disappointed with the continuous rebellions by trusted officers such as

Sayyids, Shaykhs, Afghans, and Turkic governors, he promoted to high positions intelligent administrators whose ancestors had been vintners, barbers, cooks, gardeners, musicians, and weavers.¹¹² The offended nobles refused to co-operate with him. The Sultan had invited foreigners from all over the world to his court, but they did not understand Indian conditions and were of no real help to him.

After his accession the Sultan was confronted almost immediately by a Mongol invasion. The enemy camped near Meerut, before being repulsed. There were no more Mongol invasions during his reign. The Sultan's armies conquered Kalanaur and Peshawar and transformed them into a bulwark against the Mongols.¹¹³ In 1326-7 his cousin, Baha'u'd-Din Gurshasp, governor of Sagar (near Gulbarga), rebelled. The imperial army defeated him and he fled. He was captured, and the Sultan had him flayed alive.

Gurshasp's rebellion prompted the Sultan to make the centrally located Devagiri his second capital. In 1327 he made extensive preparations for the transfer of his mother, the royal household, and the 'ulama' and sufis from Delhi to Devagiri, which he named Daulatabad. The Sultan intended to transform Daulatabad into the well-planned Muslim capital of the east. Meanwhile, Bahram Kishlu Khan, the governor of Multan, rose against the Sultan. The Sultan marched from Devagiri to Delhi, defeating Bahram at Abohar. At roughly the same time another rebellion by Ghiyasu'd-Din Bura, governor of Bengal, was also crushed.

In 1328-9 the Muslim upper classes and the 'ulama' and sufis were ordered to move to Daulatabad. Comfortably settled in Delhi's social and cultural life, however, they resisted the order. The Sultan considered the sufis' refusal to emigrate treasonable, for he believed that their prime duty was the spread of Islam.¹¹⁴ The sufis, for their part, saw themselves as custodians of their ancestral traditions; staying in Delhi was essential for maintaining this. The Sultan enforced his orders relentlessly, causing great hardship to the Delhi populace. The cultural and social life of the capital's elite received a set-back, but no mass exodus, as described by some of the historians, ever took place. In fact, the two capitals flourished simultaneously.

In 1327-8 the Sultan had started building a new town in Delhi called Jahan Panah, intending to unite the earlier townships within a single wall. The scheme was, however, too expensive to fully materialize.

47

The Sultan's order for the transfer of the Delhi elite to Devagiri coincided with his plans to extend his boundaries beyond Peshawar in order to prevent further Mongol incursions. This project is described by Barani as the Sultan's ambition to conquer Khurasan and Iraq. A tent was pitched in Delhi to arouse enthusiasm among the people for jihad (religious war) against the Mongols, but the leading sufis refused to co-operate.¹¹⁵ The Sultan nevertheless enlisted 37,000 men and spent vast sums purchasing war materials and making advances of one year's salary to the soldiers. Stiff opposition to the invasion forced the Sultan to abandon the project, however. He disbanded the army, thereby incurring great financial losses.¹¹⁶

In the early years of his reign the Sultan was informed that the Chinese were making incursions into the Himalayan kingdoms. In a bid to secure his northern frontiers he dispatched an army of 10,000 troops to the Kangra region in order to annex it to his empire. The contemporary historians refer to it as the Qarachil expedition. It seems to have taken place during 1329-30. After some initial victories in Kangra, the imperial army pressed on to Tibet, where the local hillmen annihilated it.¹¹⁷ This was a major catastrophe, for which the commander, who had exceeded the Sultan's orders to confine the invasion to Kangra, was responsible. Nevertheless in 1337-8 Nagarkot was conquered and the Raja made tributary.¹¹⁸

In 1329-30 the Sultan introduced a token currency, which remained in circulation until 1331-2. Imitating the *chao*, or the paper money of Qubilay Khan (1260-94) of Mongolia and northern China, the Sultan issued bronze coins at par with the value of the silver *tanka* coins. The scheme was designed to fill the gap in the gold and silver reserves which had widened as a result of the two frontier expeditions and a shortage of silver. The goldsmiths, who were generally Hindus, began to forge the token coins on a large scale. Following Gresham's law, bronze coins replaced gold and silver ones completely. Land tax was paid in the token currency, and other commercial transactions also utilized it. Foreign merchants naturally stopped all business dealings with India. In order to combat the mounting economic chaos, the Sultan stopped the circulation of the token currency and was forced to pay genuine gold coins in exchange, even for the forged ones. According to Barani, the heaps of bronze coins rose like mountains near Tughluqabad.¹¹⁹ Despite the distressing loss of royal treasury suffered, it had no difficulty in honouring the Sultan's orders.

The Sultan had in 1328-9 inordinately increased the land tax on the doab farmers. Additional cesses were also levied. Barani says

48

that the Hindus (farmers) set fire to their grain barns and drove their cattle from their houses. Baran (Bulandshahr), Barani's home town, was the scene of a terrible uprising. The rebellion was ruthlessly crushed, but the Sultan himself laid waste large areas of land during the fighting. Grain became increasingly scarce. In March 1334, when Ibn Battuta reached Delhi, the doab was prostrated with famine. The Sultan soon realized that adequate relief measures and the promotion of agricultural production were the only solution to the problem. He sold six months' supplies from the royal granary to the Delhi populace at cheap rates. Large sums were advanced to enable the cultivators to buy seed, to sink wells, and to extend cultivation. This was not state farming, as a modern historian claims,¹²⁰ but the traditional system of famine relief.

The rebellion of Sayyid Ahsan Shah, the governor of Ma'bar, however, prompted the Sultan himself to leave the capital even though the famine had now assumed dreadful proportions. It spread to eastern Panjab; human skins were cooked and sold in the bazaar, the people roasted and ate the limbs of corpses. At Bidar many of the Sultan's army officers died of the bubonic plague which was raging there. The Sultan himself fell seriously ill. He was taken back on a litter to Daulatabad. The Ma'bar rebels remained undefeated, and Sayyid Ahsan Shah founded the independent Madurai sultanate.¹² The Sultan appointed new governors to Daulatabad, Telingana, and Bidar. During his absence from the Deccan from January 1335 to July 1337 five

rebellions broke out, only four of which were suppressed. The foundation of the Hindu Vijayanagara kingdom in 1336 and the subsequent independence of Warangal and Kampili were the most severe blows to the Sultan's prestige. His dreams of founding a central Delhi sultanate, controlling the whole of India, came to an end.

After his return to Delhi the Sultan stayed from the close of 1338 to the middle of 1341 at Svargadvari near Kanauj, where supplies could be obtained from Kara and Avadh. Famine was still raging. Four different governors broke into revolt in succession. The most serious uprising was that of Aynu'l-Mulk Multani, the governor of Avadh, Zafarabad, and Lucknow, in 1340, but he was finally defeated.¹²²

Between 1338 and 1341 both eastern and western Bengal became independent. During his stay in Delhi the Sultan introduced new regulations to improve farming. An agriculture ministry called the Diwan-i Amir-i Koh was established to bring barren land under cultivation. Opportunists and adventurers signed written bonds promising to cultivate barren land. They were richly rewarded and given loans to farm with but they spent the money on personal,

49

needs - only a very small fraction of the fallow land was cultivated.¹²³

Not only were the governors rebellious, but the amiran-i sada (controllers of one hundred villages), who performed both military and civil duties, also revolted. Like the governors they did not belong to any organized factions but, like other Muslim leaders, they hated the Sultan for his ruthless persecution of his opponents and savage use of capital punishment. Cries of 'War against the tyrant!' were heard everywhere. The Sultan believed that the root cause of the widespread rebellion was the amiran-i sada. He appointed his favourite, 'Aziz Khammar (the Vintner'), governor of Malwa, granting him absolute powers to crush the amiran-i sada. 'Aziz executed some eighty of its members at Dhar. The Sultan's admiration and rewards for 'Aziz's atrocities extinguished all hope of survival in the amiran-i sada from Daulatabad to Gujarat. They felt that only rebellion could save them. As well as plundering the royal treasury, they seized all the merchandise in Dabhoi and Baroda. Then they moved to Cambay, set free a rebel officer - Taghi by name - and made him one of their leaders. 'Aziz Khammar hastened to quell the uprising but was killed.¹²⁴

In January 1344 Sultan Muhammad left his capital to personally crush the amiran-i sada's rebellion, ignoring his loyal commanders' advice. In Delhi he appointed a council of regents to control the administration. He marched to Broach and seized several centres of insurrection. In Daulatabad a number of competent amiran-i sada had organized a formidable force. The Sultan raised a huge army, but the rebel ranks were reinforced by more leaders. The Sultan met the rebels at Daulatabad and defeated them, but they fled to Gulbarga and set up new headquarters there. The Sultan reorganized the Daulatabad administration, but Taghi's rebellion in Gujarat impelled him to rush to that region. On his way to Anhilwara he was informed that Hasan Kangu and other rebel leaders had defeated the army sent against them at Gulbarga and that, on 3 August 1347, Hasan Kangu had established an independent kingdom, known as Bahmani, from the family name of its founder.¹²⁵ The Sultan's health was deteriorating rapidly; he was unable

to stop the disintegration of the sultanate he had dreamt of centralizing. In an impassioned speech he told Barani that wicked and evil-minded people had become predominant. Now, on the merest suspicion of rebellion or conspiracy, he relentlessly executed people. He added that he was determined to pursue his policy until either he himself perished or the people reformed and stopped rebelling. He strove to win support by distributing largess, but that too failed to win his subjects' hearts. His people were estranged

50

from him and were his enemies. The Sultan was even prepared to abdicate, but his sense of prestige called him to crush all rebellion first.¹²⁶

For three years the Sultan concentrated on chasing the elusive Taghi and reorganizing the provincial administration. Taghi took shelter with the Sumras of Thatta. The Sultan therefore moved towards Thatta via Kathiawar but on 20 March 1351 he died in a village en route. According to Bada'uni, the sixteenth-century historian, death liberated the Sultan from his people and freed them from him.¹²⁷

Two daughters had been born to the Sultan, although a subsequent surgical operation had made him sexually impotent. According to 'Isami, the Sultan wished to see the whole world heirless like himself. The Sultan had, however, paid great attention to the education of Firuz, the son of his uncle Rajab. Firuz's mother was the daughter of the Jat chieftain Rai Ranmal Bhatti of Dipalpur, but Firuz inherited neither Jat tenacity nor Turkic ferocity. In private life Firuz continued to drink liquor on the sly, despite the remonstrances of such nobles as Tatar Khan. He was also passionately fond of music, which from the point of view of the Islamic orthodoxy was also a vice.

Sultan Muhammad had appointed Firuz a member of the council of regents. Before his death Muhammad summoned both Firuz and Shaykh Nasirud-Din Chiragh-i Dihli,¹²⁸ the famous Chishtiyya sufi of Delhi, to his camp. Following the Sultan's death, the Chaghatay Mongols of Transoxiana, who had joined his army to suppress the rebellion, combined with the Sindi rebels to plunder the Sultan's camp, which was now in a state of turmoil and confusion. The 'ulama' and sufis who were members of Sultan Muhammad's retinue raised Firuz to the throne and silenced his rivals. They believed correctly that a regent ruling in a puppet's name usually made the worst despot. A mature and experienced man who would rule under their guidance was best suited to the time. Firuz was crowned on 23 March 1351. His accession did not mark the restoration of the principle of election¹²⁹ but was a triumph for the dominant clique of the religious classes and the bureaucracy.

The new Sultan led the army safely from Thatta to Delhi, paying his respects to the sufi monasteries (khanqahs) on the way, and showering gifts on them and on the 'ulama'. When Firuz arrived near Delhi the aged Khwaja-i Jahan, a member of the council of regents who had put a boy of six on the throne, calling him Muhammad's son, surrendered and begged for mercy. Firuz was only too willing to pardon him but acquiesced to the demand of the

51

Khwaja's rivals to eliminate him. At the end of August 1351 the Sultan entered Delhi.

Firuz's long reign of thirty-seven years may be divided into two parts. The first period of about twenty years is marked by new legislation to restore peace and prosperity. The last seventeen years saw inanition and a precipitous decline in the strength and prosperity of the sultanate. Until he died in 1368-9 the unpretentious vizier Khan-i Jahan Maqbul, an Islamicized Telingani Hindu, successfully maintained the prestige of the Sultan and governed the country wisely.

Firuz set about reforming the administration. He sent the foreigners who had crowded Sultan Muhammad's court back to their own countries with rich rewards and gifts. The loans advanced by the previous administration for agricultural purposes were written off. Compensation was paid to the heirs of all those whom Sultan Muhammad had executed, and the letters of gratitude obtained from them were deposited in a box at the head of Sultan Muhammad's cenotaph. Pious Sunnis were not executed for treason or crimes against the state, but unorthodox Sunni leaders and Shi'is were annihilated. Painstaking reforms were made in the assessment and collection of land taxes. Newly dug wells and irrigation canals improved cultivation, enabling the government to overcome the food shortage. Gardens and orchards were planted under state patronage. In the early years of Firuz's reign prices were high compared with those of 'Ala'u'd-Din's time but gradually they stabilized. The special tax on some twenty-eight items of Urban trade and commerce deemed un-Islamic was abolished. The manufacturing centres (karkhanas) were developed rapidly by the army of slaves recruited by Firuz, and the promotion of urbanization and the establishment of new towns made the artisans prosperous. Artisans' wages increased, to the dismay of those dependent upon charity and gifts. The Sultan ordered that jobs be created for the unemployed. Free hospitals were established, as was a marriage bureau offering assistance to poor Muslim parents in meeting wedding expenses for their daughters.¹³⁰

The Sultan paid his army and civil officials by assigning the revenue from iqta's to them. Only a small percentage of soldiers drew a cash salary. All positions were made hereditary, irrespective of competence. During his predecessor's reign the prestige of 'Ala'u'd-Din's once invincible army had vanished; under Firuz, manned by hereditary soldiers, it was reputed to be rotten to the core.

Firuz made little effort to regain lost territory. He led several feeble military expeditions to Bengal, Kangra, and Sind but only to

52

assert the tottering central authority. In November 1353 he marched against Bengal. The Ra'is of Gorakhpur and Champaran paid their tribute, but the Raja of Tirhut angered the Sultan by refusing to accompany him on his expedition. In Bengal the rebel Hajji Ilyas fled to the Ikdala mud fort near Pandua in the Malda district. The Sultan was unable to capture the fort quickly and returned to Delhi in order to avoid the horrors of the Bengal monsoon. He reached Delhi in September 1354. Three years later Zafar Khan of Sonargaon visited Delhi to seek the Sultan's help against Hajji Ilyas. The Sultan bided his time and, after Ilyas's death in November 1358, invaded Bengal again. He had hoped to defeat Ilyas's successor, Sikandar, without much difficulty, but Sikandar also took refuge in the Ikdala fort. This time the Sultan succeeded in negotiating a peace settlement and persuaded Sikandar to accept his suzerainty. On his return to

Delhi the Sultan decided to attack Raja Gajpati of Jajnagar in Orissa, who had allied himself with the rebellious Bengal sultans. Firuz seized Cuttack and destroyed the Jagannath temple at Purl. Gajpati surrendered, and the Sultan returned to Delhi in May or June 1361 accompanied by a booty of elephants.¹³¹

Firuz stayed in Delhi for four years. He then decided to invade the Deccan but wisely changed his mind and instead attacked Nagarkot in the Kangra region. The Raja submitted and offered to pay tribute. The Sultan collected 1,300 Sanskrit manuscripts from the Jwalamukhi and other temples. Some of these were translated into Persian.

The Sultan next marched to Thatta on the bank of the Indus in lower Sind. When the siege proved too protracted and epidemics had taken a heavy toll of his horses, Firuz moved to Gujarat. The Sindhi guides misled the army, which suffered severe hardships in the Rann of Kacch. At home, in the absence of news from the army, Khan-i Jahan had wisely maintained the peace. The Sultan ultimately reached Gujarat and re-equipped the army with the money he had received from Delhi. Again he invaded Thatta and destroyed the Sindi crops. The food shortage in Sind forced its rulers, Jam Unnar and Sadru'd-Din Banbhina, to surrender. Both were taken to Delhi. Banbhina's brother and one of Jam's sons were made governors in Thatta. The Sultan returned with his army after two and a half years' absence, occasioning great rejoicing in Delhi.¹³²

The last years of the Sultan's reign were marked by a precipitous decline in central political control. In 1377-8 a rebellion erupted in Etawa. Another uprising in Katihar resulted in widespread destruction. The Sultan's eldest son, Fath Khan, had died in 1376.

53

The new vizier, Khan-i Jahan II, enjoyed Firuz's confidence but he could not match his father's experience. In 1387 he was driven out of Delhi by the Sultan's son Prince Muhammad, who became vizier instead. Firuz abdicated in August 1387, crowning Prince Muhammad king. Two months later Firuz's slaves, numbering 100,000, who hated Muhammad, rebelled. Muhammad fled to the Sirmur hills. Firuz appointed his grandson, Tughluq Shah II, son of Fath Khan, his heir. On 20 September 1388 Firuz died, aged eighty-two.

The process of installing a puppet king from the Tughluq family had already been started by factions of the nobility. After Firuz's death the sultanate grew even weaker. In 1394 an independent kingdom was carved out in Jaunpur. The two important provinces of Malwa and Gujarat were also severed from the Delhi sultanate. Then Timur arrived upon the scene, and his invasion sealed the fate of the Tughluq dynasty.

Timur's family belonged to the Gorgan branch of the Barlas, a Turco-Mongol tribe. His father, Amir Taraghay, was the governor of Kash in Transoxiana. Timur was born on 8 April 1336. Struggling against heavy odds, he asserted his power in neighbouring areas. In 1363 he was wounded by an arrow while fighting in Sistan and was left permanently lame. He was known as Timur (Lang (Timur the Lame)). Later the name was Anglicized as Tamerlane. Seven years later

he made himself ruler of Balkh. In 1392 he began his five years' campaign that resulted in the conquest of the Caspian provinces, Fars, Armenia, Georgia, Mesopotamia, and south Russia.

In 1396-7 Timur's grandson Pir Muhammad quickly seized Uch and Dlpalpur, but his siege of Multan was protracted. Timur, who had set out on his Indian campaign from Samarqand in March 1398, overtook his grandson after Multan had at last surrendered. In September 1398 Timur crossed the Indus. The Hindu chiefs of the Salt Range gave him passage through their territory, and he met no serious obstacles in his Panjab journey. Only the Rajput fort of Bhatnir offered stiff resistance. The people of Fathabad, Kaythal, Samana, and Panipat fled to Delhi. Timur crossed the Jamuna near Delhi on 11 December. An army sent against him was easily routed, and the Delhi notables offered their allegiance. Nevertheless during the last three days of December 1398 Timur's army sacked Delhi and indiscriminately massacred both Hindus and Muslims.¹³³ Early in January 1399, Timur reached Meerut and plundered it. Travelling through Haridvar, Nagarkot, and Jammu, he crossed the Chenab on 3 March. There he released large numbers of captives to facilitate his return journey. Skilled

54

India in 1398

55

artisans, masons, and builders were still detained, however, in order to work on his Samarqand monuments. After devoting seven more years to his restless campaigns, Timur died on 18 February 1405. He was buried in the tomb he had planned for his son in Samarqand. His Indian invasion was merely a plundering raid; according to his spurious Autobiographical Memoirs, his principal objective was to fight and pillage the infidels. His army, however, massacred and plundered both Hindus and Muslims. His invasion delivered the death blow to the Tughluq dynasty. Although Timur's ancestors had embraced Islam, his invasion was considered no different from the earlier 'accursed', 'infidel', and 'satanic' Mongol invasions.¹³⁴

THE SAYYIDS

Before his departure from India, Timur had conferred Multan and Dipalpur on Khizr Khan, the son of Malik Sulayman. These territories were already under Sulayman's control, and after his death Khizr Khan ruled them. Timur's confirmation enhanced Khizr Khan's prestige. Khizr's position was challenged by the adventurer Mallu Iqbal, who rose to power in Delhi. He marched against Khizr Khan but was defeated near Ajodhan and killed in 1405. The kingless nobles of Delhi therefore invited Mahmud Tughluq, Firuz's younger son, to reclaim his ancestral throne. The independent rulers of Gujarat and Malwa refused to help Mahmud. Nevertheless, he ascended the throne but died in 1412. Thereupon Khizr Khan, who four years earlier had failed to capture Delhi, occupied it in June 1414.

It is said that the famous sufi Makhdum-i Jahaniyan had once referred to Khizr's father, Sulayman, as 'Sayyid' (a descendant of the Prophet Muhammad);¹³⁵ this enabled him and his three successors to claim that lineage. Khizr tried to consolidate Delhi's control from Multan to

Kanauj and from the foot of the Himalayas to the Malwa frontier. The dominance of his son and successor, Mubarak Shah (1421-33), however, was challenged by Jusrath, chief of the Khokkhar tribe, who ruled near Sialkot. Mubarak took the field personally, defeated the chief, and demolished some of his forts around Sialkot, but the Lahore iqta' dars failed to finish Jusrath off.

The Sultan's successful expeditions against Mewatis, Katihar, and the Gangetic doab enabled him to collect revenue from that region, although Delhi's authority over their chiefs was precarious.

56

In February 1434 the Sultan was assassinated by the dominant faction at his own court.

His adopted son, Muhammad Shah (1434-43), was also unable to combat the intrigues among the leading nobles. In 1440 Mahmud Khalji of Malwa invaded Delhi. The Sultan asked Bahlul Lodi, the iqta'dar of Samana, to help him. Meanwhile, during Mahmud's absence the Sultan of Gujarat had invaded Mandu, the capital of Malwa. Mahmud therefore hastily made peace with Muhammad Shah and returned to Malwa. Bahlul was rewarded with the iqta's of Dipalpur and Lahore and was commissioned to crush Jusrath. Bahlul, however, accepted Jusrath's offers of peace and instead seized territories extending up to Panipat. He was unable to capture Delhi, but the Sultan was reduced to the pitiable position of ruling a territory which extended merely forty miles around his capital.

After Sultan Muhammad Shah's death, his son, Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din 'Alam Shah (1443-76), came to the throne, but in 1447 he retired to Bada'un, which he had held earlier as an iqta'dar. Bahlul Lodi captured Delhi. 'Alam Shah did not contest Bahlul's usurpation and formally transferred the sovereignty of Delhi to him in 1451. He himself ruled over Bada'un and its neighbourhood until his death in 1476.

The Sayyids had ruled in name only, but the Lodis revived the prestige of the Delhi sultanate. Nevertheless the distant provinces continued to be independent until one by one they were annexed by Akbar the Great to his empire.

57

II THE INDEPENDENT RULING DYNASTIES

BENGAL

The efforts of the Delhi sultans to assert their rule over all the conquered and annexed territories were unsuccessful except for a brief period during Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din's Khalji's reign. In Bengal submission to the Delhi sultans had been nominal from the time of its conquest by Bakhtiyar Khalji to its complete independence. Sultan Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq of Delhi attempted to ensure

the loyalty of Bengal by dividing it into three administrative divisions with capitals at Lakhnauti (North Bengal), Sonargaon (East Bengal), and Satgaon (South Bengal), but his measures failed. His successor Muhammad bin Tughluq was unable to assert his authority over Fakhru'd-Din Mubarak Shah (1336-49) of Sonargaon, who undauntedly assumed pretentious titles. In North Bengal, 'Ala'u'd-Din 'Ali Shah (1339-45) declared himself independent and transferred his capital from Lakhnauti to Pandua. Bengal was finally united under one independent rule by 'Ala'u'd-Din's foster-brother, Shamsu'd-Din Ilyas Shah (1345-58), and the Delhi Sultan, Firuz Shah Tughluq, had no alternative but to make peace with him. Ilyas's reign is marked by the development of an impressive coinage system and the number of monuments erected. His successor, Sikandar Shah (1358-90), also successfully defied Firuz's attempts to subdue him. Ghiyasu'd-Din A'zam Shah (1390-1410), who followed Sikandar, established diplomatic and cultural relations with China, and the growth of the port of Chittagong stimulated the increase in trade with the Far East.

In 1415 Raja Ganesa of Dinajpur (Rajshahi), originally a leading noble of the Ilyas Shahi rulers, assumed royal power. Subsequently, at the request of the outraged Bengali 'ulama' and sufis, who repudiated a non-Muslim ruler, Ibrahim Shah Sharqi from the neighbouring Muslim state of Jaunpur invaded Bengal. Peace was soon concluded, however, on the intercession of the leading Bengal sufi Nur Qutb-i 'Alam, and Ganesa's twelve-year-old son, Jadu, was converted to Islam and proclaimed king as Jalalu'd-Din. After Ibrahim Sharqi had returned to Jaunpur, Ganesa reappeared in Bengal and ruled in his son's name until he died in 1418. Upon his

58

death in 1431, Jalalu-'d-Din was succeeded by his son, Shamsu'd-Din Ahmad Shah (1431-5). The Ilyas Shahi dynasty was restored in 1437. The second Ilyas Shahi ruler, Ruknu'd-Din Barbak Shah (1459-74), organized a militia of Ethiopian slaves and recruited Arab soldiers as his palace guards. One of these, Isma'il Shah, conquered Kamrup for his master. Barbak's army also invaded regions as far north as Purnia district, and Bengal control over the Jessore-Khulna districts was strengthened. The Sultan is known as a patron of Bengali literature. The Chinese were deeply impressed by the wall of Pandua, the well-arranged bazaars, and the imposing royal palace.²

In 1487 the Ilyas Shahi dynasty was overthrown by Sultan Shahzada Barbak Shah, the commander of the Ethiopian guards. Bengal was then ruled by Ethiopians until 1494. They were eventually deposed by an Arab, 'Ala'u'd-Din Husayn Shah (1494-1519), who had risen to a high position in their service. After coming to the throne, Husayn replaced the Ethiopian soldiers and administrators with Bengali Hindus and Muslims. He was an indomitable warrior, and his generosity to both Hindus and Muslims has made him a legendary hero in Bengal. The rise of Sher Shah Sur ended the Husayn Shahi dynasty of Bengal, but the state's prosperity under their rule amazed both Portuguese and Chinese visitors. Barbosa tells us of luxury and extravagance among the Muslim aristocracy in whose hands the country's wealth was concentrated. In the cities they lived in brick-built houses with flat roofs and flights of ornamented steps. Bathing-tanks were attached to their houses. Their cuisine was sumptuous. Men wore very thin, long, white garments reaching to their ankles, with cloth girdles under them and silk scarves over them. The poor went around stark naked.³

The principal feature of Husayn Shahi rule in Bengal was a tendency towards unity among all classes of Hindus and Muslims. A genuine pride in Bengali culture and social values had emerged. The Muslim foreigners adopted Bengali customs, while the Hindus learned Persian to secure positions in the administration. This is reflected both in mystical works and in poetry. The movement towards cultural synthesis, however, had by no means eliminated all reactionary and revivalist tendencies.

ASSAM

On the eve of Bakhtiyar Khalji's conquest, Assam was ruled by two

59

important Hindu kingdoms. In the western region was the kingdom of Kamata, known as Kamrup in Persian chronicles. Its capital, on the Brahmaputra, was either Gauhati or in its immediate neighbourhood. The other kingdom, Ahom, was in the north-east. There were also many independent chiefs, called bhuyans, who ruled small areas in the region.

At the end of the thirteenth century the Kamata kingdom became independent, but early in the fourteenth century the Bengal governors overran Mymensingh district and then, crossing the Brahmaputra, seized Sylhet (now in Bangladesh). Tippera and Chittagong were annexed as well. Later still Ilyas Shah of Bengal also invaded Assam, and numismatic evidence shows his dominion over it. Husayn Shah of Bengal subsequently annexed the whole of the Kamata kingdom as far as Barnadi. In 1515 the Koch tribe established its rule over Kamarupa. Mounting tensions between the King and his nobility during the 1570s forced him to divide the kingdom into two: Kooch Bihar and Kooch Hajo.

The Ahoms of north-eastern Assam consolidated their kingdom in the early thirteenth century. They were related to the Shans. Following Husayn Shah's conquest of Kamata, his son Nusrat Shah (1519-32) attempted to invade the upper Brahmaputra valley but was defeated. Four years later the Bengali sultans launched several naval attacks on the Ahoms but were repulsed. Then, in 1532, Nusrat Shah was assassinated, and the Bengali attacks on Ahom ceased. Finally the great Ahom ruler Suhungmung (1497-1539) crushed the Nagas of the north-eastern hills and made the Ahom kingdom very powerful.⁴

TIRHUT

Tirhut (Mithila or Videha), bounded by the Himalayas on the north and the Kosi, Gandak, and Ganga on the east, west, and south, was also frequently attacked by the thirteenth-century Turks, but the Karnataka kings of Mithila succeeded in retaining their independence. In 1324-5, however, the Delhi sultanate established its overlordship when Ghiyas'd-Din Tughluq conquered the Tirhut plains. His successor, Muhammad bin Tughluq, issued coins from Tirhut, now called Tughluqpur, while Firuz claimed suzerainty but left it under its Hindu ruler. Ilyas Shah of Bengal also invaded Tirhut and penetrated the interior of Nepal in 1349-50. Subsequently, Tirhut was constantly invaded - even Ibrahim Shah Sharqi of Jaunpur conquered it — and a mosque was

built at Darbhanga in 1402-3. Yet Tirhut maintained its internal autonomy despite frequent invasions by the Jaunpur and Bengal sultans, until Nusrat Shah of Bengal finally annexed it and appointed his brother-in-law governor of the province. As an island of Hindu culture, the small state of Tirhut preserved ancient Sanskrit works and patronized Sanskrit scholars.⁵

ORISSA

The independence of Orissa, the coastal plain between the Ganga and the Godavari, was also threatened in Ghiyasu'd-Din Tugh-luq's reign, while Firuz Tughluq's invasion saw the desecration of the famous Jagannath temple at Puri. Bhanudeva III (1352-78) of Orissa submitted to Firuz, promising to send an annual tribute of elephants. Orissa's independence was equally endangered by the Sharqi kings of Jaunpur, the Bahmanids of the Deccan, the Reddis of Kondavidu (the region between the Krishna and the Godavari), and the Vijayanagara empire.

Kapilendra (c. 1434-67), the founder of the Gajapati dynasty of Orissa, defended his kingdom from both the Bahmani and Vijayanagara incursions. Purushottama (1467-97), his successor, lost the southern half of the territory from the Godavari downwards. Under his successors the kingdom was gradually eroded. In 1568 it was annexed by the independent Afghan kingdom of Bengal.⁶

RAJASTHAN

Rajasthan (the homeland of the Hindu rajas) was the land occupied by the royal families called rajputs (princes). It was composed of independent and semi-independent principalities which came into existence after their liberation from Khalji and Tughluq domination. The most important of these were Mewar and Marwar. Hammir (1314—78) of the Sisodia branch of the Guhilaputras (Guhilots) was the liberator of the medieval state of Mewar which had been conquered by 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji. In the early fifteenth century the discovery of silver and lead greatly strengthened the kingdom's economy. A new system of weights and measures was introduced. Trade and commerce also increased. An artificial lake, now called Pichhola in modern Udaipur, was excavated, and pilgrims were given state funds to travel to Hindu religious centres.⁷

1. Jami' Masjid (Congregational Mosque), Delhi (p. 296)
2. Pietra Dura in the I'timadu'd-Dawla's tomb, Agra (pp. 293-4)
3. Screen in the Diwan-i Khass in the Red Fort, Delhi (p. 297)
4. Screen of the Sidi Sayyid Mosque, Ahmadabad, Gujarat (p. 286)

5. The Panch Mahal, Fathpur-Sikri (pp. 22-3)
6. The throne in the Diwan-i'Amm, in the Red Fort (p. 296)
7. Jami' Masjid at Mandu, pulpit with canopy (p. 284)
8. Sikri Mosque from the courtyard. The columns of Shaykh Salim Chishti's tomb may be seen in front (p. 291)
9. Sher Shah's mosque in the old Fort, Delhi (p. 289)
10. Madrasa (college) of Mahmud Gawan in Bidar (p. 287)
11. Shaykh Ruknu'd-Din Multani's tomb at Multan (p. 281)
12. Mandu, Jahaz Mahal (p. 284)
13. Humayun's tomb in New Delhi (p. 290)
14. The interior of the Jodh Bai's palace (p. 292)

In the fifteenth century Rana Kumbhakarana (1433-68) increased his army and built numerous forts to strengthen his defences. He took the petty Rajput states, which owed suzerainty to the Malwa sultans, under his protection. In 1437 he defeated Mahmud Khalji and built a victory tower in Chitor.

Kumbha seized Nagaur and gained many victories over his Rajput enemies. He also defended his territory from the incursions by Malwa and Gujarat on his eastern and western boundaries respectively.⁸ Kumbha was also a poet, a man of letters, and a musician, writing commentaries on several Sanskrit works. He built many temples, and his architect Mandana composed a treatise on house building, iconography, and ornamentation.⁹ The Jain community in his kingdom also erected several temples; the most famous are at Rangpur, Sirohi, and Chitor.

Kumbha was followed by two weak rulers, and then the greatest ruler of the dynasty, Rana Sanga (1508-28), ascended the throne. In 1518 Rana Sanga gained a resounding victory over Sultan Mahmud II of Malwa, although the latter had obtained assistance from the Sultan of Gujarat. Kalpi, Bhilsa, Ranthambhor, Sarangpur, and Chanderi, belonging to Malwa, were seized and assigned to chiefs who paid tribute to the Rana. Three years later a Gujarat army, which arrived at Idar to overthrow the local Rajput chief and install his protegee on the throne, was driven off by the Rana and chased as far as Ahmadabad. Sultan Ibrahim Lodi's bid to annex Ranthambhor and Ajmir to the Delhi sultanate led Rana Sanga to make peace with the Sultan of Gujarat and to persuade Babur to invade Delhi.

The other leading Rajput state, Marwar, was ruled by the Rathors. Its enterprising ruler, Rao Chanda (1384—1423) seized Khattu, Didwana, Sambhar, Nagaur, and Ajmir. One of his successors, Jodha (1438-89) was a restless warrior who greatly extended his principality. In 1459

he built Jodhpur, naming it after himself, and later, Mandor fort.¹⁰ Rana Kumbha made an alliance with him, realistically fixing the Mewar and Marwar boundaries." The greatest Rathor ruler was Maldeva (1532-62).

KASHMIR

Kashmir was attacked even by Muhammad bin Qasim, the conqueror of Sind, but neither he nor other Arab invaders succeeded in conquering it. Mahmud of Ghazni's attempt to capture Kashmir also failed. In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries,

62

however, Muslim families began to move to the Kashmir valley, where they obtained employment under its Hindu rulers. One of the settlers was Shah Mir, who arrived apparently from Swat with his family in 1313. Seven years later the Mongol invaders callously slaughtered most of the Kashmiri population and shook the foundations of Hindu rule. After the invaders had left the valley, Rinchana of the Ladakh ruling family, who served the commander-in-chief of Suhadeva, the Hindu ruler of Kashmir, seized the throne. Because he was a Tibetan Buddhist, Rinchana did not get much co-operation from the local Hindu noblemen. The rising wave of Mongol conversions to Islam in Iran and Transoxiana seems eventually to have prompted him to become Muslim, although Shah Mir played an important part in this decision. The stories surrounding Rinchana's conversion may be dismissed as stock-in-trade legends attributed to innumerable conversions.¹² He adopted the name Sadru'd-Din. After his death in 1323, Hindu rule was re-established in Kashmir. Nevertheless Shah Mir retained his influence and became very popular when his followers repulsed a second Mongol invasion. He won over the leading Hindu noblemen to his side; imprisoned the widow of the Hindu raja, Kota Rani, whom he subsequently married; and became king in 1339 under the title Shamsu'd-Din. Thus the Shah Mir dynasty of Kashmir was founded. He changed the Hindu feudal framework to the Turkic system based on assigning iqta's which he gave to his loyal commanders, both Hindu and Muslim. Shamsu'd-Din fixed the land tax at 17 per cent on the gross produce and abolished a considerable number of imposts.

Sixteen more members of the Shah Mir dynasty ruled Kashmir between 1342 and 1561. One of them, 'Ala'u'd-Din (1343-54), transferred his capital from Indrakot to 'Ala'u'd-Din-pur (Srinagar). Sultan Shihabu'd-Din (1354-73) loved fighting. He conquered Pakhli, invaded Gilgit, defeated the Kashghari Mongols, and penetrated Ladakh and then Nagarkot. Regions from Kish-twar to Jammu were also conquered by him.¹⁴

His successor, Sultan Qutbu'd-Din (1373-89), conquered Punch. During the reign of his son Sikandar (1389-1413), Timur invaded India, but Sikandar was able to save Kashmir by diplomatic negotiations with the invaders. Sikandar also sent a successful expedition against the ruler of Ohind. During his reign a considerable number of Muslims, who had been displaced by Timur's invasions, migrated from Iran and Transoxiana to Srinagar. Their presence led the Sultan to Persianize the administration and the life of the Kashmiri Muslims. The process had already begun during his father's reign with the arrival of Mir Sayyid 'Ali Hamadani and

his followers. Sikandar's prime minister, Suha Bhatta, who had embraced Islam, strove to Islamicize the country with the efficiency of a new broom. The Kashmiri brahmins were dismissed from top positions. Important temples, including the famous sun-temple of Martand, were desecrated and destroyed. For the first time jizya was imposed on the Hindus. Before his death, however, conscious of the problems resulting from his persecution of the brahmins, the Sultan 'fixed with some difficulty a limit to the advance of the great sea of yavanas (Muslims) and abolished turushkadanda (jizya)'.¹⁵

Sikandar's policy was completely reversed by his successor, Sultan Zaynu'l-'Abidin (1420-70). He rebuilt some of the temples destroyed by Sikandar and encouraged the brahmins who had left Kashmir to return to their homeland and resume their former high positions. Islamicized Hindus were also permitted to revert to their ancestral faith. Cremation tax (Hindus burned their dead) was abolished, and cow slaughter (which was contrary to Hinduism) was prohibited. Even sati (the Hindu custom of burning widows on their husband's funeral pyre), which Sikandar had abolished, was permitted. Muslims who supported these policies were also treated generously by the Sultan, and many eminent Muslim scholars moved to Kashmir from India and other Islamic countries. The wave of Islamicization which had been rising among the non-brahmin classes did not, however, subside.

The Sultan was a patron of education and learning. He founded Muslim schools in Srinagar, staffed them with famous scholars, and offered grants to students. He established a department to translate Sanskrit works into Persian and vice versa. The translation of the Mahabharata and Kalhana's Rajatarangini into Persian was its most outstanding achievement.

The Sultan was also interested in developing crafts. It would seem that paper had previously been imported into Kashmir from Samarkand, but the Sultan sent his own artisans there to learn paper making and book binding. Before long, Kashmir became an important centre for both these crafts. Under the Sultan's personal guidance, powder for fireworks was also manufactured in Kashmir. Crafts such as stone polishing, stone cutting, bottle making, window cutting, and gold beating developed in Kashmir because of Sultan Zaynu'l-'Abidin's patronage.¹⁶ The Sultan also fostered the development of agriculture; a number of new canals and tanks were dug, and dams were constructed. The Sultan appreciated the necessity of a strong army and stable government and forced regions such as Ladakh and Baltistan to reacknowledge the suzerainty of the Kashmir sultans.¹⁷ Friendly relations were established with the Timurid rulers of Khurasan and Transoxiana, the

kings of Gilan and Egypt, and the sherifs of Mecca. Many independent Hindu and Muslim rulers also exchanged envoys with him.

The Kashmiris gave Sultan Zaynu'l-'Abidin, the title Bad Shah (the Great King), and he is still remembered by it. His successors were unable to match his achievements, although they were interested in promoting the social and cultural life of the region. Eventually the weaker rulers fell

under the domination of adventurers. In 1540 Mirza Haydar Dughlat, whose mother was the sister of Babur's mother, captured Kashmir with the help of disloyal Kashmiris. The Mirza began to rule in the name of Nazuk Shah of the Shah Mir dynasty. Although Haydar streamlined the administration and built many new monuments, he was unable to command the loyalty of the Kashmiri upper classes and in October 1551 he was killed whilst quelling a rebellion. Three rulers of the Shah Mir family succeeded him, but in 1561 the Kashmiri Chaks established a new dynasty and provided the next six rulers until 1588, when Akbar annexed Kashmir to the Mughal empire.

JAUNPUR

Among the dynasties founded by the governors appointed by Firuz Tughluq or his successors, a short-lived but brilliant line was that of the Sharqis of Jaunpur, north of Varanasi. It was founded by Malik Sarwar, a eunuch belonging to Sultan Firuz Tughluq. Malik Sarwar's remarkably rapid rise to power was due largely to the anarchy which followed Firuz's death. Firuz's younger son, Muhammad Shah (1390-3) eventually conferred the title Sultanu'sh-Sharq (Ruler of the Eastern Kingdom) upon him and made him his vizier.¹⁸ As a reward for his services he was in 1394 appointed governor of Jaunpur, where he firmly crushed uprisings by the Hindu chiefs of Avadh and Bihar. The chiefs of Darbhanga, Muzaffarpur, Champaran, and Tirhut acknowledged his over-lordship. When Timur left Delhi, Sarwar proclaimed himself the independent ruler of Jaunpur. Before his death in November 1399 the western boundary of his kingdom had been extended to Kol (modern 'Aligarh), Sambhal (Muradabad), and Rapri (Mainpuri district). His eastern borders now ran along Bihar and Tirhut.¹⁹

Although Sultanu'sh-Sharq was succeeded by his adopted son Malik Mubarak Qaranfal (1399-1401), it was his younger brother, Ibrahim Shah Sharqi (1401-40) who made Jaunpur a powerful kingdom. He made an alliance with Kirti Singh of Tirhut. When

65

Tirhut was attacked by a Muslim adventurer, he sent his forces to help him and also attended his coronation. Then he invaded Bengal to remove the Hindu ruler Ganesa from the throne and annexed the petty independent sultanate of Kalpi to his kingdom. He invaded Delhi too, forcing the Sayyid sultan there, Muhammad Shah (1435-46), to make peace with him and sealing the alliance with a marriage between his son and the Sultan's daughter.²⁰

Ibrahim's son, Mahmud Shah Sharqi (1440-57), was also an ambitious ruler. In 1452 he captured Delhi but lost it through the treachery of his Afghan commander, Darya Khan, who supported Delhi's first Afghan ruler, Bahlul Lodi. Bahlul Lodi (1451-89) consolidated the eastern boundaries of the Delhi sultanate from Etawa to Shamsabad. In Jaunpur, Mahmud's successor, Muhammad, was deposed after a few months because of his excessive cruelty. The next ruler, Husayn Shah Sharqi, made peace with Bahlul, strengthened the army, and forced Orissa and Gwalior to submit to him.²¹ In 1469 he invaded Delhi but was driven away before he could cross the Jamuna. In retaliation the Delhi Sultan Bahlul, not content with Etawa and Shamsabad as his eastern boundary, attacked Jaunpur. Husayn Shah had frittered away his resources in raising huge armies, but his three successive bids to defeat Bahlul failed. In 1481-2 he sustained

a crushing defeat near Kanauj. Bahlul reached Jaunpur in a series of forced marches and seized it, issuing coins there in 1483—4.22 Husayn made four more successive efforts to expel Bahlul's governor from Jaunpur, but Bahlul defeated Husayn and forced him to seek refuge in Bihar. The Rajputs, particularly the Bachgotis, were Husayn's staunch supporters and helped him to establish his rule over an area between Chunar and Bihar. In 1494 he suffered another crushing defeat at the hands of Bahlul's successor, Sultan Sikandar Lodi, near Banaras. Sikandar seized Bihar fort, while Husayn Shah took refuge with Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Husayn Shah (1493-1518) of Bengal. Sikandar stayed at Jaunpur for six months, demolishing the Sharqi monuments in order to demonstrate his control of the district.²³ Only the mosques were spared. Husayn Shah died in 1505.

The sultans of Jaunpur were frequently helped by the Hindu chiefs against their Muslim opponents, particularly the Lodis. The fall of the Sharqi kingdom was deemed a personal loss by these Hindu rulers. This short-lived kingdom surpassed others in helping the cause of cultural synthesis and social rapprochement.

66

MALWA

The kingdom of Malwa was founded by Husayn Ghuri, whom Firuz Tughluq had made a noble, giving him the title Dilawar Khan. In 1390—1 Firuz's son, Sultan Nasiru'd-Din Muhammad, appointed Dilawar governor of Malwa. After Timur's departure from India, Dilawar proclaimed himself the independent ruler of Malwa with his capital at Dhar.²⁴ His son, Alp Khan, reinforced the defences by completing the fortification of Mandu. Dilawar maintained a conciliatory religious policy which made both Rajputs and other Hindus friendly to him. He even settled Rajputs in his newly acquired territory of Nimar. Dilawar extended his kingdom by snatching Saugar and Damoh from the Delhi sultanate and making the ruler of Chanderi accept his overlordship.

After his death in 1406-7 his son, Alp Khan, became the Sultan of Malwa with the title Hushang Shah (1406-35). Almost immediately Sultan Muzaffar Shah of Gujarat invaded Malwa, defeating Hushang and taking him captive. Nusrat, Muzaffar's brother, who was appointed the governor of Malwa, was unable to control it and returned to Gujarat. Muzaffar intended to crush the popular uprising in Malwa by force, but good sense prevailed and he restored the throne to Hushang. Back in his kingdom, Hushang transferred his capital to Mandu. He then invaded Rai Narsingh Kherla's kingdom in the southern part of Gondvana in order to obtain military assistance and a supply of elephants.²⁶ Profiting from Hushang's absence, Ahmad I of Gujarat besieged Mandu, but Hushang, eluding the invading army, returned to the city, forcing Ahmad to retreat. Hushang then seized Gagraun. His subsequent invasion of Gwalior, however, failed because Mubarak Shah of Delhi relieved the besieged fort. Hushang ensured his popularity with the majority Hindu population by introducing a policy of religious toleration, although he also encouraged the 'ulama' and sufis to settle in Mandu. Many Rajputs settled in his kingdom and served his army loyally. The Jains also supported him and proved an asset to the promotion of trade and commerce in Malwa. Although constant wars against the rulers of Gujarat, Jaunpur, Delhi, and the Bahmanids brought no material gains to his kingdom, they frustrated his neighbours'

expansionist designs. Before his death in 1435 Hushang also founded a new town, Hushangabad, on the river Narbada.

His son and heir, Muhammad Shah, was an ineffectual ruler and was deposed by one of his nobles, who ascended the throne in 1436, with the title Mahmud Khalji (1436-69). He crushed Ghurid

67

resistance and established the Khalji dynasty. In 1442 he invaded Delhi, but Ahmad Shah of Gujarat's invasion of Malwa forced him to make peace and return to Mandu. In 1443 Mahmud attacked Chitor but, finding the fort impregnable, retreated. The historians of Malwa kingdom nevertheless claim victory for their ruler. Mahmud next captured the Gagraun and Mandalgarh forts on the Malwa border and later, in 1457, again marched against Chitor, once more unsuccessfully. His wars against the Sultan of Gujarat were abortive, too, and he eventually concluded an agreement guaranteeing the integrity of their borders. The two rulers also divided Mewar between them into respective areas for future military operations. Thrice Mahmud's efforts to seize parts of the Bahmanid territory failed because the ruler received timely assistance from the Sultan of Gujarat. Mahmud was at length forced to make a treaty with the Bahmanids, cementing good neighbourly relations.²⁷ Before his death in 1469 a realistic boundary had been established for Malwa on its Gujarat and Deccan borders.

Mahmud was interested in all aspects of community life. He actively promoted the development of agriculture and trade, established centres of Islamic learning, and encouraged scholars from other parts of India to move to Mandu. The hospital he founded there was a large establishment with provision for free medicine.

The reign of Mahmud's successor, Ghiyas Shah (1469-1501), saw a period of peace and prosperity. In 1482 he marched to the assistance of Rawal Jai Singh, the Raja of Champanir, when he was invaded by the Sultan of Gujarat. Realizing that he would actually have to fight the Sultan, however, he returned home on the pretext that the 'ulama' were opposed to him helping a Hindu ruler.²⁸ Ghiyas Shah collected about 16,000 slave girls in his palace, including the daughters of many Hindu chieftains. An army of Ethiopians and Turkic slave girls was formed to act as guards. Another five hundred pretty girls were trained in state business, and a bazaar run by women was opened in the palace. Mahmud quaintly combined his voluptuous desires with nightly prayers and vigils. He was easily duped by people pretending to be religious.²⁹ His elder son, 'Abdu'l Qadir Nasir Shah, whom he appointed his successor, had a very aggressive nature. He beheaded his younger brother and, although his father was still living, proclaimed himself king. Ghiyas abdicated, dying, possibly from poisoning, four months after surrendering the throne.³⁰

Nasir Shah's despotic character and heavy drinking disgusted his nobles. His rule ended in 1510. His third son, who came to the throne as Mahmud II (1511-31), appointed Medini Rai, the

68

Rajput chief of Chanderi, as his vizier, in order to frustrate the intrigues of his Muslim noblemen. Medinl Rai filled all the important positions with his own supporters. He also ordered that Muslim women be trained as dancing girls, in retaliation for Ghiyas's treatment of Hindu women. The Sultan ultimately grew to hate Medinl, and he escaped to Gujarat. Early in January 1518 he returned with Sultan Muzaffar Shah of Gujarat, and captured Mandu. Leaving a supportive Gujarat contingent, Muzaffar returned to his capital.³¹ Medinl then seized Gagraun. Mahmud besieged him but was defeated by Rana Sanga, who rushed to relieve Mandu. Rana Sanga captured the Sultan and took him to Chitor but when his wounds had healed the Rana sent him back to Mandu and restored him to his throne. Comparing Muzaffar's assistance to Mahmud Khalji with the Rana's magnanimity, a Mughal historian gives the greater credit to the Rana; for Muhammad had helped a refugee, while the Rana had restored his kingdom to his captive enemy.³² Muzaffar again sent a contingent to Mahmud's assistance, but the Sultan grew suspicious of his intentions and sent the Gujaratis back. Before long all the border region was taken from Mahmud. Medinl Rai seized Chanderi, while his associate Silahdi occupied Bhilsa and Raisen. Rana Sanga invaded Mandasor. Harauti, Khichiwara, and Satwas also became independent. Then Mahmud offended the Sultan of Gujarat by sheltering his rebellious brother. In March 1531 Bahadur Shah of Gujarat captured Mandu. Mahmud and his sons were sent as captives to Champanir but were killed on the way. For six years Malwa remained under the control of Gujarat but after Bahadur Shah's death in 1537 it regained its independence.

Malwa's new sultan was Mallu-Khan, who adopted the title Qadir Shah. He was a far-sighted ruler, making peace with Silahdi's sons, who ruled over Raisen, and improving relations with the Rajput chieftains. Sher Shah, the Sur ruler of Delhi, however, conquered Malwa and installed Afghan governors there.

KHANDESH

The kingdom of Khandesh, lying between the rivers Tapti and Narbada, was not very large, but the need to maintain the balance of power between the Gujarat, Malwa, and Bahmanid rulers ensured its independence. The kingdom's founder, Malik Raja or -Raja Ahmad, had been assigned Thalnir and Kuronda as an iqta' by Firuz Tughluq in 1370. Raja Ahmad subdued the local chief-tains

69

and then became an independent ruler in 1382, making his capital Thalnir. He unsuccessfully attempted to take Sultanpur and Nandrbar from Gujarat, and this area always remained a bone of contention between the two neighbouring kingdoms. He married his daughter to Hushang, and his son married Dilawar's daughter. This brought him two strong allies. Before his death in April 1399 he had succeeded in firmly consolidating the Khandesh kingdom. He claimed descent from the Galiph 'Umar, whose title was Faruq, and the dynasty was therefore known as the Faruqi dynasty.³³

Malik Raja's successor, Nasir Khan, captured the impregnable fort of Asirgarh by subterfuge. He built a new town by the river Tapti. Zaynu'd-Din, a disciple of the famous Chishtiyya. sufi Shaykh Burhanu'd-Din Gharib, suggested to Malik that the town should be named after his

master, so Nasir Khan called it Burhanpur. Nasir was deeply devoted to Zaynu'd-Din, and the next town he founded was called Zaynabad after him. In 1417, reinforced by the Malwa army, he invaded the eastern region of Gujarat, but Sultan Ahmad Shad repulsed the attack and, following at the heels of the vanquished army, besieged Asirgarh. Ultimately Nasir concluded a peace treaty with Ahmad, who in turn recognized Nasir's right to rule over Khandesh. Nasir died in 1437.³⁴ His successors, 'Adil Khan (d. 1441) and Mubarak Khan (d. 1457), accepted Gujarat's overlordship. 'Adil Khan II (d. 1501) was more enterprising and several times invaded regions belonging to the rajas of Gondvana and Jharkhand and the Kol and Bhil tribes. Under 'Adil Khan's successor, Khandesh was torn by dynastic rivalries which enabled Gujarat to tighten its control over the country.

GUJARAT

The independent kingdom of Gujarat was founded by Zafar Khan, son of Sadharan, a Jat convert to Islam. Sadharan's sister was married to Firuz Tughluq. Zafar Khan was appointed governor of Gujarat in 1391, with the title Muzaffar Khan. Despite his advanced age, he firmly suppressed the rebellious Muslim noblemen and Hindu chieftains. He remained loyal to the Delhi sultanate, even after Timur left India and anarchy prevailed there. In 1403-4 he was deposed by his son, Tatar Khan; but his uncle, Shams Khan Dandani, then poisoned Tatar Khan, and Zafar was restored to the throne.³⁵ In 1407 Muzaffar declared his independence

70

as Muzaffar Shah. He died in 1411 and was succeeded by Shihabu'd-Din Ahmad Shah (1411-42), the son of the dead Tatar Khan.³⁶

Ahmad Shah's rule of thirty-one years was a period of relentless warfare but also saw the consolidation of the Gujarat sultanate. In 1416 he crushed a rebellious confederacy of Rajputs, reinforced by Hushang's army, in the north-west. Two years later Ahmad invaded Malwa, bringing home to Hushang that Malwa was no match for Gujarat. A truce was signed in 1419. Hushang subsequently invaded Jajnapur to obtain more elephants. His absence prompted Sultan Ahmad to make forced marches to Mandu, but the garrison there stoutly defended the fort. Hushang returned meanwhile and was defeated by Ahmad near Sarangpur. Ahmad was still unable to capture Mandu fort, returning to Gujarat in May 1423.³⁷

After 1425 Gujarat entered upon an era of intermittent warfare with the Rajput Raja of Idar. Ahmad also exacted tribute from the Rajput chieftains of Champanir, Dungarpur, Kota, and Bund! to help finance his campaigns and enhance his power. He died in 1442.

Muslim historians praise Ahmad for his devotion to sufis and for his determination to destroy idols.³⁸ He forced the Rajput chiefs to marry their daughters to him in order to make them outcastes in their own community, thereby ensuring their subservience to him. His Muslim nobles also pursued the same policy, and the interracial marriages gave rise to a mixed religious group in Gujarat.³⁹ The soldiers in his army drew half their salary in cash from the royal treasury and half from land-tax assignments. To ensure his subjects' obedience and to prevent

them uniting against him, half of the civil posts in each department went to the free-born Muslims and the other half to slaves.

Ahmad's successor, Muhammad Shah (1442—51), was a mild ruler, as was the next Sultan, Qutbu'd-Din Ahmad Shah II (1451-9). Fath Khan, who ascended the throne aged thirteen as Muhmud Shah (1459-1511), was the greatest Muslim ruler of Gujarat. Soon after his coronation the ruler of Khandesh sought his assistance in repelling an invasion by Muhmud Khalji of Malwa. Despite his youth, Mahmud's military exploits so impressed the Malwa Sultan that he decided that no military solutions could be maintained while Gujarat had such a strong ruler, and he ceased attacking the buffer state of Khandesh.

In 1461 Mahmud defeated the Muslim ruler of Jalor in south Rajasthan and made him his protege. He then seized the port of Daman on the west coast from its Hindu rulers. Initially, in 1466,

71

he exacted tribute from the Yadava Prince of Girnar (Junagarh) but four years later he annexed Girnar to his sultanate, thereby gaining control of the flourishing port of Veraval. Mahmud founded a new town at the foot of the Girnar hills, Mustafabad, where he settled members of the Muslim religious classes and elite.⁴⁰

He then fought the Sumra, Soda, and Kahla tribes of the Kacch border who, although they had been Islamicized, still practised Hindu customs. After defeating them he sent some of their leaders to Mustafabad to learn the Shari'a laws. In Sind his maternal grandfather, Jam Nizamu'd-Din, ruled effectively because of his relationship to Mahmud, which not only prevented the Gujarats from attacking him but also deterred other potential invaders. In 1473, as a reprisal for a pirate attack on a Muslim merchant, Mahmud sacked Dvarka, north-west of Kathiawar peninsula. After that he foiled an attempt to depose him by his nobles. Then he attacked Champanlr, which was surrendered by the Rajputs in 1484 after two years of intense fighting, during which the Gujarats bombarded the fort with mortars and rockets. Meanwhile the ruler of Khandesh, having conquered Gondvana, Garha, Mandala, Kolls, and Bhils, had become puffed up with his own importance. So, in 1498, the Sultan invaded Khandesh and forced its ruler, 'Adil Khan, to take an oath of loyalty to him.⁴¹

Mahmud's supremacy was threatened only by the Portuguese. After the arrival of Vasco da Gama in Calicut in 1498, the Portuguese became a serious threat to the trade of Cambay and other Gujarat ports. In the battle of Chaul in January 1508 the governor of Junagarh and the Egyptian fleet sent by the Mamluk Sultan were victorious, but the Egyptian and Gujarati fleets were routed by the Portuguese in February 1509. Mahmud realized that the Portuguese were invincible at sea and opened negotiations for peace with Governor Albuquerque. In November 1510 the Portuguese conquest of Goa, which belonged to the 'Adil Shahi ruler of Bijapur, so greatly enhanced Portuguese power that Mahmud unconditionally released his Portuguese hostages, and the Egyptian-Gujarat confederacy was broken.⁴²

Mahmud died in November 1511. According to the Italian adventurer Ludovico de Varthema, Mahmud's beard reached his girdle, and he tied his inordinately long moustaches behind his head. According to Barbosa, he had been regularly fed on some poison since childhood, with the result that 'if a fly settled on his hand it fell dead'.⁴³ His ravenous hunger led him to consume enormous amounts of food. His title 'Begarha' was a constant reminder of both his conquest of the two forts, Junagarh and

72

Champanir, and his moustaches, for the Gujarati word vegara means a bullock with sweeping horns.⁴⁴

Mahmud's successor, Muzaffar II (1511-26), was a gentle but active ruler. He refused to allow the Portuguese to build a fortress at Div; instead he strengthened its defences and foiled two successive Portuguese attempts to seize it. He also helped Mahmud of Malwa without any motives of personal gain. Although he loved music and patronized musicians, this did not conflict with his piety. His death in 1526 was followed by the brief reigns of two incompetent rulers. Then Bahadur Shah (1526-37) ascended the throne. He was the last of the energetic Gujarat rulers. Early in 1531 his navy, in collaboration with the Turkish fleet, defeated the Portuguese fleet which took shelter in Goa. Next, he annexed Malwa to his kingdom and then arrested Silahdi, the ruler of Raisen, Sarangpur, and Bhilsa, when Silahdi visited the Sultan in his camp to conclude a treaty. Bahadur then seized Raisen and gave it to a Lodi chief from Kalpi, whom the Emperor Humayun had expelled from his territory. In March 1535 the use of artillery belonging to the Turkish gunner Rumi Khan made the Sultan master of Chitor. Rumi Khan, however, disappointed at the Sultan's refusal to make him governor of Chitor, decided to betray him. The opportunity arose before long, when Humayun, in pursuit of Bahadur, reached Mandasor. Rumi Khan urged the sultan first to strengthen his defences and then to make short work of Humayun by using his superior artillery. The suggestion seemed reasonable, but Bahadur's loyal commanders rightly rejected it.⁴⁵ They believed that the victorious Gujarati army's best interest lay in an immediate assault. Waiting around would only destroy their morale. While the defences were being strengthened, Humayun naturally seized the opportunity to cut off supplies to Bahadur's camp, and his army starved. Rumi Khan deserted to Humayun at the end of April 1535, and Bahadur had no alternative but to retreat to Mandu. Chased by Humayun, Bahadur fled from Mandu to Champanir. From there he sent extremely valuable presents to the Ottoman Sultan, Suiayman the Magnificent (1520-66), in the unrealistic hope of obtaining his help. Humayun's pursuit was relentless; Bahadur had to flee to Cambay. There he burnt his fleet of one hundred warships in order to prevent them falling into Humayun's hands, and sailed to Div. In the despairing hope of obtaining assistance from the Portuguese, Bahadur granted them permission to erect a fort at Div, which he had until then refused.⁴⁶ Humayun conquered Champanir and then Ahmadabad. He marched on to Div but then had to abandon the pursuit of Bahadur in order to deal with Sher Khan's threat to his throne.

73

Bahadur took the opportunity to leave Div and, reassembling his army, regained his lost kingdom. Now regretting his concessions to the Portuguese, Bahadur marched to Gogha near

Div, but was outwitted by the Portuguese and slain while returning from negotiations aboard their flagship. On 13 February 1537 he died. With his death the glory of the independent kingdom of Gujarat vanished. Its extinction by Akbar was only a matter of time.

THE WESTERN COAST

Ibn Battuta, who visited the western coast of India in 1343-4, mentioned several Hindu principalities which ruled between San-dapur (Goa) and Quilon. A sizeable community of Muslim merchants lived there comfortably, and their Muslim ruler, Jamalu'd-Din Muhammad of Hinawr (Honovar), owed suzerainty to the Hindu Hoysala king. The Hindu King of Calicut was the most powerful ruler on the coast. He was called Samutiru in Malyalam, but Samuri (meaning Sea-King) by the Arabs and Zamorin by the Portuguese. The Arabs, who exercised a monopoly of the trade between Malabar and the Red Sea, enjoyed considerable respect at the Zamorin court.⁴⁷

On 17 May 1498 Vasco da Gama, who had left Lisbon with three vessels on 8 July 1497, touched land eight miles north of Calicut. The Zamorin welcomed the Portuguese, but the Muslims were alarmed. They poisoned the Zamorin's mind against the Portuguese and convinced him that the newcomers were spies who would bring huge forces to conquer the country. Their prophecies were not groundless. The Portuguese had meanwhile discovered that the Hindu princes on the Malabar coast were jealous of each other and that the region, which depended for food on grain vessels from the Coromandel coast, was extremely sensitive to a sea blockade. Most importantly they had learned that the Indian and Arab ships could not withstand cyclones and typhoons and sailed from Gujarat to Aden and Basra, from Bengal to Malacca, and from Malabar to Malacca, only at particular times of the year. By contrast, the Portuguese ships could hold the seas in all weathers, and their cannon could destroy Indian ships with the first volley.

Vasco da Gama returned to Lisbon in August 1499 with a cargo of spices collected at Calicut. In March 1500 the King of Portugal sent a larger fleet of thirteen vessels carrying 1,200 men, under Pedro Alvarez Cabral, to destroy their Muslim enemies. Seven ships were lost on the way to Calicut, but the journey took only a

74

few days more than six months. The Zamorin welcomed but did not help them. War then broke out between the Portuguese and Muslims. The Portuguese sank ten Muslim vessels and bombarded the town of Calicut for two days. Cabral then sailed to the neighbouring port of Cochin, where the Raja gave him full support against the Muslims. Cabral also sank the ship which the Zamorin had sent to punish the Portuguese. The rajas of Cannaniore and Quilon became Portuguese allies; Cochin, which was better suited to trade, was transformed into the Portuguese trading headquarters.⁴⁸

The success of their first two expeditions prompted the Portuguese King to dispatch Vasco da Gama again in 1502, not only to destroy Arab trade but also to plant Christianity in India. Da Gama exerted considerable pressure on the Zamorin to expel all the Muslims from Calicut, but the Zamorin only partially complied with his demands. Da Gama then sank several Arab ships

and tortured the innocent men and women he captured. The Zamorin's attempted invasions of Cochin were easily repelled, and a war fleet, consisting of two or three hundred vessels sent to the Red Sea by the Zamorin and the Arabs, was destroyed by only four Portuguese ships.⁴⁹

In 1505 the Portuguese King introduced a scheme of appointing a viceroy to reside in India for three years. The first viceroy was Francisco de Almeida. His successor, Alfonso d'Albuquerque, who conquered Goa in March 1510, encouraged the Portuguese to marry Indian women and allotted them land and cattle. In 1511 Albuquerque conquered Malacca. A year later he foiled a Bijapuri commander's attempts to regain Goa: Portuguese dominance at sea gave them a monopoly of the horse trade, which they used as a weapon in their diplomatic manoeuvres with the Indian rulers. Albuquerque died in December 1515 and was buried in the church he had built in Goa. He had laid the foundation for Portuguese predominance in eastern waters. The next Portuguese objective in India was control of the Gujarati port of Div. Unfortunately for them, Malik Iyaz, governor of Div until his death in 1522, was a formidable adversary. He possessed vast personal resources, and his navy, fitted with heavy cannon and light pieces, was quite strong. Not only did he defend Div against Portuguese invasions; he also thwarted the intrigues of the Gujarati nobles, who saw no harm in granting the Portuguese permission to build a fort in Div in return for the right to trade freely.⁵⁰

After Iyaz's death, interest in protecting the Gujarati ports was stepped up by Sultan Bahadur, who built a fleet of some 160 sail. During his reign the Portuguese grew even more determined to

75

The Portuguese possessions in the East and the route to India

76

seize Div. In 1530 the Portuguese armada invaded Surat and sacked the town. Rander was also burnt, Bassein and other small ports were destroyed, but Div was impregnable. Only the threat of a Mughal invasion prompted Bahadur to cede Bassein and the surrounding territories to the Portuguese in December 1534. All Gujarati ships bound for the Red Sea had subsequently to call at Bassein to collect a permit to sail and trade and, on their return voyage, again had to go first to Bassein to pay duty. Permission to build a fort at Div was also later given to the Portuguese by Bahadur. After Bahadur's death, frequent Turkish reinforcements helped protect the Gujarat! ports, but the Portuguese rule of the sea made them masters of trade.⁵¹

MA'BAR

The annexation of the Deccan by Muhammad bin Tughluq was short-lived. The first region to rebel was the Coromandel coast, now the coastal area of Tamilnadu. The Arabs called it Ma'bar, or 'the pass' or 'ford'. In its capital, Madurai, merchants from Iran, Arabia, and China exchanged goods. Sayyid Ahsan Shah, whose daughter Ibn Battuta had married in Delhi, was Muhammad bin Tughluq's governor there. In 1333-4 he founded his independent kingdom but after ruling for five years he was murdered by one of his own nobles. Ahsan was succeeded by seven rulers, all

of whom suffered from the intrigues of their Muslim aristocracy. The Hindus naturally took the opportunity to regain their independence. Ma'bar's fourth ruler, Ghiyasu'd-Din Muhammad Damghan Shah (1340-5), like Ibn Battuta, was Sultan Ahsan Shah's son-in-law. He was an energetic warrior who destroyed his enemies ruthlessly.

Around 1364 the short-lived sultanate lost the greater part of its territory. Only Madurai remained, and in 1377-8 the Vijayanagara ruler annexed it to his kingdom.⁵²

THE BAHMANI KINGDOM

In Chapter I we outlined the circumstances that led Hasan Kangu to carve out the independent Bahmani kingdom in 1347.⁵³ Hasan Kangu assumed the title 'Ala'u'd-Din Hasan Bahman Shah. The court genealogists linked his ancestors with Bahman Isfandar, the Iranian king. The story that he was the servant of Gangu

77

Brahmin⁵⁴ of Delhi is also mythical, because he was a nephew of 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji's famous general, Hizabru'd-Din Zafar Khan.

Hasan made Gulbarga in north Karnataka his capital and subdued the pro-Tughluq and recalcitrant chiefs there. He captured Goa and occupied Dabol, making it his principal port on the Arabian Sea. His frontiers now extended as far as 'Bhongir in northern Telingana, so he divided the kingdom into four provinces; (1) Gulbarga with Raichur and Mudgal, (2) Daulatabad with Bir, Junnar, and Chaul, (3) Berar with Mahur, and (4) Bahmani Telingana with Indur and Kaulas.

'Ala'u'd-Din's successor, Muhammad I (1358-75), consolidated the kingdom most effectively. In 1363 the Raja of Warangal ceded Golkonda and its dependencies to the Sultan. The territory north of the river Tungabhadra had been a bone of contention between the rulers of these regions since ancient times. The Bahmanis were Muslims, and the Vijayanagara ruler was Hindu. The historians of each kingdom give an exaggerated communal colour to the wars between them, but they are essentially political.

The Bahmani Sultan took the field against Bukka and captured Mudgal but could not hold it. He penetrated deep into Vijayanagara territory but was again unable to consolidate his gains, and the war dragged on for several more months. At length the weary Sultan sued for peace; neither side gained any territory, although both suffered terrible human losses.

After 'Ala'u'd-Din's death in 1375 five sultans ruled up to 1397. During this period the tensions among the Bahmani population came to the fore. Immigrants such as Arabs, Turks, and Iranis, who were known as the Afaqis or Gharibs, were bitterly resented by the settlers from north India, the local Muslims, and the Habshis, who were known collectively as the Dakhinis. Hindu influence was rising in both cultural life and the government, and when Tajud-Din Flruz (1397-1422) ascended the throne he promoted Hindus to high office in order to offset any Afaqi predominance - although he also resumed the war against Vijayanagara. Like his predecessors,

he was unable to capture Vijayanagara but he forced Devaraya I to give him his daughter in marriage and to cede Bankapur fort as her dowry. In 1417 he again invaded the Vijayanagara kingdom but was defeated at Panagal (Nalagonda). In his old age Flruz was forced to surrender the government to his brother, Khan-i Khanan, who defeated his supporters. He died in 1422.⁵⁵

Ahmad I (1422-36) began his rule with a victory over the Raja of Warangal in 1424. He then shifted his capital from Gulbarga to Bidar, situated on a plateau not far from Warangal and Golkonda. He was more adventurous than his predecessors, soon defeating the

78

chief of Mahur and making it the northern outpost of his kingdom. In 1428 he made the ruler of Kherla his tributary chief and forced the ruler of Khandesh to marry his daughter to his (Ahmad's) son 'Ala'u'd-Din.⁵⁶ The Bahmanid army also advanced into Gujarat territory but was repulsed at Nandurbar. The Bahmani forces then seized Mahim near Bombay but soon lost it again. In retaliation the Gujaratis captured the Bahmani town of Thana. The fruitless war soon ended with a treaty between the two powers.

Although Ahmad's successor, 'Ala'u'd-Din (1436-58), was not as active as his father, he was also involved in wars against Vijayanagara, Khandesh, and Malwa. He had a fickle nature and first massacred the Afaqis on Dakhini allegations, then slaughtered the Dakhinis when the Afaqis lodged counter-complaints. Towards the end of his life he took to heavy drinking and dissipation. 'Ala'u'd-Din's successor, Humayun Shah (1458-61), appointed as prime minister an Iranian immigrant, Khwaja Mahmud Gilani (Gawan), who had arrived in the Deccan during his father's reign.⁵⁷ Mahmud tried to persuade the Afaqis and Dakhinis to channel their energies into state interests.

After Humayun's early death, Nizamu'd-Din II, who was only eight years old, ascended the throne. His extreme youth made administration exceedingly difficult, since the members of the council of regency could not agree amongst themselves. In 1461-2 Mahmud Khalji of Malwa invaded the Bahmani kingdom, routed the defending army, and besieged Bidar. The timely arrival of Mahmud Begarh of Gujarat at the head of 20,000 soldiers, however, forced Khalji to retreat. A year later Khalji again marched against the Deccan and besieged Daulatabad, but the news of Begarh's impending arrival forced him to withdraw once more.

In July 1463 Nizamu'd-Din died. The new ruler, Shamsu'd-Din Muhammad (1463-82), was also only about nine years old. The council of regents continued to rule, but two years later one of its members, Khwaja-i Jahan, died and then the second councillor, the Queen Mother, retired from politics. Mahmud Gawan was now the sole administrator of the Bahmani kingdom. Ignoring the hatred between the Dakhinis and the Afaqis, he gave the senior positions to the Dakhinis, and also brought the Hindu chiefs into the government, in order to establish a united Bahmani kingdom. The Russian traveller, Athanasius Nikitin, who visited the Deccan from 1469 to 1474 under the Muslim name Khwaja Yusuf Khurasani, says:

The Sultan (of Beder) is a little man, twenty years old, in the power of the

nobles. Khorassanians rule the country and serve in war. There is a Khorassanian Boyar, Melik-Tuchar, who keeps an army of 200,000 men; Melik Khan keeps 100,000; Kharat Khan, 20,000, and many are the khans that keep 10,000 armed men. The Sultan goes out with 300,000 men of his own troops. The land is overstocked with people; but those in the country are very miserable, whilst the nobles are extremely opulent and delight in luxury. They are wont to be carried on their silver beds, preceded by some twenty chargers caparisoned in gold, and followed by 300 men on horseback and 500 on foot, and by horn-men, ten torchbearers and ten musicians.⁵⁸

Mahmud Khalji's army penetrated the Bahmani borders in 1466 but was repulsed. Next year the Bahmani army seized Kherla in Malwa. Mahmud Gawan then agreed to sign a treaty with the Malwa Sultan, according to which Kherla was ceded to Malwa and Berar went to the Deccan. Mahmud Gawan's campaigns against the western coastal plains and the Konkan were a great success. He captured Ramgarh in July 1470 and Khelna in January 1471. Making Kolhapur his headquarters, he squashed the guerrilla wars in the hills and seized several forts. The recapture of Goa in February 1472 was Gawan's major victory, and three months later he returned to a hero's welcome in Bidar.⁵⁹ Daulatabad subsequently broke into revolt, but the governor, Yusuf 'Adil, crushed the rebels. Meanwhile, at Vijayanagara's instigation, the chief of Belgam rebelled and besieged Goa. Mahmud Gawan's enemies urged the Sultan to lead the campaign himself, and, accompanied by Mahmud Gawan, he marched against Belgam and besieged the fort. Gawan breached the walls by laying gunpowder mines, forcing the rebel chief to surrender.⁶⁰ The conquests during Shamsu'd-Din's reign extended the Bahmani's frontiers to Khandesh in the north, Tungabhadra in the south, and Orissa in the north-east, and included Goa in the south-west.

Gawan's administrative reforms weakened the power of the provincial governors, who had often intrigued against him and frequently rebelled. Eight provinces were carved out of the existing four districts, and certain areas in each of them were placed directly under the central administration, while their revenue was reserved for the state. The governors were allowed personal control over only one fortress in their territory; the remaining forts in their lands were surrendered to the commanders appointed by the central government. All the military commanders were paid partly in cash and partly by iqta' assignments. Iqta' holders were directly accountable to the Sultan for revenue receipts and the payment of salaries to their levies. The land was measured, and revenue records were reorganized. Gawan developed friendly relations with the Ottoman

Sultan Muhammad II (1441-6, 1451-81), the conqueror of Constantinople. He wrote letters to the rulers of Gilan, Iraq, and Egypt and corresponded with the rulers and ministers of Gujarat, Jaunpur, and Malwa.

Mahmud Gawan built a college in Bidar which made the Deccan an important intellectual centre. Nevertheless, the curtailment of their power alienated the senior governors from him; in particular Nizamul-Mulk, the governor of Rajamundri, could not accept the truncation of

Telingana. The dissatisfied nobles bribed Gawan's secretary to affix his master's seal to a sheet of blank paper. They then wrote on it a treasonable letter to the Raja of Orissa and showed it to the Sultan. Gawan admitted that the seal was his but denied writing the letter. The Sultan, unconvinced by Gawan's explanations, had him executed in April 1481. Many of Gawan's friends were also beheaded.⁶¹ Although the Sultan did not outlive Gawan by more than twelve months, his subsequent inquiries revealed Gawan's innocence.

THE FIVE DECCAN KINGDOMS

Shamsu'd-Din Muhammad Shah's successor, Shihabu'd-Din Mahmud, ruled from 1482 to 1518. During his reign the factional wars between the Dakhinis and Afaqis assumed serious proportions. The central administration, which had been strengthened by Mahmud Gawan, collapsed within a few years, and the governors became rebellious. In 1487 Fathu'llah 'Imadu'l-Mulk, then governor of Berar, became virtually independent, while Qasim Band, the new prime minister, reduced the Sultan to a mere puppet. In 1490 Malik Ahmad Nizamu'l-Mulk Bahri, governor of Ahmadnagar, founded the Nizam Shahi kingdom and built Ahmadnagar as his capital. Yusuf Adil Khan, the governor of Bijapur, proclaimed his independence in the same year. In 1491 Sultan Qull of the Shi'i Qara Qoyunlu tribe of Azerbaijan and Iraq, the governor of Telingana, became virtually independent but in his own political interest never severed relations with Sultan Shihabu'd-Din. After Shihabu'd-Din's death, four sultans ascended the Bahmanid throne between 1518 and 1526. The last one moved from Bidar to Ahmadnagar, where he died in 1526. In 1538 the Bahmani kingdom came to an end. The successors of the prime minister, Qasim Band (d. 1504), consolidated their power, until 'Ali Barid (1543—79), the first monarch of that dynasty, assumed royal power.

The above five kingdoms, which emerged in the wake of the

81

extinction of the Bahmanid kingdom, were not satisfied with the boundaries inherited from the Bahmanid provincial divisions. They were constantly involved in wars both amongst themselves and against the neighbouring kingdoms. The situation was further exacerbated by the different backgrounds of the rulers of the three most powerful states; Ahmadnagar, Bijapur, and Golkonda. Ahmad's father, Nizamu'l-Mulk Hasan Bahri of Ahmadnagar, was an Islamicized Hindu who had risen from a slave to a leading commander. On the other hand, the ancestors of the rulers of Bijapur and Golkonda were foreigners. From the very beginning of his reign Yusuf 'Adil Shah of Bijapur declared Shi'ism as the state religion. The Qutb Shahis were also Shi'is. These sectarian and racial antagonisms aggravated the Afaqi and Dakhini feuds among the nobles in all three states.

Although the border disputes of the Deccan states were derived from their Bahmanid origins, their attempts at aggrandizement at the expense of neighbouring states were influenced by both the scramble for more territory between the sultans and the court intrigues of the ambitious nobles. Two larger states generally combined against the third, and the smaller states sided with whoever offered the best safeguards to themselves. Matrimonial alliances were made between

them to promote political interests, but sometimes instead of cementing friendship they bred enmity.

In Berar, 'Ala'u'd-Din 'Imad Shah refused to surrender Pathri, north of the river Godavari, which was the home town of Burhan Nizam Shah's (1510-33) Hindu ancestors, even on favourable terms. Consequently Burhan seized it by force in 1518. Then in 1525 the rulers of Berar, Bidar, and Ahmadnagar invaded Bijapur, but the mounted archers of Bijapur defeated them. Burhan Nizam was determined to retain Pathri at all cost; he also took Mahur from 'Imad Shah and, aided by Band, ravaged Berar, which had formed an alliance with Khandesh. The defeated rulers appealed to Bahadur Shah of Gujarat, who promptly invaded Ahmadnagar, and for at least three years Nizam Shah owed suzerainty to Gujarat.⁶²

After Krishnadeva Raya's death, Isma'il 'Adil Shah of Bijapur (1510-34) recaptured Raichur and Mudgal from Vijayanagara after a three-month siege. Then Sultan Quli of Golkonda seized the interior districts north of Krishna and coastal areas as far north as Rajamundri on the Godavari from Vijayanagara. After Isma'il's death, however, Achyuta Raya of Vijayanagara regained Raichur and Mudgal from Bijapur.

Around the early 1540s the political rivalries between Bijapur and Ahmadnagar assumed a new dimension when their respective

82

rulers changed their sectarian beliefs. The Shi'i, Ibrahim 'Adil Shah (1535-58) of Bijapur, embraced the Sunni faith, while the Sunni, Burhan Nizam Shah of Ahmadnagar, adopted Shi'ism. Towards the end of 1542 Ibrahim recaptured Sholapur from Ahmadnagar. At Burhan Nizam Shah's instigation an alliance was made between Ahmadnagar, Golkonda, and Vijayanagara against Bijapur. Invaded from three different directions, Ibrahim of Bijapur had to cede Sholapur to Ahmadnagar and make friends with Vijayanagara.

About 1545 Ibrahim unleashed a reign of terror and persecution upon his army officers, whom he suspected of treachery. His own son, Prince 'Abdu'llah, took refuge with the Portuguese in Goa.⁶³ They refused to surrender him despite Ibrahim's persistent demands, but the Prince was forced in 1548 to relinquish his claim to Salsette and Bardez ports. Then in 1574 Murtaza Nizam Shah annexed Berar to his Ahmadnagar kingdom.

Meanwhile in Bijapur, Ibrahim's son and successor, 'Ali 'Adil Shah (1558-80), adopted Shi'ism and elevated the Afaqis to high positions. At about this time in Golkonda, Ibrahim Qutb Shah (1550-80), who had succeeded Sultan Quli Qutbu'l-Mulk, began to encourage the local Telugu culture. His policy of awarding land grants to brahman and Hindu temples and not realizing jizya earned him the support of the neighbouring brahman chiefs.⁶⁴

'Ali 'Adil Shah of Bijapur now signed a treaty with Vijayanagara in order to recover Kalyani and Sholapur from Husayn Nizam Shah of Ahmadnagar (1553-65). During 1559-61 Bijapur and Vijayanagara were allied on one side, against Ahmadnagar on the other, sometimes supported by Berar, sometimes by Golkonda. This made Ramaraja, regent of the Vijayanagara kingdom, sole

arbiter of the Muslim principalities. In 1561 he proposed a humiliating treaty, which Husayn Nizam Shah was forced to sign. It involved the restoration of Kalyani to Ali 'Adil Shah, who had earlier in 1558 requested Ramaraja's aid in securing it, and also Husayn's personal submission before Ramaraja. After complying with Ramaraja's conditions, Husayn made one more effort to capture Kalyani but was beaten off by the allies. Although 'Ali 'Adil Shah was the victor he was disgusted at Ramaraja's game of playing one kingdom against the other, and at his suggestion hostilities ceased in 1563. Then 'Ali 'Adil Shah had to cede Itgir (Yadgir) and Bagalkot to Ramaraja, while Ibrahim Qutb Shah gave him Kovilkonda and Panagal district in return for Vijayanagara's previous assistance. Raichur doab had already been secured by Ramaraja. Vijayanagara's territorial expansion, brought about

83

largely by their personal jealousies and feuds, alarmed the Muslim sultans. Husayn Nizam Shah made an alliance with Ibrahim Qutb Shah and then persuaded him to combine with him against Vijayanagara. Husayn strengthened the alliance by marrying his daughter, Chand Bibi, to Prince 'All of Bijapur, while 'All's sister was married to Husayn's son. Sholapur fort, for which much blood had been shed from the very inception of the two kingdoms, was handed over to Bijapur as Chand Bibi's dowry.⁶⁵ Later, Band Shah also joined the confederacy. Next 'Ali 'Adil wrote asking Ramaraja to return the districts ceded by Bijapur and Golkonda to their original owners. Ramaraja refused, and the Muslim envoys of all principalities left Vijayanagara for home. On 24 December 1564 the combined armies of the four sultans encamped twenty-two miles north of the Krishna near Tallkota. They crossed the only ford separating them from the Vijayanagara army, and on 23 February 1565 a fierce battle took place near Banihatti. The sultans' armies were at first overwhelmed by Vijayanagara's numerical superiority, but then the artillery, under the Turk Rumi Khan, broke Ramaraja's attacks. Ramaraja himself was picked up by a mahout on one of Nizam Shah's war elephants and was executed. The victory was decisive. Vijayanagara was sacked and devastated by the sultans.⁶⁶

Five months later, when the four sultans left Vijayanagara laden with massive booty, their feuds once again erupted with renewed vigour. In June 1566 Husayn Nizam Shah died and was succeeded by Murtaza Nizam Shah (1565-88). In 1570 Murtaza Nizam Shah of Ahmadnagar and 'Adil Shah of Bijapur joined forces to expel the Portuguese from their coastal possessions. The Zamorin also joined them. They decided to attack the Portuguese simultaneously at each port. Murtaza Nizam Shah invaded Chaul, and Goa was besieged by 'Adil Shah's army. The siege dragged on, but the Portuguese main fleet first defeated the Zamorin at Malabar and then besieged Dabol. Treachery and corruption were rampant in the 'Adil Shahi's camp, and at Chaul the Nizam Shahs lost 3,000 men in one day. Murtaza's minister, Chinglz Khan, entered into an offensive and defensive alliance with the Portuguese in order to save the kingdom from further loss. In 1571 'Adil Shah also concluded a treaty with the Portuguese, which was finalized four years later. 'Adil Shah was allowed to buy horses at Hurmuz and transport them through Goa without paying the Portuguese extra duty. The Portuguese Viceroy gave an undertaking neither to molest Bijapur ships sailing with the Portuguese cartazas (permits) nor to convert Bijapur subjects forcibly to Christianity.⁶⁷

In April 1574 Murtaza Nizam seized Berar, but by this time the

Mughal invasion from the north, which destroyed all the Muslim sultans of the Deccan, was imminent.

THE VIJAYANAGARA KINGDOM

In 1335 Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq had marched to crush the rebellion by the Ma'bar Sultan, but a severe outbreak of plague in his camp forced him to return to Delhi. The Sultan's retreat encouraged Kapaya Nayaka or Krishna Nayaka of the coastal districts of Andhra, who had already been acknowledged their leader by the influential Nayaka brahmans of the region, to seize Warangal. He assumed the title Andrades'adhis'vara (Supreme Lord of Andhra Countries), and Hindu domination was restored in coastal and central Andhra. The movement to overthrow Tughluq rule spread as far as the Krishna—Tungabhadra doab. In Kampili the people rose against the Tughluq governor, Malik Maqbul, who fled for shelter to a fortress. Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq therefore released the two Telugu chiefs Harihara and Bukka, the sons of Sangama, the ruler of Kampili, hoping they would restore the province to him. These brothers had originally served the Kakatiya King Prataparudra but had fled to Kampili after its capture by Ulugh Khan. When Kampili was annexed to the Tughluq empire in 1327, they were imprisoned and taken to Delhi, where they later became Muslims. Sultan Muhammad now appointed Harihara his new governor in the Kampili region. A modern scholar disputes their Islamicization, although, with slight variations, both Persian and Sanskrit sources reiterate the story. According to this authority, Sangama belonged to the Karnataka province, and his son, Harihara, was in the service of the Hoysala king, Ballala III of Dvarasamudra. As one of the heads of the liberation movement, he overthrew Tughluq rule and founded the Vijayanagara kingdom in the mixed Kannada-Telegu-speaking region.⁶⁸ These arguments are not conclusive, for Islamicized chiefs such as Sukhapala, grandson of Jayapala, had in the past been appointed governors only to recant later. Harihara founded his capital on the southern banks of the Tungabhadra and named it Vidyanagara after the famous Vedic scholar Vidyanarya, who was the guru (mentor and teacher) of the two princes. The dynasty was known as the Sangama, after its founder. The empire was called Karnataka Samrajya (the Karnataka, or the 'Kannada-speaking country'). Vidyanagara or, as it was later more frequently called, Vijayanagara, was its capital. The Vijayanagara kingdom, extending

The Sultanates of the Deccan and the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar in the sixteenth century

from the Tungabhadra to the southern reaches of the Kaveri, lay within the declining Hoysala dominions, and the setting up of the new kingdom was more a threat to the Hoysalas than to the Muslims.

Harihara had four brothers who staunchly supported him in consolidating and extending his territory. In 1346 the Vijayanagara kingdom annexed the Hoysala principalities, which were now exhausted from their continuous wars against Madurai.⁶⁹

Bukka I (1356-77), who succeeded his brother Harihara as king, patronized many Vedic pandits. During his reign Hindu society enjoyed a renaissance. Temples were rebuilt, and works on religion, philosophy, and law were written. Vaishnavas and Jainas were urged to reconcile their differences and live in amity.⁷⁰ Bukka meanwhile ordered his son, Kumara Kampana, to exterminate the Ma'bar sultanate while he took the field against the Bahmanids. Vijayanagara was still fighting them when the King died. The two brothers succeeded in rolling back the tide of Muslim aggression from the Bhima to the Indian Ocean.

During the reign of Bukka's son, Harihara II (1377-1404), Bahmani rule lost its vigour, and Hanhara's army seized Goa, Chaul, and Dabol on the northern Konkan from them. The Kenara, Karnataka, Trichinopoly, and Kanchi regions were also captured. The income from the ports naturally made the principality affluent. The last years of Harihara's reign were very peaceful.

After his death his three sons fought a war of succession for two years. The winner, Devaraya I (1406-22), crowned himself king. The early years of his reign were, like those of his predecessors, devoted to wars against the Bahmani sultans, and the countryside in both kingdoms was devastated. He later constructed a dam across the Tungabhadra in order to provide the city with canals and also dammed the Haridra river to irrigate the countryside.

Devaraya's two sons each ruled for a few months. They were succeeded by Devaraya II (1423-46), who waged constant but inconclusive wars against the Bahmanids, although he succeeded in capturing Kerala. In 1443 'Abdu'r Razzaq, the ambassador of Timur's son Shah Rukh of Herat (1405-47), was given a warm welcome by Devaraya. The envoy was highly impressed with the capital and the personalities of Devaraya and his nobles.⁷¹

Devaraya was convinced that the reason for the Bahmanids' continued military superiority, when he himself possessed immense resources in men and materials, was the quality of their archers and horses. To remedy these deficiencies, he recruited about 2,000 Muslim archers and gave them land-tax assignments. He also built a mosque in the city and had a copy of the Qur'an placed before his

87

throne on a richly carved desk, so that the Muslims could kiss it while performing the ceremony of obeisance in his presence.⁷² His army now comprised 80,000 horse, 200,000 foot, 2,000 Muslim archers, and 6,000 Hindu archers.

After his death, the Sangama dynasty began to decline. Its last king, Virupaksha II (1465-85), was a cruel ruler. In 1496 he slaughtered about 10,000 Muslims in Bhatkal as a reprisal for the sale of horses to the Bahmani Sultan. He had no military skill and eventually lost Goa to the Bahmanis.⁷³ When finally one of his nobles, Saluva Narasimha (1485-1506), overthrew him, the Sangama dynasty came to an end.

Narasimha was involved in wars against Bijapur, Bidar, Madurai, and Srirangapattanam. He paid extravagant prices to Arab merchants to bring the best-quality stallions from Aden and Hurmuz. Shortly after his death, his commander's son, Vira Narasimha, deposed his worthless son and heir and crowned himself king.

This new dynasty, called the Saluva, ruled from 1486 to 1570. Vira Narasimha spent his short reign crushing the rebel chieftains. His younger brother Krishna Devaraya (1509-29) was a great warrior, shrewd statesman, profound scholar, and generous patron of intellectuals. He was the greatest ruler of the Vijayanagara dynasty; some scholars assert that he was the greatest of the Indian rulers. Barbosa says: 'the King allows such freedom that every man may come and go and live according to his own creed without suffering any annoyance and without enquiring whether he is a Christian, Jew, Moor or Heathen. Great equity and justice is observed to all, not only by the ruler but by the people to one another.'⁷⁴

Krishna Devaraya had only just ascended the throne when an envoy arrived from Albuquerque to seek his assistance against the Zamorin and to ask for the grant of a site to build a factory between Bhatkal and Mangalore. In return, Albuquerque promised to help Krishna reconquer Goa and to give him exclusive rights to import horses. By January 1510 Krishna had defeated Yusuf Adil Shah of Bijapur. Although the Portuguese had by then captured Goa without his help Krishna assured them that he would help them to keep it. In his own territories Krishna Devaraya defeated various rulers from the south and then delivered a crushing defeat on the Sultan of Bijapur, near Raichur.⁷⁵

Krishna Devaraya was succeeded by his half-brother Achyuta Raya (1530-42), but he was unable to control the political factions in his kingdom, who were engaged in a fierce power struggle. The neighbouring Muslim states seized the chance to exact vengeance.

88

Semi-independent principalities were carved out of Madurai, Thanjavur, and Jinji. After Achyuta's death, power fell into the hands of Ramaraja, the son-in-law of Krishna Raya. Achyuta's son, who was still a minor, ruled for a few months, but then Ramaraja raised Krishna Devaraya's nephew, Sadasiva (1543-70), to the throne. Ramaraja was a dynamic leader. His victories over Bijapur prompted him to take the offensive against the Muslim princes to offset their attacks on Vijayanagara. His diplomatic manoeuvres aggravated the disagreements between the Ahmadnagar and Bijapur kingdoms, and he succeeded in negotiating a commercial treaty with the Portuguese which deprived Bijapur of its horse supply. Subsequently the Vijayanagara army, now allied with Ahmadnagar, defeated Bijapur in three successive battles.⁷⁶ Ahmadnagar annexed KalyanI and Sholapur, while Vijayanagara took possession of Raichur and Mudgal. Ramaraja, however, was not a rigid statesman. As soon as the new ruler of Ahmadnagar invaded Bijapuri territory again in alliance with Golkonda, realizing the threat to himself, he rushed to the rescue of the Bijapuri Sultan. Ahmadnagar and Golkonda were forced to withdraw. Until 1564 Ramaraja constantly changed sides in order to prevent a confederacy of the three powerful Deccan sultans. Early in 1565, however, a confederacy of Muslim princes in the Deccan delivered a death blow to the Vijayanagara kingdom at the battle of Banihatti (Tallkota).⁷⁷ The Vijayanagara kingdom survived within a reduced boundary until 1664.

The emergence of the Vijayanagara kingdom, like the Muslim provincial dynasties, was facilitated by Muhammad bin Tughluq's bid to impose central control over the distant south. It did not mirror Hindu reaction to Muslim rule, although it did protect Hindu faith and culture and helped to preserve ancient Hindu ideals of kingship, law, and justice.

89

III THE AFGHANS AND THE MUGHALS

THE LODIS

The inhabitants of the Sulayman mountains to the west of the Indus were known as Afghans. Expert horse-breeders, they often served in the army of the Turkic rulers, sometimes rising to the level of commander and even governor. In their own homeland their tribal rivalries were responsible for unceasing feuds, but as soldiers they were well disciplined. Of these the Lodi tribe was most prominent.

During Muhammad bin Tughluq's reign many leading Afghan tribal heads left their mountain home for Delhi. Some of them, under Malik Shahu Lodi, the governor of Multan, later rebelled against Muhammad bin Tughluq. They were unsuccessful and many subsequently returned to their homeland, which Barani calls Afghanistan (the land of the Afghans).¹

In Delhi, Khizr Khan, who later became the first Sayyid Sultan, appointed another Afghan, Malik Sultan Shah Lodi, governor of Sirhind, giving him the title Islam Khan. He also promoted Malik Shah's four brothers to high positions. One of them, Malik Kala, had a son called Bahlul. After his father's death Bahlul was brought up by his uncle, Islam Khan, who not only married his daughter to him but, passing over his own sons, declared Bahlul his successor. Islam Khan's sons, however, repudiated their father's will and combined to fight Bahlul. They were defeated. The successful Bahlul consolidated his position and then invaded Delhi twice but each time failed to conquer it. Finally, on 19 April 1451, he captured Delhi by a coup and ascended the throne. The Sayyid Sultan, 'Ala'u'd-Din, had already retired to Bada'un. The new ruler successfully crushed the Sharqi Sultan's bid to seize Delhi and subdued the Muslim Langa, ruler of Multan, but his invasion of Malwa failed. Although Bahlul encouraged the Afghan tribesmen to migrate to India, he was cautious about awarding them positions and promotions. The senior offices were reserved for his loyal Afghan supporters, and the important governorships were given to the royal princes. Muslims of non-Afghan origin were given minor positions. Historians writing about Bahlul during the reigns of

90

Akbar and Jahangir try to show that his monarchy resembled a tribal confederation, but like his predecessors he was in fact a despot. Before his death at the age of eighty, the Lodi sultanate was firmly established from the Panjab to the borders of Bihar.

The senior Afghan leaders usually favoured those of pure Afghan stock, but one of Banjul's wives, who was a Hindu goldsmith's daughter, won their support for her son Nizam Khan. Nizam adopted the title Sultan Sikandar (1489-1517) when he ascended the throne. The Sultan crushed Husayn Shah Sharqi of Jaunpur, liquidated the Rajput uprisings in the neighbouring region, and forced the Raja of Tirhut to agree to pay tribute. Bihar was also seized, and the Sultan of Bengal signed a treaty with Sikandar. Dholpur, a Gwalior dependency, was sacked. Gwalior itself was surrounded by a chain of forts built by the Tomar rulers. Its king, Raja Man Singh (1486-1517), was popular with both Hindus and Muslims. Sikandar seized the small forts surrounding Gwalior one by one and cut off its food supply from Rajasthan. From 1506 to 1517 the Sultan devoted all his energies to capturing Gwalior, but his gains were not worth the energy he spent. Although in 1514 he captured Chanderi, Gwalior and Malwa remained unconquered. He died in 1517.

Sikandar Lodi enhanced the prestige of the sultanate without alienating the Afghan nobility. Iqta's were granted to the Afghans, but the loyal Hindu chiefs were not neglected. Sikandar tightened the espionage system, and his leading nobles were shocked to find that even minor family incidents were reported to the Sultan. He also took a keen interest in the development of agriculture and regularly examined the price schedules for the markets. Persian histories enthusiastically relate stories of the Sultan's bigotry and zeal to destroy Hindu temples; nevertheless the Sultan and his nobles were deeply interested in Hindu culture and institutions.²

At the beginning of the reign of his son, Sultan Ibrahim Lodi (1517-26), the leading Afghan nobles again made strong efforts to undermine the Sultan's autocracy. They forced Ibrahim to make his younger brother Jalal the independent ruler of the Jaunpur region, formerly ruled by the Sharqis. This unrealistic scheme of dual monarchy, however, was opposed by Ibrahim's favourite noble, Khan-i Jahan Lodi, who persuaded Ibrahim to change his mind. Jalal refused to accept this reversal, and civil war broke out between the two brothers. Jalal lost. He was imprisoned in the Hans! fort and later beheaded. Meanwhile the civil war had provided Rana Sanga of Mewar with the opportunity to make inroads into the Lodi territories as far as Bayana near Agra. Ibrahim marched personally against Rana Sanga, but the Afghan

91

centrifugal tendencies enabled the Rana to capture Chanderi.

The Sultan embarked upon building the superstructure of his power on the loyal nobles and the leaders of the younger generation, to whom he gave the senior commands once held by the old guards. The Sultan even sought support from the Indian Muslims. The persecution of the senior commanders from Sikandar's reign lit the fire of rebellion in Bihar. The Sultan summoned Dawlat Khan Lodi, who had governed the Panjab for about twenty years, to help him. Instead of coming himself, however, and pretending to be ill, the Khan sent his son, Dilawar Khan. Dilawar Khan was alarmed at the persecution of the dismissed Afghan leaders and reported it to his father. Finding no other way out of the impasse, Dawlat Khan wrote to Babur, the ruler of Kabul, asking him to save them from annihilation.³

BABUR AND HUMAYUN

Zahiru'd-Din Muhammad Babur, the founder of the Mughal empire in India, was descended on his father's side in the fifth generation from Timur and through his mother in the fifteenth degree from ChingTz Khan. Although popularly known as 'Mughals' or the descendants of Mongols, Timur's descendants preferred to call themselves the Chaghatayids, originating from ChingTz's second son, Chaghatay, who ruled Transoxiana.

Babur was born on 14 February 1484 and succeeded his father, 'Ulmar Shaykh Mirza, as ruler of Farghana in June 1494. For twenty years Babur endured severe hardship whilst attempting to gain command of the country between the Oxus and the Jaxartes which comprised the cultural and commercial centres of Samar-qand and Bukhara. The people of Samarqand loved him, and initially his surprise invasion of the country in 1500 was successful; but in 1501 ShaybanI Khan Uzbek, a descendant of Chingiz Khan's eldest son, Jochi, rose to power in the region and defeated him. Although this reduced Babur to a mere fugitive, in June 1504 he took Kabul from one of his uncles. Babur pacified the Afghan tribes there and collected tribute from them with great tact and patience. He also married the daughter of a Yusufza'I leader in order to strengthen his friendship with the tribe. In December 1510 Shah Isma'il SafavI of Iran defeated and slew ShaybanI and sent his sister, who had been married to ShaybanI, to Babur. In October 1511 Babur seized Samarqand as Shah Ismail's vassal, promising to issue coins in the Shah's name and to adopt the Shi'i life-style.

92

This made him unpopular in the predominantly orthodox Sunni country. The Uzbeks, under Shaybani's nephew 'Ubaydu'llah Khan, subsequently rallied their forces, and after two years Babur was forced to return to Kabul. There he acquired firearms with the help of Turkish gunners and strengthened his army.

Immediately after Babur had settled in Kabul in 1504 he developed an interest in the conquest of India. In 1505 he had reconnoitred regions to the west of the river Indus, as far as Jamrud, Kohat, and Tarblla. In 1519 he mounted his first invasion of India, seizing Bajaur by storm and imposing a ransom on its people. Next he sent an envoy to Ibrahim Lodi, asking him to surrender the west Panjab region previously conquered by Timur. Because this proposal would mean his loss of the Panjab, the governor there, Dawlat Khan, stopped the envoy going further than Lahore. Babur returned to Kabul again and in September of the same year invaded the Yusufza'is. In 1520 he mounted his third invasion of India and seized Sialkot. For two years he was busy occupying Qandahar. Then in 1523 Dawlat Khan's son, Dilawar, and Bahlul's younger son, 'Alam Khan, also visited Babur to induce him to overthrow Ibrahim Lodi. In Delhi, getting an inkling of the conspiracy, Ibrahim Lodi sent an army against Lahore to nip the invasion in the bud. His forces seized Lahore, and Dawlat Khan took refuge in Multan. Babur, who had left Kabul on his fourth Indian expedition, was meanwhile approaching Lahore and he in turn defeated Ibrahim's army. Lahore was sacked and burned. Then Babur moved to Dipalpur where Dawlat Khan was waiting to obtain the Panjab from him. His expectations were unrealistic, since Babur had himself decided to seize Delhi and was not prepared to be merely Dalwa't Khan's tool. Appointing a governor at Lahore, Babur left for Kabul to organize reinforcements. After Babur's departure, Dawlat Khan imprisoned his son, Dilawar, who had disclosed his plans to Babur, captured Sultan-pur, and defeated 'Alam Khan in Dipalpur. 'Alam Khan fled to Kabul, but Babur

sent him back to Lahore with a body of troops and a letter to the Mughal commander there ordering him to help 'Alam Khan.

Babur left Kabul in October 1525 to conquer India. 'Alam Khan had meanwhile laid siege to Delhi but was repulsed by Ibrahim's army. By this time Dawlat Khan had assembled an army of between 20,000 and 30,000 men in the Panjab but early in January 1526 he surrendered to Babur.

Ibrahim left Delhi to meet Babur with an army of 100,000 cavalry and 1,000 elephants. Babur's army comprised about 10,000 "troopers. He took up a position near Panipat, keeping the town and

93

its suburbs on his right. Cannons mounted on wagons had been placed in front of his army. Between sets of wagons, tied together by strong rope, were gaps where small breastworks had been erected to deploy one or two hundred horsemen. On the left, and in other strategic areas, ditches had been dug. Babur's cavalry, or 'flying flanks', r.was expert in making lightning attacks on the enemy's flanks and rear. Ibrahim's army depended on elephants and consisted of mercenaries. The battle took place on 21 April 1526. Babur's flying flanks wheeled from right and left to attack the enemy's rear, showering Ibrahim's troops with arrows. Ibrahim sent reinforcements to the hard-pressed flanks. Groups from Babur's right, left, and centre surrounded clusters of Indian troops, while the cannons discharged balls on them from the left-hand side. By the afternoon the Indian armies, which had no experience of these tactics, had been routed. Between 16,000 and 40,000 Indians were killed. Herd upon herd of elephants was captured. Besides an immense quantity of booty, Delhi and Agra fell into Babur's hands.⁴ At Agra the family of Gwalior's rulers presented the famous Koh-i Nur diamond to Babur's son, Humayun. Babur was very generous in sharing the booty with his noblemen (called Begs) and soldiers. All the Kabul residents also received some money, and even the major Muslim towns in Central Asia and the holy cities of Mecca and Medina were not forgotten.

Babur treated those Afghan leaders who submitted to him magnanimously. He assigned to his Mughal Begs the revenue of various areas between Delhi and Kanauj. Those territories which .had not as yet surrendered were also assigned to the Begs, who subdued the recalcitrant Afghan leaders and brought the region under Mughal rule. Nevertheless it took a long time to restore confidence to the general populace, who took to flight at the sight of Mughal troops. A large number of Babur's own Begs were unwilling to stay in India; they were interested only in war and plunder. Babur settled down in Agra, preparing schemes for further conquests and supervising the casting of mortars. He spent his leisure hours organizing the laying out of gardens, digging of wells, and planting of fruit trees from Kabul in Indian soil. Nothing deterred him from noting down in his daily diary the observations he had started to record after ascending the throne.

The most formidable threat to the nascent Mughal empire was Rana Sanga, the mighty ruler of Mewar, who dreamed of restoring the great empire of Prithviraja Chauhan. A large number of Rajput chiefs had joined him to fight the Mughals. Hasan Khan Mewatl had also formed an

alliance with him to overthrow Babur. Although the Rana could not occupy land further than Chanderi,

94

he much preferred to see the weak Ibrahim on the throne of Delhi and Agra than the formidable Babur. The Rana consequently made full preparations and marched to expel Babur from India. Babur moved towards Sikri, but his Begs were frightened by the Rana's fame as an invincible warrior. The arrival of reinforcements from Kabul encouraged them, but then an astrologer's calculations predicting Babur's defeat spread consternation in the Mughal army. Babur, however, did not panic; in order to reassure his army of his confidence in Allah's support he renounced the wine forbidden by Islam, which until then he had enjoyed drinking with his friends. He also ordered that gold and silver wine vessels should be broken and the pieces distributed to the needy and the dervishes. He then reiterated his vow to remit transit dues called tamgha on Muslim merchandise.⁵ Meanwhile, however, the regions between Kol and Kanauj had been reconquered by the Afghan leaders and the Mughal garrisons expelled.

On 17 March 1527 the final battle between the Mughals and the Rajputs was fought at Kanwah near Sikri. The Mughal gunners and matchlockmen took up their positions behind the carts, and wheeled tripods for the guns were arrayed in front of the army. The ropes joining the carts had been replaced by chains. The Rajput army, which outnumbered Babur's army many times, made a determined attack on Babur's extreme right. The Mughals retaliated fiercely, their guns playing havoc all around the enemy ranks. Wave after wave of Rajput troops stormed Babur's right but could not smash the Mughal ranks. The Rajputs then directed their pressure to the left but could not shake it. Then Babur's cavalry besieged the Rajputs from all sides and balked the Rajput counterattacks. Before evening Babur had gained a decisive victory. Innumerable leading Rajputs, fighting with their proverbial chivalry, were killed. Babur, who had from the outset declared the war against the Rajputs to be jihad (holy war), assumed the title of Ghazi (Islamic Hero).⁶ The defeated Rana Sanga died of poison at Kalpi towards the end of January 1528.

The Kanwah victory secured Babur's Indian throne, and he finally allowed those Begs who were reluctant to stay in India to return to Kabul. His son, Humayun, was ordered to control Kabul and Badakhshan. Babur reached Chanderi in January 1528, but the news of the loss of Avadh, which he had already received, prevented him invading Raisen, Bhilsa, and Sarangpur. Instead he returned to Kanauj and marched as far as Baksar on the Ganges, driving his Afghan enemies deep into Bihar and Bengal. In Bengal, Nusrat Shah sided with the defeated Afghans and by the end of December 1528 they had organized a three-pronged drive against

95

the Mughals in the region of Chunar, Banaras, and Ghazipur. Babur marched personally against them in January 1529 and reached the borders of Bihar, but the ensuing rainy season made him return to Agra without engaging them in battle.

Babur's son Humayun failed to regain Samarqand from the Uzbeks. Babur therefore recalled Humayun from Badakhshan and gave it to his youngest son, Hindal. At the end of June 1529

Humayun arrived at Agra. By now Babur's health had been shattered by the long and strenuous campaigns he had fought and the hot Indian climate. In addition, he had substituted heavy doses of opium and other drugs for the liquor he had renounced. Babur died on 26 December 1530. Several years later his dead body was taken to Kabul and buried in the terrace of a beautiful garden. According to his will no dome or other structure surmounted his grave, because the great lover of nature preferred exposure to snow and sun.

As a military leader Babur had no equal in his day. His indomitable courage ensured the confidence of his commanders and troops. As a soldier he was dauntless, never giving way to panic or despair. Nothing could shake his belief in his own ultimate success with divine help. Babur loved to call himself a qalandar (carefree dervish), and the prodigality of his nature and lavish rewards to his Begs and soldiers justified this Claim. He was very creative, frequently introducing innovations when building monuments, laying out gardens and orchards, and casting new types of guns and matchlocks.⁷ His martial and diplomatic strategies were always well calculated. The cold hand of death prevented a demonstration of his administrative abilities, but the fragmentary records available to us show his deep awareness of the problems inherent in governing the multicultural and multi-religious society of India. He remains unsurpassed as a writer of both poetry and prose in Chaghatay-Turki, his mother tongue; his memoirs frankly confess his own failures and are free from inhibitions. Always welcoming the company of scholars and poets, he enjoyed many erudite discussions with them. Babur was a devoted follower of the famous Naqshbandiyya sufi Khwaja 'Ubaydu'llah Ahrar (d. 1490), whose writings he loved, finding comfort in them for his body and spirit.⁸ Sectarian enmities and quarrels were furthest from his mind. He was a lovable man who enjoyed excursions with his friends and happily braved storms, frost, and snow while out hunting. Babur admired the Indian acrobats and was himself fond of wrestling and swimming. At wine-parties his joviality knew no bounds, and he drank without restraint. Liquor never prevented him from immediately carrying out any duty, however. Through

96

his courage and many-sided genius the foundations of the Mughal empire were laid.

Babur's eldest son, Humayun, was born on 6 March 1508. He had three half-brothers: Kamran, who was a year or two younger, 'Askari (b. 1516), and Hindal (b. January 1519). Humayun's throne was no bed of roses. Besides his brothers and his brother-in-law, Muhammad Zaman Mirza, other Timurid princes and Afghan chiefs were a potent threat. Following the Turco-Mongol custom, Humayun divided the empire among his half-brothers, but they were dissatisfied with their portions. Kamran, who had received Kabul and Badakhshan, forcibly seized Lahore and the rest of the Panjab. To avoid civil war, Humayun left them in Kamran's hands, thereby forfeiting not only extensive territories but also control of the military roads from Kabul to Delhi. Nevertheless, for the time being Kamran was satisfied and apparently grateful.

Humayun now turned his attention to the Afghan rebels east of Lucknow. Before he could attack them, however, he received the alarming news that Bahadur Shah of Gujarat, having consolidated his Malwa conquests, was moving against the Mughal frontiers. Humayun hastily made a treaty with the rising Afghan leader Sher Khan Sur, leaving him in full control of the area

east of Banaras. Sher Khan thus gained a strong base from which to mount further operations against the Mughals.

In November 1534 Humayun marched towards Malwa to crush Bahadur Shah, who was besieging Chitor. Humayun moved slowly, reinforcing his army and countering the unexpected Afghan attack. The respite gained by Bahadur Shah enabled him to storm Chitor and conquer it.⁹

Humayun seized Mandu. In July 1536, displaying remarkable heroism, he stormed Champanir after four months' blockade. Then he occupied Ahmadabad. Had Humayun made Bahadur Shah, who was a popular ruler, his vassal he would not have failed so miserably, but he instead appointed 'Askari viceroy of Gujarat. Humayun had only just left Ahmadabad in pursuit of Bahadur when he was forced to return by the alarming news of rebellions in the northern provinces. Once again Humayun moved slowly, this time in order to give the rebels time to surrender, and spent four to five months resting at Mandu. In Gujarat, 'Askari's lack of tact and inexperience alienated his nobles, who refused to support him. Bahadur marched to Ahmadabad, but Humayun took no prompt action to prevent Gujarat being recaptured. 'Askari fled to Champanir and thence to Agra. In February 1537 Humayun reached Agra. Both Gujarat and Malwa had now passed out of

97

Mughal control. The two years wasted by Humayun in his fruitless Gujarat expeditions had made Sher Khan a formidable threat.

SHER KHAN (LATER SHER SHAH) SUR

The early history of Sher Khan, whose original name was Farid, is based on legends of the nostalgic Afghans collected during Akbar's reign and is not dependable. Farid's grandfather and father migrated from Roh and served several Afghan nobles at the courts of Bahlul and Sikandar. Farid was born in Bahlul's reign. His early life in his father's polygamous home had been unhappy, but he acquired an excellent literary education at Jaunpur through his own efforts. Farid's career began with the administration of his father's iqta' at Sahasram in south Bihar. There he put his theoretical knowledge to practical use by establishing a clear understanding between the peasants and the village chiefs. Naturally the area prospered, to the great satisfaction of Farid and his father, Hasan, but his stepmother's jealousy forced Farid to seek another avenue of employment. He moved to the court of the Afghan ruler of Bihar, Sultan Muhammad Nuhani, who gave him the title Sher Khan for his bravery. After Babur's victory over Rana Sanga, Sher Khan entered Mughal service and subsequently was rewarded with a grant of land. Nevertheless he deserted the Mughal camp at Chanderi with the conviction that the Mughals were not invincible and that his future lay in an independent career in eastern India. Sher Khan did not, however, sever relations with the Mughals. He gained a hold over Bihar, and, when Humayun ascended the throne, his diplomacy and military talents made him the ruler of the region from Chunar to Patna. Humayun's treaty with Sher Khan in February 1533, allowing him to retain Chunar fort which controlled the road to Bihar and eastern India, was a great victory for the rising Afghan chief. During the next four years Sher Khan recruited a large number of Afghans, many of whom had lost their jobs during the Malwa war. Some important Afghan leaders also

joined him. Sher Khan consolidated his hold over the region extending from Chunar to northern Bihar. At the end of February 1536 he appeared before the walls of Gaur in Bengal and obtained enormous sums in indemnity from its ruler, Mahmud Shah.¹⁰

Humayun, having just returned to Agra from Gujarat, could not immediately march against Sher Khan but first spent some time organizing the administration. Then, at the end of July 1537, he left

98

Agra on his eastern campaign and besieged Chunar in January 1538. The garrison resisted for five months, and it was only after the Turkish artillery commander, Rumi Khan, constructed a mobile battery of boats which damaged the walls of the fort that the Afghans surrendered. Sher Khan, who had again invaded Gaur in October 1537, returned meanwhile to Rohtas in Bihar and seized it from its Hindu raja by trickery. In April 1538 his Afghans took Gaur. Humayun, who had already wasted considerable time besieging Chunar, now captured Banaras. There he learned of Sher Khan's Bengal conquests. He marched towards Patna and opened negotiations with Sher Khan, offering him undisputed rule in Chunar and Jaunpur if he surrendered Rohtas and Bengal to the Emperor's representative. Sher Khan demanded Bengal too and asked Humayun to confine his rule to the area west of Jaunpur. Shortly afterwards the Sultan of Bengal himself came to Humayun for aid. Humayun marched towards Gaur, but his progress was checked at the Garhi pass by Sher Khan's son, who had been commissioned to prevent the Mughal advance. In September 1538 Humayun reached Gaur and seized it without any opposition. The Emperor stayed there for three to four months, thereby giving Sher Khan opportunity to invade the region around Banaras. Humayun then sent his brother Hindal to Tirhut and Purnea to collect supplies, but Hindal went instead to Agra and declared himself king. Humayun next sent Shaykh Phul, the famous Shattariyya sufi, to arouse Hindal's sense of obedience, but Hindal callously killed him." The Emperor now assembled his troops from the Bengal districts and hurriedly marched to Chausa, which divided Bihar from Banaras. There Sher Khan's war-weary army was sighted. For two months Sher Khan managed to keep Humayun inactive by exchanging peace messages. Then he marched off in full battle array, giving the impression that he was going to fight some far-distant Hindu raja. A subsequent week of mock-campaigns lulled the Mughals into a false sense of security. On 7 June 1539, before dawn, the Afghan army swooped down upon the Mughal camp, taking it completely by surprise. Almost the whole Mughal force was destroyed, and Humayun, falling from his saddle while fleeing across the Ganges on horseback, was forced to use an inflated skin offered him by a poor water-carrier. The victorious Sher Khan gave the Mughal ladies safe conduct home. Then, at Banaras, he declared himself an independent king with the title Sher Shah. His Afghan army easily reconquered Bengal.

After two years' absence Humayun returned with the remnants of his defeated army to Agra, where Kamran was awaiting him. 'Askari, who had also managed to escape from Chausa, was there,

99

as well as Hindal, who was forced to promise his loyalty. Humayun made the water-carrier who had saved his life king for half a day in fulfilment of his promise. His nobles were utterly disgusted.

Mirza Kamran, who was thoroughly distressed at the Chausa debacle, offered to march against Sher Shah with his fresh troops, but Humayun rejected the suggestion, since he was determined to avenge the defeat personally. Then Kamran fell ill and returned to Lahore, taking his army with him despite the Emperor's request that they stay behind to fight Sher Shah. For seven months no concerted Mughal plan was made. In March 1540 Sher Shah, now well prepared to make a final bid for the throne of India, moved towards Kanauj. Humayun, with about 40,000 well-armed soldiers and some 60,000 retainers, crossed the Ganges. The battle took place on 17 May 1540 near Kanauj. The Afghan army consisted of only 10,000 horsemen, but their flanking detachments, avoiding the Mughal artillery, drove the Mughal cavalry into the centre between the opposing forces, causing great panic. The Afghan's vigorous charges smashed first Humayun's left wing, then his right, and lastly the central Mughal army. Many Mughals were drowned fleeing across the Ganges. Hotly pursued by the Afghans, Humayun reached Agra with great difficulty. From there he returned to Delhi on his way to Lahore. Kamran offered no help and refused him asylum in Kabul and Badakhshan, although he consented to take care of his brother's family. Kamran also tried to make peace with Sher Shah but had to leave for Kabul because of the Afghan's determination to drive the Mughals out of India. Humayun left for Sind in order to make it a base for further operations to regain the throne. Thus began his fifteen-year exile.¹²

THE SUR SULTANATE

The Sur sultanate of Sher' Shah was short-lived but it was better planned and administered than the first Afghan Lodi empire. Sher Shah was fifty-five or sixty when he ascended the throne; he ruled vigorously until his accidental death five years later. His first task was to ensure that the Mughals did not reconquer India.

After Humayun left Agra, Sher Shah stayed there for only a fortnight. Then, marching through Delhi and Sirhind, he reached Lahore hot on the heels of the fleeing Mughals. From Lahore, Sher Shah set out towards Bhira, halting at Khushab to dispatch detachments to chase the Mughal princes. He was now confronted with the more complex problem of controlling the hill ranges in the

100

northern part of the Jhelam, Shahpur, and Mianwali districts of the Panjab, called the Salt Range. These hills were home to the turbulent Gujar, Bhatti, and Khokhar tribes which had not been completely subdued by the Delhi sultans, mainly because of the Mongol raids in the region. Sher Shah took the far-sighted step of constructing a formidable fort on the north-west of Jhelam town, which he named Rohtas, after the fort in Bihar.

Sher Shah had just begun to concern himself with the problems of upper Sind and Multan when he received news that Khizr Khan, his governor in Bengal, had married the daughter of Mahmud

Shah, the late Bengal ruler, and had usurped the prerogatives of an independent sovereign. Sher Shah rushed to Gaur, reaching it in the rainy season of 1541, and imprisoned the governor. He next reorganized the administration and appointed Qazi Fazilat, a Muslim jurist, to co-ordinate the work of the divisional heads. To prevent future rebellion no governor was appointed.

On his return from Bengal, Sher Shah seized Gwalior from Humayun's governor and brought Malwa under his control. He appointed military commanders to strategic centres in the area.¹³

In the beginning of the rainy season of 1542 Sher Shah returned to Agra, where he learnt that Humayun was hovering on the Marwar frontier. Maldeva, the ruler of Marwar, had opened negotiations with Humayun to overthrow Sher Shah, but the Afghan's conquest of Malwa frightened him, and he retracted his undertaking to help Humayun.

Silahdi Purbiya Puranmal of Chanderi, who like his father was accused of dishonouring Muslim women and training them to be dancing girls, was Sher Shah's next target. Unable to capture Raisen, Puranmal's stronghold, he seized it by perfidy. Sher Shah's governors conquered Multan and ravaged the Baluch territories. Upper Sind, including the notable forts of Bhakkar and Sehwan, was also captured. Sher Shah's conquests of Sind made Maldeva's western borders even more unsafe.

Towards the end of 1543 Sher Shah marched towards Marwar at the head of a very strong army, but Maldeva was still formidable in the Mount Abu region. The Emperor faked treacherous letters in the names of Maldeva's commanders and had them delivered to his camp. When he read them Maldeva was so panic-stricken that he fled, ignoring his loyal commanders' entreaties. The Rajput army nevertheless fought stubbornly. Sher Shah was victorious but often remarked, referring to the barren Marwar territories, that he had nearly lost the empire of Hindustan for a handful of millet.¹⁴

Sher Shah's general, Khawas Khan, then seized Jodhpur while "Sher Shah himself captured Ajmir and completely overran the

101

Mount Abu region. After returning to Agra, a few months later he attacked the famous Rajasthan fort, Chitor, which was now weakened by internal feuds. It capitulated without much resistance. The Kacchwaha territory of Dhundhar (near modern Jaipur) also surrendered. Sher Shah's capture of the chain of forts from Malwa to Marwar was a unique achievement, but the Raja of Kalinjar, who sympathized with Humayun, was still defiant. Sher Shah blockaded this fort but failed to storm it. The Rajputs there fought back to back for seven months. Finally, however, when mines had been laid, a lofty tower for mounting a battery had been erected, and covered approaches were ready, the attack was launched. Lighted hand-grenades were thrown into the fort. One grenade suddenly struck the wall and, rebounding into a heap of hand-grenades, exploded. Immediately the whole ammunition dump blew up. Sher Shah himself was very badly burned, and although the fort was stormed and the Rajputs overpowered, he died, with his ambitions unrealized.

Sher Shah's rise to power, from the position of a petty iqta' holder's neglected son to the throne of Delhi, was remarkable. He was not a military adventurer like so many conquerors in that age, but a far-sighted monarch with a clear vision of the prestige and responsibility of a ruler. He attracted a large number of new Afghan tribes to his service and handled the restless Afghan grandees firmly. He pacified the Salt Range and the inaccessible regions of Multan and Lahore by populating them with Afghan tribesmen. He had plans to set up other Afghan colonies in Rajasthan, Malwa, and Bundelkhand, but death put an end to his schemes. He did not, however, make the blunder of annexing the whole of Rajasthan to his empire; instead some of the petty autonomous chiefs, whom Maldeva had deposed, were restored to their principalities. Sher Shah reorganized his huge army partly on tribal lines and partly on the pattern of 'Ala'u'd-Din's forces. He revived the system of branding horses in order to stop the fraudulent practices of the military commanders, who substituted poor-quality horses to save the good stock from destruction in time of war. His well-equipped army might have extended the Sur empire into the Deccan and Kashmir if he had survived.

Sher Shah had restored peace to the country. The roads were policed by the village chiefs. From past experience of administration at the grass-roots level Sher Shah knew that crimes were mainly committed with the connivance of the village chiefs; so, if a chief was unable to produce a thief or murderer, he was himself liable to beheading. An improved espionage system also helped curb crime. Sher Shah's government-controlled caravanserais

102

served both Hindus and Muslims. Brahmans supplied water and cooked food for the Hindus, so their religious laws were not violated. New market towns grew up around these caravanserais, and the many towns named Sherpur, from Multan to Bengal, are reminiscent of Sher Shah's interest in the urbanization of the country. Some local trade taxes were abolished, although they did not disappear. Customs duty was levied at only two points - one in the east, the other in the west.

After Sher Shah's death, his second son, Jalal Khan, was crowned, adopting the title Islam Shah. Jalal's elder brother, 'Adil Khan, contested his claim, and the Afghan nobles whom Sher Shah had pacified found a golden opportunity to fish in troubled waters. Islam Khan, however, was firm and energetic and defeated his brother. Once in power he concentrated on breaking the clique of Afghan leaders whom his father had tamed and trained. He resumed the iqta's previously awarded to senior Afghan commanders and transferred them to newly created junior positions. A Niyazi Afghan uprising was totally crushed, and barbarous punishments were meted out, even to the females. A second chain of fortresses, collectively known as Mankot, on the upper Indus frontier was built to suppress the uprisings of the Gakkhar tribe.¹⁵

Islam Shah systematically upgraded the Afghan army and artillery. He made government officials share with the local chiefs the responsibility for crimes in the villages and highways because, unlike Sher Shah, he did not believe that only the village headmen abetted the criminals.

Islam Shah's early death from a fistula in 1552 dislocated the administrative machinery. Before Humayun reconquered Delhi in 1555, three different rulers were crowned. During this time the real power lay in the hands of Himu, a saltpetre dealer in Rewari belonging to the Dhusar class, apparently a subdivision of the Gaur brahmins.

HUMAYUN RECAPTURES DELHI

While Sher Shah was approaching the Panjab after his victory at Kanauj, Kamran and 'Askari had marched on to Kabul, and Humayun to Sind. At Patar, twenty miles west of the Indus, he happened to see Hamida Barm Begum, the fourteen-year-old daughter of his brother Hindal's teacher, and fell in love with her. Hindal strongly opposed Humayun's desire to marry her, while

103

Hamida herself was not prepared to marry a monarch in exile. Nevertheless Hindal's mother overcame all obstacles, and the couple were married. Accompanied by Hamida Banu, Humayun left for Jodhpur to seek Maldeva's help. On the way they passed through Amarkot, whose Rana received them warmly; there on 15 October 1542, Hamida Banu gave birth to Akbar.¹⁶ Humayun was now warned by his ambassador at Maldeva's court of the Raja's treacherous designs to imprison him, so he abandoned his journey to Jodhpur and, wandering in Sind, set out for Qandahar in July 1543. There 'Askari, who controlled Qandahar, also sought to imprison him. Leaving his heavy baggage and Akbar in the care of some loyal officers, Humayun therefore set off to seek help from Shah Tahmasp in Iran. In August 1544 Humayun joined the Shah at Qazvin in northern Iran. His stay at the Shah's court was sometimes full of hope and at other times disappointing. Humayun's loyal supporter Bayram Khan and his wife, Hamida Banu, helped him overcome all crises, while Humayun himself diplomatically conformed to the Shi'i way of life. In the end the Shah gave him about 12,000 soldiers on the condition that, once Qandahar, Ghazni, and Kabul had been captured, Qandahar would be ceded to him. No religious constraints were imposed. In September 1545 'Askari surrendered Qandahar, and Kabul was taken from Kamran three months later. Kamran, however, continued his effort to regain Kabul. He invaded it thrice but each time was subsequently expelled by Humayun. 'Askari found it difficult to accept Humayun's rule but finally he gave up the struggle for power and retired to Mecca, where he died. Only Hindal remained loyal to Humayun but he was killed in November 1551 while fighting Kamran. Then Kamran, in a final bid to regain the throne, sought help from Islam Shah in the Panjab, subsequently discovering that Islam Shah intended to imprison him instead. He escaped from the Panjab only to be captured by the Gakkhars, whose chief, Adam, surrendered him to Humayun. Pressured by his Begg, Humayun had him blinded in August 1553.¹⁷ Now no family opponent was left, and the rival Sur dynasty was disintegrating rapidly.

Leaving Kabul in November 1554, Humayun captured Lahore in 1555. In Sirhind the Afghans strongly resisted the Mughal onslaught but sustained a crushing defeat. On 23 July 1555 Humayun sat on the Delhi throne once more. He died only six months later while descending from the roof of his library where he had gone to observe the rising of Venus on 20 January 1556.¹⁸

Humayun's lifelong enemies were his brothers and kinsmen, but he quailed at the idea of harming them. Nothing demonstrates his

104

keen sense of gratitude to those who helped him more than the story of his making the water-carrier, who had saved him from drowning in the Ganges, sit on his throne for half a day. He was not a good general or organizer but was courageous, optimistic, and persevering. Although he was a devout Sunni he did not despise the Shi'is, nor did he hesitate to seek their help and advice. Humayun was passionately devoted to the study of astronomy, loved painting, and wrote Persian poetry.

AKBAR THE GREAT

Before his death Humayun had appointed Akbar as governor of the Panjab and made his loyal general Bayram Khan his son's guardian. While fighting the Afghans at Kalanaur in modern Gurdaspur district, Akbar received news of his father's death. Bayram Khan promptly crowned Akbar king on 14 February 1556.¹⁹

Akbar's position was still precarious. His army was small, and even the Panjab was not completely subdued. The Afghans drove out the Mughal governors from the Agra-Bayana region; Delhi, which was suffering from a terrible famine, had been seized by Himu. Akbar's nervous followers urged him to retreat to Kabul, but both he and Bayram were determined not to leave India without making every effort to regain the throne. On 5 November 1556 Himu's army met Akbar at Panipat in a fierce battle. Himu drove back the Mughal archers and cavalry and was about to win the day by bringing in his war elephants and reserve cavalry to scatter Akbar's centre, when an arrow pierced his eye. Consternation spread instantly among Himu's army, which broke and fled. Later, when Himu was brought before him as a prisoner, at Bayram Khan's request Akbar unwillingly struck him on the neck with his sword, and Bayram finished him off. The historian Abu'l-Fazl pays an unqualified tribute to Himu's administrative and military talents and suggests that, had his life been spared, Akbar's training would have made him one of the architects of the Mughal empire.²⁰

After Himu's death, Akbar entered Delhi in triumph. Before long his rule was established from Kabul to Jaunpur and from the Panjab hills to Ajmir. Bayram appointed distinguished Iranian literary scholar, 'Abdu'l Latif, as Akbar's tutor, but like previous teachers he too was unable to arouse Akbar's interest in reading and writing. Even so, Akbar's taste in Persian sufi poetry and

105

liberal mystic thought was developed, although he devoted most of his time to sport. While he remained what Abu'l-Fazl calls 'behind a veil',²¹ Bayram Khan, as regent and prime minister, consolidated the administration of the reconquered region. His growing predominance alienated the Atkah Khali or 'foster-father battalion', consisting of the families of Akbar's nurses and their relations, while Akbar's mother resented Bayram's power. Akbar too was made to feel that

Bayram unduly restrained him from organizing elephant fights. By 1560 he was eighteen years old and wished to rule independently.

In March of that year one of his nurses, Maham Anaga, managed to have Akbar transferred from Agra to Delhi. From there Akbar wrote to Bayram ordering him to move to Gwalior and then to leave on a pilgrimage to Mecca. Bayram rejected his supporters' advice to march against Delhi and obediently left Agra, surrendering the insignia of royalty. In their bid to annihilate Bayram Khan, the Atkah Khail sent an army to pursue him. Bayram, who had by now reached Bikanir, decided to teach them a lesson and turned towards the Panjab. Akbar first sent an army to fight Bayram and then arrived himself. Although Bayram defeated the army near Jalandhar, he quailed at the prospect of fighting Akbar and surrendered unconditionally. Akbar ordered him to resume his pilgrimage, and on 31 January 1561 Bayram was assassinated by an Afghan at Patan in Gujarat on his way to Mecca. His camp was plundered, but his four-year-old son, 'Abdu'r Rahim, was sent to court.

Humayun had considered Bayram one of his most loyal supporters. Indeed without him Humayun's visit to Iran would possibly have been unsuccessful. Some modern historians believe that Bayram showed favouritism to his Shi'i co-religionists and that this was responsible for his fall. This is far from true. Bayram considered himself a defender of the Mughal interest and not the Shi'i sect. Even fanatical Sunnis such as Bada'uni considered him unmatched in wisdom, generosity, sincerity and humility. He was a deeply religious man and a great friend of the dervishes. Bada'uni concludes correctly that it was Bayram's strenuous efforts, bravery, and statesmanship which enabled the Mughals to found an empire in India for the second time.

Akbar's rule during the period 1560-4 has been described as a petticoat government, but this is incorrect. On the contrary, he quickly took control of the administration. By frequently changing his wakils or prime ministers he reduced the importance of the position and strengthened his personal power.

A new development in Akbar's career around this time was his

106

growing interest in sufis, Hindu yogis, and sannyasis (hermits). In January 1562 he set off on a pilgrimage to the shrine of Khwaja Mu'Inu'd-Din Chishti at Ajmir. The region had been captured in 1557. On the way, Raja Bharmal Kacchwaha of Amber (modern Jaipur) waited on him. The Raja's feuds with his brother, and the enmity of Akbar's governor of Mewat and Ajmir, had driven him to desperate straits. In his predicament, Bharmal decided to marry his eldest daughter to Akbar in order to gain his favour. This voluntary offer was different from the former forced marriages of Muslim rulers with Hindu princesses. Akbar accepted the offer readily and, when he returned from Ajmir, married her at Sambhar.²² Raja Bhagavan Das (Raja Bharmal's heir) and Man Singh (his nephew and adopted son), were subsequently given senior positions in the imperial hierarchy.

In March 1562 Merta, the key to Marwar, was captured with the help of Akbar's Rajput supporters. This made a deep impression on Akbar's mystic mind, and after his return from the

Ajmir pilgrimage he prohibited the enslavement of prisoners of war and their forcible conversion to Islam on humanitarian grounds.²³ In 1563 he remitted pilgrim taxes throughout his dominions, although, according to Abu'l-Fazl, they yielded millions of rupees in revenue. In March 1564 Akbar lifted jizya (poll-tax) on Hindus. This radical departure from Islamic discriminatory laws paved the way for a more broadly based rule. None of the liberal-minded advisers who in the second half of Akbar's reign made his rule famous had yet entered his court. Akbar's mind was nevertheless filled with Islamic orthodoxy, and his liberal measures were designed merely to initiate a new state policy divorcing personal religious beliefs from the public good. Protests against the remission of poll-tax were made on economic grounds, but Akbar ignored them.

Akbar's ambitions of conquest and expansion were no different from those of other imperialists. He conquered northern India from Agra to Gujarat and then from Agra to Bengal and the borders of Assam. Next he strengthened his north-west frontier and proceeded to subdue the Deccan. The Rajput states generally became his allies, but his own restless Turani leaders were still a potent threat to his ambition of creating a strong centralized Mughal empire. Consequently he proceeded cautiously and established his overlordship with as little use of armed force and bloodshed as possible.

The long-awaited heir to the Mughal throne was born on 30 August 1569. The welcome birth was ascribed to the blessings of Shaykh Salim Chishti of Sikri. The infant was named Salim after the revered sufi saint. His mother was a Kacchwaha princess. On

107

7 June 1570 Akbar's second son, Murad, was also born at Sikri. Akbar again paid a thanksgiving visit to Ajmir.

Akbar's remarkable conquests had filled his mind with gratitude to the Great Bestower of Victories. He spent many nights repeating the names of God and long morning hours meditating. In February or March 1575 he ordered the erection of an elegant structure near the Jami' mosque in his newly built town of Fathpur-Sikri. It was named the 'Ibadat Khana (House of Worship). In fact it functioned as a debating hall. On each Thursday night Akbar repaired there for religious discussions which were resumed on Friday. Only the Sunnis were initially allowed to participate. Mulla 'Abdu'l Qadir Bada'uni, who had entered Akbar's court in April 1574, and Abu'l-Fazl, who joined early in 1575, were the principal debaters. Both had been trained by Abu'l-Fazl's father, Shaykh Mubarak. Both used the same tactics to browbeat their opponents, but Bada'uni was left behind by Abu'l-Fazl, and he grew frustrated and disgruntled while Abu'l-Fazl progressed rapidly. The main targets of their attack were the prominent 'ulama' at court, such as Hajji Ibrahim Sirhindi, Makhdumu'l-Mulk, and Shaykh 'Abdu'n Nabi.²⁴

Early in 1576 preparations for an expedition against Maharana Pratap, the son and heir of Uday Singh of Mewar, prevented the Emperor from devoting his attention exclusively to these theological discussions. Maharana Pratap posed no threat to the empire, but his continued assertions of independence were a challenge to Akbar's policy of bringing the Rajput princes under Mughal overlordship. In September 1572, six months after Maharana Pratap's accession to

his father's throne, Akbar successively sent three missions to persuade Pratap to accept his suzerainty, but none succeeded in moving the freedom-loving Maharana from his ancestral path of hostility to the Mughals. Next Raja Todar Mal tried to persuade the Maharana to develop friendly relations with the Mughals, but to no avail. Akbar now decided to use military force. He went to Ajmir in March 1576, commissioning Man Singh to crush Maharana Pratap and placing eminent Rajput and Muslim commanders under his orders. Some Muslim commanders chose not to fight under a Hindu, but the orthodox Bada'uni, who was only a mullah and not a warrior, joined Man Singh's army voluntarily, to earn the merit of jihad. A fierce battle was fought at Haldighati near Kumbhalgarh on 18 June 1576. The Afghan Hakim Sur fought bravely in the Maharana's army, hoping to re-establish the Afghan rule of Sher Shah. Man Singh's Muslim contemporaries were stunned to note how gallantly the 'Hindus wielded the sword of Islam'. The Maharana was wounded, but his

108

attendant turned his horse, and he withdrew to safety. Both sides lost large numbers of brave men. The exhausted Mughal soldiers failed either to capture or to kill the Maharana and, fearing ambush, were unable to pursue him effectively. Although the Maharana could no longer assemble a force large enough for a head-on confrontation, his guerrilla warfare increased in ferocity. On 12 October 1576 a disappointed Akbar left Ajmir, although he continued trying to encircle and entrap the Maharana. Sirohi and Bund! were subsequently captured, and the Maharana's capital, Kumbhalgarh, ten miles north of Udaipur, was taken on 3 April 1578. In 1585 the Maharana narrowly evaded capture, but by now Akbar was tired of the relentless chase and relaxed his pursuit. The Maharana continued waging guerrilla warfare until his death on 19 January 1597. He was a gallant and heroic character. Akbar was the captive of his own imperialistic ideals, which prevented him from leaving the Maharana in peace.

Akbar again visited Ajmir in September 1577. At Bhira, while returning via the Panjab, he organized a large hunting expedition, called a qamargha, in which wild animals were trapped by encirclement. During this he experienced a fit of ecstasy under a tree, which revolutionized his spiritual life. He became deeply interested in learning about other religions. After his return to Fathpur-Sikri he resumed the theological debates with representatives of all religious groups such as Shi'is, Hindus, Christians, and Zoroastrians. The results were very positive. He grew convinced, as Bada'uni says, that all religions contained some truth and that this was not the prerogative of Islam. He believed that constant self-examination was a spiritual exercise of prime importance and that no action should be taken without sound reason.

Shaykh 'Abdu'n-Nabi meanwhile wished the Emperor to confirm the death sentence on a rich brahman who had been imprisoned for seizing the material collected to build a mosque and also for abusing the Prophet. Akbar left the decision to him, expecting only a mild punishment to be inflicted; but the Shaykh ordered the brahman's execution. This made Akbar angry, because he believed that according to Hanafi law, even if there were ninety-nine precedents authorizing capital punishment for a particular offence and only one allowing leniency, judgement should be based on the more merciful precedent. During this crisis Abu'l-Fazl's father, Shaykh .Mubarak, suggested the Emperor obtain the written verdict of the 'ulama' as to whether the Imam-i 'Adil (Just Ruler) was empowered to decide in accordance with expediency on controversial legal

questions. According to existing Sunni practices Akbar could not be denied this power, which all Muslim rulers

109

exercised. A document dated August-September 1579, known as the mahzar, was consequently signed by the leading 'ulama' under the guidance of Shaykh Mubarak and his sons. It was not an 'infallibility decree' as claimed by V. A. Smith, an eminent authority on Akbar.²⁵

Akbar's political and military reforms, such as the branding of horses, reduction in the commanders' allowances, and the grants of the 'ulama' had already given rise to much dissatisfaction among the Mughal officials. The mishandling of the situation by the Bihar officials in particular sparked off a rebellion there. This spread to Bengal, where the new governor appointed in March 1579, Muzaf-far Khan, was also clumsy in implementing the new revenue and military regulations and in his treatment of the Afghans whose land had been sequestered.

The disgruntled Mughal mansabdars, mainly Turanis, rebelled, putting Muzaffar Khan to death on 19 April 1580. They formed their own government and declared Akbar's half-brother, Mirza Hakim, their ruler. Between 1580 and 1582 the rebellion spread from Bihar and Bengal to Avadh and Katihar. The Shi'I Mulla Muhammad Yazdl led both the Sunn! and Shi'I groups of rebel 'ulama'. Akbar then ordered these 'ulama' to be sent to Agra by boat. Near Agra the boat was sunk, and all the 'ulama' in it drowned.²⁶ Other 'ulama' were either secretly killed, exiled, or imprisoned.

In February 1581 Akbar marched to Kabul against Mirza Hakim. At Kabul the people received him warmly, so although he had defeated him, Akbar left Kabul in Hakim's hands and set off for Agra. The arduous journey did not prevent Akbar from entering into religious discussions. Father Monserrate, a member of the first Jesuit mission at Akbar's court (1580-3), who accompanied the Emperor, has left a lively account of these debates. When Shaykh 'Abdu'n Nabi and Makhdumu'l-Mulk heard of the rebellion, they returned from Mecca without permission but were dismayed to find that by mid-1582 Akbar's Irani and Rajput commanders had restored peace in the eastern provinces. Makhdumu'l-Mulk died at Ahmadabad; 'Abdu'n-Nabi returned to Fathpur-Sikri, where he was imprisoned while the accounts for the money given to him for Meccan charities were audited by Raja Todar Mal, Akbar's Hindu controller of finance. After some months he was strangled.

Father Daniel Bartoli, a later Jesuit author, claims that after his return from Kabul, Akbar made himself the founder and head of a new religion 'compounded out of various elements, taken partly from the Koran of Muhammad, partly from the scriptures of the Brahmans, and to a certain extent, as far as suited his purpose, from the Gospel of Christ'. This religion, Bartoli continues, was

110

discussed by a council of learned men and commanders, from which Father Rudolf of the first Jesuit mission was excluded, where 'The men of note, especially the commandants, who had no God other than the King and no law other than his will', readily accepted Akbar as the founder of the new religion. An old shaykh, identified by V. A. Smith as Shaykh Mubarak, was sent to proclaim to all quarters that in a short time 'the (religious) law to be professed throughout the Mughal empire would be sent from the court and that they should make themselves ready to take it for the best, and accept it with reverence, whatever it might be'.²⁷ This council is regarded by modern scholars as the inauguration of Akbar's alleged new faith, the Din Ilahi (Divine Faith). The letters and reports of three Jesuit missions which visited Akbar, however, indicate that no new religion was ever promulgated. For example, Father Jerome Xavier of the third mission to Akbar's court in 1594 firmly believed that Akbar was not a Muslim but a superstitious pagan. According to him, Akbar 'aims at making a new religion, of which he himself is to be head; and it is said that he already had numerous followers; but that these are for the most part flatterers, or people who have been bribed by money'.²⁸ This shows that no new religion had yet been formulated even as late as 1594, although, according to the Father, 'It is more or less certain that he has a strong desire to be looked upon and esteemed as a God, or some great Prophet; and he would have people believe that he performs miracles, healing the sick with the water with which he washes his feet'.²⁹ Blochmann, a nineteenth-century scholar, lists eighteen people as members of the Din Ilahi. No founder of a new faith could be proud of such a miserable following, much less a mighty emperor like Akbar. The examination of contemporary sources does not lead us to the conclusion that Akbar invented a new religion. Essentially he expected his state grandees to follow the four degrees of devotion or discipleship, denoting readiness to sacrifice their life, property, honour, and religion to promote the interest of their imperial masters. Although the high grandees of the empire were expected to renounce everything, the more junior satisfied the Emperor by expressing a readiness to sacrifice only one or two of the above.³⁰ Akbar had no intention of calling upon his disciples to forsake their ancestral faith; he meant only that religion should not be an obstacle to the promotion of imperial policies. It was this spirit of devotion that made Rajput fight Rajput and Muslim fight Muslim to strengthen the Mughal empire.

Akbar did believe, however, that he could offer spiritual guidance to all those who wished to sit at his feet. Some genuinely sought his help, but others were merely flatterers. There were no

111

theological difficulties, since both Hindus and Muslims in those days believed that the king possessed supernatural spiritual powers. It was customary for the common people and great theologians and mystics to visit the graves of despotic kings like 'Ala'u'd-Din Khaljl in the hope that their prayers would be granted. It was even believed that Sultan Sikandar Lodi could perform miracles such as raising the dead to life. In such a credulous society Akbar's adoption of the role of spiritual guide was not naive.

The death of his half-brother, Mirza Muhammad Hakim, on 9 August 1585 forced Akbar to leave his capital Fathpur-Sikri. He moved to the north-west frontier in order to crush the ambitions of the redoubtable 'Abdu'llah Khan Uzbek of Transoxiana to seize Kabul. He stayed

there until 'Abdu'llah Khan's death in 1598, and his thirteen years' presence firmly established Mughal rule in the area.

Akbar sent three expeditions in the middle of December from his camp at Hasan Abdal. One left for Kashmir, and another set out against Baluchistan. The third force went to Sawat and Bajaur to subdue the Afghan tribes and an Afghan religious movement called the Roshana'is. These were followers of Bayazid, whose creed of 'illumination' was a pantheistic mystic-cum-political movement. Bayazid had died in 1580, and his son Jalala had been captured in 1581 by Akbar's army. He had been well treated but longed for freedom and leadership and fled the imperial camp to prey upon travellers between Peshawar and Kabul. Akbar's early military operations against the Roshana'is and the tribes which helped them were unsuccessful, and in February 1586 his trusted friend Birbal was ambushed by the Yusufza 'is and killed along with some 8,000 troops. When Akbar realized that the tribes could not be subdued by military force he decided to play the clans against each other and won some tribal chiefs over to him by promising them pensions. In 1600 Jalala was killed; his sons lacked their father's qualities, and the Roshana'is ceased to be a threat to the Mughal government.

At the end of March 1586 Raja Bhagawan Das, one of the generals of the Kashmir expedition, succeeded in persuading Yusuf Khan, the last ruler of Kashmir, to surrender. Akbar, however, refused to accept his terms and instead had him and his son Ya'qub Khan arrested. Ya'qub subsequently escaped and started preparations for resistance. The army sent by Akbar conquered Kashmir in October 1586, and it was made a sarkar of Kabul province. Ya'qub died in prison, while Yusuf was made a minor mansabdar of five hundred and given a jagir in Bihar. Akbar's treatment of the ex-Sultan of Kashmir was unjust and ungenerous.

112

The conquest of Kashmir, in conjunction with Akbar's presence in the Panjab, prompted the chiefs of the hilly regions in northern Panjab such as Nagarkot, Jammu, Mau, Kewal, and other petty states to offer their submission. Baltistan and Ladakh in Tibet also recognized imperial suzerainty. The army sent against Baluchistan persuaded the Baluchi chiefs to surrender. Bhakkar was already in Akbar's possession, and in 1590-1 Sind was also conquered.

Early in Akbar's reign the Shah of Iran had captured Qandahar, but his growing preoccupation with the wars against 'Abdu'llah Khan Uzbek gave Akbar the opportunity to regain it. He sent an army under his famous general 'Abdu'r-Rahim Khan-i Khanan. The governor of Qandahar, Muzaffar Mirza, surrendered and was granted a mansab of 5,000. One year later 'Abdu'llah Khan Uzbek recognized the Hindu Kush as the boundary between Transoxiana and the Mughal empire.

The Mughal boundaries, extending from Sind, Baluchistan, Kabul, and Kashmir to the Hindu Kush, were the strongest line of defence that had ever existed in India, and no other Indian ruler - not even Asoka in ancient India, nor the British in modern times - ever controlled such a formidable frontier. Akbar acquired these territories by diplomacy; his use of force was minimal.

Akbar now focused his attention on the Deccan. He was aware of the difficulties of ruling it from northern India. Consequently he intended to make the rulers his mansabdars, so they could retain

their ancestral lands as watan-jagirs and at the same time obtain more jagirs in the Mughal territory commensurate with their mansab. This was an extension of his Rajput policy. After Akbar's conquest of Gujarat, Khandesh generally had accepted his suzerainty, but its loyalty was always suspect.

In 1591, therefore, Akbar appointed his son, Prince Murad, governor of Malwa in order to force the Deccan states into submission. The conflicts between the Habshi and the Dakhini factions had driven the Nizam Shahi state of Ahmadnagar into total confusion, but the differences between Prince Murad and the Khan-i Khanan were equally disastrous. The Mughals attacked Ahmadnagar, but its valiant queen, Chand Bibi, defended it heroically. In December 1595 the Mughal forces appeared again before the walls of Ahmadnagar. They tried to detonate the five mines they had laid, but the garrison, warned by a Mughal traitor, had defused all but one. The small portions of damaged wall were repaired at once under Chand Bibi's leadership. The Mughals fought resolutely but had to retire disappointed.³¹ Nevertheless, forced by a shortage of supplies and the continuous Dakhini feuds, Chand Bibi made peace by ceding Berar. The Mughal forces raised

113

the siege, although the Berar guerrillas still refused to submit. Early in 1597 Raja 'All Khan of Khandesh, who had realized the futility of opposing the Mughals, died fighting in the imperial ranks. The dissension between Murad and the Khan-i Khanan continued, until the Emperor, disgusted, decided to recall them both from the Deccan. In their stead he sent his favourite, Abu'l-Fazl, to use his diplomatic skills to resolve the tangled skein of Deccan politics. The Mughals believed that Raja 'Ali's son, Bahadur, would help them reduce the Deccan rulers to submission, but he decided to rebel and ignored Abu'l-Fazl's peace overtures. On 2 May 1599 Murad, who had not yet returned to court, died near Daulatabad of intemperance. Abu'l-Fazl's difficulties increased, but he began to exert pressure on both Bahadur and Chand Bibi to surrender.

In Lahore, meanwhile, spurred on by the long struggle in the Deccan, Akbar decided to exert his personal pressure on its rulers. There was now little to keep him in the north-west, because 'Abdu'llah Khan Uzbek had died on 4 February 1598, and he left for the Deccan in September 1599. Bahadur still refused to surrender and took refuge in Asirgarh fort. The Mughal forces besieged him on 1 April, and Akbar arrived eight days later to direct operations. Many of Bahadur's generals accepted bribes. The subsequent assassination on 3 July 1600 of Ahmadnagar's valiant defender Chand Bibi by one of her eunuchs, followed by the imperialist capture of Ahmadnagar, demoralized the Asirgarh garrison. Bahadur was still not prepared to surrender unconditionally. Then Abu'l-Fazl seized Maligarh fort near Asirgarh at the end of November 1600, and more forts fell to the Mughals. Bahadur began to despair of success. Pestilence was now raging in the overcrowded Asirgarh fort; the local population had fled there for safety. Bahadur finally surrendered, and Asirgarh was captured on 17 January 1601.³² Akbar assigned Khandesh to his son, Daniyal, renaming it Dandesh. Then Prince Salim rebelled in Allahabad, and Akbar left for the north. Daniyal was given supreme command in the Deccan, while the Khan-i Khanan controlled operations in Ahmadnagar. Abu'l-Fazl was subordinate to both. Although there was no love lost between the Ahmadnagar commanders - Malik Ambar, an Ethiopian,³³ and Raju, a native Deccani - they remained a potent threat to the Mughals, whose

leaders were unable to devise a concerted plan. In March 1602 Akbar gave Abu'l-Fazl an independent commission but, before he could implement it, recalled him to help deal with Prince Salim's rebellion. Abu'l-Fazl rushed to the north, but Prince Salim had him killed by the Bundela chief, Bir Singh Deva, near Gwalior on his

114

way to Agra. Shocked by the news, Akbar despaired of the future.

Prince Salim, the longed-for child of many a prayer, had ignored his duties from 1591, refusing to lead an expedition either to the Deccan or to Transoxiana. He would not even venture as far as Mewar, but made his headquarters at Allahabad. Akbar's mother, Hamida Banu Begum, and his aunt, Gulbadan Begum, interceded for the Prince and softened Akbar's resentment. The death of Akbar's other son, Prince Daniyal, of inebriation on 19 March was also in Salim's favour. Those of Akbar's favourites who were friendly to Salim, such as Miran Sadr-i Jahan, then persuaded the Prince to visit Akbar in Agra fort. The disappointed and frustrated father gradually controlled his bitterness and allowed Salim to stay on the opposite bank of the Jamuna. The real threat to Salim's accession came from his own son, Khusraw, born to Man Singh's sister on 6 August 1587, who was uncompromisingly supported by his father-in-law, Mirza 'Aziz Koka. Akbar did not want to pass over Salim in favour of Khusraw but saw in him a weapon to use against Salim. In September, Akbar fell seriously ill. Court intrigues grew increasingly brisk, but the majority of the mansabdars loyal to Akbar supported Prince Salim, although his personal followers had been dispersed by the Emperor. One of them, Shaikh Farid Bukhari, found Akbar breathing his last and marched out to Agra fort to congratulate Prince Salim on his accession. He neither imposed any conditions nor sought any pledges from him, and Prince Salim came to his father's deathbed escorted by Farid's supporters. The dying Emperor placed his turban on his son's head and girded him with his own dagger. Akbar died on 16 October 1605. The conspiracy to set Salim aside petered out,

Akbar's leadership ensured the loyalty to the Mughal throne of the heterogeneous religious and racial groups of the country and awakened them to the importance of coexistence, toleration, and co-operation. Although the separatist tendencies of the castes, sects, and groups could not be completely eradicated, the flexible framework of Akbar's institutions could, with a little thoughtfulness and imagination, accommodate them. He was the greatest king that India ever produced.

JAHANGIR

Prince Salim ascended the Mughal throne on 24 October 1605. He assumed the title of Jahangir (World-Conqueror). Throughout his life he adhered to Akbar's ideals of the coexistence of all religious communities. He remitted some local taxes on trade and the

115

The Mughal Empire at the death of Akbar (1605)

manufacture of goods. He also forbade the killing of animals for food on Thursdays and Sundays, and no slaughtering was permitted on Jahangir's birthday and several other days in the year.³⁴

Jahangir promoted to higher mansabs those noblemen who had helped him but he did not unduly demote the grandees of his father's reign, although he suspected some of disloyalty. On 6 April 1606 Jahangir's son, Prince Khusraw, fled from Agra to Lahore, gathering about 12,000 supporters on the way; even some famous sufis and yogis prayed for his success. Jahangir pursued him personally, defeating him near Lahore. Khusraw was captured while trying to escape to Kabul; he was imprisoned, and some of his leading supporters were executed. Among the Muslim sufis who had blessed Khusraw was Skaykh Nizam Thanewari, whom Jahangir banished to Mecca.³⁵ Another of Khusraw's well-wishers, Guru Arjan, the fifth Guru of the Sikhs, who was greatly respected by both Hindus and Muslims, was beheaded.

From Lahore, Jahangir visited Kabul, where he made improvements in the road system. On his way back to Agra he ordered that Khusraw be blinded in order to disqualify him permanently from gaining the throne. The operation was not a success, however, and the Prince later regained his sight. Jahangir did not pursue the matter. Khusraw's personal charm and vigour were impressive, and he had been more deeply imbued with Akbar's ideals than his father. Besides the support of Man Singh and Mirza 'Aziz Koka, Khusraw was loved and respected by all sections of his countrymen. These factors made a reconciliation with his father and brothers impossible.

During Akbar's reign Jahangir had taken no interest in subduing the 'Maharana of Mewar, but now he used both military force and diplomacy in trying to secure the surrender of Maharana Pratap's successor, Amar Singh. One after the other, his leading commanders nevertheless returned unsuccessful. In 1613 Jahangir himself marched to Ajmir. Villages and towns were sacked and agricultural fields burnt. New military posts were established in the inaccessible hilly regions, and Chitor was blockaded. Finally Rana Amar Singh decided to make peace. A new phase opened in Mughal-Mewar relations, bringing to an end the war which had brought immense suffering and bloodshed to both sides. Both rulers showed understanding towards each other, but Jahangir cannot escape the charge of unnecessarily declaring his invasion a religious war.

After Mewar, the Deccan was Jahangir's main concern. In 1608 he sent the Khan-i Khanan, at his own request, to subdue it. Malik Ambar, who commanded the light Maratha horses of Ahmadnagar, pursued his guerrilla tactics with greater vigour, however, and

the Mughal invasions were repeatedly beaten back. The Mughals lost Ahmadnagar, which until then had been successfully defended. In Jahangir's reign the Deccan wars yielded no substantial gains, and the Mughals were unable to advance beyond northern Deccan.

In May 1611 Jahangir married Mihru'n-Nisa', the widow of Sher Afgan, who was killed fighting the governor of Bengal. After her marriage Mihru'n-Nisa' was given the title Nur Mahal (Light of the Palace) and, later, Nur Jahan (Light of the World). Although thirty-four years old, her beauty, charm, intelligence, and creative ability soon made her dominate her husband. Nur Jahan's mother was an equally talented lady, while her father, I'timadu'd-Dawla, had been appointed joint-diwan long before the wedding. Although his son Muhammad Sharif's intrigues to free Khusraw from prison had caused I'timadu'd-Dawla considerable embarrassment, his position was not affected. After his daughter's marriage to the Emperor, his talents found recognition. His mansab was increased, and he was promoted as wazir. His death in January 1622 was mourned as a serious loss by the Emperor.

Nur Jahan also had an elder brother, Mirza Abu'l-Hasan. He was given the title I'tiqad Khan and later Asaf Khan and was appointed Master of the Household. Both he and his father minutely controlled financial transactions and were far-sighted counsellors. In April 1612 Asaf Khan's daughter, Arjumand Banu Begum (later entitled Mumtaz Mahal), married Jahangir's third son, Prince Khurram, firmly linking Nur Jahan's family with the Mughal household.

Nur Jahan dictated orders and issued farmans. Coins were even struck in her name, but it was not until 1622 that Jahangir's rapidly declining health reduced him to a figure-head and made Nur Jahan ruler in all but name.

Prince Khusraw died at Burhanpur in August 1621 while in the custody of Prince Khurram. The official cause of death was colic, but it was generally believed that he had been strangled. Their youngest brother, Shahryar, was incompetent, although his betrothal to Ladili Begum, Nur Jahan's daughter by Sher Afgan, made him the real contender to the throne. Even the news of the Iranian invasion of Qandahar did not relegate the palace intrigues to the background. Khurram, who was given the command to repel the Iranis, urged the Emperor to grant him full control over the Panjab. The imperial interest could be served only by invading Qandahar immediately, thus giving the Iranians no time to consolidate their recent gains there, but Khurram procrastinated. Jahangir was convinced that the Prince's 'brain had gone wrong' and that he was 'unworthy of all favours and cherishing'³⁶ he had

118

given him. Shahryar was now elevated. His mansab was raised to 12,000 zat, and 8,000 sawar (see p. 176) and some of Khurram's jagirs in the north were transferred to him, while Khurram was ordered to choose jagirs of equivalent value in the south. Shahryar was then commissioned to lead the campaign against Qandahar, which the Shah had taken after a siege of forty-five days in 1622. Khurram sent his clever diwan, Afzal Khan, to convince the Emperor of his innocence, but to no avail. Finding no way out of the impasse, Khurram rebelled and marched towards Agra. He even wrote to the Shah of Iran requesting support. Asaf Khan was concerned to promote Khurram's interests, and Nur Jahan had no alternative but to seek the support of Mahabat Khan, the governor of Kabul. Although he openly condemned Jahangir for abandoning his independent judgement, Mahabat Khan could not afford to miss this opportunity to increase his power. He marched to Delhi, reaching it in February 1623. Khurram did not submit, however, and the civil war lasted more than three years at great cost in money and life to both sides. Jahangir's grief for

the loss of Qandahar and the toll of the civil war was indescribable. Khurram ultimately surrendered, having misjudged the devotion of the Mughal generals to Jahangir and Nur Jahan.

The combined strength of Jahangir's second son, Parviz, and Mahabat Khan, who had exhibited considerable perseverance in crushing Khurram's rebellion, now posed a threat to Nur Jahan and her brother, Asaf Khan. Consequently Mahabat was transferred to Bengal as governor, and Parviz was ordered to stay at Burhanpur. Jahangir's loyal Afghan general, Khan-i Jahan Lodi, was appointed Prince Parviz's wakil or regent. Parviz and Mahabat reluctantly submitted to the imperial orders. A second royal mandate ordered Mahabat Khan to send the elephants he had obtained during the civil war to court and to furnish an account of the large sums forfeited to the government from the dismissal of disloyal jdgirdars and zamindars. Mahabat Khan realized that ruin stared him in the face. He planned his actions coolly and cautiously. He first sent the elephants to court and then repaired there himself with 4,000 Rajputs and 2,000 Mughals under his standard. By then the Emperor had reached Lahore from Kashmir and was moving towards Kabul. He was camped on the bank of the Jhelam when Mahabat Khan arrived. The insults heaped upon Mahabat Khan and his son-in-law forced him to save his life and honour by militant measures. In March 1625, when the imperial cortege had crossed to the other side of the Jhelam leaving the Emperor behind, Mahabat Khan took control of the Emperor and his camp by a coup de main. He forgot, however, to seize Nur Jahan, who crossed the

119

bridge in disguise accompanied by a eunuch. She summoned Asaf Khan and the nobles and upbraided them for their negligence. They attempted to re-cross the river and free the Emperor, but the ford they selected was impassable. Asaf Khan then fled to Attock, and the other generals took to their heels. Nur Jahan thereupon surrendered to Mahabat Khan, who allowed her to live with the Emperor. Mahabat Khan now assumed control of the government. Initially Asaf Khan resisted him from Attock but he too ultimately surrendered.

No real threat to Mahabat's dominance was left, but his principal objective had always been to undermine the influence of Nur Jahan and her supporters, not to usurp the throne. Nur Jahan, for her part, now began to foment dissatisfaction against Mahabat, while lulling him into the belief that she had no ambition to rule. Jahangir, under her direction, also pretended to be grateful to Mahabat Khan for freeing him from Nur Jahan and Asaf Khan. Towards the end of August 1626 the imperial cortege left for Kabul, and at the same river bank where six months earlier he had lost it the Emperor regained his freedom by trickery.³⁷ He persuaded Mahabat Khan to let him review his troops and then assumed command of them. Mahabat Khan fled to Thatta. Asaf Khan was made wakil, and Nur Jahan's supporters regained control of the government.

Mahabat Khan's success in organizing the coup was dramatic, but he could not match Nur Jahan's tactics nor gain the Mughal nobles' confidence. Moreover Jahangir's rapidly declining health had diverted attention from him to his successor. In March 1627 Jahangir left Lahore for Kashmir, accompanied by Nur Jahan, Asaf Khan, Shahryar, and other grandees. In Kashmir his asthma took a serious turn, while Prince Shahryar contracted leprosy. The imperial cortege marched back to Lahore. The Emperor died on 29 October 1627 at Bhimbar in Kashmir at the age of sixty, having ruled for about twenty-two years. No important conquests were made in his

reign, nor were there any remarkable administrative reforms. Although he ruthlessly persecuted any religious and Islamic sectarian leaders whom he considered a threat to his rule, his respect for the sufi leaders and Hindu ascetics was truly sincere. He loved sufi poetry and Vedantic ideas. The Hindu theory of the divine incarnation of God did not appeal to him, but he celebrated all Hindu festivals with great enthusiasm. Sir Thomas Roe, the ambassador of James I at Jahangir's court, wrote to Prince Charles (afterwards Charles I): 'His religione is of his owne invention; for he envyes Mahomett, and wisely sees noe reason why hee should not bee as great a prophet as hee'.³⁸ Jahangir aroused more hopes

120

in the Jesuit priests that he would accept baptism than did Akbar. In his Tuzuk, Jahangir described his drinking bouts without inhibition but he did not suggest that his subjects should imitate him. His Tuzuk in Persian does not match Babur's for frankness and expression, but it is nevertheless informative and reflects the author's deep appreciation of nature as well as his inherent inquisitiveness.

SHAHJAHAN

Jahangir's death made the struggle for the throne imminent. Nur Jahan immediately alerted Shahryar, who was undergoing medical treatment, to prepare for war and she tried to arrest Asaf Khan. He was too astute to fall into her hands and instantly sent messengers to Prince Khurram, urging him to come to Agra post-haste. Then, realizing that Khurram could not be crowned in absentia, Asaf Khan played for time by proclaiming one of Jahangir's favourites, Khusraw's son Dawar Bakhsh, king. The Emperor's dead body was sent from Bhimbar to Lahore for burial in the Dilkusha garden of Shahdara. Shahryar proclaimed himself king in Lahore and hurriedly collected an army, but Asaf Khan easily defeated him, imprisoning him and Daniyal's two sons.

Khurram marched quickly from the Deccan as virtual ruler, appointing his own governors and commanders on the way. Before he reached Agra, Dawar Bakhsh, his brother Shahryar, and Daniyal's two sons were beheaded. Parviz had already died of intemperance at the end of October 1626. On 2 January 1628 near Agra, Khurram proclaimed himself emperor as Shahjahan. Asaf Khan was rewarded with the highest mansab in the Mughal military-cum-civil hierarchy and the promotion of Mahabat Khan was just as spectacular. Other supporters were also rewarded. Asaf Khan's arrival on 26 February 1628 at Agra with Khurram's sons, the Princes Dara, Shuja', and Aurangzib, whom he had taken from Nur Jahan's custody, made the imperial pageantry more colourful. The happiness of the parents was indescribable. Asaf Khan was confirmed as wakil. Nur Jahan was awarded a pension of two lacs of rupees and retired to Lahore, where she died in 1655. She was buried near her husband's tomb.

The cold-blooded murder of all possible contenders for the throne had removed any threat from the imperial family to Shahjahan's rule. Shahjahan could not trust Jahangir's favourite, Khan-i Jahan Lodi, however, who had obtained rapid promotion

121

under Jahangir and had been appointed governor of the Deccan to crush his own rebellion against the Emperor. Once Shahjahan's rule was firmly established, Khan-i Jahan apologized to the Emperor and sent him a string of costly pearls. Initially he was made governor of Berar and Khandesh but was soon transferred to Malwa. He was then recalled to court and ordered to disband his forces. Finding total ruin imminent, he fled the court in October 1629 and, pursued by the relentless imperialist forces, took refuge with Murtaza Nizam Shah of Ahmadnagar, with whom he had established friendly relations.

Shahjahan took the field in person, leaving Agra on 3 December 1629 for Burhanpur. A terrible famine was raging in Daulatabad, and when the Mughals invaded Ahmadnagar from different directions Murtaza was convinced of the precariousness of his position. The differences between Khan-i Jahan and Murtaza began to mount, forcing the host to move to north of the Narbada in November 1630, where the Bundelas also refused to support him. Khan-i Jahan was forced to disperse his Afghan followers, retaining only a handful for personal safety. In February 1631 he fell fighting near Banda in modern Uttar Pradesh. His head was sent to the Emperor at Daulatabad.³⁹

For sixteen months Khan-i Jahan had fought resolutely, but his defeat in the face of the vast Mughal resources was a foregone conclusion. His supporters had dreamed of reviving Afghan rule, but Khan-i Jahan was more realistic in assessing his own strength. He could have survived longer in the Afghan tribal regions beyond Peshawar, but life as a high-ranking Mughal mansabdar had made him unsuited to guerrilla warfare.

Shahjahan's war against the Bundelas was endemic. Bundel-khand, lying on the route from Agra to the Deccan, had never been peaceful; but during Jahangir's reign Bir Singh Deva Bundela had become the Emperor's favourite by assassinating Abu'l-Fazl. Despite regular promotions, Bir Singh was notorious for encroaching on both his Hindu and his Mughal neighbours' territories. After his death in 1627 his son Jujhar succeeded him. Jujhar also had a son, Vikramajit, who was greedy and cruel. While Jujhar was at Shahjahan's court congratulating him on his accession, many reports castigating Vikramajit were received. The Emperor instituted inquiries into the administration of Bundelkhand. Although Jujhar Singh was allowed to hold a mansab of 4,000 zat and 4,000 sowar by the Emperor, he was alarmed and fled. Shahjahan immediately ordered a massive build-up of Mughal forces. His generals besieged the whole state, and the Emperor himself moved to Gwalior, ostensibly on a hunting expedition but in reality to

122

supervise military operations. Finding no way out of the impasse, Jujhar surrendered. A heavy fine was imposed on him, but he was confirmed in his original rank and ordered to serve in the Deccan with his own contingents. His subsequent service there earned him promotion to the rank of 5,000, but when he returned to his capital of Orcha his lawlessness revived. He arbitrarily killed the Gond chief of Chauragarh and seized his capital. The chief's son appealed to the Emperor, who decided to chastise Jujhar for aggrandizing himself at the expense of an imperial protectorate. Jujhar was ordered to surrender the conquered territories and stolen treasure. Before the royal orders were issued, Jujhar rebelled and recalled his son from the Deccan. The Emperor ordered Aurangzib to attack Bundelkhand from three sides. In March 1634 Orcha was seized and

a Bundela raja of a different family installed there. The imperialist forces pursued Jujhar and his son relentlessly, and eventually they were murdered and their heads sent to Shahjahan. Jujhar's bulging treasury also fell into the Emperor's hands. The massive Orcha temple built by Bir Singh was wantonly demolished, the idols were desecrated, and a mosque was built on the site. One of Jujhar's sons and a grandson were converted to Islam. The royal Bundela ladies were forced to serve either the imperial ladies or the Muslim nobles.⁴⁰

Shahjahan's punitive measures were marked by a revival of pre-Akbar vindictiveness. The wave of resentment his atrocities aroused made the rule of the imperial nominee at Orcha, Devi Singh, very difficult. Then Champat Ray, a brave Bundela chief, crowned one of Jujhar's sons, and the Bundelas rallied around his standard. The guerrilla fighters remained as elusive as ever to the Mughal columns sent to stop Bundela incursions into Mughal territories. It was only when one of Bir Singh Deva's sons, Pahadh Singh, was given command of the Mughal expedition that Champat surrendered and accepted a mansab.

There was no resistance to the Emperor's suzerainty in Little Tibet. Kooch-Bihar had been annexed to the empire during Jahangir's reign and remained peaceful. In Assam the raids during 1628-39 seemed to demarcate the Mughal boundaries, enabling trade and commerce gradually to develop.

In the eastern part of Bengal the Portuguese enjoyed a monopoly of the salt trade, participated in the slave trade, and forcibly converted the local population to Christianity. They also protected the Chittagong pirates and helped the King of Arakan against the Mughals. This prompted Shahjahan to mount an invasion, by both land and river. Hugli, the Portuguese stronghold, was besieged. After about one year the Portuguese were defeated, and the

123

Christian prisoners were forced to embrace Islam.⁴¹

The north-west frontier tribes were also a source of trouble. The Roshana'i leader, Ahdad, was killed in 1625-6, but his successor, 'Abdu'l Qadir, made many successful raids on the Mughal army. The constant movement of troops en route to Transoxiana and Qandahar, however, soon intimidated the tribes, and peace was restored in the region.

The Shah of Iran had refused to assist Shahjahan's rebellion against his father. After his accession diplomatic relations were maintained, although the governor of Kabul was ordered to seize any opportunity to recover Qandahar. No military action was taken, but in February 1638 'All Mardan Khan, the Iranian governor of Qandahar, frightened by Shah Safi's atrocities against the proteges of his father, Shah 'Abbas, surrendered the fort to the Mughal commander of Ghazm. He was given a mansab of 6,000 and appointed governor of Kashmir. He became an asset to the Mughal empire, both as a far-sighted administrator and as an engineer. The forces of the new Qandahar governor, Qulij Khan, quickly reconquered territory as far as Zamindawar. The Mughals were unable to retain Qandahar for long and had to surrender it to the Iranian army in February 1649. Both Aurangzib and Dara Shukoh mounted unsuccessful invasions to recover Qandahar. The Iranian artillery had grown very powerful during the wars against Turkey and

remained superior to the Mughal guns. The Mughal army was brained to fight on the plains and was ignorant of siege tactics. Fighting in the hilly Qandahar region was alien to it.

The Mughal inability to fight prolonged wars in mountains and under unfavourable climatic conditions also frustrated Shahjahan's ambitions to conquer Transoxiana. The Mughals lost more than five thousand lives during their successive invasions between 1639 and 1647. The Uzbeks suffered heavier losses and their territories were practically ruined, but they would not surrender. Shahjahan also became more realistic and stopped dreaming of ruling over his former ancestral lands, now inhabited by hostile tribes. Shahjahan's imperial policies were more successful in the Deccan. Malik Ambar, the indefatigable saviour of the Nizam Shahi kingdom of Ahmadnagar, had died in May 1626. Shahjahan enticed some Maratha leaders into his service. The most eminent among them was Shahji Bhonsle, the son-in-law of Jadhav Rao, who had been murdered by Nizam Shah. Malik Ambar's son, Fath Khan, whom Burhan had made his prime minister, ungratefully assassinated his patron. He subsequently placed Burhan's son, Husayn Nizam Shah, aged ten, on the throne. The Nizam Shahs refused to co-operate with him and Fath Khan consequently

124

surrendered to the Mughals. The Emperor would have continued fighting from his base at Burhanpur, but the death on 7 June 1631 of his devoted wife, Mumtaz Mahal, dampened his interest in warfare. He left Burhanpur on 6 March 1632, assigning the supreme command to Mahabat Khan, who captured Daulatabad. By this time Shahji was alienated from the Mughals, and his armies and those of 'Adil Shah of Bijapur fearlessly ravaged the imperial territories. Murtaza Nizam Shah III was raised to the Ahmadnagar throne in place of Husayn Nizam Shah, and Path Khan's treaty with the Mughals was thrown overboard.

Mahabat Khan died of a fistula in October 1634. In February 1636 Shahjahan again arrived in Daulatabad. He dispatched one division of his army to capture the Nizam Shahi forts in the north-west and another to crush Shahji. A third division was ordered to invade Bijapur, and a fourth to prevent Qutb Shah of Golkonda from helping Ahmadnagar and Bijapur. The Ahmadnagar kingdom was unable to resist the Mughal onslaught and lost its independence. Both Bijapur and Golkonda signed a treaty with the Emperor. Bijapur was given Konkan and some other districts of Ahmadnagar. 'Abdu'l-lah Qutb Shah of Golkonda agreed to accept the orthodox Sunni form of the khutba⁴² and to pay tribute to Shahjahan.

Shahji was now chased by the Mughal and Bijapur armies from fort to fort in turn and surrendered several important strongholds. Khandesh, Berar, Telingana, and Daulatabad were made into four Mughal provinces. The sixty-four hill-forts of the Deccan remained the principal centres of Mughal strength in the south.

The first viceroy, Aurangzib, controlled all four provinces from July 1636 to June 1644. Six viceroys succeeded him, each working for a short period only. In 1652 Aurangzib, after his dismissal from the Qandahar expedition, was appointed viceroy of the Deccan for the second time. He made Khirki, founded by Malik Ambar, the capital of the Mughal Deccan and named it Aurangabad. The land revenue collected was, however, insufficient to maintain the huge army

necessary to control the hilly terrain. The khalisa revenue was reserved for expenditure at the Emperor's discretion, and the tribute paid by the rulers of Golkonda and Deogarh was not enough to balance the expenditure. Both the mansabdars and the viceroy clamoured for jagirs in the fertile north in order to fulfil their obligations. The Emperor allowed the Prince to exchange his own unproductive jagir for more fertile ones in mansabdar lands, but this was no solution. The financial bickering between father and son forms a large part of Aurangzib's correspondence known as the *Add-i 'Alamgiri*. Murshid Quli Khan, Aurangzib's diwan in

125

15. Babur supervising the layout of a garden in the *Babur-nama* (p. 92)

16. Jahangir shoots a deer c. 1610 (p. 120)

17. The invention of the mirror under the direction of Sikandar Zu'lq'arnayn (Alexander the Great) c. 1590 (p. 225)

18. An attractive turkey-cock painted at Jahangir's command, attributed to Mansur, c. 1612 (p. 301)

19. Abu'l-Fazl, presenting the *Akbar-Nama* to the Emperor Akbar, painted by Govardhan in the *Akbar-Nama* (p. 107)

20. Sword of Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji (1296-1316) (p. 36)

21. Shaykh Phul Shattari in front of his Agra house, by Bishundas, seventeenth century (p. 262)

22. Birth of Prince Salim in the hurriedly built house near Shaykh Salim Chishti 's hermitage at Fathpur-Sikri (p. 106)23.

23. The story of unfaithful wife from the *Baharistan of Nuru 'd-Dan'* Abdur' Rahman Jami (p.301)

24. Portrait of Shahjahan with a halo by Bichitr (p. 301)

25. Presentation of a meal painted by Banwari the Elder from the *Babur-Nama* (p. 95)

26. Portrait of Jahahgir painted by Hashim, below an Indian representation of John the Baptist Nadiru'g-Zaman; on the border are Hafiz's verses (p. 301)

Balaghat (excluding Khandesh and Pa'inghat) and from 1656 onwards in the whole of the Deccan, came to the rescue by introducing Todar Mai's reforms into the Deccan. He appointed a hierarchy of village officials to improve cultivation and revenue realization. Aurangzib also improved military efficiency and streamlined the civil administration.

Dara's supporters, however, did not allow Shahjahan to appreciate Aurangzib's problems and misrepresented the steps he took to improve the administration. They ridiculed Aurangzib's recommendations; even his minor requests were rejected. He was humiliated on insignificant issues and taken to task for acts which he never committed. Aurangzib's persistent demands that the envoys at Bijapur and Golkonda should take their orders from him and that the imperial correspondence with them should be channelled through him were granted only at the close of his service and then with reservations. Aurangzib was nevertheless keen to annex Golkonda in order to seize its fabulous wealth. The late payments of tributes and the varying exchange value of the Qutbshahi gold coins gave him an excuse. He also took the Sultan to task for not obtaining his overlord's permission before capturing the former Vijayanagara territory of Karnataka.

Karnataka was conquered by 'Abdu'llah Qutb Shah's prime minister, Mir Jumla, a Shi'i adventurer from Isfahan, who was unmatched in both martial and administrative ability. Mir Jumla's conquests in Karnataka made him ruler of a kingdom yielding an annual revenue of 4 million rupees. His cavalry and artillery were the strongest in the region. He already possessed twenty diamond mines and he channelled the rewards from his conquests into personal commercial gains; he was not prepared to part with Karnataka. Mir Jumla visited Golkonda reluctantly but quickly returned to his capital Gandikota, in Karnataka, determined never to return. From Karnataka he sent envoys offering his services both to Bijapur and to Iran. Aurangzib could not miss this opportunity to profit from Mir Jumla's wealth and vast administrative experience. Shahjahan promised Mir Jumla protection, but he remained irresolute. Intrigues with three courts could not remain secret. Both the Deccan courts decided to fight Mir Jumla when they learned of his negotiations.

The drunkenness and insolence of Mir Jumla's son, Muhammad Amin, while at the Qutb Shahi court gave the Sultan a pretext to cast him and his family into prison and attach their property. Shahjahan had appointed Mir Jumla and Muhammad Amin as Mughal mansabdars, however, and he wrote to Qutb Shah ordering him to release them. The Emperor ordered Aurangzib to seize

126

Golkonda-if the Sultan disobeyed him. Without giving Qutb Shah time to comply, Aurangzib ordered his son, Prince Muhammad Sultan, to invade Golkonda. He himself moved with an army to Daulatabad in order to prevent 'Adil Shah's army from assisting Golkonda. On receipt of the Emperor's letter, Qutb Shah sent Muhammad Amin and his family to Aurangzib, but Muhammad Sultan remained at war. Qutb Shah fled on 22 January 1556 from Hyderabad to Golkonda in order to save himself from total destruction. Next day the invaders entered Hyderabad, which they ransacked for two days. Qutb Shah's entreaties and his abject obedience to the imperial command were of no avail. On 6 February Aurangzib himself besieged Golkonda but was unable to storm the fort, because the Deccani guerrilla tactics blunted the Mughal aggression. Aurangzib was determined to annihilate the Qutb Shahi state in order to seize its wealth and earn religious merit for destroying a Shi'I kingdom. Shahjahan, however, was not prepared to take extreme measures, and Dara Shukoh, who had been bribed by the Golkonda envoy, secured peace for them on the payment of an indemnity. Aurangzib, considering the imperial decision fatuous, kept Shahjahan's letter secret, until humiliating terms were accepted by Qutb Shah.⁴³ On 20 March

Mir Jumla reached Aurangzib's camp at Golkonda and gave the viceroy many valuable presents. He was immediately called to Delhi, where he again produced gifts worth several lakhs, including a large diamond. He was given a mansab of 6,000 and made diwan in place of the lately deceased Sa'du'llah Khan.

Aurangzib's appropriation of the Golkonda booty increased the wrangling between him and the Emperor. The Viceroy and his officers were accused of amassing enormous wealth from the Hyderabad plunder and private gifts from Qutb Shah. Aurangzib complained that the war had bankrupted his treasury, that his soldiers' pay was six months in arrears, and that no share of the Golkonda indemnity had been paid to him. Qutb Shah now arranged through Dara Shukoh to retain Karnataka, but Aurangzib intrigued with Mir Jumla to prevent this. Mir Jumla had already agreed to serve Aurangzib's interest at the imperial court, where his wealth dazzled the Emperor's eyes. Naturally he became the mouthpiece for Aurangzib's aggressive policy, and Dara was unable to implement his peace proposals despite his influence over the Emperor. The Emperor subsequently decided to retain Karnataka in his own hands.

Frustrated in his aggression against Golkonda, Aurangzib obtained an excuse to invade Bijapur when Muhammad 'Adil Shah (1627-56) died. Under Muhammad 'Adil Shah the Bijapur kingdom

127

had expanded tremendously. He was also partially successful in his invasion of the Portuguese territories of Goa and Salsette. The Sultan had lived in peace with the Emperor ever since his treaty with Shahjahan. After his death, however, Aurangzib refused to recognize 'Ali 'Adil Shah II (1656-72), a youth of eighteen, as his successor. Instead he massed his troops at Bijapur, awaiting the Emperor's orders to invade the kingdom, on the plea that the new ruler was an impostor. In November 1656 Shahjahan gave Aurangzib a free hand against Bijapur. The unprovoked war violated the solemn peace agreement signed by Shahjahan in 1636. Aurangzib conquered Bidar and Kalyani, which made the fall of Bijapur imminent. Dara, however, came to Bijapur's rescue and succeeded in persuading the Emperor to stop all further aggression against it. Besides the payment of an indemnity of 15 million rupees, Bijapur agreed to cede Kalyani, Bidar, and the fort of Parenda with its dependencies. Mir Jumla was ordered by the Emperor to take possession of the newly ceded forts and then to return to the imperial court.⁴⁴

While Aurangzib was preparing to invade Bijapur, Shahji Bhonsle's son, Shivaji, seized his father's western jagirs and began capturing the Bijapur hill-forts. He urged Aurangzib to allow him to seize the 'Adil Shahi Konkan in order to gain his co-operation. Aurangzib gave a non-committal reply. Profiting by Aurangzib's preoccupation with Bijapur, Shivaji raided Junnar in south-west Mughal territory. Panic spread as far as Ahmadnagar. Aurangzib ordered the devastation of Puna and Chakan and ravaged other areas of Shivaji's domains, having first made sure that the imperial territory was protected against any sudden attack by the Maratha guerrillas. After the submission of Bijapur, Shivaji also surrendered, asking forgiveness for his raids. Aurangzib was still not mollified, but Shahjahan's sudden attack of strangury in September 1657 plunged the empire into consternation.

The Emperor was more than sixty-five and had ruled with great pomp for more than thirty years. His four sons - Murad Bakhsh (b. 1624), Aurangzib (b. 1618), Shuja' (b. 1616), and Dara Shukoh (b. 1615) - were now all mature men. The Emperor doted on Dara and had made him viceroy of rich provinces. After he had been ill for a week Shahjahan nominated Dara as his successor. Susceptible to flattery and sycophancy, Dara was devoid of Aurangzib's shrewdness. Shah Shuja', who had been governor of Bengal, had grown indolent, while Murad, governor of Malwa and Gujarat, was brave but pleasure-loving. Aurangzib possessed a calculating mind, had developed initiative and tenacity as a result of his experience, and was a good judge of character. Of their sisters, Jahan Ara Begum

128

(b. 1614), called Begum Sahiba, was Dara's partisan, Raushan Ara (b. 1624) supported Aurangzib, and Gawhar Ara (b. 1631) acted as a spy for Murad. In 1642 Shah Shuja' and Aurangzib had made a firm friendly alliance. Shuja' betrothed his daughter to Sultan Muhammad, Aurangzib's son, and Aurangzib promised his daughter to Shuja's son. Murad also became friendly with Aurangzib. On hearing of Shahjahan's illness, their clandestine correspondence became more frequent, and a cipher was devised to transmit secret information.

As the Emperor's deputy, Dara tried to stop the alarming rumours from spreading, but panic mounted.

Shahjahan had recovered by the middle of November 1657 but the Princes refused to believe the news. Even letters from Shahjahan and Jahan Ara were of no avail. Then the Princes raised the battle-cry of liberating Shahjahan from Dara's vicious control. Early in December, Murad declared himself king, and Shah Shuja' proclaimed his independence in his capital Rajmahal in Bengal. Shah Shuja' reached Banaras by forced marches in January 1658. Dara's gifted son, Sulayman Shukoh, however, defeated him at Bahadurpur near Banaras, and Shuja' took refuge in Patna.⁴⁵

Aurangzib moved cautiously. He tried to conciliate the rulers of Golkonda and Bijapur and wrote to Shivaji asking him not to disturb the peace there. Many disgruntled nobles at the imperial court secretly assured Aurangzib of their support. Aurangzib even wrote to Rana Raj Singh of Mewar assuring him of his determination to pursue Akbar's policy of religious harmony in order to win his favour. In the Deccan he had collected a band of able Irani, Turani, and Afghan, officers.

Aurangzib had attempted to restrain Murad from acting rashly, but his brother declared himself independent and left Gujarat. Before he departed, Aurangzib pledged Murad to give him one-third of any booty and conceded him the fight to rule independently over the Panjab, Kabul, Kashmir, and Sind. Early in February 1658 Aurangzib set off from Aurangabad. At the end of April he met Murad at Lake Dipalpur, near Ujjain, and the two armies camped at the village of Dharmat, on the western bank of the Gambhira, a tributary of the Chambal.

The imperial forces under Maharaja Jaswant Singh Rathor had already arrived at Ujjain to prevent the Princes from proceeding to Agra. Aurangzib's men controlled the Narbada river

passages so carefully, however, that no news of the Princes' movements could get through. Jaswant had expected to fight only Murad and it was riot until both armies arrived near Ujjain that he learned of

129

Aurangzib's presence. Aurangzib's envoy urged the Maharaja to allow the Princes to visit his father. Jaswant was perplexed and quailed at fighting the Princes of the blood, and he was no match tactically for Aurangzib. The Princes' refusal to return, however, forced him to give battle. He chose a narrow enclosed spot at Dharmat where he was camped. The war began on 26 April 1658. The Princes' artillery and archers soon gained the upper hand, and the Rajputs broke and fled. Jaswant left for his home in Jodhpur.

Shahjahan wanted the Princes to visit him, but Dara insisted on fighting his enemies personally, confident that he would soon rout them. He hastily collected a force of about 60,000 men, marched to Dholpur, and seized all the Chambal fords with the help of the local zamindars. The postponement of the battle until Sulayman Shukoh joined him seemed to be in his best interest, but to his utter bewilderment Aurangzib quickly crossed the Chambal forty miles east of Dholpur and threatened Dara's rear. Dara moved to Samugarh, near Agra, to give battle. The fighting started with a heavy discharge of Dara's artillery on 9 June. Aurangzib retaliated cautiously at first, lulling Dara into a false sense of superiority. Later he opened full fire and crushed Dara's undisciplined and overconfident troops. Outmanoeuvred and despairing of victory, Dara left his elephant and took to his horse. Aurangzib sounded the trumpets of victory; the empty howdah of Dara's elephant apparently proclaimed its master's death, and the imperial army fled. Dara was left with no alternative but to hasten to Agra. More than a dozen first-ranking chiefs in Dara's army from the Uzbek, Iranian, and Afghan tribes, as well as the Sayyids of Barha and many Rajputs, fell fighting for their master. Aurangzib lost only one high-ranking mansabdar. Although Dara fought valiantly, his inability to direct his troops consistently destroyed his chance of victory.

Filled with shame, Dara refused his father's request to see him. The Emperor, however, ordered the governor of Delhi to place all his resources at Dara's disposal. Mules laden with gold coins from the Agra treasury were sent out to provide for Dara's expenses. Aurangzib was now camped outside Agra and rejected all Shah-jahan's invitations to visit him. Shahjahan shut the fort gates on 16 June, fearing for his own safety. Aurangzib found battering the fort walls too difficult so he seized another gate which opened on to the river. The supply of Jamuna water was stopped, and the fort inmates, suffering from the pangs of thirst, began to desert. Shahjahan himself, sick of drinking the bitter well water in the fort, wrote a pathetic letter complaining to Aurangzib:

130

Praised be the Hindus in all cases,

As they ever offer water to their dead.

And thou, my son, art a marvellous Musalman,

As thou earnest me in life to lament for (lack of) water.⁴⁶

After three days Shahjahan opened the gates, and Aurangzib's officers took possession of the fort with its treasures and jewels. Shahjahan was confined within the ladies' palace behind the Hall of Public Audience. Jahan Ara's last bid to persuade Aurangzib to agree to the partition of the kingdom, with himself as the official heir apparent, also failed. Aurangzib refused to see his father until he had killed Dara, whom he declared an infidel. Although himself imprisoned, Shahjahan continued sending assistance to Dara, thus incurring Aurangzib's further resentment.

Aurangzib's growing control over the administration and the desertion by many eminent nobles to his side alarmed Murad, but Aurangzib's bribes and flattery lulled his suspicions. On 24 June they marched together from Agra towards Delhi in pursuit of Dara. On the way Aurangzib treacherously took Murad captive and imprisoned him in the Salimgarh fort at Delhi. Some months later he was transferred to Gwalior fort. In the middle of December his continuing popularity and efforts to escape prompted Aurangzib to sentence him to death. Aurangzib then moved to Delhi, forcing Dara to flee the Panjab. Reaching Lahore on 14 July, Dara recruited an army of 20,000 men. At Delhi, Aurangzib took steps to prevent Sulayman Shukoh from joining his father. He also resolved to formally crown himself king. The chief qazi opposed this, on the ground that Shahjahan was still alive, but Aurangzib's favourite, Qazi 'Abud'l-Wahhab, issued a fatwa enabling him to crown himself king on 1 August with the title 'Alamgir (Conqueror of the Universe). The pursuit of Dara was stepped up. Aurangzib reached the river Satlaj with the main army on 25 August. Dara abandoned Lahore for lower Sind, but the real threat to his rule came from Shuja', who was heading towards Allahabad in order to seize Agra. Aurangzib left his commanders to harry Dara and returned to Agra. There he dispatched a strong force under his son, Sultan Muhammad, to stop Shuja' 's onward march. On 10 January, Sultan Muhammad stood facing Shuja' near Khajwa in Allahabad. Aurangzib also arrived, as, by forced marches, did Mir Jumla, who had been taken captive by Aurangzib and then released. Before the battle Jaswant Singh of Jodhpur, commanding the imperial right wing, who had made a treacherous pact with Shuja', fell on Sultan Muhammad's camp in the last night watch. He plundered it and then took off for Agra on his way to Jodhpur.

131

Shuja' failed to take advantage of the confusion, however, while Aurangzib calmly stuck to his positions. At dawn he reorganized his army. Although Shuja' 's battle plan was superb, he could not win the day. His army was routed, his baggage plundered, and he himself took to flight.

Leaving Thatta in lower Sind, Dara suffered great hardship in the Rann of Kacch. When he reached Ahmadabad, Shah Nawaz Khan, the newly appointed governor of Gujarat, joined him. They raised an army of 22,000 men and acquired an efficient artillery corps. At Jaswant Singh's invitation, Dara set off for Ajmir. Although Aurangzib was furious at Jaswant's treachery, he did not wish him to join Dara. At his instigation therefore, Raja Jai Singh, who had not shown the usual Rajput enthusiasm for duty when fighting Shuja' under Sulayman Shukoh and had subsequently joined Aurangzib, weaned Jaswant away from Dara, promising him to have his title and mansab restored. Dara was dismayed but he wisely chose to hold the pass of Deora'i in order to give battle, and Aurangzib marched there to attack him. On 23 and 24 March 1659 the artillery

from both sides caused considerable havoc; Dara's guns, installed on a high position, were the more effective. Aurangzib abandoned conventional tactics and instead launched a heavy attack on Dara's left. He captured it, and Dara's army turned tail. Fleeing through Gujarat and Kacch, Dara reached Sind. Jai Singh pursued Dara with remarkable tenacity. Dara reached Dadar, nine miles east of the Indian end of the Bolan Pass, on the way to the Shah of Iran's court. There his wife died of exhaustion from the journey. Dara lost interest in the world. He spent three days mourning her and sent her corpse with his most loyal officers to be buried near the tomb of the celebrated sufi Miyan Mir of Lahore. On 20 June, Dara set off towards the Bolan Pass but was taken captive by his treacherous Afghan chief, Malik Jiwan, who handed him over to Jai Singh in the hope of obtaining a reward from Aurangzib. Dara, with his son and two daughters, was brought to the outskirts of Delhi on 3 September 1659. There he and his younger son, Sipih Shukoh, were paraded in chains under the burning sun. The outbursts of public sympathy for Dara prompted the Emperor to act quickly. The religious dignitaries gave the verdict that Dara should be sentenced to death for stating in his *Majma'u'l-bahrayn* that Islam and Hinduism were twin brothers.⁴⁸ On 11 September both Dara and Sipih Shukoh were executed.

The war following Shahjahan's illness was not a struggle between orthodoxy and heterodoxy, as many scholars suggest. The ambition of all four brothers to rule over the whole of India made a

132

war of succession inevitable. The mansabdars changed sides, not for ideological reasons but for personal reward. Dara Shukoh, as commander of the imperial army, was served by Rajputs more than other, races. Some Rajputs, following their martial tradition, recklessly sacrificed their lives, but others, like Raja Jai Singh, refused their support to Dara because of personal grievances.

Murad and Shuja' were well known for their unorthodox views but they were loudest in condemning Dara's heterodoxy and they were more full of promises to promote orthodoxy than was Aurangzib.

Dara's death made Aurangzib the undisputed Emperor of Hindustan. Sulayman Shukoh marched from Allahabad to Harid-var and then took shelter with Prithvi Singh, the raja of Garhwal. Failing to persuade the Raja to surrender Sulayman, Aurangzib suggested to the neighbouring hill rajas that they should annex Garhwal. Raja Jai Singh, however, weaned Prithvi's son away from Sulayman Shukoh, and in December 1660 he was surrendered to Jai Singh's son, Ram Singh. Aurangzib sent him to Gwalior fort, where he died in May 1662 from a slow poison made from poppy seeds.

After his retreat from Khajwa, Shuja' was pursued by Prince Muhammad and Mir Jumla as far as Bengal. Shuja's artillery and flotilla were superior to Mir Jumla's, and he succeeded in enticing Prince Muhammad Sultan to his side by promising to marry his daughter to him and then make him king instead of his father. Mir Jumla's strategy of spreading out his forces in a semi-circle from Rajmahal to Malda and his plan to attack Shuja' from an unexpected quarter, however, unnerved the latter. Prince Muhammad Sultan deserted his uncle; nevertheless Aurangzib imprisoned him top in Gwalior fort, where he died in 1676. Moving from Rajmahal, Shuja' offered some resistance near Malda but had to fly to Dacca. He did not receive the help he

expected from the local chiefs there. On 23 May 1660 Shuja' bade farewell to Bengal, which he had ruled for twenty years, and sailed for Arakan with his family. Authentic information on their future never reached India. A Dutch report suggests that he was cut to pieces by the King of Arakan.

From his Agra prison Shahjahan somehow managed to send letters to Dara as long as he lived. He also wrote to his sympathizers outside the fort until Aurangzib deprived him of writing materials. Shahjahan nevertheless wrote often to Aurangzib condemning his ungratefulness and irreligious behaviour and calling him a religious hypocrite. On 2 February 1666 Shahjahan died, having been tended throughout his captivity by Jahan Ara. His

133

earthly remains were buried beside his dearly loved wife's grave in the Taj Mahal.

Shahjahan's death was deeply mourned. He was remembered as a kind ruler and a benefactor to his subjects. He strictly observed Islamic rules for prayers and fasting. Although he demolished the temples in rebel areas, he was not a bigot. The magnificence and grandeur of his court made him the greatest potentate of his time.

AURANGZIB

Aurangzib held his second 'coronation on 16 June 1659. The festivities lasted for two and a half months in the traditional extravagant manner. Initially Aurangzib introduced few administrative changes. The senior Hindu officers in the finance ministry were retained and even promoted, although in Banaras and some other places the brahmins were harassed, and Hindu temples were demolished by orthodox mobs. Aurangzib stopped this desecration, but, in accordance with Islamic shari'a rules no new temples could be erected. A high-powered mansabdar was appointed as censor of morals (muhtasib) to prevent drinking and to make Muslim life conform to Qur'anic laws. The celebration of the Iranian Naw Ruz festival, which falls on the day the sun enters Aries, was banned. The kalima, or the confession of faith, was no longer stamped on coins, to prevent the holy words from being defiled by unbelievers or heretics.⁴⁹ These reforms in no way undermined Hindu political and economic interests.

Aurangzib sent rich gifts to the holy men of Mecca and Medina. The Sherif of Mecca also received presents to distribute among the pious and needy, but to Aurangzib's disappointment the funds were misused. Subhan Quli, the Uzbek ruler of Balkh, was the first to recognize Aurangzib as Emperor in 1658. The grand embassy sent by the Shah of Iran was warmly received in 1660 and returned loaded with gifts. By the time the Mughal envoy, Tarbiyat Khan, reached Iran, however, Aurangzib's atrocities against his brothers and father and his hostility to the Deccan sultans were known to the Shah. He sent a stern reply, taunting Aurangzib for his presumptuous title World-Conqueror when he could not control zamindars like Shivaji.

Shahjahan had unsuccessfully tried to build up a foreign Sunni block consisting of the Ottomans and Uzbeks to counter Shi'i Iran and had exchanged ambassadors with the Ottoman Sultan Murad IV (1623-40). In Aurangzib's reign no ambassadors were

exchanged, although the Emperor sympathized with the Ottomans over their European defeats. After the Ottoman defeat at Vienna in 1683 Sulayman II (1687-91) sent an ambassador to Aurangzib to seek his help. The Emperor was too deeply involved in the Deccan wars to commit himself, and the disappointed Sultan excluded Aurangzib's cold reply from the Ottoman records.

The first ten years of Aurangzib's rule were militarily and politically a great success. Minor uprisings were instantly crushed, and in 1660 Rao Karan, the Bikanir chieftain, submitted. Two years later the governor of Bihar annexed rocky and barren Palamau in the southern limits of his province. The rebel Champat Bundela, relentlessly chased by the loyal Bundela chief Subh Karan, stabbed himself to death in October 1661. Chatrasal, his son, remained loyal for some years but he also, like Shivaji, later became the champion of freedom in Bundelkhand.

By the end of 1661 Mir Jumla, who was pursuing Shuja', had seized Kooch-Bihar and marched up the Brahmaputra, conquering fort after fort and establishing military outposts at strategic places. Mir Jumla entered Garhgaon (near modern Gauhati), the Ahom capital, at the end of March 1662. The Ahom army fled to the jungle but repeatedly tried to recapture it. Their continual depredations combined with pestilence and famine exacted a heavy toll on the Mughals. Finally, prostrated by illness, Mir Jumla made peace with the Ahom Raja, collecting a heavy war indemnity. On 11 April 1663 Mir Jumla died on his way to Dacca. His death deprived Aurangzib of a wise counsellor and an indefatigable general.

The Mughal gains in the region were not permanent, however, and in 1667 they lost Garhgaon. The Arakan pirates, both Mag and Portuguese, constantly came over the water and plundered Bengal. They took both Hindus and Muslims as slaves and subjected them to harsh treatment. Not until Shayasta Khan became governor of Bengal in 1664 was an effective Bengal flotilla built and the Portuguese were defeated. Chittagong was subsequently taken from the Arakanese to the great satisfaction of the Bengalis. In 1665 the Buddhist ruler of Ladakh acknowledged the Emperor's suzerainty, under pressure from the governor of Kashmir.

Aurangzib's early victories and triumphs pale into insignificance before later tales of woe and distress. The atrocities committed by 'Abdu'n-Nabi, the fawjdar of Mathura, aroused the Jats around Mathura and Agra to rise against him. Gokula, a zamindar, became the peasants' leader and killed 'Abdu'n-Nabi. Two successive fawjdars failed to quell the uprising, and in December 1669 the

Emperor himself leisurely marched to the area in order to strike terror into the rebels' hearts. He captured Gokula and 7,000 peasants. Gokula's limbs were hacked off in Agra police station in January 1670, and his son and daughter were converted to Islam. The region calmed down temporarily.

The Satanami revolt of 1672 has been given an unrealistic communal colour. The Satanamis were a sect of Hindu devotees who maintained themselves by agriculture. They lived mostly

around Narnol, some seventy-five miles south-west of Delhi. The crisis was sparked off by a minor dispute between a Satanami peasant and a foot-soldier. At the same time an old prophetess appeared among them, claiming to raise invisible armies by her spells. The victorious Satanamis plundered Narnol, demolished mosques, and established an independent government. In response the Emperor ordered his camp to be pitched outside Delhi. He wrote charms and amulets with his own hand and ordered them to be fixed to the royal standard. The imperial army meanwhile crushed the rebellion.

Jahangir's treatment of their fifth Guru had turned the Sikhs into inveterate enemies of the Mughals. Before his execution the Guru had already established a Sikh treasury at Amritsar where tithes and offerings from the Sikhs between Kabul and Dacca were collected. Guru Arjan's son and successor, the sixth Guru Hargobind (1595-1644), had begun to train his disciples in self-defence, so Jahangir hastily imprisoned him in Gwalior fort for nonpayment of his father's fines. After his release Hargobind spent his time strengthening his military resources. During Shahjahan's reign, the Guru came into conflict with the Emperor and fought valiantly against the Mughal army. He was forced to take refuge in Kartarpur in the Jalandhar doab, where he inflicted heavy losses on the imperial army sent to kill him. From thence he retired to Kiratpur in the Kashmiri hills and joined the rebel zamindars.⁵⁰ Before his death in 1644, many important Sikh centres had been established in the Panjab. As well as artisans and merchants, militant Jats joined the movement in large numbers.

The seventh Guru, Har Ray (1644-61), and Dara Shukoh were friends. When Dara fled from Delhi, the Guru met him in the Panjab. Aurangzib summoned the Guru to Delhi to explain the nature of this relationship. Har Ray sent his elder son, Rama Ray, instead, and his manner and conduct soon won him Mughal friendship. He was given land in the Siawalik hills later known as Dehradun. After Har Ray's death in 1661, Rama Ray's younger brother, Hari Krishna, who was accepted as their Guru by the Sikhs, was summoned to Delhi to settle the question of succession,

136

but three years later he died. To avoid outright confrontation with Rama Ray, who enjoyed the Emperor's support, the ninth Guru Tegh Bahadur left for eastern India and taught Sikhism as far east as Assam. He later returned to the Panjab, but his preachings exasperated the Mughals, who considered Rama Ray the Sikh leader. In November 1675, while the Emperor was at Hasan Abdal, Tegh Bahadur was beheaded on the orders of the Qazi of Delhi. The Sikhs were angered, and two brickbats were thrown at Aurangzib while he was returning from the Lahore Jami' mosque at the end of October 1676. The accused were handed over to the police, but no reprisal was made against the community.

Among the Afghans, the Yusufza'Is, Afridi, and Khatak tribes rose against Aurangzib one after the other. The wars against the Khatak tribe, which dominated the Peshawar, Kohat, and Bannu regions, were prolonged. Their leaders, Khushhal Khan, was a mansabdar who had been imprisoned in Delhi during the early years of Aurangzib's reign and later in Ranthambhor for organizing a freedom struggle in his tribe. In 1666 he was released and sent with the Mughal army to fight his traditional enemy, the Yusufza'Is. He soon deserted the Mughals, however, and joined the Afridis. Later he commanded his own guerrilla band. Khushhal Khan revived the spirit

of independence among his tribesmen through his eloquent Pashtu poetry, some of which was written during his imprisonment and condemned Aurangzib as irreligious and anti-Islamic.⁵¹ His poetry is still loved by the Pashtu tribesmen and it is probably the finest literature in the language.

Aurangzib's leading generals failed to crush the Afghan uprisings, so the Emperor marched to Hasan Abdal, between Rawalpindi and Peshawar. He arrived in July 1674 and stayed for a year and a half, directing military operations. Many important generals sustained severe reverses, but the Emperor's policy of setting one clan against the other, which he metaphorically defined as 'breaking two bones by knocking them together', won the day. Later Amir Khan, as governor of Kabul from 1678 till his death in 1698, kept the tribes under control. His wife, Sahibji, noted for her tact and intelligence, was also an asset to Amir Khan's administration.⁵²

Aurangzib's most desperate crisis, however, was precipitated at the end of December 1678 by Maharaja Jaswant Singh's death at Jamrud in the north-western tribal region. He had no heirs, but two of his pregnant queens each gave birth to a posthumous son at Lahore. One of the boys died; the other, Ajit Singh, survived to mount the Jodhpur throne. As the paramount power, Aurangzib escheated the Maharaja's property upon his death and resumed the

137

whole of Marwar into the khalisa. In February 1679 the Emperor arrived in Ajmir, ostensibly to make a pilgrimage to Khwaja Mulnu'd-Din's tomb but in reality to intimidate the Rajputs. After his return to Delhi in April 1679, when he reimposed jiza despite Hindu protests, Aurangzib brought Jodhpur city under the imperial administration. Its temples were demolished, and the submissive Indra Singh Rathor, the Nagaur chieftain and a grand-nephew of Jaswant, was subsequently made Raja of Jodhpur.

The Emperor promised to consider Ajit's claim when he came of age. The imperial office claimed that, in accordance with Mughal tradition, the watan could not be conferred upon ladies or servants, even though they acted as royal regents. Legally they were correct, but politically this strong adherence to rules plunged the Mughal government into chaos. A guard was placed on the house where Ajit was staying in Delhi to prevent his servants carrying him off to Jodhpur, but before he could be transferred to the royal palace, Durgadas, the son of one of Jaswant's ministers, kidnapped the Rajas and Ajit, killing the Mughal guards. Ajit was taken to Marwar and brought up in the lonely Abu hills.

The crisis in Marwar offered Maharana Raj Singh of Mewar an opportunity to realize his dreams of becoming the Maharana Sanga of his time. He joined Jaswant's chief queen, Ram Hadi, in pressing Ajit's right to his father's throne. To Aurangzib's consternation, the Rani offered to destroy the temples in Jodhpur and erect mosques instead, in return for Ajit's recognition. Failing this, the Rathors of Jodhpur preferred the resumption of Jodhpur to the khalisa to the rule of Indra Singh, whom they hated bitterly.

Indra Singh failed to establish control over Marwar and two years later he was recalled to court. In September 1679 the Emperor returned to Ajmir and ordered his fourth son, Prince Akbar, to

invade Marwar. The imperial troops advanced against Udaipur, destroying hundreds of temples. The Emperor himself visited Udaipur but, finding his presence no longer necessary, returned to Ajmir. Prince Akbar was unable to seize any strategic Rajput outposts, however. Shame and fear of his father's hot temper and his brother's intrigues prompted the Prince, a youth of twenty-three, to succumb to the inducements of Maharana Raj Singh of Mewar and Durgadas to declare himself Emperor, thus to save the Mughal empire from the disastrous repercussions of Aurangzib's bigoted policies. The situation was further complicated by Raj Singh's death in November 1680. Aurangzib was appalled by the Prince's declaration of independence on 12 January 1681. Then Akbar marched upon Ajmir. The Emperor maintained his equanimity, although his chosen troops were scattered throughout

138

Rajasthan. He recalled his loyal generals and managed to alienate the Rajputs from Akbar by having a counterfeit treacherous letter, addressed to Akbar, delivered to Durgadas's camp. The strategy succeeded, and the Rajputs deserted Akbar at midnight. He escaped to Marwar. Durgadas was soon convinced of Aurangzib's trickery, but the opportunity for victory was lost.⁵³ Durgadas took Akbar under his protection and they fled to the court of Shivaji's son, Shambhaji, arriving in June 1681. Meanwhile Raj Singh's son, Jai Singh, who was devoid of his father's vigour, made peace with the Emperor. The war against the Marwar guerrillas was left to the Ajmir governor. Aurangzib left for the Deccan on 15 September 1681, never to return to the north.

The north Indian period of Aurangzib's reign was marked by a gradual departure from Akbar's policy of coexistence. His early regulations were designed to offer relief to Muslims and reduce urban taxation. Customs duty on all imports was fixed in 1665 at 21/2 per cent of their value in the case of Muslim traders and 5 per cent for Hindus. Two years later all customs duty for Muslims was abolished. In January 1669 the wedding of Prince A'zam to Dara's daughter offered the Emperor a chance to show his orthodoxy by issuing innumerable puritanical ordinances. A general order to demolish temples and Hindu centres of learning was issued. The celebrated Vishvanatha temple of Banaras and the Keshava Rai temple of Mathura, which had been presented with a stone railing by Dara Shukoh, were reduced to ruins. This policy was implemented even in remote east Bengal, Palamau, Rajasthan, and later in the Deccan. A determined effort to break Hindu zamindar solidarity was initiated, and when disputes arose between them the Zamindar who offered to embrace Islam was favoured. Unscrupulous debtors sought to evade their debts by falsely accusing creditors of reviling the Prophet or of speaking contemptuously of Islam.

Aurangzib's narrow legalistic approach to Akbar's administrative framework, based on toleration and broad-mindedness, made success impossible for him, even in the Deccan. Although he had been viceroy there for about ten years, in his own reign Aurangzib failed to assess the situation realistically. The Mughal policy of penetration into the Deccan had convinced the Sultans of Bijapur and Golkonda, and also Shivaji, that any respite offered by the Emperor's involvement in the north would be short-lived. Shivaji meanwhile carved out an independent Maratha state in the territories north and south of Konkan, adjoining his paternal jagir above the Ghats. Shivaji

urged the Emperor to recognize his rule over the Bijapuri district of north Konkan, but the Emperor sent

139

his most experienced noble, Shayasta Khan, to crush him. Two years of ceaseless military campaigns made the Mughals master of the extreme north of Konkan, but in April 1663 Shivaji made a daring night attack on Shayasta Khan's camp at Puna. It cost Shayasta Khan his thumb and showed that Shivaji was still a formidable opponent. Shayasta Khan was transferred to Bengal, but before he left, Shivaji plundered Surat continuously from 17 to 21 January 1664. Only the English and Dutch merchants were able to defend their factories. Prince Mu'azzam was appointed commander, but before the Mughal forces could relieve the town the Marathas decamped with enormous booty. Jaswant Singh, who collaborated with both Shayasta Khan and Prince Mu'azzam, was a total failure.

In October 1664 the Emperor recalled the Prince and commissioned his ablest Rajput general, Mirza Raja Jai Singh, to annihilate Shivaji. Jai Singh made plans to attack from all possible directions and started fighting in the east, where he could easily threaten Bijapur. Marching deep into Shivaji's territory, he seized Purandar and forced Shivaji to sign a treaty in June 1665, ceding four-fifths of his territory and promising to serve the Emperor loyally. Shivaji also agreed to visit the Emperor at Agra. The prominent Mughal mansabdars could not reach an understanding with Shivaji. The Mughal governors expected him to call on them as a zamindar, while Shivaji expected them to treat him as undisputed ruler of the Marathas.⁵⁴ At the imperial court the Emperor's order to stand with the mansabddrs behind Jaswant Singh, whom he had previously defeated, shocked him. The Mughals considered 5,000 to be a very high rank for a new entrant, but Shivaji, who had humbled both Shayasta Khan and Jaswant Singh, expected a mansab of at least 7,000. The Emperor viewed the award of the mansab legalistically as was his wont, while Shivaji correctly related it to his political standing and prestige in the Deccan. Sensing Shivaji's reluctance to compromise, Aurangzib placed him under house arrest, and Jai Singh's son unsuccessfully attempted to pacify him. Palace intrigue and pressure from the supporters of Shayasta Khan and Jaswant Singh prevented Aurangzib from resolving the misunderstandings. Before the Emperor could take further action, Shivaji escaped to the Deccan on 28 August 1666.

Jai Singh was still fighting in Bijapur but he was frustrated by a dearth of funds and lack of co-operation from the Muslim nobles; his Afghan colleagues openly condemned war against another Muslim state as sacrilegious. The Emperor did not understand Jai Singh's problems and recalled him. Jai Singh died on his way to court on 6 September 1667. He had won remarkable victories over

140

Shivaji in the face of strong opposition from home. In Bijapur itself 'Ali 'Adil Shah II (1652-72) had grown into a wise statesman and an enterprising general, who unhesitatingly crossed swords with Shivaji and his guerrillas. Only after his death was Bijapur plunged into civil war; even then the Mughal generals failed to penetrate it. When he returned to the Deccan, Shivaji made peace

with the new Mughal viceroy, Prince Mu'azzam. His son, Shambhaji, was given a mansab of 5,000 and was allowed a free hand to conquer Bijapur. Shivaji remained at peace with the Mughals from 1667 to 1669 while he devised laws for the Maratha government and consolidated his power. Then, in 1670, he recovered the forts surrendered under the Purandar treaty. In the middle of October 1670 the Marathas again attacked Surat and plundered it mercilessly. The English, Dutch, and French factories were spared, but the Muslim and Hindu traders were totally ruined. Not only were sixty-three lakhs of rupees lost, but trade and commerce were totally dislocated. Their conquests gave the Marathas a safe route from Kalyani up northern Konkan to Surat. In 1672 Shivaji imposed chauth (a levy) of four lakhs of rupees on the Mughal territories under his control, equivalent to a quarter of the Emperor's revenue from them. To Shivaji this was not blackmail but a tax on his Mughal subjects towards their country's defence. This arbitrary levy became the principal factor in the expansion of Maratha power.

The Mughal viceroy resisted Maratha attacks vigorously but he was unable to capture the elusive guerrilla bands. In the wake of the chaos following 'All 'Adil Shah II's death in early December 1672, Shivaji seized Panhala and Satara and then burst into west Bijapur and Kanara, plundering and devastating the country. Shivaji crowned himself king in his Ra'igarh fort on 17 June 1674 assuming the title Chhatrapati (Lord of the Umbrella, or King of Kings).⁵⁵

Two years later the new Bijapuri Sultan, Sikandar 'Adil Shah, made a treaty with Shivaji promising to pay him a heavy annual subsidy for protection against the Mughals. Shivaji also made formal peace with the Mughals, freeing himself to concentrate on his Karnataka conquests. Early in 1677 Shivaji collected a subsidy from Abu'l-Hasan Qutb Shah of Golkonda to raise an army and an artillery battery. He penetrated into Karnataka, the Mysore plateau, and Madras, conquering Jinji, Vellore, the adjoining districts, and some one hundred forts between 1677 and 1678. Out of the fabulous booty from that land of gold, Abu'l-Hasan, who had borne all the expenses, received nothing. Shivaji died on 15 April 1680, leaving a vast empire covering roughly half of the Deccan.

141

Shivaji was a great administrator and, like his contemporaries, a despotic ruler. His central and provincial governments were based on the systems of the Deccani sultans and Vijayanagara. Chauth, which was really a military tax, was already being levied in western India. An additional tax of 10 per cent, called sardeskmukhi, was also collected by Shivaji, as the hereditary head desh mukh (chief) or sardesh mukh of his country.

Shivaji's army drew its main supplies from neighbouring kingdoms. From July to September the troops lived in cantonments in their home territory, but from the day of Dasehra (early October) they spent eight months at war, collecting chauth, sardeskmukhi and plunder. Shivaji directed the aggression and unreliability of the Maratha chieftains and stipend holders into fruitful channels. Neither did he neglect the navy, whose crews were recruited from among the low-caste Hindus of the Bombay coast. Shivaji was recognized as the protector of brahmans and cows, as the architect of Hindu self-rule, and as the defender of Hindu religion and culture. Many distinguished Hindu saints blessed him and exhorted their disciples and followers to support him.

The Maharashtra terrain enabled Shivaji to train his soldiers in guerrilla tactics and to encircle and annihilate his enemies.

Shivaji died without nominating a successor. An influential minister crowned his younger son, Rajaram, a boy of ten, at Raygarh. Shivaji's elder son, Shambhaji, who had been imprisoned in Panhala fort because of his licentiousness, contested this unjust supersession. Seizing Panhala and Raygarh forts, he deposed Rajaram and crowned himself Maratha king on 16 January 1681.⁵⁶

Shambhaji started his reign by sacking Burhanpur and giving refuge to Prince Akbar. The Emperor's arrival at Aurangabad early in April 1682 frustrated his plans to fight the Mughals. Shambhaji's subsequent wars against the Siddis, descended from Ethiopian slaves, around Janjira, his invasion of Goa in 1683-4, and minor skirmishes until 1685 gave the Emperor sufficient respite to consolidate his forces in the Deccan.

Aurangzib decided to invade Bijapur, where the administration was deteriorating under Sikandar 'Adil Shah. Prince Mu'azzam did not share the Emperor's imperialistic ambitions and he and other nobles were severely reprimanded by Aurangzib. The Emperor moved to Ahmadnagar to direct operations. Parts of Bijapur were annexed, and military outposts were established to facilitate the assault on Bijapur fort. In April 1685 the imperialists laid mines near the fort. The Emperor moved to Sholapur. Although provisions were scarce, Mughal reinforcements kept arriving. The defenders' numbers dwindled, and on 22 September

142

1686 Sikandar 'Adil Shah surrendered. The 'Adil Shahl dynasty was at an end. Bijapur was made the seat of the Mughal provincial governor but in a few years the city and its suburb, the fabulous Nauraspur, were desolate. Sikandar died in captivity in 1700, less than thirty-two years old.⁵⁷

Now it was the turn of Abu'l-Hasan Qutb Shah (1672-87) of Golkonda. He professed obedience to Aurangzib but had secretly supported the Sultan of Bijapur. His brahman minister, Madanna, who controlled the administration on behalf of his royal master, was pro-Maratha. Although the Emperor used the Sultan's fraternization with Bijapur and the Marathas as an excuse to annex Golkonda, his principal motive was to seize its fabulous wealth. On 28 June 1685 Aurangzib ordered Prince Mu'azzam to march against Golkonda. Hyderabad was easily captured and the citizens mercilessly plundered. Madanna and his brother Akanna were killed by the leading Qutb Shahl nobles, who accused them of causing Aurangzib's invasion. At the Prince's request, the Emperor consented to pardon Abu'l-Hasan, provided he paid an enormous sum as tribute. The Emperor had no intention of honouring this agreement, however, and arriving near Golkonda at the end of January 1687, he ordered siege operations against the formidable fort. Prince Mu'azzam, who had hoped to take credit for securing Golkonda's capitulation without war, was condemned as a traitor and imprisoned with his entire family. The Turani commanders attempted to seize the fort by an escalade but failed. Rain and famine took a heavy toll of the garrison, but the Mughal losses were appalling. At the end of June the imperialists exploded their mines; the vigilant garrison had dug a tunnel from their side leading the Mughals' trail of gunpowder back under their own camp, and a large number of Mughals were killed. Abu'l-Hasan's loyal nobles

cut off supplies to Aurangzib, but others deserted him. Famine and pestilence raged during the protracted siege. At the end of September 1687 a treacherous Afghan opened the postern gate of the fort to the Mughal army. The garrison fought bravely but was overpowered. Abu'l-Hasan was captured. The spoils taken at Golkonda amounted to nearly 70 million rupees in cash, besides masses of gold, silver, and jewels. The state revenue was 28,700,000 rupees.⁵⁸

In February 1687 Prince Akbar left for Iran, to the Emperor's relief. Shambhaji was now sunk in debauchery and was mainly concerned with foiling the attempts of the chiefs on his own life. On 11 February 1689 he was taken captive at Sangameshwar, twenty-two miles from Ratnagiri, by some conscientious Mughal officers. His minister Kavi-Kulash and twenty-five important commanders were also seized. They were brutally tortured and put to death. The

143

Marathas crowned Rajasram as their new king at Raygarh, but the Mughals invaded it, and he fled to Jinji. Shambhaji's family, including his son Sahu, were captured. Aurangzib gave Sahu the mansab of 7,000 he had thoughtlessly denied his grandfather.

In seven years Aurangzib had annihilated all his enemies. Although the Maratha power concentrated under Rajaram at Jinji and the consolidation of the Bijapur and Golkonda conquests called for serious attention, these were purely provincial problems. The prime minister, Asad Khan, urged the Emperor to move to northern India so that the world might know that nothing more remained for the Emperor to do in the south. Aurangzib rejected the suggestion and so missed the chance to heal the wounds of the ravaged Deccan. He misjudged the strength of the Maratha guerrillas and mistakenly believed that he could coerce the Mughals into fighting an aggressive war indefinitely. The situation deteriorated. The plunder from Bijapur and Golkonda relieved the Emperor temporarily from the need to utilize his reserves, but it was not sufficient to cover the cost of the last phase of the Deccan wars.

Moreover, the Rajput nobility was disgusted with the absorption of the Marathas into the Mughal mansabdari system. Even the most high-ranking Bijapuri and Hyderabad nobles were social misfits in the traditional Mughal hierarchy. The reputation of the Mughal war machine for invincibility was naturally undermined by the rebellions of the zamindars in northern India and the ravages of the marauding bands of Marathas in the Deccan. Bhim Sen, a native of Burhanpur, who served the Mughals under the Bundela chief, Rao Dalpat, gives a most realistic analysis of the Maratha rise at the end of the seventeenth century. He comments that the governments of Bijapur and Hyderabad had stationed some 80,000 to 150,000 horsemen in their respective forts and territories. After their overthrow by the Mughals, not more than three to four thousand horsemen were permanently deployed at either place. Jahangir and Shahjahan had assigned their conquered territory to eminent nobles possessing vast resources, but Aurangzib was forced to rely on petty chieftains. The lawless elements were not to be scared by minor fawjdrs, who in any case preferred to make peace with them rather than fight indefinitely.

The zamindars grew increasingly powerful. They joined the Marathas, and their combined forces made revenue collection extremely difficult for the jagirdars. The imperial conquest of the Maratha forts had led the homeless Maratha soldiers to transfer their families to Mughal

territories, leaving them free to fight unhampered. By the end of the seventeenth century the Maratha

144

guerrillas had obtained a permanent hold over the Deccan. They controlled all the roads and had grown rich from robbery and violence.⁵⁹ The two most successful Maratha generals were SantajT Ghorpade and DhanajI Jadava.

JinjI, where Rajaram had fled, withstood a Mughal siege of about eight years but it was seized in January 1688 by the Mughal general Zu'lfaqar Khan. Rajaram took shelter in Satara, where the Maratha commanders defended the fort valiantly. Only after Rajaram's death in March 1700 was the fort surrendered. Sham-bhaji's son, Sahu, was already in Aurangzib's custody, so Rajaram's widow, Tara Ba'i, who had acquired considerable civil and military experience, acted as regent for her own son, ShivajI II. She was successful in stopping the internecine Maratha wars, leaving them free to ravage the inadequately defended imperial territories. Aurangzib was now so deeply involved in his scheme to conquer the inaccessible Maratha forts that he could not withdraw without great loss of face.

At the end of 1699 the Marathas crossed the Narbada for the first time. Three years later they reached the vicinity of Ujjain. The lawless Afghans there, aroused by these events, also rebelled. In 1706 the Marathas attacked Gujarat and sacked Baroda. They even hovered around the Emperor's camp at Ahmadnagar.

The Marathas appointed their own revenue collectors and road officials in their conquered regions. The merchants paid them more than three or four times the amount the oppressive imperial officials had been able to exact. They also varied their fighting techniques. Manucci says: 'At the present time they possess artillery, musketry, bows and arrows, with elephants and camels for all their baggage and tents. They carry these last to secure some repose from time to time as they find it convenient. In short, they are equipped and move about just like the armies of the Mogul.'⁶⁰

Tempted by the regular transfer of wealth from north to south along the highway passing through their territory, the Jats organized themselves into fierce predatory bands. Churaman, Rajaram's son and successor, strengthened the Jat fort of Sinsani near Bharatpur, and they fearlessly sacked regions around Agra and Delhi. Akbar's tomb at Sikandara was dug open and burnt in the hope of obtaining hidden treasure. The loyal Rajput chief Bishan Singh Kacchwaha siezed Sinsani in 1704, but the Jat roving bands remained undeterred.

Guru Tegh Bahadur's son, Guru Gobind (1675-1708), the tenth Guru of the Sikhs, was only nine years old when his father was executed. He grew up to excel in both martial arts and spiritual leadership. He reinterpreted the Sikh ideologies to justify military

145

action. The Sikhs who accepted the rite of baptism which he devised were known as the Khalsa (Pure) and were given the title of Singh (Lion).

The rajas in the Panjab hills considered Sikh military power a threat to their rule and appealed to the Emperor to overthrow them. The early attacks by the Mughal army from Lahore and Sirhind, in collaboration with the hill rajas, failed to subdue the Sikhs. A Mughal reinforcement then cut off supplies to the Sikh stronghold of Anandpur. On an assurance of safety from the Mughals, the Guru evacuated the fort with his family, but the Hindu hillmen overtook him. A handful of Sikhs perished fighting to save the Guru and his family. Two of his sons were killed, but the Guru himself was saved by two Afghans. His remaining two sons were savagely executed by Wazir Khan, the Sirhind fawjdar. A pursuing Mughal column then engaged the Guru at Khidrana but was defeated. The Guru retired to Talwand Sabo (now called Damadama) and repeatedly wrote to the Emperor condemning his fawjdar's atrocities. But the Emperor refused to interfere with his local officer's measures.

The Sikhs and the imperial troops clashed again at Chamkaur. The Sikh temple in Sirhind was demolished, but in retaliation the Sikhs pulled down mosques and killed their imams. Prince Mu'az-zam, who had been released in 1695 and appointed governor of Kabul in place of Amir Khan, reached an understanding with the Sikhs. Large numbers of them left the Panjab for the Peshawar region, but the Barakzai Afghans made short work of them. Prince Mu'azzam was subsequently ordered to expel the Sikhs who had taken refuge in his province. The Guru left for the Deccan to lay his complaints against the fawjdar before Aurangzib but he had reached only Rajasthan when the Emperor died.⁶¹

In 1686 war had also broken out between the Mughals and the English merchants. The English trade in Bengal, in raw silk, taffetas, and saltpetre, had grown tremendously. In 1668 the East India Company had exported goods worth £34,000; this rose in 1675 to £85,000, in 1677 to £100,000, and in 1680 to £150,000. Their request that duty on their imports should not exceed the annual amount fixed by Prince Shuja' was unreasonable. They also complained that illegal taxes were imposed by local officials, and the Emperor redressed this grievance. In 1684—5 a local judge in Qasimbazaar (Bengal) decreed an award of 43,000 rupees against an Englishman, Job Charnock. The Mughal troops occupied his factory in order to collect the amount. Charnock escaped in April 1686 to Hugli, where the English forces, comprising Englishmen, Portuguese half-breeds, and Rajputs, numbered four hundred. The

146

Company had already decided to protect itself by force and had seized some strategic centres on the Indian coast. In Bengal, Charnock assumed control of English affairs. The fawjdar of Hugli, however, was not intimidated. He put the local market out of bounds to English troops and stopped the English from trading. Three English soldiers who tried to defy his orders were imprisoned. The subsequent English attempt to rescue them sparked off the war between them and the Mughal administration of Hugli. English ships seized Mughal vessels and caused serious damage to the town but they withdrew to Satanuti (modern Calcutta) when the Mughal cavalry arrived. In February 1687 the English seized the island of Hijll, on the east coast of Medinipur district. They sacked Balasore, committing many atrocities. In May 1687 a Mughal army

recaptured Hijll, but the governor, Shayasta Khan, took no further action. At the end of January 1689 Captain Heath, who had replaced Charnock, arrived in Chatgaon (now Chittagong in Bangladesh). He was determined to seize its fort and make it the base for English trading. The Company's council of war, however, refused to approve his offensive measures, and he retired to Madras.

War on the west coast between the English and the Mughals broke out later. The Mughals demanded a one per cent import duty in lieu of jizya. In response, in April 1687 the Company transferred its factory from Surat to Bombay, blockaded Mughal ports on the western coast, and seized their ships. The movement of Mughal pilgrim boats was also affected. The Collector of Customs responded by posting troops around the factory, placing the chief of the Surat council virtually under house arrest. The English retaliated, but the Mughals proved too strong for them. The English director was forced to surrender. The Emperor pardoned the English in February 1690 and restored their old privileges in Indian territory on payment of compensation of 150,000 rupees and the return of the captured Indian ships. English trade in Bengal was also revived. Charnock returned to Satanuti and in February 1691 laid the foundations of Calcutta. An imperial order of February 1691 allowed the English to carry on their trade in Bengal on payment of 3,000 rupees in lieu of customs and other dues.⁶²

This was the only Mughal achievement before Aurangzib's death on 3 March 1707 at the age of eighty-nine. His failures are ascribed to his bigotry and narrow-minded religious policy. Indeed, 'ulama' domination in forming his administrative policies gave rise to immeasurable complications. What caused the real breakdown, however, was his unrealistic estimate of the Deccan problems. His obstinate decision to stay there after 1689 made him

147

The Mughal Empire at the end of the seventeenth century

148

the helpless captive of his own inflexibility. After Prince Akbar's rebellion Aurangzib never trusted his remaining three sons and he shivered at the memory of Shahjahan's last days. His main concern was as much to neutralize his sons' intrigues as to destroy the Marathas.

The Emperor had denied himself any leisure and comfort in life. He presided over the court of justice twice a day, but the stream of complaints was endless. On one occasion he cried out bitterly to an intensely dissatisfied complainant, 'If you do not find your grievances redressed, pray the Almighty to grant you some other ruler!' His orthodoxy and piety evoked no enthusiasm among his nobles and sons. Sycophants ceaselessly glorified his rare ability to combine the external pomp of a lord with the soul of a mystic, while the Emperor in his turn reinforced this fusion of temporal and spiritual power by issuing amulets, which he believed would avert crises. Eminent sufis like Shah Kalimu'llah of Delhi condemned him as a hypocrite.⁶³ The eruption of communal and sectarian conflicts at the end of his reign indicates that the wheel had come full circle and Mughal leadership was returning to the point from which Akbar had started. The Mughal imperial institutions stood in need of another Akbar - someone who was strong but also

imaginative, wise and sympathetic. There was no dearth of talent among the Irani, Turani, Rajput, and even the Maratha leaders. Under another Akbar, religious and communal tensions would have disappeared. Leaders such as the Irani, Zu'lfaqar Khan, the Turani, Chin Qulich Khan, and the Rajput, Sawal Jai Singh, could have saved the Mughal government from its precipitous fall, but only under a new Akbar.

FALL OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

Before his death Aurangzib is said to have left a will partitioning his vast empire among his three surviving sons, although after his victory over Dara Shukoh he had rejected a similar suggestion made by his elder sister. The eldest, Muhammad Mu'azzam, who emerged successful in the war of succession after killing his two brothers, was sixty-four years old when he gained the throne. Unlike his father he was flexible in state politics, but his concessions to the Maratha leaders were half-hearted, and the new boundaries were unenforceable. The Emperor, who assumed the title Bahadur Shah, vacillated in reconciling even the Rajputs. In October 1708 Guru Gobind was assassinated while travelling with

149

Bahadur Shah's army. An obscure Sikh, Banda Bahadur, declared himself Guru and collected a strong force. They brutally sacked Sirhind and the neighbouring regions. Many Jat peasants converted to Sikhism to receive a share in the plunder, as did many Muslims to preserve their lives. The Emperor was busy subduing the Rajputs and delayed taking immediate action. The imperial army, however, succeeded in bringing Banda Bahadur back to Mukhlisgarh in the Panjab hills. Later he fled to some unknown destination. Bahadur Shah died on 27 February 1712. During his successors' reigns the Mughal emperors lost supreme control of the administration. From 1712 to 1739, when the Iranian adventurer Nadir Shah invaded Delhi, many ambitious Muslims from differing racial and religious groups scrambled to monopolize the highest civil and military posts. The Mughal wazir's main concern was to dominate the military administration in order to appoint his own kinsmen to the governorship of important provinces and grant high mansabs to his favourites. Racial and religious considerations played some role in achieving group solidarity, but the struggle was not directed solely by the proverbial Irani-Turani, Sunni-Shi'i, or Hindu-Muslim considerations. Personal and selfish motives played the decisive role in the formation of these alliances and factions.

The period also saw the consolidation of Jat power in the Agra region. The Kacchwaha Rajput bid to check the expansion of the Jats westwards to Amber prevented them devoting whole-hearted attention to imperial interests. The Marathas penetrated the north, undermining the strength of all the north Indian powers, Mughals, Rajputs, and Jats alike. Lastly, the rapid decline of the Mughal economy destroyed its political strength.

After Bahadur Shah's death, the war of succession among his four sons was won by Jahandar Shah (1712-13). The repeated interference of his mistress, Lal Kunwar, rapidly dislocated the administrative machinery, however, and he ruled for only one year. He was overthrown and killed by his nephew, Farrukhsiyar, with the help of the Sayyid brothers, Husayn 'All and 'Abdu'llah of Barha, in Muzaffarnagar (western Uttar Pradesh). Farrukhsiyar's most striking

achievement was the elimination of Sikh power from the Panjab and the execution of the Sikh leader, Banda Bahadur. The Sayyid brothers were good soldiers but were not competent to act either as wazir or as Bakshiu'l-mamdlik, the principal civil and military offices they appropriated. Their financial adviser, Lala Ratan Chand, was incapable of preventing administrative and economic disintegration, and the financial crisis accelerated the spread of the revenue farming system. The revenue farmers, who rented land for short periods, were concerned only to make the

150

maximum profit. Naturally the system ruined both agriculture and the law-abiding zamindars. The over-assessment of revenue prompted the peasants either to migrate to areas owned by the rebellious zamindars or to abandon farming and join the local chiefs who thrived on plunder.

Farrukhsiyar was able neither to appease the Sayyid brothers nor to neutralize the factionalism at court. His intrigues exasperated the brothers, and they dethroned, blinded, and imprisoned him. He was strangled in April 1719. The Sayyid brothers raised three kings, one after the other, in less than one and a half years. Then the dominant Turani faction came to the rescue of Roshan Akhtar, one of Bahadur Shah's grandsons, who was made king by the Sayyid brothers in September 1719. The Turani faction managed to eliminate both the brothers, and Roshan reigned as Muhammad Shah.

Nizamu'l-Mulk, the veteran Turani leader and viceroy of the Deccan, was appointed wazir by Muhammad Shah. He suggested many puritanical reforms along Aurangzib's lines but he was out of step with the dominant court groups. Most of the nobles and the Emperor considered them unrealistic. They favoured a reversion to Akbar's policies of non-discrimination. Then Nizamu'l-Mulk's ambitious deputy in the Deccan intrigued for independence, forcing him to move there. With Maratha help he crushed the rebel and settled down to consolidate his administration. The Emperor awarded him the title AsafJah. An independent Asaf Jahi dynasty was formed in 1724. The Maratha peshwas (prime ministers) virtually replaced their kings, so Nizam u'l-Mulk made a treaty with the Marathapeshwa, Baji Rao, granting him the right to collect chauth and sardeshmukhi.

Baji Rao now turned his attention to the north, sacking Gujarat, Malwa, Bundelkhand, and Rajasthan. In April 1737 his forces appeared at the gates of Delhi and plundered the capital for three days. The Emperor gave Baji Rao the governorship of Malwa and 1,300,000 rupees in cash. Nizamu'l-Mulk was alarmed by these concessions. Accompanied by the Rajputs, Bundelas, and the governor of Avadh, he marched to Malwa to crush the Marathas. Nizamu'l-Mulk was, however, incapable of uniting the heterogeneous groups under him. Near Bhopal the allied forces gave battle but could not overcome the Marathas. Nizamu'l-Mulk was forced to confirm Baji Rao's governorship of Malwa and, on behalf of the Emperor, granted the Marathas sovereign rights over the territory between the Narbada and the Chambal.⁶⁴

The news of the invasions of Nadir Shah of Iran stopped the scramble for power in Delhi. The governor of Kabul had warned

Muhammad Shah of the impending attack, but the Mughal court ignored his letters. Nadir Shah penetrated into India, accusing Muhammad Shah of giving protection to the Afghan tribes who had earlier seized the Iranian throne. He easily overran the ill-defended cities of Ghazni, Kabul, and Lahore. In February 1739 he routed the imperial forces at Karnal near Panipat and entered Delhi. The peace negotiations were still in progress when a false rumour of Nadir Shah's assassination prompted bands of Delhi hooligans to kill some three thousand Iranians. Filled with rage, Nadir ordered a general massacre of the citizens of Delhi in retaliation. Twenty thousand people were killed in the bloody reprisal, and enormous treasure fell into Iranian hands. After two months' orgy of plunder and devastation, Nadir Shah returned to Iran. The total value of spoils was estimated at 700 million rupees. Shahjahan's famous peacock throne was also carried away. On his journey to Khurasan, the trans-Indus province (Sind, Kabul, and the western part of the Panjab) fell to Nadir.⁶⁵

Akbar's formidable frontier disappeared, and the pace of Mughal decline accelerated. Before Muhammad Shah's death in April 1748, Ahmad Shah Durrani, an Afghan adventurer who had accompanied Nadir Shah when he invaded Delhi, had become a potent threat to Indian peace. After Nadir Shah's assassination in 1747 he crowned himself king at Qandahar. He seized Ghazni, Kabul, and Peshawar and began to assert sovereignty over the Mughal provinces ceded to Nadir Shah. In January 1748 he invaded India for the first time with 12,000 troops but was defeated in March near Sirhind by a Mughal army. The aged Mughal vizier who was killed on the battlefield was replaced by the Shi'i governor of Avadh, Safdarjang, who had been the driving force behind the victory. Ahmad Shah Durrani, a seasoned warrior, however, duped the imperialists by prolonging the peace talks while systematically withdrawing his main force and all valuable military equipment. This was the last grand Mughal victory and was the only good news Muhammad Shah heard before his death. The heir apparent, Ahmad Shah, aged twenty-two, had received no literary or military education. His mother, Udham Bai, and the harem head, Jawid Khan, wasted millions of rupees on coronation festivities. The holy Sunni savant Shah Waliullah seems to have become their patron saint.

In October 1748 Ahmad Shah Durrani invaded the Panjab again, and the defeated Turani governor ceded regions west of the Indus to him. After Durrani's third invasion in December 1751 the country as far east as Sirhind surrendered. In 1752 Safdarjang made a subsidiary alliance with the Marathas to secure their help

against the Durrani invasions, but Jawid Khan prevented its ratification. Jawid Khan was assassinated on 5 February 1753, and the growing dissatisfaction of the Turanis, Afghans, and Indian Sunnis against the Shi'i Safdarjang flared up openly. The Emperor dismissed Safdarjang, but he refused to step down. Instead he raised to the throne a boy of obscure origin, who was supported by Surajmal, the Jat chief. The Badakhshis, Baluchs, Marathas, and Gujars joined the imperialists, raising the cry of Sunni jihad against Shi'i domination. Sporadic battles were fought over several months. On 17 November 1753 Safdarjang retired to Avadh. He died on 5 October 1754. His son, Shuja'u'd-Dawla, who succeeded him, strengthened the independence of Avadh.

The Emperor's Rohella and Baluch commanders also gained independent control of the districts near Delhi in settlement of their outstanding salaries; the remaining imperial leaders received no financial return. Pitched battles were fought in the Delhi streets by soldiers demanding their wages. On 2 June 1754 Jahandar Shah's son was made Emperor and assumed the grand title 'Alamgir II. The deposed Ahmad Shah and Udham Bai were imprisoned to meet a miserable death in the dungeons. 'Alamgir II remitted the pilgrim tax on Hindus to appease the Marathas and prohibited the Shi'i mourning ceremonies of Muharram in Delhi to mollify the Sunnis.

The Marathas extended their control from Malwa and Gujarat to Bundelkhand. Their leaders carved out many independent centres of power in the region. After 1742 they burst into Orissa and Bengal, ruled by Murshid Quli Khan's successors. 'Ali Wardi (1740-56), who then ruled Bengal, was an enterprising general. He fought resolutely against both his Afghan enemies and the Marathas.

In the Panjab, Ahmad Shah Durrani's invasions destroyed the Mughal administration, leaving the field open for the Sikhs, who had been flattened during Farrukhsiyar's reign. On 15 November 1756 Ahmad Shah left Peshawar to sack Delhi. There was no one left to resist him. In January 1757 he was acknowledged Emperor in Delhi but he was interested only in fleecing India of its wealth. Delhi was divided into sectors under Afghan leaders so that they might plunder it systematically. From there Durrani marched upon Mathura and savagely looted the Hindu temples and rich merchants. The advent of summer made further Afghan advances impossible, and Ahmad Shah returned to his country laden with treasure from his Indian invasion.

Ahmad Shah Durrani subsequently restored 'Alamgir II to the throne. On 23 June 1757 the commander of the army of the East India Company, Clive, defeated Siraju'd-Dawla, 'Ali Wardi's

153

successor. To justify his aggression he wrote a long letter to the Emperor, who was now no more than a cipher.⁶⁶ 'Alamgir's prime minister, 'Imadu'l-Mulk, first forced Prince 'Ali Gawhar to leave and then killed his father, 'Alamgir II. The fugitive Prince fled to Bihar and crowned himself king, assuming the title Shah 'Alam II. Although 'Imadu'l-Mulk raised a puppet ruler to the throne, to all intents and purposes Delhi was controlled by the Marathas. Then Ahmad Shah Durrani marched from Qandahar for the fifth time to eliminate the Marathas, who were now virtual rulers as far as Attock.

On 14 January 1761 the Marathas sustained a crushing defeat on the battlefield of Panipat. Ahmad Shah Durrani returned to Qandahar in March of that year. He had by now lost control of the Panjab. He invaded it three more times to eliminate the Sikhs but died in October 1773 without having made much progress in consolidating the administration of the Panjab. The orthodox Sunni hopes of a revival of their power through Durrani were shattered for ever. Sikh domination of the Panjab was also shortlived. In 1803 the English conquered Delhi, although the Mughal emperors continued to rule within the four walls of the Delhi fort until 1857. But the account of the final elimination of Mughal rule and the steady advance of the British is another story.

IV THE STATE

KINGSHIP

According to the Qur'an, God the Most High, Unique, and One in Himself enjoys unlimited sovereignty over His creations. Allah's undisputed power 'to give kingdom' and 'to take away kingdoms',¹ according to His will, presupposes the existence of a state whose citizens are bound to obey the divine law revealed through the Prophet Muhammad. With the Prophet's death the legislative functions which he had performed ended, and his successors, the 'rightly guided caliphs' (ar-Rashidun), inherited the Prophet's executive and judicial functions. The world-view of leadership held by the rightly guided caliphs synthesized the Arab tribal customs with those of the Meccan trading oligarchy, rejecting Iranian monarchical traditions. In subsequent centuries the image of their administrative systems was to acquire a Utopian quality and to provide a norm which in theory later Muslim rulers were to strive to follow. Their successors, the Umayyads, did not enjoy the respect that the first four rightly guided caliphs had commanded, and both the 'Abbasids, who overthrew the Umayyads, and posterity condemn their rule as *mulk* (kingdom) or irreligious kingship in contrast to the early caliphate. The 'Abbasid caliphs strove to capitalize on their descent from al-'Abbas bin 'Abdu'l-Muttalib, the Prophet's uncle; but what impressed the multiracial society of the 'Abbasids and left an indelible mark on posterity was the Arabic translations of the ancient Iranian *Mirror for Princes* and the Islamicized versions of this text written by scholars during their caliphate. This literary genre unequivocally asserted that rulers were divinely appointed monarchs who were accountable only to God. The jurists also maintained that God had made the caliphs the trustees of their people and that the happiest 'shepherd' before God on Judgement Day was he whose subjects had been content during his reign. Nevertheless the Muslim religious elite (*ahl al-ra'y*), while enforcing what was right and forbidding what was evil, could accuse a caliph of open violation of the *shari'a* and thus have him forcibly removed. This was authorized by a saying of the Prophet Muhammad: 'Do not obey a creature against the

Creator.'² On the other hand, according to the authors of the *Mirrors*, there was no circumstance legitimizing disobedience to a ruler.

However, the completion of the *Shdhnama* by the great Iranian epic poet Firdawsi in 1010 gave a new direction to both rulers and political theorists and was to become the most significant watershed in the history of Islamic political thought. As well as an account of the epic glory of the ancient Iranian kings, the *Shdhnama* eloquently reminded rulers and nobles that monarchs were instruments in the execution of God's will and that their commands were therefore inviolate. The God of the *Shdhnama* was omnipotent and omniscient, the Creator of the Zoroastrians, Jews, Christians, and Muslims, who endowed Kayumars (the founder of the ceremonial of throne and crown) with *Jan*, a supernatural effulgence or radiance, suggesting the mystique of true kingship. *Fan* symbolized the divine favour which kings possessed as long as

God did not take it away from them. Thus Jamshid, one of the greatest legendary kings of ancient Iran, is said to have asserted that he was himself endowed with this divine farr. He believed he was simultaneously both king and priest, who would save potential evil-doers from taking the wrong path and guide their souls towards the light. Firdawsi related that Jamshid, by virtue of his kingly farr, was able to mould iron into helmets, chain-mail, armour, missile-proof vests, swords, and horse armour.

Fan or farrah is the khvarenah of the Avesta which held a special significance for the people of Iran. Khvarenah represented kingly glory or majesty, and the Shahanshah was not merely an emperor but the custodian of this mystical glory and charisma.

The importance of fan in relation to kingship was so significant that even the orthodox Abu Hamid Muhammad al-Ghazali (1058— 1111) could not ignore it. In his *Nasihatu'l-muluk* he wrote:

It must therefore be recognized that this kingship and the divine effulgence (farr-i Izadi) have been granted to them by God, and that they must accordingly be obeyed, loved and followed. To dispute with kings is improper, and to hate them is wrong; for God on High has commanded, 'Obey God and obey the Prophet and those among you who hold authority',³ which means (in Persian) obey God and the prophets and your princes (amiran). Every religious person must therefore love and obey kings and recognize that their kingship is granted by God, and given by Him to whom He wills.⁴

Ghazall also discussed the institution of the caliphate in a number of works, consistently demonstrating that the shari'a stated that the

156

appointment of a caliph was obligatory. To him the institution symbolized the collective unity of the Muslim community and its historical continuity, and he argued that the current situation made a change in the conditions prescribed for the election of a caliph permissible. However, he wrote:

An evil-doing and barbarous sultan, so long as he is supported by military force, so that he can only with difficulty be deposed and the attempt to depose him would cause unendurable civil strife, must of necessity be left in possession and obedience must be rendered to him, exactly as obedience must be rendered to amirs... We consider that the caliphate is contractually assumed by that person of the 'Abbasid house who is' charged with it, and that the function of government in the various lands is carried out by means of Sultans, who owe allegiance to the Caliph. Government in these days is a consequence solely of military power, and whosoever he may be to whom the holder of military power gives his allegiance, that person is the Caliph. And whosoever exercises independent authority, so long as he shows allegiance to the Caliph in the matter of his prerogatives of the khutba⁵ and coinage, the same is a sultan, whose commands and judgements are valid in the several parts of the earth.⁶

Documents issued in the reign of the Seljuqs also used the terms jahandar (monarch) and jahandari (monarchy) and stressed the fact that the principal duty of kings was to restore prosperity in a kingdom by dispensing justice. They stressed the interdependence of kingship and religion and emphasized the point that God had entrusted subjects to the sultan's care, it being one of the latter's principal duties to ensure their protection.

A very comprehensive Arabic Mirror for Princes entitled *Siraju'l-muluk* was compiled in 1122 by Abu Bakr Muhammad bin al-Walid al-Turtushi (1059-c. 1127), who was born in Spain and visited Iran and Iraq. Here he met the Seljuq vizier Nizamu'l-Mulk Tusi (1018-92) and was greatly impressed by Tusi's scholarship and political acumen. Even the earlier Mirror for Princes had drawn upon the stories in *Kalila wa Dimna*, as translated from the Pahlavi (Old Persian) by Ibnu'l-Muqaffa' (d. 756). Turtushi's work also shows a definite debt to the same source, *Kalila wa Dimna*. He refers also to *Muntakhabu'l-jawdhir* (Selected Gems), composed by the Indian, Sha-naq (Chanakya), as a guide for the monarch. This text, the *Kitdb Shdnaq fi al-tadbir*, was in fact the celebrated Chanakya-Niti, a collection of political aphorisms in Sanskrit, not to be confused with the Arthasstra ascribed to Kautilya or Chanakya.

Drawing on a vast range of source material available in Arabic translations, Turtushi referred to kings by such titles as *muluk* (rulers), *umara'* (princes), *saldtin* (kings), and *wulat* (lords), showing

157

that he considered them indomitable powers. He also endorsed the view that a sultan's right to rule was of divine origin and that he was God's shadow on earth, second only in rank to prophets and angels. But a ruler was also a shepherd and in Turtushi's world-view he was the Prophet's vicegerent, whose duty it was to promote the interests of his subjects. An eternal covenant between God and kings enforced the latter's duty to rule with impartiality and justice.⁷ Turtushi compared the benefits accruing from sultans to such natural phenomena as rain, wind, the seasons, day, and night, and described tyrants as worse than ravaging lions. However, he preferred even the latter to anarchy, maintaining that the good which emerged from a king outweighed any evil perpetrated by him. In a maxim attributed to Chanakya, Turtushi encouraged rulers to act like the sun, moon, earth, rain, wind, fire, water, and death. From some Hindu source he presented the widespread analogy of the big fish eating smaller fish and claimed that this unstable situation was averted only by a monarchy.⁸ In summary, Turtushi confidently asserted that the relation of a monarch to his people was identical with that of the body to the soul; if the king were virtuous his people would prosper, but if he were not, evil would prevail in his territory.

By the early thirteenth century the 'Abbasid caliphate was reduced to a mere shadow. The enterprising Turkic leaders, in order to reinforce their own positions, exhibited the caliph's sovereignty over the territories they had conquered by including his name in the khutba and on their coins. This enhanced their prestige as sultans and legalized their rule in the eyes of the orthodox. Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad bin Sam inscribed the caliph's names on his coins. In 1225 Iltutmish issued coins showing his close relationship with the caliph. Four years later, when this Sultan had annihilated all his rivals, the Caliph al-Mustansir (1226-42) sent his emissaries to

Delhi. The occasion was celebrated with great festivity, and the Caliph's name was inscribed in Hindi on the coins in order to make the connection between the Sultan and the Caliph widely known. The name of the Caliph's successor, Must'asim (1242-58), continued to appear on Indian coins even after he had been executed and Baghdad destroyed by Hulagu. Although Balban was fully aware of the Baghdad catastrophe, we are told by Barani that Balban believed that ideally a sultan should obtain investiture from the 'Abbasid caliphs. However, like his predecessors and the later Delhi sultans, Balban also considered himself a vicegerent of God and His shadow on earth. He exhibited his awareness of the doctrine of fan when he remarked that 'the king's heart is the mirror of the divine attributes. Arlong as God does not

158

inspire the heart of kings with general decrees relating to His slaves, matters concerning them which are dependent on the heart and tongue of the rulers are not accomplished'.⁹ Balban, like Iltutmish before him, claimed to be the successor of Afrasiyab, the ancient Turanian monarch. According to the Shahnama, this arch enemy of the Irani Pishdadian and Kayanian dynasties was defeated by the Iranian hero Rostam. Nevertheless, Balban introduced Iranian court customs and also strongly adhered to the class and racial prejudices of ancient Iran.

Balban advocated the implementation of strict justice but only for the Sunnis. He excluded the Hindus and discriminated against the Isma'ilis and Muslim philosophers, thus slavishly imitating Nizamul-Mulk and Ghazali. With explicit paternalism, however, he also urged his successors to note that only such rulers deserved to be called 'king' as had not a single naked or hungry person in their territories.

Balban's grandson and successor, Mu'izzud-Din Kayqubad, was a rake and a drunkard; but Amir Khusraw, who wrote panegyrics for all the Delhi sultans from Balban to Ghiyasud-Din Tughluq, observed that Kayqubad was endowed with the fan of the Kayani dynasty." Both Amir Khusraw and his friend Amir Hasan called the Khalj! Sultan 'Alauddin Muhammad a khalifa (caliph). Describing the latter's victories in the Khazdinu'l-futuh, Amir Khusraw wrote: 'Through instituting justice and the insignia of his own caliphate he once again raised the 'Abbasid standards which grievous calamities had broken into fragments'.¹²

In 1317 'Alauddin's son, Qutbuddin Mubarak Shah, issued coins bearing the titles which the 'Abbasid caliphs had adopted. In fact, from the time of Balban onwards, in Indian political terminology as elsewhere, the words 'caliph' and 'sultan' were interchangeable, but the Sultan's assumption of the title al-Wasiq Bi'llah (Confiding in God) was a daring innovation.

When his rule became torn by internal rebellion and was dubbed irreligious and tyrannical by the 'ulama' and sufis, Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq resorted to a unique method of silencing his opponents. To give legality to his rule he issued coins in the name of a deceased descendant of a former Baghdad 'Abbasid caliph who had moved to Egypt. The fact that the descendant was already dead was known to the Muslim elite but the Sultan counted on the support of Muslim masses in the country. Whilst awaiting his investiture of authority from the Caliph, however, the Sultan stopped the congregational Friday and id prayers, and coins bearing the name of the dead

caliph were issued only between 1342 and 1344. Finally, in 1344 Hajji Sa'id Sarsari, the envoy of the

159

'Abbasid Caliph in Egypt, brought to Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq an investiture of authority, which he received with deep humility. The reception and gifts given by the Sultan to the emissary amazed Ibn Battuta, who was present at the time. The poets wrote panegyrics for the occasion; the Indian 'ulama' and sufis remained unimpressed but powerless to do anything.¹³

Muhammad bin Tughluq died fighting the rebels in distant Thatta. In 1356 his successor, Sultan Firuz, also received his investiture and the title Sayyidu's-Salatu (Chief of the Sultans) from the Caliph. He also gave a warm welcome to the Caliph's envoy. The Caliph's warm patronage of the 'ulamad' and sufis had already endeared him to them, so the investiture was merely a formality.

Barani's *Tdrikh-i Firuz Shdhi* and the *Fatawa-i jahandari* rationalized both the absolutism of kings and their use of state laws (*zawabit*). Barani referred unhesitatingly to the Prophet Muhammad's first four successors as *jahandars* (worldly rulers), noting that each strictly observed Muhammad's practices. As human beings, according to Barani, they combined the grandeur of Jamshid with the dervishhood of mystics. After this period, caliphs and Muslim kings found themselves in the following dilemma. If they followed the practices of Muhammad, they were unable to govern; on the other hand, if they ruled vigorously and ostentatiously like pre-Islamic Iranian rulers, they were forced to violate religious law. To Barani, spiritual life was to be attained only through humility, poverty, and self-abasement, while pride, arrogance, and self-glorification were indispensable to a king, thus rendering the coexistence of spirituality and kingship impossible. A monarch, he added, could not survive without exhibiting divinity (*rububiyya*), and kingship was therefore the deputyship (*niyabat*) and vicegerency (*khildfat*) of God. In the interests of propagating God's word, enforcing the faith of Muhammad, annihilating the enemies of the faith, and their own self-preservation, Muslim khalifas and kings were compelled to adopt the manners and customs of the great Iranian emperors. He compared this situation with the eating of carrion, prohibited by Islam except in extreme conditions. In the same way, Muslim kings, in the interests of Islam, were allowed to display arrogance and ruthlessness. Using this example Barani added that even such non-Islamic customs as ceremonial prostration in the style of the Iranian court, the amassing of huge amounts of treasure, and the collection of large harems could be legalized.¹⁴

Barani reaffirmed his belief that the theories on monarchy outlined in the *Mirror for Princes*, such as that 'the sultan is God's shadow on earth', 'religion and kingdom are twin brothers', and

160

'people follow the faith of their kings', were true. He exaggerated the importance of nobility of birth in an attempt to discourage rulers from counteracting the pressure and dominance of the aristocracy by choosing their ministers from the common people. The Hindu class and caste system strengthened the social prejudices Barani had borrowed from the Persian Mirrors. Barani agreed that as far as possible state laws should not violate the shari'a and the Sunna but on

questions of expediency he recommended that this should be no obstacle. After all, expiation involved only extending gifts to the 'ulama'.¹⁵

To Barani, the ideal Muslim ruler could not satisfy his divine commission unless he deprived Hindus of all high government positions and forced the brahmins (whom he compared with the Muslim 'ulama) into bankruptcy and social misery. Those who departed from orthodox Sunnism, notably the Isma'ilis and Muslim philosophers, were to be annihilated, so as to glorify Sunnī Islam in India and make it the leading religion. According to Barani, this validated the autocratic form of the Delhi sultans' rule and gave it a religious basis.

Modern researchers have declared that the tradition that in Cairo the 'Abbasid Caliph formally transferred the caliphate to the Ottoman Sultan Selīm (1512—20) is mythical, since jurists recognized only a Quraysh as caliph, while, like all sultans, Selīm and his successors considered themselves both caliph and sultan. Nevertheless, Selīm did obtain the sacred relics from the 'Abbasid family: the Prophet's robe, some hairs from his beard, and Caliph 'Umar's sword. With the conquest of Egypt, Selīm became the guardian of Mecca and Medina, a legitimate honour of which he was justly proud.¹⁶ Inspired by these events, the Indian king Sher Shah Sur entertained a pious wish to annihilate the Shi'ī rulers of Iran, to resuscitate the bond of religious brotherhood with the Sultan of Turkey, and to share with him the privilege of serving one of the two holy places, Mecca and Medina.¹⁷

Between the reigns of Timur and Akbar two major trends in political ideology crystallized, one primarily Ghazalian and the other philosophical. The latter was reinvigorated by Khwaja Nasirū'd-Dīn Tūsī (1201-74), a profound commentator on the philosopher Avicenna (980-1037). Later, the Khwaja's Akhlaq-i Ndsiri was reinterpreted by the celebrated philosopher and 'dīm Jalalū'd-Dīn Dawwānī (1427-1503) in his Akhlaq-i Jalali. A new dimension was introduced when the Ghazalian doctrines and Nasirian political philosophy were synthesized by Abū'l-Fazl 'Allā-mī (1551-1602). He was inspired by a need to rationalize the broadly based policies of peace and concord with all religious

161

communities initiated by his patron, Akbar the Great. Besides Arabic and Persian works on kingship and government, Abū'l-Fazl had access to the Persian translations of the great Hindu epics, the Mahabharata and the Ramayana, to the Arabic translation of the Chanakya Niti, and to the Sanskrit works of ancient Indian rājyamti (polity).

Abū'l-Fazl refused to concern himself with Islamic theories legitimizing the petty military dictators who forcibly seized power and were then automatically recognized as shadows of God. To Abū'l-Fazl, the institution of kingship, rather than the individual who held the office, was endowed with farr-i izadi. The word padshah (king), he observed, was a compound word — pad meaning stability and possession, and shah denoting origin and lordship. He considered that the pddshdh was neither the sultan nor the imam of Nasirū'd-Dīn Tūsī; nor was he the Mahdī (Sahib al-Zaman or Lord of the Age), whose prophesied appearance at the close of the first Islamic millenium (1591-2) had produced instability in the minds of many Muslims.¹⁸ Abū'l-Fazl's pddshdh or shahanshah (king of kings) - another term borrowed from ancient Iranian

royalty which he loved to use - was a unique personality; he was the 'perfect man' and was the real vicegerent of God on earth.

The spate of translations from Arabic and Sanskrit into Persian during Akbar's reign also included a Persian translation of the Sirdj' al-muluk by Turtushl. It served to remind Indian intellectuals that Turtushl filled an important gap in the study of political theories because he had access to the works of the sages of Persia, Byzantium, China, Hind and Sind. These were not available to his predecessors. Turtushl asserted that an infidel king who governed his kingdom according to the right principles of kingship was preferable to a Muslim ruler who was slipshod in fulfilling his responsibilities and tardy in imposing justice.¹⁹

This principle, to which some earlier sultans had paid lip-service, tended to strengthen the basis on which Akbar's government was founded.

The protagonists of the Ghazalian theory of kingship under the Mughals were Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq Muhaddis Dihlawi (1551-1642) and Mujaddid Alf-i Sham. Having learnt that Jahangir was interested in the Prophet's traditions on kingship, Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq wrote a treatise, the Nuriyya-i Sultaniyya, covering all the information on this subject. Although a trained scholar of hadis he never questioned the authenticity of the spurious traditions which had become popular from the time of Ghazali, and wrote:

162

No rank is higher than that of a king, and all words of conventional praise are insufficient to return thanks to him . . . The order and arrangement of worldly affairs depends upon the king. Were every king to go into retirement, the cosmic order would be shattered. Therefore kings should so regulate their activities that their existence is not a source of disorder.²⁰

Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq's theory legitimizing the king was narrowed down to the exclusive benefit of Islam when he considered whether heretics and unbelievers had an equal right to justice. He thought that kufr (heresy) was incompatible with justice and that a kdfir (heretic) could never be known as an 'adil (just ruler). At the same-time, however, when reminded of the Sasanian king Nushirwan, a non-Muslim renowned for his fairness, the Shaykh admitted that justice was not the sole monopoly of Islam. He therefore restrained himself from carrying the argument any further, as Akbar and Jahangir dispensed even-handed justice. Returning to his favourite subject he demanded that kings act according to the laws of the shari'a as interpreted by the honest 'ulama'.²¹

Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindf, known as Mujaddid Alf-i Sam (1564— 1624), urged the Muslim nobles in Jahangir's court to persuade their Emperor to enforce the shari'a by state legislation, to revoke the orders prohibiting the killing of cows, and to reimpose jizya (poll-tax on non-Muslims), as well as to deprive Hindus and Shi'is of all posts of responsibility and trust.²² Nowhere does he advocate rebellion.

Designing his theory of kingship to justify his own accession to the throne and to gain the support of orthodox Sunnls for his rule, Aurangzib claimed that, since all actions are determined

by the will of God, his victory over his brothers was a divine gift. He stated that that man was truly great who was assisted to obtain power by God. From his prison Shahjahan accused Aurangzib of usurpation, to which his son replied:

Perhaps Your Majesty's 'ulama' have not advised Your Majesty of the correct position (about kingship) under the shari'a. . . . The treasury and property of kings and sultans are meant to satisfy the needs of the country and community; they are not private property and not an inheritance, and therefore zakat is not levied on them. God most High selects someone from among the esteemed ones of His Court for the management of matters relating to the livelihood and destiny of mankind, under whose control He places the duties of binding and loosing, so that all sorts of people should lead their-life on the basis of equity.

163

LAW

In India many fiqh works, based on classical authorities, were written under the patronage of the rulers. Aurangzib eventually appointed a board of 'ulama' to compile authoritative passages from the standard works of Hanafiy²⁴ for the guidance of the qadis. The work was completed between 1664 and 1672 and is known as the *Fatawa al-'Alamgiriyya*.

The Indian fiqh works did not ignore the importance of local customs ('ada or 'urf). These were readily implemented in all cases where they did not violate the shari'a laws, and in many cases even where there was a divergence they were rendered acceptable through *hiyal*²⁴ A very large chapter in the *Fatwa al-'Alamgiriyya* explains how *hiyal* helped to overcome orthodox legal problems.

The caliphs were also empowered to make administrative regulations within shari'a limits, and the qadis were bound to follow them. These regulations were intended to supplement the sacred law. The Turkic sultans of Iran and Central Asia codified administrative laws known as the laws of *jahdndri* (worldly administration) to make their political power effective. The works of Ghazali, particularly *Nasihatu'l-muluk*, and *Siyasat-nama* by Nizamul-Mulk Tusi, were the main source books for subsequent scholars who wrote handbooks on the sultans' legal and administrative systems. According to Ghazali, 'necessity makes lawful what is prohibited'. Among early Indian authors Ziya' u'd-Din Barani, who wrote the *Fatwa-i jahdndri* (legal advice on worldly rule), stated that the welfare of the state depended on state laws (*zawabit*) which did not need to be formulated in consultation with the 'ulama'. Although in ordinary circumstances the *zawabit* should not violate the shari'a, in special circumstances when departure from it was imperative because of the vicious nature of the people, the *zawabit* should not be deemed as right and correct. The law-makers should generously give alms in expiation and be afraid of the sin which they had been forced to commit. The authority for the departure from the shari'a was the precept, 'Necessity makes things forbidden lawful.'²⁵

Of all the discussions on policy matters relating to the formulation of *zawabit* in the *Tdrikh-i Firuz Shahi*, the most interesting is a dialogue between Qazi Mughls of Bayana and Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji. This dialogue may be fictitious; Barani may have chosen the Sultan and his

Qazi in order to support his own theories, but the points he wished to make cannot be overemphasized. The first question the Sultan put to Qazi Mughls related to the ordinance of the shari'a concerning the Hindu kharaj-paying class, meaning the

164

village-leaders, khuts, chawdhris, and muqaddams. The Qazi, quoting a part of a Qur'anic verse - 'Until they pay the jizya readily, being brought low'.²⁶ - added that the Hindus should be forced to pay their revenue in abject humility and extreme submissiveness; for the Prophet Muhammad had ordained that Hindus must either follow the true faith or else be slain or imprisoned and their wealth and property confiscated. With the exception of Abu Hanifa, who had authorized the collection of jizya from the Hindus, the founders of the other schools of jurisprudence had ordered for them 'either death or Islam'. 'Ala'u'd-Din, pleading his ignorance of the laws of the shari'a as stated by the Qazi, affirmed that his ordinances were, designed to reduce the rich khuts and muqaddams to poverty by forcing them to pay kharaj, jizya, and other taxes submissively, without exploiting the poor peasants. It was by sheer chance that the Sultan's policy of impoverishing the Hindu village chiefs coincided with the Hanafi law books.

The Qazi's views on other questions which the Sultan put to him differed widely from the shari'a laws. Qazi Mughls said that he was not aware of any rulings on punishment for embezzlement, fraudulent revenue practices, or bribery among government officials. Traditionally, only the ruler was authorized to punish them, but even then not by amputation of the hand, as the shari'a prescribed for common thieves. The Sultan answered that he had fixed salaries for his officials and had ordered that if they were still found to be committing fraud, embezzlement, or bribery the loss to the treasury would justify various kinds of torture and severe punishment.

The Sultan presented the Qazi with a list of his own harsh rules against political and criminal offences, consisting of punishments such as the imposition of a fine equivalent to three years' pay for each 'horseman who failed to stand muster; casting drunkards and liquor salesmen into wells dug especially for them; castration of the married male adulterer and slaying of the woman; and the infliction of the harshest possible punishment on those who rebelled or did not pay their taxes. The Sultan asked the Qazi whether all his laws were against the shari'a, to which the Qazi replied that the Prophet's ahddis and the 'ulama' fatwas did not permit the ruler to impose such harsh penalties. Filled with anger, the Sultan left the court. On his return the next day, however, he had regained his composure. Although he appreciated the Qazi's frankness, he explained, his punishments were intended to deter the rebels and the bellicose and were designed to save the lives of thousands of Muslims who were slaughtered each time a rebellion was suppressed. He was not concerned with the agreement of his laws with the shari'a, he said, nor with his own punishment on Judgement Day.

165

His main concern was the interest of the state. However, his deterrent punishments, he admitted, had so little effect on habitual criminals that mercy had become impossible.²⁷

'Ala'u'd-Din had imagined that only the Hindus would be the leaders of insurrection and rebellion, but from the beginning of his accession Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq was faced with Muslim rebellions which spread to all parts of the country. Around 1344 the Sultan sought Barani's advice regarding capital punishment for the following seven offences: (1) apostasy; (2) wilful murder of the king's loyal subjects; (3) adultery by a married man with someone else's wife; (4) proven treason against the ruler; (5) leading rebellions and insurrections; (6) co-operation with the Sultan's enemies and supplying intelligence and weapons; (7) such acts of disobedience as were a threat to the kingdom. To another question Barani answered that, according to the traditions of the Prophet, capital punishment was applicable only to apostasy, the murder of a Muslim, and adultery by a married man. The remaining four categories of offences belonged to the province of administration and were subject to the Sultan's discretion. Disagreeing even with the Iranian penal laws, the Sultan argued that the people of ancient Iran were essentially law-abiding but that he was forced by circumstances to inflict deterrent sentences, including capital punishment, merely on suspicion of a subject's guilt. Nevertheless, he was still unable to stamp out rebellions.²⁸ On various other occasions Barani suggested further measures, including the Sultan's abdication and retirement in peace;²⁹ but the Sultan, determined as he was to eradicate rebellion, died in Sind, whilst in pursuit of a rebel.

The mild reign of his successor, Sultan Firuz Tughluq, saw the ostensible return to the shari'a. The Sultan had inscribed on an octagonal tower near the Firuzabad Jami' mosque the shari'a laws which replaced the earlier state laws.³⁰

The exemption of the brahmans from jizya under former sultans was attributed by Sultan Firuz to the negligence of their officers, who had failed to apprise their rulers of the fact that the brahmans, being the leaders and promoters of infidelity, ought never to have been exempted. The new orders for the imposition of jizya on them appalled the brahmans, and they threatened to burn themselves alive before the Sultan's palace. However, finding the Sultan unrelenting, other Hindus offered to pay jizya on their behalf, and a concessional rate was fixed for them.³

This fusion of orthodoxy and state laws was dissolved by Akbar. Bada'uni accuses him of annulling the statutes and ordinances of Islam: a testimony accepted unquestioningly by orthodox Muslims

166

According to Ghazalian polity, Akbar, who never publicly abjured Islam, was guilty only of instituting sinful laws. According to Bada'uni, Akbar's laws were illegal for both religious and worldly reasons. In his opinion they were vexatious and the cause of rebellion and the destruction of the territories of the empire. For his part, Akbar argued that interference in the religious beliefs of his subjects was illegal and that Hindus forcibly converted to Islam would revert to their former religion. Hindu girls who had been made to marry Muslims should be restored to their families, and both Muslim and Hindu parents who had sold their children as slaves because of poverty could now buy them back.³² In terms of the shari'a, this meant that apostasy (irtidat or ridda) was no longer punishable by death. Akbar considered the problem mainly from a humanitarian point of view. Referring to the Indian custom of preventing the woman from seeing her future husband before marriage, Abu'l-Fazl says that Akbar ruled that

the consent of the bride and bridegroom and the permission of the parents were absolutely necessary in marriage contracts. This was in keeping with the shari'a, but Indian custom did not require the prior consent of the bride. Akbar prohibited polygamy and allowed a second wife only in exceptional circumstances. Child marriages were forbidden on grounds of health, and the marriage of an old woman to a young husband was considered contrary to modesty. Although he appreciated that the custom was a preventive against rash divorce, Akbar nevertheless discouraged fixing heavy amounts to be met by a husband if he divorced his wife without sufficient cause (*kabin*). To Akbar the custom was nothing more than a farce, for the money was never paid in any case. He appointed two officers called *tui-begis* to supervise adherence to the law and fixed a nominal amount as their fee, which could be waived in cases of hardship.³³ Akbar also prohibited the circumcision of boys below the age of twelve, making it their personal choice and not a religious obligation on the part of the parents.³⁴ The slaughter of animals on certain days totalling about half the year was also prohibited by Akbar; Jahangir reduced the number by only a few days.

Akbar ordered a considerable change in the law of evidence. According to shari'a law, the plaintiff was required to present two male adult Muslims to testify orally to their direct knowledge of the truth of his claim. If in certain cases he took an oath confirming his claim, however, only one witness was necessary. The testimony of women was admissible, but two women took the place of one man. The witnesses had to be known for their extreme religious and moral probity (*'adala*), but the cross-examination of witnesses was

167

not allowed. Consequently, the only recourse for the defendant was to impugn the witnesses' characters. Akbar ordered the *qazis* to investigate all cases diligently and stated that they should not be content merely with witnesses' oral statements or oaths but should question them personally.³⁵

The Mughal regulations crystallized under Akbar and became law for all government departments. They also served as the guiding principles for the different ranks of servants in military, civil, and judicial departments in their dealings with people of mixed religions and races. The laws are epitomized in the voluminous *A in-i Akbari* by Abu'l-Fazl, which nevertheless suffers from some serious gaps where rules and regulations are concerned. These deficiencies are remedied only by the documents known as *dasturul-'amal* and by the *farmans* from the reigns of Akbar and his successors. Not all the diaries of the official news reporters from the provinces have survived; the few that remain suggest that the working of the laws and regulations called for changes, which in fact were quite frequent until the reign of Shahjahan. In Aurang-zib's reign there was a reversion to the shari'a. The laws and regulations instituted by Akbar had been intended to ensure the maintenance of a tolerant, dynamic, and humane leadership over heterogeneous religious and racial groups. The fomentation of factionalism, disaffection, and disintegration in Mughal society, however, were stronger than any bonds of unity. Under Akbar and Jahangir the state laws were under constant threat from the orthodox Sunni elements. Shahjahan's calm and dignified personality engendered confidence in all classes, but like his predecessors he disposed of his deceased servants' property according to his own discretion. For example, the shari'a law grants equal shares to all the sons and half the sons'

shares between all the daughters. However, when the celebrated Irani mansabdar 'All Mardan Khan died in 1657, Shahjahan transferred fifty lakhs of rupees out of his estate to the treasury in settlement of his debts to the state. Of the remaining half he gave thirty lakhs to the eldest son, Ibrahim Khan, and twenty lakhs were shared between the remaining three sons and ten daughters.³⁶ By the eighteenth century the customary law gave no shares in their fathers' estate to daughters.

THE ROYAL COURT AND HOUSEHOLD

As was the case with the state laws, the Umayyad and 'Abbasid caliphs; the Turkic sultans, and Mughal padshahs also derived their

168

court ceremonials from pre-Islamic Iranian traditions. Sijda (prostration), known as zaminbos (kissing the ground), before the sultan had become popular even prior to the establishment of the Delhi sultanate in India. During his reign Balban made the sijda rules even more elaborate and pompous, while in Islam Shah's reign prostration was made before the vacant throne.³⁷

In Akbar's reign, however, his private attendants were not allowed to prostrate themselves in the hall of public audience. This was permitted only in the hall of private audience. In the hall of public audience only the kurnish and taslim were performed. Kurnish involved placing the right hand upon the forehead and bending the head downwards. Taslim was performed by placing the back of the right hand on the floor and then raising it gently till the person stood erect. In both cases the forehead did not touch the ground, and the religious sentiments of the orthodox were not hurt. The 'u'iama' and sufis were invariably exempted from sijda, although many of them performed it privately before the sultans and padshahs.³⁸

Some sultans were extravagant and licentious. The more serious ones held regular public audiences where they listened to the reports from the heads of department and noted the implementation of state regulations. Ambassadors from foreign countries were also received in public audience, and the tributary chiefs and important dignitaries were accorded a formal welcome there. The princes, ministers, heads of department, and other major officials were assigned fixed places to stand. The master of ceremonies at the sultan's court was known as amir-i hajib or barbak, and his assistants were called hajibs or na'ib bdrbak. They stood between the sultan and his subjects. Their duty was to prevent the violation of precedence in standing in the court and to present the petitioners to the sultan. They were members of the military class and acted as commanders of military expeditions when ordered to do so. The leading hdjibs played an active role in the war councils. The naqibu'l-nuqaba' (chief usher) and his assistants, called naqibs, announced loudly the sultan's orders to the soldiers. They also proclaimed the sultan's presence in the royal cavalcade. The insignia of the naqibu'l-nuqaba', consisting of a gold mace and a gold tiara surmounted by peacock feathers, added pomp and lustre to the courts. A body of soldiers called sildhdar, commanded by the sar-sildhdar, also waited on the sultan during the public audiences. The sultan's bodyguards, called jdndars, were loyal soldiers and wore very impressive uniforms. Their commander was known as the sar-jdndar.

Akbar was more accessible to his subjects than were previous

169

rulers. After performing his morning devotions he showed himself from a window on the first floor of the palace. A large crowd of all classes of people assembled outside the palace wall and could submit their petitions to the Emperor. Some were satisfied with having merely a glimpse of him. The practice was known as jharokha-darskan.^{3g} Some Hindus neither drank nor ate until they had seen the Emperor. Known as darshanyas, to them the Emperor was not merely a charismatic personality, but an incarnate god. Magnificent elephants and spirited horses were also inspected during the jharokha-darshan ceremony. Aurangzib abolished this institution during the eleventh year of his reign because he considered that it amounted to the worship of a human being.

Under the Mughals formal state business was transacted in the diwan khana-i 'amm wa khass (hall of public audience), also known simply as the diwdn-i 'dmm. The Mughal emperors from Akbar to Aurangzib spent some five to six hours daily in the diwan-i 'dmm. There the ministers laid their departmental reports before the emperor, and expert gladiators, wrestlers, and musicians exhibited their skills. The appointments and promotions of mansabdars and other senior officers were also announced there. Commanders and governors appeared before the emperor in the diwdn-i 'dmm before proceeding to their assignments. Ambassadors and victorious governors were received, and defeated rebels and other prisoners were presented there.

Father Monserrate gives an interesting picture of the conduct of state business in the diwan-i 'amm and in the diwdn khdna-i khds (hall of private audience). In the latter Akbar listened to the suggestions of his ministers on state matters and gave his own verdict. It was also the scene of his intellectual activity, such as listening to the reading of books and discussions. Because of its proximity to the emperor's private bath, it was also known as the ghusl-khdna (bathroom). Contemporary works give a very interesting glimpse of the secret state business transacted in the ghusl-khdna. Important ambassadors and foreign dignitaries were invited there. During Shahjahan's reign, however, consultations with princes and leading nobles were held in a more secret chamber called the Shah Burj.

Under the sultans the royal household was controlled by an officer of very high rank, the wakil-i dar. He supervised the payment of salaries and allowances to the sultan's personal staff. The Mughals, by contrast, did not attach much importance to their household officers, and they held only minor positions.

The karkhanas (manufactories) were an important part of the royal household. Their controllers bought supplies for the royal household, which were then stored in these kdrkhdnas. Objects for

170

royal use were also manufactured there. For example, in Muhammad bin Tughluq's reign four thousand silk weavers manufactured material for the robes of honour which the sultans lavishly distributed, while five hundred craftsmen were engaged in gold embroidery.

Sultan Firuz divided his karkhanas into thirty-six sections. Their supreme controller was a leading noble; his subordinates, who supervised each karkhana separately, were also noblemen.⁴¹ The karkhanas under the Mughals were also known as buyutdt. Besides storing and manufacturing articles for the emperor's household and the court's needs, the mint, public treasury, department for construction of monuments, roads, and repairs, and artillery were also included in the buyutdt. Kdrkhdnas were even maintained in districts far from the capital in order to manufacture articles for which local craftsmen, especially weavers, were readily available. The growing luxury of the emperor's court and the need to send gifts to foreign courts engendered a competitive spirit in these kdrkhdnas; continued efforts were made to step up production and raise the standards of manufacture. Under Akbar the diwan-i buyutdt controlled the finances and working of the buyutdt. From Jahangir's reign the mir-i saman was made slightly senior to the diwdn-i buyutat, although both were jointly responsible for the efficient working of the system. The mir-i sdmn controlled the organization of the imperial tours and the establishment which accompanied the emperor.

Each karkhana was supervised by a ddrogha (superintendent), while its cash and materials were in the charge of a tahwildar (cash keeper), and its accounts were regularly audited by the mustawfi (auditor). The mushrif-i kul-ojuz was the accountant for all sections of the buyutdt.⁴²

MINISTERS AND THEIR DEPARTMENTS

In the Qur'an, Aaron is referred to as the vizier (wazir) of his brother Moses, so the office was not of Iranian origin as is generally believed. The vizier combined some of the functions of a prime minister with some of those of the head of the civil administration. The later jurists such as al-Mawardi (974—1058) divided viziers into two categories: one had unlimited and the other limited power. The viziers of unlimited power emerged only during the decline of the 'Abbasids and under weak sultans.

The text *Addbu'l-harb wa'sh Shujd'a*, dedicated to Sultan Iltut-

171

mish, says that just as the body could not survive without a soul, a government could not flourish without a vizier.⁴³ Even those prophets who were both apostles and kings and were guided by divine revelation did not rule the country without a vizier. Under the sultanate his department was called the diwan-i wizarat and dealt mainly with income and expenditure. The vizier was assisted by the mushrif-i mamalik and the mustawft-i mamalik. The officers in the mushrif department supervised the collection of revenue and audited the local accounts. The mustawfi-i mamdlik controlled state expenditure. Both the mushrif-i mamdlik and the mustawfi-i mamdlik had direct access to the sultan. Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji's centralization of power into his own hands made the office of vizier insignificant, and although Sultan Muhammad respected his vizier, Khwaja-i Jahan, he made major decisions independently. On the other hand, Sultan Firuz never interfered with the administration of his vizier, Maqbul Khan-i Jahan.

The office of na'ibu'l mulk (regent) was created under Iltutmish's successors in order to reduce the importance of viziers. The sultans were mere puppets in their hands. Towards the end of

'Ala'u'd-Din's reign Malik Kafur, the na'ibu'l mulk, became virtual ruler, as was Khusraw Baradu, although still legally subordinate to Mubarak Khalji.

Bayram Khan's position in Akbar's administration was historically of exceptional importance. Initially Akbar's tutor, he was created wakil-i saltanat (prime minister) and during Akbar's minority he was to all intents and purposes the Emperor. After Bayram's dismissal, Akbar reduced the power of the wakll and frequently left the position vacant for long periods. Jahangir did not fill the position between the fifth and twentieth years of his reign. From his appointment by Jahangir in 1626 until his own death in 1641 Asaf Khan Abu'l-Hasan remained wakll mainly because he was instrumental in raising Shahjahan to the throne and was his father-in-law. He was the last of the wakils of the Great Mughals. After his accession Shahjahan gave him the title Yaminu'd-Dawla (Empire's Right-Hand Man) and a very large mansab. He regularly attended Shahjahan's evening durbar to place all important affairs before the Emperor. He kept the seal and received a copy of the reports from the provinces and of every paper filed by the diwan-i kull. All warrants of appointment were sealed and signed by Asaf Khan, and the court reporter gave him daily intelligence reports.⁴⁴

Bahadur Shah I appointed Asad Khan as his wakll but refused to give him the power enjoyed by Asaf Khan, reminding him that the latter's powers emanated from family relationships. Asad Khan, in

172

fact, remained only the governor of Delhi. In short, the Mughals did not consider the wakll indispensable to the state.⁴⁵

Under the Delhi sultans, the state departments — four in number - were deemed the four pillars of the state. Of these the diwdn-i wizarat was concerned with finance, the diwdn-i risalat with religious matters, the diwdn-i 'arz organized military affairs, and the diwdn-i insha' dealt with the royal correspondence. Although the diwdn-i wizdrat was senior to the other three, their ministers had direct access to the sultans and enjoyed equal respect. Akbar made them interdependent and sought the counsel of a galaxy of dignitaries and nobles who remained in attendance at the court.

During the sultanate period the word diwan meant a government department and was used mainly for the wazir's department, but in Akbar's reign the term was identified with the wazir himself, only to be separated again in Jahangir's reign when the word wazir was again used to describe the individual. In Shahjahan's reign the wazir was called diwan-i kull (principal diwdn) to distinguish him from the subordinate and provincial diwans. According to Abu'l-Fazl the diwdn was the emperor's lieutenant in financial matters, the superintendent of the imperial treasury, and the auditor of the accounts. The diwdn suggested rules and regulations for the assessment and collection of revenue, allocated funds for expenditure on state activities, and supervised the work of the departmental officers. He was also responsible for stepping up agricultural production and for improving the cultivators' conditions. During his long reign Akbar had several very talented finance ministers, but posterity has ascribed, all his innovations to Raja Todar Mal, who worked as diwdn from the twenty-second to the twenty-fourth and from the twenty-seventh to the thirty-fourth years of the Emperor's reign. Jahangir's diwdn I 'timadu'd-

Dawla owed his high position to his competence and not to the marriage of his daughter Nur-Jahan to the Emperor. Shahjahan's original diwan-i kull, Afzal Khan, was a very learned man and the Emperor's favourite. Islam Khan also successfully worked as Shahjahan's diwdn-i kull from the thirteenth to the nineteenth year of his reign but, realizing that the Emperor wished to make Sa'du'llah Khan the diwdn-i kull, he volunteered to become governor of the Deccan, and Sa'du'llah Khan replaced him. The Emperor was deeply impressed with the loyalty and efficiency of the latter and would not listen to any complaints against his diwdn-i kull, even from his favourite, Dara Shukoh. Sa'du'llah's death in the thirtieth year of his reign was deeply mourned by the Emperor and deemed an irreparable loss to the empire.⁴⁶

The assistant diwdns were generally Hindus. Each of the following

173

four branches of the diwan-i kull controlled a separate department. They were the diwdn-i khalsa (for khalsa I and), diwdn-i tan (for salaries), mushrif (chief accountant), and mustawfi (auditor). Raghunath Rai, the diwdn-i khalsa from the twenty-third to the thirtieth year of Shahjahan's reign, was assigned the duties of the diwdn-i tan from the twenty-sixth to the thirtieth year of that time. He also served Aurangzib until his own death in June 1663.

On a more senior level the ministry was responsible for the military administration, which under the Delhi sultanate was called the diwdn-i 'ariz. Its head was referred to as the 'ariz-i mamalik. He directed the recruitment of soldiers and officers, maintained the muster rolls, controlled promotions and demotions, and revised salaries. The 'ariz also controlled the commissariat. 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji introduced the system of branding horses and maintaining a roll describing each trooper, but Firuz Tughluq discontinued these practices.

Under the early sultans the royal cavalry in Delhi were called hasham-i qalb or afwdj-i qalb. They were picked troopers comprising the jandars (royal bodyguards) and sultans' slaves. Hasham-i atrdf was the name given to the troops posted in the provincial headquarters and the garrisons. According to Thomas, 'the form of the saddle, the seat of the horseman, the chanfrein or head armour of the steed and his erect tail' as portrayed on Iltutmish's coins 'seem to point to the Turki ideals of a best in horsemen'. Barbosa's description of the Gujarati and Deccani troops in the fifteenth century is also very impressive. The army was organized on the basis of a decimal system. Although Bughra Khan's classification of military grades did not necessarily represent the true state of military command,⁴⁷ al-'Umari, an important authority, says that a khan commanded ten thousand horsemen or more, a malik commanded a thousand, an amir a hundred, and a sipah saldr less than one hundred.⁴⁸ Amir Khusraw also confirms this decimal gradation.

Although the Turks dominated the army of the early sultans, troopers of other races, including Hindus, were not ignored. The practice of employing Hindu troops had started as early as the reign of Qutbu'd-Din Aybak, and they served the sultans with loyalty and devotion.

According to the Addbu'l-harb, bows were the troopers' most prized weapons, followed by the sword. The short spear, the short lance, the mace, and the lasso were also used. The finest horses

were found in the sultan's stables, as he exercised a monopoly over their purchase. Many horses were imported from Hazramawt and the Persian Gulf region, although the Panjab hills were also fine

174

horse-breeding grounds. Horses were also bought from the Himalayas and north-eastern regions.

Elephants were effectively used from the days of Mahmud of Ghazni, who developed an impressive stable which contained 1,000 elephants, tended by a Hindu staff. The elephants were lined up in the front and centre of the armies. When out of control they played havoc with the ranks, but their advantages were believed to outweigh the disadvantages, and they were always present.

Before 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji's reign the sultans assigned iqta's, the revenues from different territorial units, to their military commanders for their personal maintenance and that of their troops. These iqtd's were frequently transferred and were not identical with the fiefs of the European feudal age. The yield of each iqta' was roughly estimated, and the assignees were given more than was needed for their maintenance. The iqtd' holders or muqta's were expected to remit the surplus, orfawdzil to the sultan, but this was occasionally withheld by adventurers such as 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji.

During Iltutmish's reign iqta's were also distributed to some two to three thousand Delhi troopers in the doab and around Delhi. By Balban's reign most of the troopers had died, and the remainder were now invalids. Their iqtd's, however, with the connivance of the military department, had become incorporated into their family estates. Balban initially decided to resume all iqtd's belonging to those who could not render military service but desisted on the recommendation of his kotwal, Malik Fakhru'd-Din.

'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji abolished the system of assigning iqtd's to his standing army and paid them a cash salary. The valuation of the iqtd' he gave to the commanders in provinces was calculated exactly and was equivalent to the commander's salary plus the pay for his troopers. This was deemed a direct charge on the state treasury and not left to the commander's discretion.⁴⁹ Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq was also strict in assigning iqtd's and in some cases rescinded the commander's power to collect revenue. Under Firuz the practice of assigning revenue to the standing army was restored, and the transfer of iqtd's became rare.⁵⁰ To all intents and purposes the iqta' system as it was before the time of 'Ala'u'd-Din continued to be followed until the sixteenth century. The Afghans divided the empire into large areas, assigned to the tribal leaders.

The infantry was mainly composed of Hindus and slaves called payak. They were efficient archers (dhdnuk). Barbosa found the bows of the Deccan foot-soldiers as long as those in England. As bodyguards they were most trustworthy. Not only did they save the sultans' lives on many occasions but they also thwarted various rebel conspiracies.

175

Under the Mughals the duties of the mir bakhshi were complex. He was responsible for presenting the candidates for mansabs (grant of ranks) to the emperor, although the princes, governors, and commanders of various military expeditions could also, on the basis of their knowledge, introduce prospective mansabdars to the emperor. The papers regarding the rank and salary of the mansabdars approved by the emperor were prepared mainly in the offices of the diwan-i tan and the bakhshis. The formalities were tedious. The mansabdars had to furnish surety, and according to Manucci even the princes 'had to conform to the customs'.⁵¹ Bankers and money-lenders were readily accepted as guarantors for the good behaviour and character of the candidates, although eminent mansabdars also acted as guarantors.

The mir bakhshi or his assistants inspected the soldiers, the horses, the beasts of burden, and other accoutrements which the mansabdars were required to maintain. The horses approved by the mir bakhshi were branded (dagh), and a roll describing the soldiers (tashiha) was compiled. Not only the appointment papers of the mansabdars but even those of other ministers passed through the mir bakhshi. The mir bakhshi assigned to different mansabdars the duty of mounting guard on the royal palace. This practice enabled Shaykh Farid, the mir bakhshi during the last years of Akbar's reign, to foil the attempts by Khan-i A'zam, the wakil, and Raja Man Singh to raise Khusraw, in supersession of Prince Salim, to the throne.

News reports from the provinces were first received by the mir bakhshi and then presented to the emperor, either directly or through the wakil. The mir bakhshi accompanied the emperor on his tours, hunting expeditions, and pleasure trips. When the emperor personally commanded the army on the battle-front, the mir bakhshi accompanied him. He was also ordered to go on all important military campaigns led by the princes. Sometimes the mir bakhshis were given independent commands in battle, when they were assisted by two other bakhshis deployed at the centre of the army.

THE MANSABDARS AND THE ARMY

Mansab means literally a rank or a position. It also meant a function, prerogative, or duty. The mansabdars, or holders of mansabs, were required to perform either military or civil duties or both, but all of them were placed on the military payroll. This was the most significant feature of the system. According to the Akbar-nama, in 1573 Akbar introduced regulations concerning the

176

branding of horses (dagh) and fixing the grades of the officers of the state (maratib), despite the nobles' stubborn resistance. Two years later, when Akbar returned from his Bihar expedition, the dagh regulations were completely implemented, and the officers' mansabs were fixed according to their merit and the contingents they maintained. A cash payment had been substituted for the assignment of territories (jdgir). According to the Ain-i Akbari, the ranks (mansabs) of mansabddrs ranged from the dahbdshi (commander of ten) to the dah hazari (commander of 10,000), but mansabs above 5,000 were reserved for the princes. Following the numerical value of the letters in the name Allah, sixty-six mansabs were established, although only thirty-three feature in the A in. It would seem that some mansabs were not assigned and that others were dropped to simplify the system.

Until 1595 each mansabddr had to keep in his pay the number of troopers indicated by his rank. He also maintained a fixed number of horses, elephants, camels, and carts. However, many mansabddrs were unable to fulfil their obligations. For example, the historian Mulla Bada'uni, who was a mansabddr of twenty, should have maintained twenty horsemen but could not afford to do so. Other mansabddrs were in the same position. Realizing the hardships suffered by many mansabddrs, in 1595 Akbar divided them into three categories: first, those who had troopers equal in number to their mansab; second, those who had half or more; third, those who had less than half. In the table of mansabddrs, the A in-i Akbari, compiled that same year, gives only single-number mansabs and mentions the number of horses of different categories, elephants, camels, and carts that that grade of mansabddr was required to maintain. It does not list the number of horsemen. The dual ranks of zdt and sawdr occur from early 1597, and the first important mansabddr mentioned with both was Mirza Shahrukh with 5,000 zdt and 2,000 sawdr. The number of horsemen which a mansabddr had to maintain was indicated in his sawdr rank, while the zdt rank indicated his personal pay in the pay schedules. Surviving pay schedules from Shahjahan's reign show that the salary against zdt and sawdr ranks was different. The salary paid to a mansabddr against the zdt rank included his personal pay and the cost of the horses, elephants, camels, and carts which were his responsibility according to the schedule. By Aurangzib's time, the mansabdar's sawdr rank was generally higher than his zat rank. Consequently the pay against sawdr ranks, or the troops maintained by him, was generally more than double the zdt rank. The zat rank was not symbolic nor intended to decide precedence among the mansabddrs. Both the zat and sawdr ranks were meant to show particular obligations and salaries.⁵²

177

Some mansabddrs were paid in cash from the imperial treasury, but generally they were assigned a territory known as a jagir, whose estimated revenue (jama') was equal to the pay due for their zat and sawadr mansabs. The jagirs were the same as iqta's', sometimes these terms were interchangeable. The word tuyul was also used for jagirs. Those who were granted jagirs were known as jagirdars. The jagirs assigned in lieu of salary were known as tankhwah jagirs. The territorial chiefs were also granted mansabs, and their salary was equivalent to the jama' (revenue) from their dominions, known as the watan jagir. Beside the latter, some territorial chiefs were, also granted tankhwah jagirs in the imperial territory, depending upon their merit and service. The tankhwah jagir was one of the major inducements to the territorial chiefs to remain loyal to the Mughal throne.

Jagirs, like iqta's, were transferable, and ordinarily no mansabdar held a jagir in one place for more than three to four years. In fact, the jagirdars and their officers were generally not sure of keeping the same holding for more than one year. The jagirs did not correspond necessarily with the revenue divisions in the empire. These were administered by the imperial officers and not by the jagirdars' employees, and their tax collectors were not allowed to violate the emperor's revenue and tax regulations. In 1647 about 60 per cent of the estimated revenue (jama') of the empire was assigned to 445 mansabdars of 500 rank and above.⁵³ This accounts for the concentration of the bulk of the country's wealth among less than five hundred families in the empire. A mansabdar's salary was calculated on the basis of very complex schedules, but even top commanders like 'Abdu'r-Rahim Khan-i Khanan in Akbar's reign, or princes such as Dara

Shukoh under Shahjahan, were not satisfied with their respective grants and transfers. All the mansabddrs pressured the diwan-i kull to give them the most easily manageable villages as their jagirs, although it was government policy to assign them the jagirs nearest the stations where they were posted.

The trooper's salary varied according to the number and type of horses he possessed. Additionally, in 1595, by an imperial order, the Rajput soldiers drew a slightly lower wage than the Mughal, Afghan, and Indian Muslim troopers. It would seem that the supply of Rajput soldiers exceeded demand.⁵⁴

Some particularly efficient troops were taken under the emperor's control by Akbar and his successors. They were ordinarily not placed under the mansabdars. They were named ahadis (from ahad or 'one'), as a reminder that Akbar believed in divine unity. Their equipment was of a very high standard, and their salary was 500 rupees. Each had to muster five horses. They were placed under a

178

separate diwan and bakhshi and were mustered every four months. When recruited they had to bring their own horses, but these were later on supplied by the government.⁵⁵ In the Mughal decline of the eighteenth century the term ahadi came to mean 'idler'. The crack troops had lost their vitality and energy.

According to de Laet, Jahangir inherited from his father 2,941 mansabdars, ranging from the rank of 10 to 5,000. In the twentieth year of Shahjahan's reign there were 8,000 mansabdars and 7,000 ahadis and mounted artillerymen, paid by the imperial treasury.⁵⁶

The Mughal infantry was also divided into several categories. These included the darbans (porters) and the khidmatiiyas (palace guards). According to Abu'l-Fazl, the khidmatiiya caste were originally notorious highway robbers whom the earlier sultans had been unable to control. Akbar, however, took them into his service and tamed them. He also recruited the natives of Mewat, known as mewras, who made excellent spies. Even several kinds of gladiator were incorporated into part of the infantry, while Irani and Turanl boxers and wrestlers, some of whom became celebrities in their day, were employed as infantrymen. Slaves were also included in the infantry. Akbar called them chelas or disciples because he disliked using the word 'slave'. He detested the custom of Muslims buying Hindus for slaves and vice versa. Palanquin bearers, and others who carried heavy loads on their shoulders, also belonged to the infantry.⁵⁷

Some recent scholars, such as Abu Zafar Nadvi and Muhammad Akram Makhdoomee, assert that the Delhi sultans introduced artillery into India. It would seem, however, that they wrongly confused the naphtha- and missile-throwing engines such as mangonels with gunpowder and cannon. The literary evidence from the sultanate period suggests that it was in the mid-fourteenth century that gunpowder became known in northern India and explosive devices were introduced, possibly through Turkey. In the second half of the fifteenth century sultans such as Zaynu'l-'Abidin of Kashmir, Mahmud Begarha of Gujarat, and Mahmud Shah Bahmani are known to have possessed guns, and the last two used them on military expeditions.⁵⁸

Babur was the first to use cannon effectively in battle and he gives a vivid description of making a cannon at Agra. In Humayun's reign the number of guns in the Emperor's arsenal increased considerably. According to Abu'l-Fazl, only Turkey could compete with India in the manufacture of guns. Babur's gunners were from Turkey. The number of Portuguese and other European gunners in India increased as a result of Akbar's conquest of Gujarat and Bengal, but Akbar himself remained the

179

major innovator in gun manufacture. Although firearms were mainly used in siege operations, Akbar made both light and very heavy guns. Those known as narnals could be carried by a single person; others, such as gajnals, were carried on elephants. Some guns could be taken to pieces for easy handling during marches and reassembled later.⁵⁹ In Akbar's reign Hakim Fathu'llah Shirazi invented the multi-barrelled cannon.

At the end of the Thirty Years War in Europe (1618-48) many European adventurers with considerable experience of firearms came to India and obtained service under the Mughals. For example, Niccolao Manucci, an Italian boy of fourteen, reached India as a stowaway in 1646. Despite this, the cannon-manufacturing techniques did not improve. Thevenot says: 'They have Cannon also in their Towns, but since they melt the Metal in diverse Furnaces, so that some of it must needs be better melted than others when they mingle together, their Cannon is commonly good for nothing.'⁶⁰

A matchlock contingent was also included in the infantry. According to Abu'l-Fazl, earlier matchlocks could not be filled for more than a quarter of the barrel without bursting when fired, but Akbar's matchlocks were so strong that they did not explode though filled to the top. Some of Akbar's guns were two yards long, others only nine inches in length. Improved barrels were submitted to Akbar for inspection, and the modifications he suggested were implemented in the design.⁶¹

Akbar also profitably used elephants on the battlefield, and there are many examples of his chivalry in controlling them when they were enraged.

Akbar had no navy and did not possess any sea-going ships. The *Ain-i Akbari* suggests, however, that shipbuilding was not altogether neglected. Vessels were constructed on the west, south, and east coasts of India. Those ships built in Allahabad and Lahore were sent to the coast, while vessels for pilgrimage and commerce were constructed by the Mughal artisans. Larger boats, for the transport of troops and military stores, were built in Bengal, Kashmir, and Sind.

FINANCE

Charity in general and the payment of zakat (alms tax) in particular are obligatory duties for Muslims. As a rule the property assessable for zakat should have been in the owner's possession for at least one

180

year. This law, however, enabled some property owners to evade payment with impunity. For example, Makhdumu'l-Mulk used to transfer all his property to his wife towards the end of the year and then repossess it before the year had run out.⁶² Similar tricks are ascribed to several Muslim dignitaries. Zakat money is paid specifically to different categories of poor people and was not a source of revenue for the rulers. It was Flruz Shah Tughluq who included zakat on his list of regular state demands and established a separate treasury for it.

The 21/2 per cent zakat on Muslim traders' imports and exports was levied under both the sultans and the Mughals. Pious merchants conscientiously paid zakat. Some of them believed that the blessings obtained from this payment protected them from the loss of their merchandise, although it was known that many dishonest Muslim merchants evaded paying it.

No records of customs rates under the Delhi sultans are available. Abu'l-Fazl confirms that 21/4 per cent was the maximum under Akbar. Finch says that the charges at Surat were 21/2 per cent on goods and 3 per cent on provisions. In Jahangir's reign customs duties were 31/2 per cent on all imports and exports of goods and 2 per cent on money, either gold or silver. According to Pelsaert, these duties were collected for the king by the governor of Gujarat but formerly 'they were assigned to various lords as salary'. In Thevenot's time, customs duties ranged from 4 to 5 per cent. Aurangzib fixed a higher rate for non-Muslims, but the order was not effective, because Muslim merchants smuggled goods belonging to Hindus, thus paying a lower rate of 21/2 per cent.⁶⁴

Transit dues were also realized, although Akbar remitted them on at least two occasions. The river toll, however, was always levied under Akbar. Jahangir remitted both road and river dues. According to travellers such as Mundy, Thevenot, and Tavernier, transit dues were in force throughout large areas of the country. Father Manrique tells how the passport granted to him as an ecclesiastic to travel from Lahore to the mouth of the Indus was used by a merchant in his party to evade many demands during the journey.⁶⁵

Innumerable articles, mainly vegetables, betel-leaves, meat, and fish, were subject to octroi levies. Cesses were imposed on trades such as cotton carding, soap-, rope-, oil- and brick-making, and maintaining gambling houses and centres of amusement, probably brothels. Sultan Flruz remitted these cesses, finding them not sanctioned by the shari'a. According to Father Monserrate, the low prices prevailing in Akbar's camp were due to goods being exempted from tax.⁶⁶ Although after their accession Akbar's

181

successors also reissued orders to stop the cesses on merchandise and trades, they had become so deeply rooted in the normal trade practices of the times that the orders were never fully implemented.

Presents were often another source of income at court. The presentation of gifts to the court and noblemen was an important custom. The more valuable gifts were presented by foreign visitors and officials of all ranks. Under the Mughals the emperor received presents on all festive occasions, birthdays and accession anniversaries, and even after recovering from an illness. The

mansabddrs also made gifts on occasions such as their promotion and reinstatement. The rulers reciprocated by giving robes of honour, precious jewels, and rare objects to show honour to their noblemen and visitors.

Foreign observers condemned the Mughal emperors for enriching their treasury by confiscating the property of their deceased mansabdars. For example, Pelsaert says:

Immediately on the death of a lord who has enjoyed the King's jagir, be he great or small, without any exception - even before the breath is out of the body — the King's officers are ready on the spot, and make an inventory of the entire estate, recording everything down to the value of a single pice, even to the dresses and jewels of the ladies, provided they have not concealed them. The King takes back the whole estate absolutely for himself, except in a case where the deceased has done good service in his lifetime, when the women and children are given enough to live on, but no more.⁶⁷

The literature on the subject shows that the Mughal mansabdars in fact borrowed enormous sums from the state for their military expeditions and invariably died in debt. The Mughal confiscation system simply offered the state first claim on their estate. When disposing of the rest of the deceased's property, the Mughal emperors violated shari'a laws by granting larger shares to the elder sons or to their favourites.

In the early centuries of the Arab and Turkish conquests, booty (ghanima) was an important source of state finance. According to the shari'a one-fifth is set apart for the state, and the remaining four-fifths are distributed among the soldiers, although mounted troopers receive one or two shares more. On the other hand, the Indian sultans generally appropriated four-fifths themselves and distributed one-fifth to the soldiers. Since the army consisted of paid soldiers, the sultans did not consider this policy illegal. Firuz, however, restored the early Islamic rules, although the booty acquired in his reign was almost negligible. But for petty '

182

campaigns, the Mughals did not distribute booty to their soldiers, for their army was organized on a non-religious basis.

Jizya (poll-tax) formed an important source of the Muslim rulers' finances. It was sanctioned by the Qur'an. Jizya was levied on Jews, Christians, and Zoroastrians, who were known as protected subjects (zimmi). Both taxes were prevalent in the Sassanian and Roman-Byzantine empires conquered by the Arabs. Those who embraced Islam were exempted from paying jizya but then became liable to pay Zakat. Islamicization neither undermined state finances nor helped the convert financially.

As mentioned earlier, Muhammad bin Qasim accorded both Hindus and Buddhists zimmi status and imposed jizya on them. According to Imam Malik, jizya could be collected from 'faithless Turks and Indians'. The same view was held by Imam Abu Hanifa. It would appear that the Ghaznavids and Delhi sultans collected jizya from Hindus according to the shari'a law.

Western historians such as Hardy,⁶⁸ because of an incorrect interpretation of the historical texts, and some Muslim historians, in order to demonstrate Islamic liberalism, try to prove that under the Delhi sultans jizya meant land revenue. In fact, under the Delhi sultans the imposition of jizya was not disputed. The moot question was the legality of giving zimmi status to Hindus. A section of 'ulama' urged that Hindus should either be converted to Islam or be slaughtered. The sultans and their viziers had to perform the uphill task of convincing the unrealistic 'ulama' of the impracticability of their demand. The earlier Turkic sultans correctly exempted brahmins from the payment of jizya, but Sultan Firuz wrongly imposed it on them, blaming the earlier sultans for incorrectly interpreting the shari'a law. The brahmins protested and resorted to hunger strikes, but the Sultan did not relent. Ultimately, the rich Hindus offered to pay jizya on their behalf; as a concession the Sultan reduced the prevalent rate in the case of brahmins. Sultan Firuz could also boast that his orders to remit jizya made a deep impact upon the Hindus, and a large number of them embraced Islam.⁶⁹ The collection of jizya from the Hindus in towns posed no problem, but in the villages, like early land-revenue collections, it was assessed as a collective tax.

In 1564 Akbar remitted the collection of jizya. According to Abu'l-Fazl, it was imposed both from contempt for the rival faith and to facilitate the accumulation of wealth by the rulers. Abu'l-Fazl goes on to say that Akbar found no justification for collecting jizya; for not only had men of all other religions become his devoted servants, but his treasury was already full.⁷⁰ Although Akbar's advisers, the 'ulama', and the revenue experts opposed him, he

183

rejected their representations. For the rest of Akbar's reign and the reigns of Jahangir and Shahjahan no jizya was collected.

Aurangzib also did not collect jizya during the first twenty years of his reign but he reimposed this tax on non-Muslims in April 1679. According to a contemporary historian, the Emperor's principal aim was to spread the law of Islam and to overthrow infidel practices. Khafi Khan, another historian, says that the new law was designed to reduce the Hindus to poverty. The SatnamI rebellions of 1672 had already upset the Delhi Muslims, and the Emperor may have believed that Hindu affluence was the root cause of the local uprisings. For the imposition of jizya the population was divided into rich, middle, and poor classes. Those who owned property worth ten thousand dirhams or more were classed as rich, those with property valued at two hundred dirhams or more as the middle class, and those with property at less than two hundred dirhams as poor.⁷² Since the dirham was not current, the collection was made in silver. According to J. N. Sarkar's calculations, the rates for the three classes respectively were 13 1/3, 6%, and 3 1/3 rupees; i.e. 6 per cent of the gross income of the poor, 6% on the middle class and 2 1/2 per thousand on the rich. The tax naturally hit the poorest section. Government officials and the priestly classes were exempt. In commercial centres such as Gujarat, jizya yielded 3 1/2 per cent per annum of the total gross revenue of the province and was quite sufficient to provide the 'ulama' with a holy source of livelihood.⁷³

The outcry and demonstrations by the Hindus of Delhi, particularly the artisans, money-lenders, and cloth merchants, were of no avail. Several Hindu demonstrators were trampled to death

under the feet of the elephants and horses, and ultimately they surrendered. The literary evidence suggests that the Muslim jizya collectors were generally harsh, but it is difficult to believe Manucci's report that 'many Hindus who were unable to pay turned Muhammadan'.⁷⁴

The principal financial source of both the Delhi sultans and the Mughals, was, however, land revenue (kharaj). The administrative framework of this tax before the thirteenth century is not known, but it would seem that in India the traditions from the Arab rulers of Sind and the Ghaznavid rulers were followed. The owners of cultivated land were not dispossessed, but any land, particularly that near the capital, whose owner had been killed in battle or was not traceable was allotted to Muslims. The Muslim owners paid one-tenth ('ushr) of their produce in tax on land watered by rain, but on land dependent for irrigation with buckets or wheels only one-twentieth of the produce was paid as a levy. These blocks of

184

land were known as 'ushri. The land left with its known Hindu owners and that allotted to Hindus was known as kharaji or khardj-paying (land-revenue-paying) land. Other terms used for kharaj, especially under the Mughals, were hasil or mal. In the thirteenth century a collective assessment of revenue was made on the villages. Their chiefs, known as ranas, ra'is and rawats, paid revenue to the iqta' holders.

Those villages where revenue was reserved for the sultan's treasury were known as khdlisas. They also paid revenue on the basis of collective assessment. The sultan's muhassils (revenue collectors) realized the demands through the village headmen known as chawdhris, muqaddams, and khuts. These headmen were often very rich, for they did not themselves pay khardj, jizya, and other taxes but collected the perquisites due to them for working as a headman from their own villages. Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din had all the land under cultivation measured, and the revenue was fixed on the basis of a standard yield. No concessions or perquisites were granted to the chiefs, who were assessed on a par with the balahars or ordinary peasants. The standard khardj (revenue demand) was fixed at one-half of the produce, and a tax was also imposed on the pastures. An army of revenue collectors ('amilis), accountants, and auditors was recruited to collect the land revenue, which was realized in kind, although there was also cash payment in some areas. The collectors' vigilance made the chawdhris, muqaddams, and khuts subservient.⁷⁵ The new system of taxation was enforced in all areas easily accessible from Delhi, but these did not include eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, lower Panjab, and Gujarat.

The structure of 'Ala'u'd-Din's innovations crumbled before his death. His successor, Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq, was a moderate. He does not seem to have reduced the state demand for one-half of the produce but he prevented any further increases and removed the levy on pastures. He also replaced the crop-sharing system with the measurement system inaugurated by 'Ala'u'd-Din in the khdlisas. The headmen's perquisites were restored, but they were encouraged to co-operate with the government towards the improvement of cultivation and collection of revenue. The iqta' holders in charge of the khardj land had always been under pressure to remit more, but Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq fixed the increase between 10 and 11 per cent.

The next ruler, Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq, enhanced revenue in the Gangetic doab. He also sought to increase the government's power by collecting revenue through his own collectors, or farming out the iqtd' revenue to the highest bidder.

His successor, Sultan Firuz, instituted a six-year survey of crop

185

production, enabling him to fix permanently the estimated revenue (jama') of the sultanate at 67,500,000 tankas. The entire revenue of the country was assigned to the army and civil officers, and these assignments were made hereditary. However, only 50 per cent of the amount mentioned in these orders was paid to the troopers or iqta' holders by the village officers; apparently the rest was appropriated as collection charges. These assignments could also be sold for 30 per cent of their face value to city brokers. Under the rebellious governors of Firuz's successor, however, it proved impossible for the assignment holders to collect anything at all.

The Lodis and Surs assigned hereditary iqta's to the Afghan tribal leaders. Sultan Sikandar Lodi introduced the gaz-i Sikandari (Sikandar's yard) of 32 digits for measuring cultivated fields, but the revenue based on this was confined to the khalisas. The principal iqtd' holders could assign parts of territory to their subordinates for raising troops. In Sher Shah's reign also the systems of crop sharing and imposition of fixed revenue demand were given up. Revenue was fixed on the basis of measurements; the only exceptions were those regions which were not completely subdued, such as Multan and Rajasthan. Schedules for crop rates were prepared on the basis of the quality of the land, but his reign was too short to crystallize the system.

In the early years of Akbar's reign the crop schedules and jama' (assessed revenue) schedules of the Sur rulers were made the basis of the revenue administration, although new experiments were constantly made to find a sound revenue policy. Between 1567 and 1571 the Sur schedules of crop rates were replaced by separate schedules for seasonal harvests. In 1575 the old method of measuring the land with hemp ropes was discarded, and a measure consisting of bamboo poles linked together with iron rings was adopted. By 1576 the empire was greatly expanded, and a new survey and assessment had to be undertaken. The year 1580 was a watershed in Akbar's revenue reforms because of the introduction of the 'in-i dahsala. This did not mean the 'laws for ten years' as the term implies, but laid down the dasturs or annual demand rates in cash per area unit. Each area unit was a different assessment circle and consisted of smaller circles of the same type of soil fertility. The price, crop, and revenue over the previous ten years was the principal basis for the new assessment.⁷⁶

In June 1588 the gaz-i Ilahi, or new yard for land measurement, consisting of forty-one digits (approximately 33 inches) was introduced. The gaz-i ilahi helped to standardize the land survey. Farmers were allowed the option of paying their land tax through various systems such as the kankut (a rough estimate of the produce

186

in a field), or crop sharing, called bata i', bhauli, or ghalla-bakhshi, but the state's share was calculated in cash before collection.⁷⁷

The system's success depended upon the efficiency, competence, and resourcefulness of the amalgazar or the pargana revenue collectors, who were obliged to act in a friendly fashion to the peasants. They were required to advance loans to needy farmers and recover them in easy instalments. The collectors were assisted by the village headmen, who received 21/2 per cent of the tax as remuneration after the realization of the full rental. The farmers were encouraged to pay their dues direct to the pargana treasury, however, and the collectors were warned not to depend on the headmen for the survey and assessment of land. The collection of the winter harvest (rabi') commenced on the day of the Hindu festival of Holi (in March), while that of the harvest of the rainy season (kharif) started from the Hindu Dasehra day (in October).

The collectors' main duty was to extend the areas of crop production by encouraging the cultivation of former waste-lands. If no unused land was left in a village, the farmers could be given any surplus in the neighbouring villages. The collectors were also required to encourage the planting of more valuable crops such as sugar-cane, oil-seed, spices, and poppies. They were responsible for supervising the land surveyors, assessors, and other revenue officials.

In the reign of Akbar's successors the revenue rates were revised from time to time, but the broad framework evolved under Akbar remained the same. The surviving revenue guidebooks compiled in Aurangzib's reign also urged the Mughal officers to be friendly towards the farmers and to reclaim any waste-land. In no case was more than one-half of the produce to be taken as land revenue. It was stressed that the survey papers, jama' schedules, and other revenue records had to be compiled carefully and punctually.

JUSTICE

As we have seen, the 'ulama' endeavoured to transform Islam into a religion of law, but, as custodians of justice, the rulers made the shari'a courts subservient to their sovereign power. Theoretically the rulers had to be obedient to the shari'a, and history has preserved cases where sovereigns unhesitatingly submitted to the qdzi's decision. However, as the supreme authority who appointed judges and ministers, the rulers sat in a court known as mazalim (complaints). According to Ibn Battuta, Muhammad bin Tughluq

187

heard complaints each Monday and Thursday. Barani says that Muhammad bin Tughluq founded a special court called diwan-i siydsat, presided over by tyrannical judges, in order to ruthlessly kill his Muslim opponents.⁷⁸ This is a gross misrepresentation of the Sultan's efforts to establish his system of justice on a broader basis.

From the thirteenth century onwards, an officer known as the amir-i dad presided over the secular court in the sultan's absence. He was also responsible for implementing the qazis' decisions and for drawing their attention to cases which, in his opinion, constituted miscarriages of justice.

The muftis were the experts on shari'a law and gave fatwas (formal legal rulings) on disputes referred to them by members of the public or by qazis. Their rulings were binding in matters of marriage, divorce, and inheritance, but other legal questions were either decided by the qazis or were left to the ruler's discretion. The chief judge of the sultanate was known as the qdzi-i mamalik, also known as the qaziu'l-quzat. Qazis were also appointed to the army and in the towns.

Discord could nevertheless erupt between the qazis and the sovereign, and after the rebellion in the eastern provinces in 1580 Akbar ordered a large number of qazis to be killed or exiled for inciting disaffection and revolt. For all that, many qazis were efficient and honest; Shaykh Mu'in (d. 1587), the qdzi of Lahore, was described by Mulla Bada'uni as 'an angel in human form'. His successor was Shi'i, Sayyid Nuru'llah Shustari (1549-1610), although Lahore was predominantly Sunni. Bada'uni, a Sunni fanatic himself, praised Shustari in glowing terms: 'In truth he has reduced the insolent muftis and crafty and subtle muhtasibs of Lahore, who ventured to give lessons to the teacher of the angels, to order, and has closed to them the avenues of bribery, and restrained them within due bounds as closely as a nut is enclosed in its shell, and to such a degree that stricter discipline could not be imagined.'⁷⁹

The counterpart of the secular judge (amir-i dad) of the Delhi sultans was the mir 'adl of the Mughals. He acted as a judge on the emperor's behalf. He was not allowed to depend solely on witnesses' oaths and testimony but was required to make impartial and diligent personal inquiries. The mir 'adl was also responsible for implementing the qazis' decisions. The Emperor Jahangir considered himself finally responsible for justice in his realm and sought to enhance the importance of the mazalim court.

Under the Mughals the qdzis continued as registrars of surety bonds, bail bonds, contracts, and title deeds. In 1591-2 Qazi Nuru'llah Shustari was appointed by Akbar to the commission

188

examining the maladministration of the revenue from Kashmir. He was also sent to Agra five years later to investigate the tenures of the madad-i ma'ash grants.⁸⁰

A growing acceptance of the qazis' authority in civil cases was manifested in the provinces and districts when provincial governors and local officers consulted them. The fundamental conflict of interests remained, however, and, according to the records surviving from Aurangzib's reign, disagreements between the qazis and the civil and military authorities were still frequent.

The size of the Mughal empire made it difficult to recruit talented and honest qdzis. Naturally in India these posts in the smaller towns became hereditary. During Aurangzib's reign the qazi of Jodhpur was an uneducated man. These qazis were forced to depend upon the local chiefs' recommendations and they usually advised them to base their decisions on local customs, which were sometimes contrary to the shari'a. Shah Nawaz Khan's remarks about the qazis in Aurangzib's reign are most revealing. He says:

Those who sell religion for worldliness (*din ba dunya*) regard this noble office as a very easy one and spend money in bribes (to obtain it), in order that by doing away with the rights of men they may extort a hundred times more. They regard *nikahana* (fees on marriages) and *mahrana* (fees on dowers) as more their due than their mother's milk. What shall be said of the hereditary qazis of the townships, for to be in touch with knowledge is the lot of their enemies [i.e. they are ignorant], and the registers of the *deshpandya* (village accountants) and the words of *zammdars* are their holy book and *shari'a*.⁸¹

In the *A'in-i Akbari*, Abu'l-Fazl does not discuss the appointments of the *muhtasibs* and *muftis*, and both continued as subordinate officers of the qazis. However, the *muhtasibs* became low-ranking officers under Akbar's administrative regulations, once their more important duties had been incorporated into the *kotwal's* jurisdiction. The *muhtasibs'* responsibilities had traditionally included the control of sale and purchase transactions in the bazaars, weights and measures, and genuineness of coins, and the suppression of prostitution and other immoral offences. Akbar's reduction of their status was not really an innovation, because the early Muslim administration also did not strictly separate the duties of the *muhtasib*, *qazi*, and chief of *shurta* (police).

In the second year of his reign (1659) Aurangzib enhanced the prestige of the *muhtasib's* department by appointing as chief *muhtasib* a distinguished scholar from Turan, I was Wajih. He was given a high salary and a high *mansab*, and lower-ranking *mansabdars* were

189

27. Char Minar in Hyderabad Deccan (p. 288)

28. The Qutb Minar in Delhi (pp. 278-9)

29. The temple pillars in the cloisters of the Quwwatu'l-Islam mosque near Qutb Minar (p. 278)

30. Qutb Minar, details of carvings (p. 279)

31. The tomb chamber in the Taj Mahal in Agra (p. 295)

32. The upper domes in the Birbal's house at Fathpur-Sikri (p. 293)

33. Atala Mosque, Jaunpur (p. 282)

34. The Buland Darwaza (Gate of Victory) (p. 292) in Fathpur-Sikri

35. Interior of Iltutmish's tomb, near Qutb Minar (p. 280)

36. Ala'i Darwaza, near the Qutb Minar (p. 280) 37. The Quwwatu'l-Islam Mosque screen, Delhi (p. 279)

38. Elaborately carved pillar in one of the chambers of Fathpur-Sikri (p. 292)

appointed to assist him. His jurisdiction encompassed the prevention of forbidden and unlawful deeds, particularly drinking intoxicating liquor, taking bhang (Indian hemp) and other drugs, and committing shameful acts such as adultery. Khan Khan comments that the muhtasibs were ordered to eradicate brothels, gambling houses, and idol worship. Their previous duties, such as supervising weights and measures and market rates (nirkh), were not returned to them until some years later. Subsequently, the enforcement of Sunni laws, the suppression of all Shi'I practices, and the introduction of moral reforms were also reincorporated into their duties, and in 1699 they were allotted the task of destroying Hindu temples.⁸²

Another senior position was that of the principal sadr or the sadru's sudur. He was the main link between the 'ulama' and the ruler, and the highest ambition of the 'ulama' class was to attain this rank. The sadru's sudur's importance was derived from his power to grant revenue-free subsistence land known as madad-i ma'ash, amlak, a'imma, or suyurghal. According to Abu'l-Fazl, the person appointed to the 'lofty position of sadr' should be wise and perspicacious, so that poor and deserving people might be introduced to the emperor in order to receive stipends and grants. The A in-i Akbari divides the recipients of those qualifying for madad-i ma'ash into four categories:

- (1) Dispassionate seekers after knowledge.
- (2) Ascetics.
- (3) The illiterate weak and poor.
- (4) Uneducated men of noble birth who could not earn their living as tradesmen or professionals.⁸³

Not all the members of this class were necessarily parasites, as some Marxist historians think. A considerable number of the madad-i ma'ash recipients ran seminaries and schools out of their grants. Many Mughal madad-i ma'ash documents show that a large number of these blocks of land had not been previously cultivated, although they were arable and they were not included in the jama'. In fact, the assignees performed a useful state service by extending cultivation and planting orchards, etc.

Even before Akbar's reign, madad-i ma'ash land had been granted to non-Muslims, but from his rule onwards grants to them were increasingly frequent. Some madad-i ma'ash recipients, however, occupied unauthorized land. Sher Shah considered it necessary to send his farmans (royal decrees) on madad-i ma'ash in a sealed bag. The village officials, upon receiving such an order, would first have the land to be granted to the recipients measured and then hand

190

over the farman to them. The Mughal emperors, possibly took similar precautions. The revenue authorities were ordered to make sure that the madad-i ma'dsh holder did not expel the peasants from their revenue-paying land. These grants were not hereditary. The sons were generally allowed to inherit, but the emperors reserved the right to review the case afresh and to make new

grants, which might be reduced. In 1690 Aurangzib made madad-i ma'dsh grants hereditary, but the farman insisted that since madad-i ma'dsh was an article of loan ('ariyat), not property, its inheritance was to be governed by imperial orders and not by the shari'a.

THE POLICE

The principal police officer in the cities was the kotwal. The term is of Hindi origin. Because the towns were enclosed by fortified walls and gates, their officers came to be known as the guardians of forts (kotpal or kotwal). Kotwals were not military officers but they worked in collaboration with the military commandant. Some kotwals in the thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries, such as Balban's kotwal Faku'd-Din and 'Ala u d-Din's kotwdl 'Ala'u'l-Mulk, played a major role in influencing events, but this was a result of their personal competence and character, not of their position.

During Akbar's reign the kotwals were ordered to compile a census of all towns and large villages, giving details of the inhabitants' professions and activities. The towns were divided into mohallas (quarters), and each was placed under a mit-i mohalla (officer of the mohalla). Spies obtained reports of daily events from the mir-i mohalla and forwarded them to their superiors. Information concerning the movements of both residents and visitors was also given to the kotwdl through the mir-i mohalla. The kotwdls controlled the bazaars, merchants, artisan guilds, brokers, prices, and weights and measures. They were required to ensure that no unauthorized imposts were levied in towns and were also responsible for supervising mints and the gold and silver content of coins. Their duties included eradicating unemployment and investigating the sources of income of those who spent money extravagantly. Prohibitions were also enforced through the kotwdls. They were responsible for recovering stolen property and had to make recompense themselves if they failed to catch the thieves. The growth in urbanization increased the area of roads over which they were responsible for safety.

Kotwals were also required to prevent unwilling widows from

191

being incinerated on their dead husband's funeral pyre. Another of their duties was to stop boys under twelve being circumcised. They had to expel religious impostors and charlatans and see that no oxen, buffaloes, horses, or camels were slaughtered. The kotwals were required to allot separate quarters to butchers, animal hunters, sweepers, and people who prepared dead bodies for cremation.⁸⁴ Many of these provisions seem to echo the practices of the ancient Hindu kingdoms, as reflected in such texts as the Arthasastra attributed to Kautilya. It is possible that Akbar was influenced to some extent by Hindu advisers.

THE PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION

The Delhi sultans divided their empire into small units. A province was known as wilqayaf or iqtim. The names of governors in Barani's history show that under 'Ala'u'd-Din's reign there were twelve provinces: (1) Multan and Siwistan, (2) Dipalpur and Lahore, (3) Gujarat, (4) Samaria

and Sunam, (5) Dhar and Ujjain, (6) Jha'in, (7) Chittor, (8) Chanderi and Iraj, (9) Bada'un and Kol, (10) Avadh, (11) Kara, (12) Bihar and Bengal. To facilitate the fiscal administration, these were subdivided into shiqqs or sarkdrs. In 1580 Akbar divided the empire into twelve subas (provinces): Kabul, Multan, Lahore, Delhi, Agra, Allahabad, Avadh, Bihar, Bengal, Ajmir, Malwa, and Gujarat. When Berar, Khandesh, and Ahmad-nagar were conquered, the number of subas increased to fifteen. Later, Kashmir and Qandahar were included in Kabul, Thatta or Sind in Multan, and Orissa in Bengal. Each suba was divided into a number of sarkdrs and each sarkdr into parganas. Parganas and sarkdrs had earlier formed the basis of Sher Shah's administration. Chittor, Jodhpur, Bikanir, and the autonomous Rajput chiefs' watanjdgirs were the sarkdrs of Ajmir province; Amber was a mere pargana of Ajmlr sarkdr in the province of the same name.

Qutbu'd-DIn Aybak's directives to a governor (wdK) show that the governor was responsible for the implementation of both the shart'a and the sultan's laws. He controlled the 'ulamd', the military commanders, and the civil servants. It was his duty to extend cultivation, reduce imposts where possible, guard highways and roads, and promote trade and commerce. Firuz Tughluq's instructions to the governor of Sind were similar.⁸⁵ The governors under the Delhi sultans were supreme executive officers; they were not responsible for the recruitment of army personnel and could not interfere with the judicial authorities. The sultans also appointed a

192

principal revenue administrator (sahib-i diwdn) called a khwaja. The khwaja maintained the revenue accounts and helped the sultan to settle the account.

The Mughal governor was called a sipahsalar (military commander), but the titles subadar and ndzim-i suba were also used. Very influential mansabddrs or princes were appointed as governors. All the provinces of the Deccan were generally placed under one governor, but in other areas not more than two contiguous provinces were combined thus.

The Mughal governors were the emperor's vicegerents. They commanded the provincial troops and were responsible for the maintenance of peace and prosperity in their provinces. Normally death sentences 'were passed only by the emperor, but a governor could impose capital punishment on rebels to suppress an uprising. The governors were required to distribute loans (taqawi) in order to increase cultivation and had to ensure that soldiers were not billeted in houses without their owner's consent. Akbar's farman peremptorily asked governors to prevent any interference in people's faith and creed. Governors were duty-bound to obtain intelligence reports from independent sources and to examine them thoroughly in order to arrive at a sound conclusion. The promotion of education and military skills were also the governor's responsibility.⁸⁶

From 1595 the imperial diwan began to appoint the provincial diwans himself, in order to make the provincial revenue administration subordinate to the centre. The provincial bakhshi recruited the local troops and maintained their descriptive rolls and salary records. He assisted the governors in conducting military expeditions against rebels. The provincial bakhshi issued certificates to the mansabdadrns confirming the fulfilment of their duties. There was also a provincial newswriter (waqi'a-nawis) who reported directly to the emperor important events in

the provinces, including the progress of the revenue collections. Another independent reporter called the sawanih nawis or khufiyanawis (secret reporter) also sent intelligence to the central government. An additional source of news was provided by the independent spies known as harkdras.

Both horsemen and dispatch runners transmitted news and reports expeditiously. Even under the Delhi sultans the human runner travelled faster than the horseman. According to Ibn Battuta, the horse-post, called ulaq, used royal horses stationed at four-mile intervals. The foot-post, which was called dawa, had three stations per mile. Ibn Battuta goes on to say:

The postal service of India is of two kinds. The horse-post, which they call

193

ulaq, consists of horses belonging to the Sultan (with relays) every four miles. The service of couriers on foot has within the space of each mile three relays, which they call dawa, the dawa being a third of a mile, and a mile itself is called by them kuruh. The manner of its organization is as follows. At every third of a mile there is an inhabited village, outside which there are three pavilions. In these sit men girded up ready to move off, each of whom has a rod two cubits long with copper bells at the top. When a courier leaves the town he takes the letter in the fingers of one hand and the rod with the bells in the other, and runs with all his might. The men in the pavilions, on hearing the sound of the bells, get ready to meet him and when he reaches them one of them takes the letter in his hand and passes on, running with all his might and shaking his rod until he reaches the next dawa, and so they continue until the letter reaches its destination. This post is quicker than the mounted post, and they often use it to transport fruits from Khurasan which are regarded as great luxuries in India; the couriers put them on (woven baskets like) plates and carry them with great speed to the Sultan. In the same way they transport the principal criminals; they place each man on a stretcher and run carrying the stretcher on their heads.⁸⁷

The speed of the foot-runners was equally surprising to Pelsaert. In his note he recorded the distance from one post to another as being much greater than Ibn Battuta said it was. He wrote:

The King's letters or farmans to the chief lords or princes are transmitted with incredible speed, because royal runners are posted in the villages 4 or 5 kos apart, taking their turns of duty throughout the day and night, and they take over a letter immediately on its arrival, run with it to the next village in a breath, and hand it over to another messenger. So the letter goes steadily on, and will travel 80 kos between night and day. Further the King has pigeons kept everywhere, to carry letters in time of need or great urgency. No doubt this is done at home [Holland], also in the case of sieges, but only for short distances, whereas this King possesses the largest area of all the kingdoms of the world.⁸⁸

The provincial sadrs, qazis, mir 'adls, and kotwals, although theoretically subordinate to the governor, were in direct contact with their superiors at the centre. The close system of checks and balances made the administration effective at all levels and kept the Mughals in power for more than two centuries.

DISTRICT ADMINISTRATION

The provinces were divided into districts both for revenue and for

194

general administration. For fiscal purposes the province was divided into sarkars, the latter being subdivided into parganas. Each pargana contained a number of villages and formed a territorial unit; groups of villages which had been combined for fiscal purposes only were known as mahals. The 'amil or karori, who was the head of the land administration for the parganas was chiefly responsible for collecting revenue and promoting agriculture.

Occasionally the same person acted both as diwan and amin, but the positions were generally kept separate. Shahjahan and his successors appointed amins in each mahal in order that all arable land should be cultivated. The amin's duties included the issue of lease deeds (patta) and obtaining deeds of acceptance (qabuliyat). He was also required to ensure that unauthorized cesses were not realized and that the 'amils and other officers did not act dishonestly. The qanungos' offices were hereditary, and they were responsible for keeping a record of the land belonging to the villages and parganas and the revenue assessments.

To facilitate civil administration, the provinces were also subdivided into units known as fawjdari. A fawjdar, during Akbar's reign, was responsible for a number of parganas but not usually an entire sarkar. The fawjdaris were composed of smaller units known as thanas, or military outposts. These were controlled by a thanadar, who had to maintain a specified number of sawars to support the administration. The emperor appointed the fawjdars himself, and they were controlled by the bakhshlu'l mamalik. The more senior thanadars were also nominated by the central government.

The fawjdars were very senior officials. They performed military, police, and judicial functions and also helped in revenue administration. They were required to deal with any rebellions by the zamindars, jagirdars, and 'amils, using as little force as possible. Initially they had to try persuasive methods but, if these failed, could resort to intimidation by putting on a display of strength in the hope that the rebels would surrender without any fighting. The next step was to use the infantry; the cavalry were used only in the event of continued rebellion. The fawjdars were also under orders to sever the rebels' communication lines before attacking their forts; this was looked upon as the last resort. Once the rebel camp was taken, the government due was first deducted, and the rest of the booty was distributed equally among the men.⁸⁹

The fawjdar was also apparently expected to maintain law and order on the roads, although this is not mentioned in the A'in-i Akbari. Originally an authority who helped the revenue officials, he was later associated directly with land revenue administration. In fact, the fawjdar had continually to exert military pressure on the

195

unruly zamindars in order to make them pay their taxes. Regarding the imposition of the imperial regulations the fawjdar had sole authority, but in cases concerning shari'a law he acted in collaboration with the qazis.

196

V SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC CONDITIONS

SOCIAL STRUCTURE

Muslim society in India was ridden by racial prejudices. Political and economic pressures kept the Qur'anic demands that all believers be treated as brothers at a low key. The gradual weakening of the shari'a influence on political institutions - in other words, the influence of din (faith) over dawla (political domain) — facilitated the assimilation of ancient Iranian political institutions and social customs into the body politic of Islam.

The Turks as a race were imbued with a sense of a divinely ordained mission. The historians under the Turkic dynasties preached that Allah had promised Abu Hanlfa in the Ka'ba at Mecca that, as long as the sword was in the hands of the Turks, the Hanafiyya doctrines would not die.¹ However, the Turks who made up the thirteenth-century governing class were not themselves a monolithic group. They belonged to different tribes, and tribal rivalries and jealousies were frequently manifested politically. They were also divided into slave and free-born classes. The free-born Khaljis played an important role in the Ghurid army and had conquered Bengal. Until the Khaljis ascended the throne, all the Delhi sultans had been either slave commanders or their descendants. Both the Khaljis and the Tughluqs, however, had acquired a large number of Turkic slaves. Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq had 20,000 Turkic slaves of whom 10,000 were eunuchs.²

By the time of the Lodis' the Turks were merged into the Indian Muslim professional and religious groups. On the other hand, many racial groups such as the Habshis and the Afghans retained their distinctive identity.

The Habshls were slaves from Ethiopia and the Horn of Africa and their descendants. They rose to prominence through their position as bodyguards. Queen Raziyya's favourite, Jamalu'd-Din Yaqut, was a Habshi slave. Even the much-travelled Ibn Battuta was struck by the prominence of the Habshls throughout India. Habshls, who had arrived by sea, obtained important positions in the local courts of both Gujarat and Bengal. They were also

197

successful in the Bengal army, where they played the role of king-makers.

In the Deccan, under the Bahmani sultans, the Habshis even acted as governors and as diwans. They forged alliances with the local Deccani Muslim groups in order to subvert the Turkic and Iranian factions, and in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries the kingdoms of Ahmadnagar and Bijapur were dominated by them. Their most prominent leader was Malik Ambar. They also controlled the Gujarat and the Deccan sultans' navies and were virtual masters on the Konkan coast. The Mughals too recruited Habshi slaves into their service; some served as kotwals, and a few acted as governors.

The Afghans, according to al-Biruni, lived in the western frontier mountains or the Sulayman ranges. A group of them living between Lamghan and Peshawar were subjugated by the Turkic leader Subuktigin. There were Afghans in both the Ghaznavid and Ghurid armies. Ulugh Khan (the future Emperor Balban) was the first ruler to make them prominent. In 1260 he recruited some 3,000 Afghans into his army, and they crushed the Mewati rebellion around Delhi. When Ulugh Khan became sultan, he placed the newly created military outposts near Delhi such as Patyali, Kampil, and Bhojpur under Afghan control, and in Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din's reign an Afghan, Ikhtiyaru'd-Din, was created a leading noble. Muhammad bin Tughluq appointed several Afghans as governors, although some of them rebelled against him later. Their influence increased under Firuz and his successor, and Gujarat, Malwa, the Deccan, Bihar, and Bengal became major centres of Afghan power. The Afghan, Lodi, and Sur kingdoms became a haven not only for Afghan military adventurers but also for their holy men and merchants. Akbar, however, was faced with several Afghan rebellions, but this did not affect his recognition of those leaders who remained loyal to him. Towards the end of his reign, a most promising young Afghan, Pir Khan or Piru, rose to prominence. Jahangir awarded him the title of Khan-i Jahan Lodi, and his influence over the Emperor increased the number of Afghans in Mughal service. Khan-i Jahan subsequently led a rebellion against Shahjahan, and the Emperor lost faith in Afghans. In the first half of Aurangzib's reign they did not gain prominent positions, although they had supported him loyally in the war of succession. The Deccan wars in the later half of Aurangzib's rule brought a number of Afghan leaders into the limelight, and eventually the Emperor became more favourable.

From the mid-thirteenth century the native Muslims emerged as the largest distinctive group of Muslims but they were debarred

198

from holding important positions, which were monopolized by the Turkic governing classes. Some of these Indian Muslims were descended from Arab or Turkic conquerors, their mothers being Islamicized Hindus. As early as 1253 their leader 'Imadu'd-Din Rayhan's rise to power not only showed his ability to unite Indian leaders but also lent his ability to obtain the support of the Turkic iqta'dars.

After his accession, Balban crushed both the Turkic and Indian factions, but under 'Ala'u'd-Din they again rose to power. In 1305 a Hindu who may have been Islamicized, Malik Na'ib, acted with outstanding courage whilst repelling the Mongol invaders 'All Beg and Tartaq. His bravery so impressed 'Ala'u'd-Din that he began to appoint more Indian Muslims to higher positions. The

Turkic monopoly of senior government positions was at last broken -initially by 'Ala'u'd-Din's favourite, Malik Kafur, and then by Qutu'd-Din Mubarak Shah's protege, Khusraw Khan Baradu.

Barani abused those members of the Muslim artisan groups such as the vintners, cooks, barbers, gardeners and their descendants whom Muhammad bin Tughluq had promoted to high positions. Nevertheless one cannot fail to marvel at the fact that this class produced such a large number of talented administrators.

The Mongol captives who had been converted to Islam, and settled down in Delhi and in other towns, married Indian Muslim or Hindu girls and after a generation or two became members of Indian Muslim society. Arab, Syrian, Egyptian, and Iranian migrants were also Indianized through marriage. On the western and eastern coasts, however, and in the Deccan they established their own separate settlements.

The military aristocracy of Babur and Humayun was also imbued with a sense of imperial mission but it was less united than its earlier thirteenth-century counterpart. Its members belonged to Iranian and Central Asian groups. Those who traced their origin from the areas north of the Oxus were known as Turanis; those whose ancestors had lived south of the Oxus were styled Iranis.

Babur kept his nobles under strict control, and they co-operated with him to found an empire. Humayun, however, although impelled by a high conception of monarchy, lacked the qualities of a leader and could not discipline his nobles and the members of the Timurid family. Their aim was purely mundane. They intended to retain their own freedom of action even if it meant conquering only small areas of Kabul under one of his relations, rather than governing a whole Indian province under Humayun. Their individualism cost Humayun his empire. They even thwarted his attempts to regain it by their disloyalty and intrigued with his

199

family and enemies during his wanderings in the Panjab and Sind.

In 1545 Humayun reconquered Kabul, but the nobles upon whom he could rely were few, and he twice lost Kabul again. Finally, in 1550, in an attempt to consolidate his authority before crushing his brother Kamran, he took political decisions in consultation with the leaders of various groups. When he reconquered India, Humayun had decided to divide his kingdom into several regions and to assign each of these to one of his nobles. It was planned to place an independent army at their disposal, while Humayun's personal cavalry would consist of only 12,000 horses.³ This was an admission of his failure to forward a centralized empire and was designed to conciliate his ambitious Timurid princes and nobles, but Humayun died before the scheme could be implemented. To cement his relations with the Afghans, like Babur, Humayun established matrimonial relations with the Afghan chiefs. In the early years of his reign Akbar perceived that neither Turani support nor that of the Iranis was sufficient to realize his ambitious schemes of conquest and the centralization of the empire. Indigenous support was indispensable. The Afghans were untrustworthy, although some of them had surrendered; Akbar's only alternative was to ally himself with the martial Rajput race. About this time also, a brahman,

Birbal, and a khattri, Todar Mal, entered the imperial service. Thereafter the door of Mughal service was opened to all Hindus. The introduction of the mansabdan system also changed the structure of the Mughal governing classes. The new mansabdars were appointed from a variety of classes and ethnic groups of both foreigners and Indians. Their mutual contacts and dependence on the Indian troopers had transformed them into a multicultural society, but the dominant groups were proud of their own social customs and prejudices. By the end of the sixteenth century class divisions among the Muslims became very pronounced. In his statistics on Muslim zemindars in different provinces, Abul-Fazl not only mentions the Afghans as a separate class but considers Sayyids, Shaykhs, and Shaykhzadas as castes such as Rajputs and brahmans.⁴

The conversion to Islam of Rajputs, Jats, and other tribal groups, even in areas predominantly Muslim such as western Panjab and eastern Bengal, was a slow process. Even today, families in the same tribal group have both Hindu and Muslim members. Islamic converts, according to shari'a law, must disown and renounce their earlier worship, cultural identity, and traditions. Although the new Muslims strictly followed shari'a religious practices, it proved impossible to sever social links with their Hindu families until many centuries later. Local customs, common

200

taboos regarding marriage and childbirth, and the rites for various stages of a child's progress also continued to be observed. Then, as now, the offering and distribution of food to bring merit to the soul of the dead were performed according to local traditions.

The women were generally blamed by the orthodox Indian Muslim men for their adherence to pre-Islamic customs, but the men themselves retained many Hindu traditions. Although widows were permitted to remarry under shari'a laws, this was taboo in accordance with local Hindu ideas.⁵ It soon became obvious that even those who recommended widow remarriage were not prepared to practise it themselves.⁶

WOMEN

Islamic society was polygamous, although there was a limit of four to the number of wives permitted at any time. It was so hard to satisfy the conditions for marrying more than one woman, however, that the Qur'an advised monogamy. There was no limit on the number of concubines. In his youth, Akbar, who at that time was completely under orthodox influence, is known to have exceeded the limit on wives. The 'ulama' in his court admitted that the same Qur'anic verse which stipulated four wives could also be interpreted to authorize nine or even eighteen. The consensus of the 'ulama' was that not more than four wives could be taken in nikah (permanent marriage), but under mut'a (marriage for a fixed temporary period) any number of women could be married. The controversy was prolonged. Summing up the conflicting opinions, the historian Bada'uni asserted that, although Imam Abu Hanifa and Imam Shafi' considered mut'a marriages unlawful, Imam Malik and the Shi'is accepted them as legal. However, a fatwa from a Maliki qazi permitting mut'a marriage was also valid for both the Hanafis and the Shafi'is. Akbar therefore dismissed the Hanafi qazi and replaced him with a Maliki qazi who subsequently legalized mut'a. Akbar's four wives were deemed wedded under nikah, and the rest

under mut'a.⁷ This was an exceptional case, for licentious men normally remained within the law by continuously divorcing one or two wives and then taking new ones. In later life Akbar prohibited polygamy, although the ordinance was ignored.

From the time of their earliest settlement, Muslims had married Hindu girls, although from the thirteenth century onwards many immigrants either came with their families or summoned them when they had settled down. The Muslims preferred girls from the

201

higher classes as wives. For example, when Khwaja Mu'inu'd-Din Chishti settled at Ajmir he took two wives, although he was then aged sixty-five. One of them was a Sayyid's daughter, and the other was a Hindu raja's daughter who had been seized during a raid on the Hindus by the local Muslim commander.⁸ Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji married Kamla Devi, the widow of Raja Karan of Gujarat, who had been taken captive after the Raja's defeat. 'Ala'u'd-Din's son, Khizr Khan, married Kamla Devi's daughter by Raja Karan, Deval Devi. During 'Ala'u'd-Din's reign, Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq, whom the Sultan had made governor of Dipalpur, had wished to marry his brother Rajab to one of the Raja of Dipalpur's daughters. Then, upon hearing of the beauty of Rana Mal Bhatti's daughter, he made the Rana's life unbearable until the girl was married to Rajab. Firuz Shah Tughluq was their son. During Muhammad bin Tughluq's reign, Firuz himself married the pretty sister of a Gujar, Saharan.

It is significant that the Shaykhzadas (descendants of the sufi leaders) married brahman girls. In the sixteenth century Miran Sadr-i Jahan and Shaykh 'Abdu'r-Rahim, who hailed from Avadh, married brahman wives whom they have obviously chosen themselves.⁹

Women played a significant historical role. Turkan Khatun, Raziya's mother, was the most prominent among Iltutmish's queens. Qazi Minhaj was deeply impressed by her munificence to the 'ulama', holy men, Sayyids, and Muslim ascetics. Raziya herself not only commanded the army against rebel iqtd'ddrs but was also a brilliant administrator. Her successors' mothers were arch-intriguers. Malika-i Jahan, Sultan Nasiru'd-Din's mother, was the principal instrument behind her son's rise to the throne. According to Barani, Jalalu'd-Din's wife paved the way for 'Ala'u'd-Din's accession by preventing her elder son from assuming his father's crown immediately after Jalalu'd-Din's assassination. Ibn Battuta was deeply impressed by the generosity to the sufis and 'ulama' of Makhduma-i Jahan, Muhammad bin Tughluq's mother.

The ladies of the Mughal palace were proficient in both horsemanship and social etiquette and were also often astute politicians and artists. Akbar's mother, Hamida Banu Begum, was a capable adviser to both her husband and her son. Indeed, Humayun owed much of his success at Shah Tahmasp's court in Iran to her astute diplomacy. Akbar's wife, Salima Sultana Begum, was also endowed with superb mental powers and natural ability. The woman writer Gulbadan Begum has been immortalized by her facile pen, while Nur Jahan's role as the power behind Jahangir's throne need not be repeated here. Mumtaz Mahal, Shahjahan's wife, was the

202

Emperor's leading counsellor, and after her death her place was taken by their daughter, Jahan Ara. Jahan Ara was also Dara Shukoh's principal supporter; but despite this, Aurangzib took her into his confidence after Shahjahan's death.

Father Monserrate reports that the imperial farmans (royal decrees) were sealed, eight days after they were received from the wazir, 'by one of the queens, in whose keeping is the royal signet ring and also the great seal of the realm'.¹⁰ The small signet ring (uzuk) was affixed to farmans granting senior appointments, titles, jagirs, and the payment of large sums of money. During Shahjahan's reign the uzuk was kept in Mumtaz Mahal's custody. On the queen's request it was handed over for some years to her father, Asaf Khan, the wakil. After Mumtaz Mahal's death it was controlled by her daughter, Jahan Ara.

The veiling of women was strictly observed by higher-class Muslim families, and the Hindus imitated the Muslim governing classes by keeping their women at home. Both Muslim and Hindu women travelled in closed litters. However, in Rajasthan the Rajput women merely covered their heads with a scarf. Females labouring on building sites and in the fields did not even cover their heads.

The birth of a son was deemed a blessing by both Hindus and Muslims; girls were unwelcome. Although the Rajputs took many wives, they considered girl babies a curse, and female infanticide was widespread. Both Muslims and Hindus married off their children at an early age without their consent. Dowries were essential for girls and were a great strain on a family. Many Muslims with several daughters were full of praise for sati (the Hindu custom of incinerating widows on their husbands' funeral pyres). However, others, like Ibn Battuta, were shocked to see the enthusiasm at these sati scenes. Akbar's ordinance forbidding the forcible burning of Hindu widows was not strictly obeyed.

SLAVERY

Slavery in Islam is a legacy from pre-Islamic traditions. Islam did not peremptorily abolish slavery but urged believers to treat slaves humbly and, where possible, to free them. Strict obedience to the Qur'anic injunctions would have led to the gradual demise of the system, but instead Islamic monarchic traditions strengthened it. The 'Abbasid Caliph al-Mu'tasim (833-42) had Turkic slaves brought from Transoxiana as his guards. Slaves soon comprised

203

the majority of the bodyguards for both the sultans and the caliphs. An intelligent newly bought slave was initially trained as a foot-soldier; a year later he was allowed to mount a horse with a plain saddle. In the fifth year of training he obtained a better saddle and a mace and in the seventh year was promoted to the position of tent commander. From there the doors of promotion were opened wide; talented slaves rose rapidly. They were often employed by the sultans, or their governors, in positions of trust in the royal household, such as keeper of the stables, wardrobes, or armoury, or bearers of the ceremonial parasol (chair). They were loyal to their original masters alone. Like any other chattel they could be inherited, sold, or given away,

and usually they felt no loyalty to their original master's family. Even though many leading military slaves had been freed, they often opposed their former master's children.

From the fourteenth century, Islamicized Hindu slaves rose to senior positions. Malik Kafur, Khusraw Khan Baradu, and Firuz Shah's wazir, Khan-i Jahan Maqbul, were all Islamicized slave leaders. Firuz also accepted young boys from the iqta's in lieu of their annual tax. Firuz kept 180,000 slaves. They were generally trained in Delhi and in the iqta's in various arts, crafts, and literary skills. Of the trained slaves, 12,000 became artisans, and 40,000 served the Sultan in the palace and imperial cavalcade. All the imperial karkhanas were manned by them. They were also sent to the provinces. According to 'Afif, their rise brought disaster to the Tughluqs. They ruthlessly slaughtered Firuz's sons and destroyed the dynasty.

Slaves also served as military commanders under the sultans of provincial dynasties and were a source of both strength and weakness to these different rulers. None of the important military commanders under the Mughals were slaves. Akbar employed a slave contingent called chelas, but they were only foot-soldiers.

The majority of slaves, both male and female, were employed in domestic and agricultural duties. They had in the main been taken captive in wars and raids against Hindu chiefs and were then sold in the local market.

We are told by Barani that in Mu'izzu'd-Din Kayqubad's reign slave boys and girls were specially trained in music, dancing, and the intricacies of wooing, courting, flirtation, love-making, and coquetry." They were also taught horse-riding, polo, and lance-throwing. The Sultan's death did not put an end to the demand for pretty and charming slave girls. The aristocrats bought them for their harems. According to Ibn Battuta, ordinary Indian captive girls were very cheap, and even the skilled ones were comparatively

204

inexpensive. The Masdlik al-absar also confirms this fact and adds that their price was normally very low. However, exceptionally pretty and talented Indian slave girls were sold at a very high price.¹²

The number of slaves in a nobleman's household was limitless. Tmadu'l-Mulk Rawat-i'Arz, the maternal grandfather of Amir Khusraw, who was not a particularly extravagant man, kept an enormous number. Some fifty to sixty of them prepared betel leaf for him and his visitors. Without slaves they could not maintain their grandiose establishments. Each Mughal mansabdar had to maintain an army of slaves. Two or three slaves were needed to look after each horse, and about eight of them pitched the tents in the fore-camp and rear; they also managed the kitchen and transport and worked as torch bearers and guards.

During famines both Hindu and Muslim families sold their children. This sparked off a controversy among the 'ulama', whose leaders did not approve of selling Muslim children into slavery. In 1562 Akbar abolished the practice of taking the wives and children of defeated rebels as captives,¹³ although rebellion itself was still of course strongly condemned. After Akbar's

death, however, this new law was apparently largely ignored. The Mughal economic documents do not, like those of earlier periods, mention the price of slaves; evidently the trade had declined. It was stepped up in east Bengal by the Arakan pirates, both Mag and European.

VILLAGES

Ibn Battuta states that there were 1,500 villages in Amroha, now a small town. Nizamu'd-Din Ahmad, who seems to have had access to Akbar's 1581 census records containing the number and occupation of the inhabitants of each village, is more realistic. He reports that Akbar's empire contained 120 large cities and 3,200 small towns (qasbas), each controlling one hundred to one thousand villages. According to another source, the total number of villages in Aurangzib's empire, excluding Bijapur and Hyderabad, was 401,567. Villages were in a state of flux, however. They were frequently deserted, and their land was then incorporated into neighbouring settlements. The population moved frequently between villages. Babur notices that 'In Hindustan hamlets and villages, towns indeed, are depopulated and set up in a moment! If the people of a large town, one inhabited for years even, flee from it,

205

they do it in such a way that not a sign or trace of them remains in a day, or a day and a half.'¹⁴

Villages were founded by both zamindars and madad-i ma'dsh holders. In northern India wandering tribes, Jats and Gujars were induced to settle in them. One such village was Shaykhupura near Delhi, founded by Shaykh Faridu'd-Din (d. 1579). He built a mosque and a khanqah (hospice); artisans and peasants from surrounding villages, attracted by the Shaykh's personality, moved to the new village. A group of Hindu Jats, previously habitual thieves, settled there and abandoned crime for agriculture. The village also developed into a rendezvous for homeless Afghans.¹⁵ New villages were founded by the Sayyids, brahmans, and high-caste Hindus. Some were inhabited by mixed castes, while others belonged exclusively to a particular group. Villages of lower castes were also founded in order to obtain cheap labour.

Such villages were no more than a cluster of huts with arable and waste-land, groves, and pastures. Their products were marketed in the neighbouring towns. They were an asset to the developing cities of the Delhi sultans and the Mughals. The peasants used buckets to irrigate their land, but Babur considered this laborious and filthy. He says:

At the well-edge they set up a fork of wood, having a roller adjusted between the forks, tie a rope to a large bucket, put the rope over the roller, and tie its other end to the bullock. One person must drive the bullock, another empty the bucket. Every time the bullock turns after having drawn the bucket out of the well that rope lies on the bullock-track, in pollution of urine and dung, before it descends again into the well.'¹⁵

Babur's description of Persian wheels, which he saw in Lahore and Dipalpur, is interesting:

They make two circles of ropes long enough to suit the depth of the well, fix strips of wood between them, and on these fasten pitchers. The ropes with the wood and attached pitchers are

put over the well-wheel. At one end of the wheel-axle a second wheel is fixed, and close (gosh) to it another on an upright axle. This last wheel the bullock turns; its teeth catch in the teeth of the second, and thus the wheel with the pitchers is turned. A trough is set where the water empties from the pitchers and from this the water is conveyed everywhere.¹⁶

Rivers, streams, and reservoirs were also an important source of water for irrigation. Firuz Shah constructed a double system of canals whose headwaters were drawn from the Jamuna and Satlaj. The Satlaj section joined the main stream at Karnal. The original

206

course of the Jamuna may be followed from its emergence in the outer ranges of the Himalayas, through the Chitang river to Hansi and Hisar.

Firuz Shah's Jamuna canal was repaired during Akbar's reign. In Shahjahan's time it was reopened from its mouth at Khizrabad, nearly 72 miles in length, to serve Delhi. It was known as the Nahr-i Bihisht (Channel of Heaven); its modern successor is the West Jamuna Canal. It always served to irrigate a considerable area of land.

The observations of foreign travellers, read in conjunction with the account of crops in the *Ain-i Akbari*, show that cereals, millets, pulses, oil-seeds, both the common and thick variety of sugar-cane, cotton, hemp, indigo, poppies, and betel were grown for sale to merchants from neighbouring towns and elsewhere. Vegetables were also cultivated. Bengal produced rice in such abundance that it was transported up the Ganges as far as Patna and exported by sea to Masulipatam and many other ports on the Coromandel coast. It was also exported to Sri Lanka and the Maldives. Bengal was equally rich in sugar-cane. It exported sugar to Golkonda and Karnatak, also to Arabia, Iraq, and Iran, through Mocha, Basra, and Bandar 'Abbas. Ajmir sugar-cane was perhaps the best in quality in the sixteenth century. In the seventeenth century sugar-cane cultivation spread to many places in Bihar and the region around Aurangabad.

Indigo was increasingly in demand in the sixteenth century. It was used for washing and dyeing cotton cloth. Towards the close of the century, the European woollen industry replaced woad with indigo. This resulted in a tremendous increase in indigo production in India, centred in Sarkhij (Gujarat) and Bayana (near Agra). Bayana indigo was made up in balls and was known as Lahori in the Aleppo market, because the caravans bringing it came from Lahore. Sarkhij indigo, formed into cakes, contained an admixture of sand, so that about 1.30 kilos of Sarkhij were equivalent to 0.90 kilos of Lahori. It was exported mainly through the Persian Gulf. Indigo from Sehwan (Sind) and Telingana (Deccan) was of better quality. By the beginning of the seventeenth century other north Indian towns had also grown into important indigo production centres.

At the end of Akbar's reign an imperial envoy returning from Bijapur brought a hookah to court. Jahangir prohibited the use of tobacco, and some addicts were severely punished, but smoking spread rapidly to all classes. Many puritanical 'ulama' wrote fatwas condemning tobacco, and heated debates were held between its supporters and opponents. The Muslims did not give it up; only the

Sikhs totally abandoned it in obedience to Guru Gobind, while the Jats became strongly addicted. Tobacco became a very valuable crop, extensively cultivated. Coffee was grown in Maharashtra. Tea was still unknown. Chilli was introduced by the Portuguese via Goa. Pan (betel leaf) was extensively grown. Saffron cultivation was confined to Kashmir. Both sweet and ordinary potatoes were introduced by the Portuguese. Babur had introduced many Central Asian fruits, and a variety of rare fruits were grown in the imperial gardens. The aristocracy also produced fruit, both for their own consumption and for sale.

In the villages white and brown sugar and indigo dyes were manufactured, and oil was extracted from oil-seeds. Cotton was also cleaned and carded there. After the fourteenth century Bengal villages became centres for the rearing of the mulberry silkworm.

Food grains were distributed by banjdras or wandering grain dealers. They bought grain in the villages and then transported it to the towns on their bullocks. In 'Ala'u'd-Din's reign, food grain was sold to the banjdras under government supervision immediately after the harvest. In other times the sale was free, although the army and townships depended upon the grain traders for their survival. The peasants were compelled to sell their produce, since they needed money to pay their taxes and to buy ornaments and clothes, while the evil of hoarding grain had always been condemned by the 'ulama'. A surviving farmdn from Aurangzib says that in Ahmadabad the local officers, seths (bankers), and desdis (headmen) were buying all the newly harvested grain, and only the rotting produce was left for the traders, although they had to pay the full price. The farmdn urged the diwdn to stop this illegal trade.

The peasants' scanty clothing, primitive straw huts, and poor belongings shocked European observers, who also vividly described the famines and droughts. Their comments in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries hold good even today. However, the occasional references to village life in contemporary Persian sources indicate that the villages were composed of both rich peasants and landless labourers. The rulers' fiscal policy considerably affected peasant life. For example, 'Afif says that Firuz Shah's policies made the villages exceedingly prosperous, and the peasants had accumulated large amounts of gold and silver. They even possessed many luxuries such as fine bed sheets, pretty cots, and other household items, while no woman was without ornaments.¹⁷ Possibly this affluence was confined to villages in the neighbourhood of Delhi and those benefiting from the new canal system. Nevertheless, most of the peasants owned the land they tilled on a hereditary basis. They could sell, transfer, or bequeath their land and, as long as

they paid their taxes, could not be evicted. Some of them had lived in the same village for many generations and owned their own bullocks and implements. They were known as the khudkdsht peasants or the 'resident cultivators'.

The brahmans zamindars and khudkdsht ordinarily did not put their own hands to the plough. They employed a group of farm-hands known as pahis who moved from village to village offering their services to the zamindars and the khudkasht peasants. Some pahis had their own

bullocks and ploughs; others used those belonging to the zamindars or khudkasht. Some lived in one village and worked in another. The pahis were in great demand for turning 'cultivable waste' into productive land. They were also given some land rights. The landless labourers who worked for wages were in the minority. The peasants would have been better off financially if then, as now, they had not wasted their savings on weddings, parties, and festivals.¹⁸

THE ZAMINDARS

The Muslim governing classes, religious aristocracy, and converts formed only a very small percentage of the Indian population, even by the end of the seventeenth century. The bulk consisted of Hindu peasants, labourers, tribal groups and their leaders, village chieftains, and indigenous rulers. After the establishment of the Delhi sultanate the village hereditary chieftains, known as ranas, rays, and rawats, paid tribute only at the point of a sword. Frequent military expeditions had also to be mounted to exact revenue from the chawdhris, khuts, and muqaddams. Muslim rule changed neither the Hindu class structure nor its social ethics.

From Akbar's reign onwards, all those who possessed rights superior to those of ordinary peasants were called zamindars. Although the term had been in use since the fourteenth century, under Akbar it was extended to include all classes of chiefs. The madad-i ma'ash holders, and the Turko-Afghan iqta' holders who had settled down in villages and small towns, also acquired zamindari rights. They had now become dependent for their livelihood, like the hereditary village headmen, upon receiving a share of the revenue paid by the peasants. From the seventeenth century a small section of Mughal mansabdars and cavalry troopers began to invest their savings in acquiring zamindari rights.

The zamindars might be divided into three categories:

(1) Chieftains who were the hereditary, autonomous rulers of

209

their territories and enjoyed practically sovereign power. Akbar made most of them mansabdars. Accordingly, in the second half of Aurangzib's reign, 15 per cent of the total number of the one thousand or more mansabdars belonged to the ruling chieftain houses. Their income as mansabdars was several times higher than the income from their ancestral territories. The Mughals converted the hereditary dominions of the autonomous chiefs into watan jagirs. These were usually inherited by the chiefs heirs, but the emperor had the right to 'recognize' a younger son or even a distant relation as successor. If the ancestral territory's assessed land tax fell short of the salary commensurate with the mansab rank granted to the chief, he was assigned jagir as salary elsewhere. This not only added to his income it also enhanced his prestige, making loyalty to the Mughal throne more rewarding than rebellion. On their part, the chieftains introduced the Mughal pattern of provincial government into their territories unless it clashed with their own interests. This contributed to the uniformity of rules and regulations throughout the empire.

(2) The primary zamindars held proprietary rights over agricultural as well as inhabited land. This included both the peasant proprietors, who themselves worked with the help of hired labour,

and the larger proprietors, who owned one or two villages. Their rights were hereditary but alienable. These terms were given to all those who undertook to extend cultivation or who qualified for the madad-i ma'ash grants. These rights could also be bought. The primary zamindars collected revenue from the peasants and deposited it with the appropriate authorities.

(3) The intermediary zamindars were the counterparts of the chawdhris, khuts, and muqaddams of the pre-Mughal period. They collected revenue from the primary zamindars and paid it to the jagirdars, chieftains, or the imperial treasury.¹⁹

The primary and intermediary zamindars were entitled to a share in the land's produce and other perquisites. They also taxed merchants and travellers. The zamindars helped the Mughal administration in various ways. The zamindar troops, according to Abu'l-Fazl, numbered more than 4,400,000 men.²⁰ They were never used in imperial battles but helped to maintain law and order in the country.

The zamindars either inherited or built fortresses to protect themselves from their rivals and from the high-handed government officials. In the more inaccessible areas where hills, ravines, or jungles formed natural obstacles, the zamindars were unruly and rebellious. The whole country was dotted with these areas, particularly in Katihar, Mewat, the Panjab, and the hills and jungles of

210

Bundelkhand and Bihar; and, close to the capital, Agra, to the north and west, lay the wild domain of the unruly Jats. These districts were known as mawas.

A dominant caste or class would usually own the zamindari rights over a single village or group of villages. Large regions were often controlled in this way by a particular caste group, mainly Hindus, and caste and clan interests increasingly dominated the zamindars' decisions. As Abu'l-Fazl reports: 'The custom of the majority of the zamindars of Hindustan is to leave the path of single-mindedness and to look to every side and to join anyone who is powerful or who is making an increasing stir.'²¹ The Mughals resorted to threats, intimidation, force, and rewards to control the zamindars. In an attempt to break the caste monopolies in certain areas, Aurangzib, by a mixture of force and economic temptations, converted the more obdurate zamindars to Islam.

The advent of Rajput nobles to the Mughal courts also increased the zamindars' confidence and loyalty. They became more cooperative, and those in peaceful areas were incorporated into the Mughal elite. However, the rebellious zamindars in the mawas were influenced only by the ability of the local Mughal officers to assert their authority.

In the peaceful areas many Hindu zamindars imitated Mughal manners, dress, and life-style. Some even read Persian poetry. The majority, however, preferred the local poets, who composed epics which exaggerated their petty exploits to read like the Mahabharata. The zamindars were represented as the defenders of dharma, whose wars were intended to fill the world with Hindu values of justice and righteousness. The zamindars also attempted to organize their

administration on the Mughal pattern, although from the second half of the seventeenth century the Jats, Bundelas, and Sikhs fought against Mughal rule.

TOWNS AND CITIES

Many of the larger villages, parganas, and thana headquarters were gradually transformed into towns, known as qasbas. Although they generally presented a village skyline, from the fourteenth century they were significant centres for various crafts and mercantile and commercial transactions. By the seventeenth century the members of the occupational caste groups, such as weavers, goldsmiths, carpenters, blacksmiths, dyers, potters, and shoemakers, had grown so large that in many towns they lived and worked in

211

separate streets. There were even different Muslim graveyards for the various classes and occupational castes, although theoretically Islam is classless.

Villages and qasbas in different regions by this time specialized in local products, which they exported to other parts of the country. Sind specialized in cotton textiles, silk, wooden articles, ivory bangles, and saltpetre; Kashmir was the centre of silk materials, paper, and woollen articles such as shawls, and blankets. The introduction of the Iranian vertical loom into Kashmir and elsewhere in the fourteenth century stepped up both the quality and quantity of carpet production. Gujarat excelled in the art of weaving gold and silk threads into brocade, velvet, gauze, needlework, and embroidery in a variety of textures and dyes. Medicinal products, jewellery, furniture, and weapons were also produced in Gujarat. The Panjab was a centre for cotton textiles, blankets, and paper. Delhi and the Agra region were known for their paper manufacture, glassware, and copper and brass utensils. Jaunpur was famous for cloth-weaving and wooden articles; Avdah produced saltpetre; Bihar was known for its glass vessels and wooden articles; and Bengal specialized in muslin, cotton textiles, and silk-weaving.

The secret of perfection in art and crafts resided in individuals and was never widely publicized. Master-craftsmen trained their apprentices from a very tender age but they did not teach them the more subtle aspects of their craft. Neither did they write books revealing the secrets of their perfection. These points were revealed by the master-craftsman only towards the end of his life and only to a favoured apprentice. Their secrets often died with them.

New towns were founded by the Delhi sultans, their noblemen, and the rulers of provincial dynasties. Delhi itself underwent many changes. Its earliest site was known as Indraprastha. Between the ninth and tenth centuries the Delhi of the former Rajput rulers developed near the town now known as Surajkund. Prithviraja's Delhi was near Anangpal's citadel, Lalkot, built in about 1052. In 1192 Qutbu'd-Din Ayyub built the Quwwatu'l-Islam mosque near the citadel and started to construct the adjoining minaret to call the faithful to prayer. It was also intended as a memorial to the eastern Turkic conquests. The first Muslim Delhi was formed when the area was fortified. Outside the fortification, south of Mihrauli village, Iltutmish dug a reservoir to collect rainwater for the use of the growing Delhi population. Ibn Battuta found this reservoir to be

about two miles long and one mile broad. On its west bank were steps and a stone pavilion. In its centre was a double-storeyed pavilion of dressed stone.

212

About the year 1289 Mu'izzu'd-Din Kayqubad built his palace at Kilokhri, then on the banks of the Jamuna. Although this did not develop into a city, all classes of people visited it daily, which made it very crowded. It was the village of Siri, built as a bulwark against the Mongol invasions by 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji, that became the second Delhi. It is now the modern village of Shahpur, and the remains of the Khalji palace described by Ibn Battuta have not survived. About two miles west of Siri, 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji constructed the famous Hawz-i Khass (Royal Reservoir). Along its sides there were forty pavilions surrounded by houses for male and female musicians, a most extensive bazaar, a Jami' mosque, and various minor mosques.²²

The most ambitious construction was Tughluqabad, built by Sultan Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq, some five miles to the east of the first city. The layout of the streets and houses and the remains of the citadel and a mosque indicate that it was designed as an extensive and fortified town. The Sultan's tomb, in an artificial lake, was connected by a fortified passage to the citadel. The lake water was held by embankments. Muhammad bin Tughluq built his fort 'Adilabad south-east of Tughluqabad and connected it with a causeway.

Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq fortified the suburbs outside the first Delhi and named it Jahanpanah. According to Ibn Battuta, its walls were twelve metres thick and contained rooms for night watchmen, granaries, and war equipment, including mangonels and other military machines.²³ The level of the lake within the walls was regulated by a sluice of seven spans decorated with subsidiary arches and towers. Firuz Shah Tughluq's Firuzabad was located near the citadel known as Firuz Shah Kotla. Near his palace complex and the mosque Firuz built a three-storey pyramidal structure in order to form a base for an Asokan column brought from near Ambala. During his reign Delhi covered an extensive area and contained an enormous population. Timur's invasion, however, destroyed its glory. The Sayyid sultans built Khizrabad and Mubarakabad on the Jamuna. Humayun left Dinpanah near Indraprastha unfinished. It was completed by Sher Shah, but only its northern gate, near Firuz Shah Kotla, and the southern gate opposite the citadel survive. In 1550 Islam Shah built Salimgarh. Delhi was revived by Shahjahan, who built his new fort, known as the Red Fort, near Salimgarh. Commenced in 1639, it was completed nine years later. In 1650 work on Delhi Jami' Masjid began. New monuments connecting the Jami' mosque and the shopping complex known as Chandni Chawk transformed Shahjahan's

213

New Delhi or Shahjahanabad into the most imposing capital in the East.

Both Muslim rulers and governors founded new towns at strategic centres. The ancient town of Manayach, between Avadh and Banaras, was destroyed by Mahmud of Ghazni in 1018. On its site Zafar Khan, one of 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji's commanders, founded Zafarabad. The planning of

Daulatabad, built by Muhammad bin Tughluq in 1327, is vividly described. Shaykh Mubarak told the author of *Masalik al-absar*.

When I left it six years ago it was not yet completed. And I do not think it is yet complete on account of the vast extent of the area of the city and hugeness of its buildings. The Sultan had divided it in such a wise that separate quarters were built for every class of people; a quarter for the troops, a quarter for the wazirs, a quarter for the secretaries, a quarter for the judges and the learned men, a quarter for the Shaykhs and faqirs and a quarter for merchants and handicraftsmen. In every quarter there were found, according to the needs of every class, mosques, minarets, bazaars, public baths, ovens for (baking) flour; so that the people of that quarter did not depend upon the other quarter for selling and buying and exchanging things and that each quarter was in the position of a separate self-contained city and not dependent on others for anything.²⁴

In 1359 Firuz Tughluq founded Jaunpur near Zafarabad, which later became the capital of the Jaunpur Sharqi dynasty. Besides Firuzabad, near Delhi, Firuz Shah Kotla, and Jaunpur, Firuz Shah built a large number of other cities.²⁵

Many of the independent sultans also created large numbers of new towns. Most noteworthy is Ahmadabad in Gujarat founded by Sultan Ahmad Shah I in 1411, which grew rapidly under both the Gujarat sultans and the Mughals. The sultans and their nobles chose blocks of land in the suburbs, known as puras, for their residences. There were 360 to 380 puras. In Akbar's time most of these had grown into separate villages. Further population spirals transformed them into independent towns.²⁶

In 1505 Sultan Bahlul Lodi rebuilt Agra. Babur added baths and gardens to it. The Lodls built many towns between Agra and their homeland in the north-west. Akbar made Agra his capital, added Fatpur-Sikri as a satellite town, and founded Allahabad near Prayga.

Many new towns were built by reconstructing old towns or important villages. They were designed to serve both strategic and commercial needs, and the leading government officials and merchants built stately houses in them. The thirteenth- and fourteenth-century aristocracy favoured three-storey mansions. For example,

214

Rawat-i 'Arz, Amir Khusraw's maternal grandfather, built a three-storeyed house near Delhi which included one of the fort's bastions. It contained spacious verandas and rooms, although near by were many small thatched houses and even some thatched mosques. Fires were frequent in the fortified areas because of congestion. By 1285 Rawat-i 'Arz's house had been reduced to ashes.²⁷ Even in Shahjahan's Delhi fires frequently consumed the houses inhabited by petty mansabdars and merchants. According to Bernier their houses were made only of clay. The walls were covered with a fine white lime, the thatched roofs supported by a layer of long, strong canes. The dwellings of the noblemen and leading mansabdars in Shahjahan's Delhi were scattered in every direction along the banks of the river and in the suburbs. They were airy and exposed to the breeze on all sides, especially to the northern winds. Bernier says:

A good house has its courtyards, gardens, trees, basins of water, small jets d'eau in the hall or at the entrance, and handsome subterraneous apartments which are furnished with large fans, and on account of their coolness are fit places for repose from noon until four or five o'clock, when the air becomes suffocatingly warm. Instead of these cellars many persons prefer Kas-kanays, that is, small and neat houses made of straw or odiferous roots placed commonly in the middle of a parterre, so near to a reservoir of water that the servants may easily moisten the outside by means of water brought in skins. They consider that a house, to be greatly admired, ought to be situated in the middle of a large flower-garden, and should have four large divan-apartments raised to the height of a man from the ground, and exposed to the four winds, so that the coolness may be felt from any quarter. Indeed no handsome dwelling is ever seen without terraces on which the family may sleep during the night. They always open into a large chamber into which the bedstead is easily moved, in case of rain, when thick clouds of dust arise, when the cold air is felt at break of day, or when it is found necessary to guard against those light but penetrating dews which frequently cause a numbness in the limbs and induce a species of paralysis.

The interior of a good house has the whole floor covered with a cotton mattress four inches in thickness, over which a fine white cloth is spread during the summer, and a silk carpet in the winter. At the most conspicuous side of the chamber are one or two mattresses with fine coverings quilted in the form of flowers and ornamented with delicate silk embroidery, interspersed with gold and silver. These are intended for the master of the house, or any person of quality who may happen to call. Each mattress has a large cushion of brocade to lean upon, and there are other cushions placed round the room, covered with brocade, velvet or flowered satin, for the rest of the company. Five or six feet from the floor, the sides of the room are full of niches, cut in a variety of shapes, tasteful

215

and well proportioned, in which are seen porcelain vases and flowerpots. The ceiling is gilt and painted, but without pictures of man or beast, such representations being forbidden by the religion of the country.²⁸

The Muslim aristocracy, in both the qasbas and the cities, was extravagant and prodigal, and the common Muslims imitated them. Childbirth, 'aqiqah (shaving of an infant's hair), circumcision, bismillah (a party when a child starts his education), weddings, and death ceremonies were ostentatiously celebrated. Public festivals, such as Shab-ibarat (the fifteenth night of the eighth month, Sha'ban), 'Idu'l-fitr (the feast of alms), on the first day of the tenth month, and 'Idu'l-azha (the feast when a lamb, cow, or camel was sacrificed), were also occasions of great extravagance. Any words advising restraint were deeply resented. For example, when Baba Farid's brother,²⁹ Shaykh Najibu'd-Din Mutawakkil, urged his patron to make better use of the money he intended to spend on his daughter's wedding, he was expelled from the house his patron had given him.³⁰

Like the Turani, Irani, and Indian Muslims, the Rajput aristocracy was lavish and prodigal. Only the Afghans were frugal. Manucci comments:

They are very avaricious and foolhardy. When they come to court they are well clad and well armed, caracoling on fine horses richly caparisoned, posing as persons of some consideration, and followed by several servants borrowed or hired for the day. On reaching their house they divest themselves of all this finery, and, tying a scanty cloth round their loins and wrapping a rag round their head, they take their seat on a mat, and live on quichire (khichri, i.e. rice and lentils) or badly cooked cow's flesh of low quality, which is very abundant in the Mogul country and very cheap. In this manner they put by money and grow into merchants.³¹

Naturally, as Barani says, from the very beginning of the thirteenth century the Delhi sultans' aristocracy could save nothing and was always in debt. The Multanis (Hindu merchants) and Sahs (Hindu money-lenders), who advanced loans to the nobles against drafts on their iqtd' revenue, grew exceedingly rich. Besides charging exorbitant rates of interest, the money-lenders also received gifts from the debt-ridden aristocracy, in order to keep them quiet.

The service conditions of the iqta'-dars and mansabdars increased their debts. They had to go to war at short notice, which involved raising large amounts of cash for salary advances to their soldiers, because they, like their masters, were always short of money. Even the horses were neglected, as Barani's biographical notice on

216

Rawat-i 'Arz suggests.³² Only the Hindu money-lenders came to their rescue. When 'Abdu'r Rahim Khan-i Khanan was ordered to seize Qandahar, Abu'l-Fazl wrote that he should take loans at the rate of 50 or 100 per cent in order to make every effort to seize the fort.³³ Akbar introduced the practice of lending money from the imperial treasury. He appointed a separate treasurer and a military officer to advance loans on interest. The system was given the honorific title of *musa'adat*. In the first year the loan could be returned without interest; in the second year the repayment total was increased by one-sixteenth; in the third year, by one-eighth; in the fourth, by one-fourth; from the fifth to the seventh, by one-half; from the eighth to the tenth year, by three-quarters; and from the tenth year onwards, double the original loan was charged.³⁴

Contemporary historical works do not give much information about the plight of the common people in Delhi or in other towns. It is only from the sufi literature that we learn that the population of rural labourers had migrated from the villages to Delhi in search of work. Petty grocers and merchants set up their thatched stalls wherever a suitable patch of vacant land was available. Only the influential and rich merchants owned warehouses, shops, and houses in the fashionable shopping streets or arcades. In the early centuries of the Turkic sultans' rule the iqta'-dars' vacant houses could be temporarily occupied by dignitaries known to them. Since they were not rented, however, they had to be vacated at short notice, and disputes between the parties concerned were common.

The poor, many of whom would otherwise have starved to death, received food from the almshouses (*langars*) which were scattered all over Delhi and other towns. The langars either were attached to the sufi khanqahs or had been founded by rich men hoping to obtain divine mercy or worldly fame. Low-caste Hindus who could eat food cooked by Muslims were also benefited by langars. Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya' claimed that the thought of the numbers of

starving people, forced to sleep in the corners of mosques and in the streets, made it difficult for him to swallow food.³⁵

EDUCATION

Both Hindu and Muslim children normally received their primary education at home. The Muslim aristocracy engaged male and female tutors for their boys and girls. These tutors lived in the aristocrats' houses and supervised their offspring. The children

217

belonging to other members of the family or family friends were also allowed to attend the lessons.

Higher education was available at the madrasas. These institutions were established by the sultans, their noblemen, and their more influential ladies. Their principal aim was to produce students for the 'uiamd' class who would qualify for the civii service and judiciary. Iltutmish founded the Nasiriyya College of Delhi in memory of his son, Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud. His daughter, Raziyya, appointed the historian Qazi Minhaj Siraj as its principal. The main endowments of the leading colleges were supervised by influential scholars; Minhaj Siraj was one. The Mu'izzi Madrasa, named after Sultan Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad bin Sam, near the congregational mosques (Jami' Masjid) and the cloth-merchants' market (Bazaar-i Bazazan) in Delhi, was a large mosque-like structure.³⁶

Subsequently the number of seminaries multiplied rapidly. In Muhammad bin Tughluq's reign they are said to have numbered 1,000 in Delhi alone, but this seems to be an exaggeration. The Firuz-Shahl Madrasa, founded by Sultan Firuz Shah on the southern bank of the Hawz-i Khass in Delhi, was an imposing structure. It consisted of a double-storeyed building in front, facing the Hawz-i Khass, and a single storey at the back. Its sweeping colonnades and square, domed halls were eloquently praised by the contemporary poet Mutahar of Kara.³⁷ Madrasas were also built, both by the sultans and by their nobles, so that the famous scholars who came to Delhi would have their own establishments. The cities and towns each had their seminaries, but those in the cities were staffed by more competent teachers. The grant of madad-i ma'ash land to scholars helped to increase the number of madrasas. The sufi khanqahs also served as institutions of higher training for their own disciples.

Although the early madrasas specialized in teaching fiqh, this involved a thorough study of hadis, Qur'anic exegesis, logic, kalam (dialectics), and Arabic literature. The Hidayah by Marghinani (d. 1196) and Usul-Bazudi by Bazudi (d. 1089) were the chief textbooks. The study of hadis gained momentum in India only during the fifteenth century. Philosophy was studied in India in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, but its full flowering was the result of Sultan Sikandar Lodi's patronage.

Books were rare. Scholars had either to transcribe them personally or to have them copied by professional scribes. Rich men could have books transcribed and illuminated with gold, and

sometimes illustrated. A personal library was indispensable for scholars, even poor ones. In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries it was an

218

uphill task for the poor scholars to procure correct copies of important works and even more difficult to find the money to pay for the paper and wages of the scribe. By the end of the sixteenth century bookshops had also set up, and the sale of undesirable books could now be banned. Experiments in printing in Arabic had been made in the West, and Jesuit missionaries in south India had begun to adopt Tamil and Malyalam script to printing; but other than this there was no printing in India.

Akbar compiled a code of education regulations, although they seem to have been ignored by the madrasas in his empire. They suggest drastic innovations in both teaching methods and syllabus, from the elementary to the highest stage. According to these regulations every boy should read books on morals, arithmetic, agriculture, measurement, geometry, astronomy, physiognomy, household matters, the rules of government, medicine, logic, mathematical and religious sciences, and history. When studying Sanskrit, students should learn the Vyakaran (grammar), Nyaya (logic, one of the six systems of Hindu philosophy), and Patanjali's Yoga-Sutra on yoga philosophy.

Abu'l-Fazl emptily claims that 'These regulations shed a new light on schooling and cast a bright light over madrasas' - Akbar's regulations in fact brought about no actual changes. The government in medieval times did not control the educational institutions. They were run by the 'ulama', who were not interested in Akbar's syllabus. However, the changes initiated by Hakim Fathu'llah Shirazi (d. 1589) and his disciples, who founded seminaries all over India, were far-reaching. Fathu'llah Shirazi was a philosopher, mathematician, and scientist. He combined these specialized subjects with a knowledge of hadis and fiqh. His system was developed by Mulla Nizamud-Din of Firangi Mahal Lucknow (d. 1748), who had been trained in the Fathullah's traditions. The Mulla's syllabus, known as the Dars-i Nizami, is still regarded in conservative Muslim circles as the best training for 'ulama'.³⁸ Its important feature is its combination of Greek philosophy with religious sciences.

The syllabus adopted by the medical practitioners was different. Starting with Arabic rhetoric, grammar, and philosophy, it laid great emphasis on Avicenna's Qanun fi't-tibb (Canon of Medicine) and Kitab al-Shifa' (Book of Healing).

By the end of Akbar's reign a special syllabus had been devised for accountants and secretaries. A letter written by a Hindu secretary, Chandrabhan Brahman, to his son gives a fair idea of the contemporary educational requirements. Their mastery over the syllabus included works on the history of Islam, particularly the

219

history of the Mongols and Timurids of Iran. The study of Persian ethico-political works in the syllabus was intended to acquaint students with the philosophy of Avicenna and Shaykh

Shihabu'd-Din Suhrawardi Maqtul (d. 1191) and his followers, known as Ishraqis (Masters of the Philosophy of Illumination). Persian poetry was prescribed for stylistic reasons. Siyaq (accountancy) is not included in Chandrabhan's list, but books on this subject were also written. The growing interest among all castes in this study is decried by Chandrabhan, claiming that any success in the secretary's profession depended upon a deep understanding of all departments of the Mughal administration.³⁹

Abu'l-Fazl advised the nobles to study the works of al-Ghazali, as well as historical and ethico-political works. However, he considered that, being practical people, they should prefer historical works to ethico-political and sufi literature.

INLAND TRADE

Inland trade increased in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries as a result of growing urbanization. The old trade and pilgrim routes were cleared of the encroaching jungle and opened up. An old road was reopened connecting Delhi with Daulatabad, Telingana, and Ma'bar. Postal stations were built along these new roads, and travellers were also allowed to stay there. In the fifteenth century the network of local roads radiating out from the provincial capitals increased considerably. Sher Shah built four roads from Sonargaon (near Dacca) via Agra and Delhi to the Indus; from Agra to Jodhpur and the fort of Chitor; from Agra to Burhanpur; and from Lahore to Multan. Trees were planted on both sides of these roads, Caravanserais with wells and surrounded by trees were established at four-mile intervals. They had separate food areas for Hindus and Muslims. They replaced the old postal stations and facilitated the rapid transmission of news. In Akbar's reign a network of roads like these covered the land. It was possible to travel with comparative ease between any two cities of the empire. According to a Central Asian history written in 1584, caravans arrived in Peshawar with goods from the Deccan, Gujarat, Multan, and other parts of India which were destined for Khurasan and Transoxiana. The routes from Lahore and Kabul and from Multan to Qandahar made Kabul the leading entrepot for trade with Iran and Central Asia. The vigilance of the Mughal governors and the payment of

220

pensions to the unruly Afghan tribal chiefs ensured that the Khaybar route was reasonably safe.

Merchandise from the Panjab was sent to markets in Kabul, Ghazni, Khurasan, and Central Asia. River-borne traffic from the Panjab connected the region with the Sind ports. Horn Burnford, an employee of the East India Company who travelled from Agra to Thatta in 1639, says that the white cloth woven in Panipat was sent to Sirhind or Lahore for sale. He also noted that the products from the famous calico town of Samana were directly exported to Isfahan and its adjacent markets by the Persian and Armenian merchants through Qandahar. He found Lahore 'the prime city of traffic in India', from whence 'all commodities of the adjacent places being brought hither and are brought by the Wonsbecks [Uzbeks] or Tartars and so transported by Cabull into those parts'.⁴⁰

In 1590-1 Akbar abolished a number of tolls and imposts on goods for urban consumption. Jahangir also removed many taxes on similar goods. More caravanserais were built both in the jagirs and khalisas, some of which subsequently developed into towns. The zamindars were responsible for safety on the roads and in return were allowed various privileges such as charging commission and tax. They were also granted revenue-free land (nankar or banth).

The river systems were more convenient for transporting goods, because the land routes were expensive and not always safe. The Indus river system connected the cities and villages of Kashmir, Panjab, and Sind, and the Jamuna-Ganges system ran through cities and villages from Delhi to Bengal. The Brahmaputra connected cities and villages in Assam. The responsibility for supplying boats for the army and for the transport of government goods fell on the local chieftains under the Delhi sultans and on the zamindars under the Mughals. They also supplied boats and escorts to ordinary merchants and travellers. In the sixteenth century inter-provincial land trade was accelerated mainly to avoid European control. The Malabaris sent their pepper overland to evade the Portuguese.

COASTAL TRADE

From ancient times Indian merchandise had been exported to the Persian Gulf and thence overland through Mesopotamia to the Mediterranean coast. Another sea route carried goods to the Red Sea ports, and then through Egypt to the Mediterranean. Merchandise

221

was distributed from there to Western Europe by Venetian and other Italian merchants. Wares from India and Sind for Iraq and Khurasan were dispatched via Hurmuz, to the east of the entrance to the Persian Gulf. Jadda and Aden, where a large colony of Indian merchants lived, were the main trading ports on the Red Sea route. The neighbouring port of Dhofar exported horses to India.

In India, Debal or Dewal in Sind was the main early Arab port, but by the end of the fifteenth century Lahri Bandar in lower Sind had gained predominance. The leading port of Gujarat was Cambay. Diu, with a good harbour, was also busy since it was free from the dangerous tides in the Gulf of Cambay. Surat on the left bank of the Tapti, and Rander, on its right, were other large ports in Gujarat. Ships sailed from Gujarati harbours to the Red Sea, Hurmuz, East Africa, and Malabar (now Kerala). Ibn Battuta's account shows that the Malabar coast was studded with harbours where small coastal boats anchored. According to him Calicut and Quilon were, as ports, the equal of Alexandria, the best he had seen in the world. Barbosa also gives a vivid picture of early sixteenth-century commerce.

Malabar was a half-way house between Sri Lanka, Malacca, and the Spice Islands on the one hand and the Persian Gulf, the Red Sea, and the ports of East Africa on the other. Arab and Persian merchants basked in the patronage of the local rajas. India exported spices, sandalwood, saffron, aromatics, indigo, wax, iron, sugar, rice, coconut, precious stones, coral, beads, drugs and seed pearls. Goods carried to India on the return voyage included Arabian horses, gold, silver, lead, quicksilver, coral, vermilion, rose-water, saffron, and opium. The Arab and Irani

merchants of Calicut visited the Persian Gulf and Red Sea ports annually. The Arab settlements on the African coast such as Zeila, Makdashau, Mombasa, and Kiwa promoted trade between Gujarat and East Africa. Ships carrying Indian cloth, beads, and spices brought back gold, ivory, and wax from Africa.

Malacca, situated in the straits between Sumatra and the Malay peninsula, was the most important international port in South-east Asia. Ships from Cambay, Rander, Calicut, Sri Lanka, Coroman-del, Bengal, and Thailand sailed to Malacca. Natives from Java, the adjacent islands, and Gujarat (both Muslims and Hindus) had Settled in Malacca. Gold from Sumatra, cloves from the Moluccas, White sandalwood from Timor, mace and nutmeg from Banda, camphor from Borneo, and aloe-wood from China were exchanged there for Cambay cloth, white cotton cloth from Bengal, incense, pepper, saffron, coral, quicksilver, and opium. Albuquerque wrote

222

that 'the Guzerates understand the navigation of those parts much more thoroughly than any other nations, on account of the great commerce they carry on in those places'.⁴¹ Next in importance was the port of Pegu. Burmese lac of a superior quality, cloves, musk, and rubies were imported in exchange for different varieties of cloth, drugs, coral, and vermilion. Silk, coloured taffetas, satin, blue and white porcelain, gold, silver, copper, iron, and quicksilver from China were bartered for Indian cloth, drugs, and other products.

Before the development of Malacca as a commercial centre, the Chinese had taken their ships as far as the entrance to the Red Sea and the head of the Persian Gulf but after the fourteenth century they rarely went as far as the Coromandel coast. Following the Chinese, the Indians also stopped at Malacca. This resulted in a rapid decline in Indian coastal enterprise.

The trade with Sri Lanka was in the hands of merchants from Coromandel, Malabar, Vijaya nagara, and Gujarat. Sri Lanka exported cinnamon and some precious stones, while India supplied it with foodstuffs and clothing.

Trade between Calicut and the Red Sea was dominated by the Arabs and Iranians, but Gujarati Muslims, Iranians, Turks, and Gujarati Hindus, known as vanias, handled the trade on other routes. The sailors were largely Muslims, although ships were owned by both Hindus and Muslims. Hurmuz and Aden were dominated by Muslims, but Malacca was controlled by Gujarati merchants.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries Muslim sailors and merchants were deeply devoted to the Iranian sufi saint Shaykh Abu Ishaq Gaziruni (d. 1035), who had become a sort of patron saint of seafarers. Ibn Battuta says:

This Shaykh Abu Ishaq is highly venerated by the people of India and China. Travellers on the Sea of China make a practice, when the wind turns against them and they fear pirates, of making vows to Abu Ishaq, and each one of them sets down in writing the obligation he has undertaken in his vow. Then when they come safely to land, the servitors of the hospice go on board the ship, take the inventory, and exact (the amount of) his vow from each person who has pledged

himself. There is not a ship that comes from China or India but has thousands of dinars in it (vowed to the saint), and the agents, on behalf of the intendant of the hospice, come to take delivery of that sum. The king of India (probably Muhammad bin Tughluq) once vowed ten thousand dinars to Shaykh Abu Ishaq, and when the news of this reached the poor brethren of the hospice, one of them came to India, took delivery of the money, and went back with it to the hospice.

223

The chain of Abu Ishaq's khanqahs started from Gazirun near the Persian Gulf and ended at Zaytun (Ts'wan-chow-fu), a port in China. The Gaziruni khanqahs in Calicut and Quilon collected the gifts promised to the Shaykh and also offered hospitality to guests. According to Ibn Battuta, the Gaziruni khanqah in Zaytun was situated outside the town and received sums of money from Merchants vowed in gratitude for their protection.⁴²

In the first quarter of the sixteenth century Portuguese naval dominance gave them sovereignty over the sea, which had until then been free to all. No Indian ship could sail to East Africa, China, Japan, or the Spice Islands without Portuguese permission. They had to obtain cartaz or passes for safe conduct and had to call at a Portuguese fort to pay duty on their cargo before proceeding to their destination. No ship was allowed to carry munitions, spices, pepper, iron, copper, or wood to the Turks and Ethiopian Muslims. The Portuguese fleet of warships prevented any violation of the artaz system and kept the local coastal powers under control. From the middle of the sixteenth century, the Portuguese made it compulsory for all merchant ships to travel in small convoys. They were escorted by Portuguese war-frigates and could not evade their control. Free cartaz were given to the Indian rulers, and even the Emperor Akbar obtained one from the Viceroy of Goa. The Portuguese had no territorial settlements in Surat but they ruled over Div and Daman, from where they controlled the convoys. The rise of Div undermined the flourishing trade of Cambay and gave a death-blow to Rander, the centre for Chinese and Far Eastern goods in Gujarat. Those merchants who did not live in Div had to pay duty both at their home Gujarat port and to the Portuguese at Div or Daman. However, pirates frequently challenged Portuguese supremacy, and sea voyages became very dangerous.⁴³

Portuguese sovereignty over the Indian Ocean was destroyed by the Dutch and English. In 1595 the first Dutch fleet rounded the Cape of Good Hope in defiance of the Portuguese. From 1596 various groups of Dutch merchants began trading with Sumatra and Java and the Dutch had fitted out as many as fifteen Voyages by 1601. In 1602 the merchants united to form the Dutch East India Company, which successfully defeated the Portuguese maritime force in Asia. Between 1638 and 1658 the Dutch expelled the Portuguese from Sri Lanka and they seized Malacca in 1641. In 1652 they obtained possession of the Cape of Good Hope.

The local rulers also had begun to attack the Portuguese. In 1632 the Mughal governor of Dacca dealt a crushing blow to Portuguese power at Hugli. The King of Arakan defeated both the Portuguese

224

and the half-caste pirates who had established themselves at Chittagong and had raided the coasts of Bengal and Arakan. Round about 1665 the Mughal governor swept the Portuguese out of Bengal.

Dutch traders entered Gujarat in 1601 and two years later appeared on the Coromandel coast. They opened a factory at Masulipatam, the principal seaport for Golkonda, in 1606. Four years later they established a factory at Pulicat, twenty miles north of Madras, where the weavers specialized in the type of clothes worn in the Spice Islands. In Gujarat the Surat factory, which had not been a success, improved rapidly between 1620 and 1629 under the management of Pieter van der Brocke. Thus the period between 1624 and 1660 saw a sharp rise in Dutch commercial success.

In 1600 Queen Elizabeth of England chartered the English East India Company to undertake trade with all countries, as well as with the Cape of Good Hope and India. Captain William Hawkins travelled to Agra in 1608, but the Jesuit missionaries in Jahangir's court frustrated his plans. Three years later Captain Middleton was permitted by the Mughal governor to trade from Swally near Surat. The Portuguese failure to defeat the English Captain Best led to the founding of an English factory at Surat in 1611. By 1616 the English had established factories at Ahmadabad, Burhanpur, Ajmir, and Agra.

Sir Thomas Roe, the ambassador from King James I to the Mughal court from 1615 to 1619, obtained farmans from the Emperor Jahangir and his son Prince Khurram, granting the English favourable terms. In 1616 the English established a factory at Masulipatam, and ten years later in Amrngaon, some distance north of Pulicat. Six years after that the English joined the Iranians in a successful attack on the Portuguese port of Hurmuz, and its trade was diverted to the port of Gombroo, called Bandar 'Abbas. The growing Mughal—Iranian conflict prompted both the English and Gujarati merchants to make Basra the trade centre for the region from the mid-seventeenth century. After 1623 the Dutch were also given a share in the Gulf trade. The English merchants made Thatta another centre for their trade, exporting goods from its port, Lahri Bandar, to the Persian Gulf and southwards along the coast to Gujarat and Goa. However, the Bengal trade was more profitable. In 1630 both the Dutch and English began trading from Pipli and Balasore.

As well as establishing new direct trade routes between India and Western Europe, Dutch and English merchants successfully modified aspects of the old-fashioned Indian commerce with other parts of Asia and the east coast of Africa. For example, the export of

225

silk to Japan was accelerated from 1653. From the Coromandel ports, the Dutch sent to Batavia a large variety of goods, such as iron and steel, sacks, leather, salt, and even roofing tiles, which were not readily obtainable in Java. They also bought slaves in Pulicat and Arakan for their families who had settled in the Spice Islands. Food grain also began to be exported from India, and the export of saltpetre was a new feature in Indian commerce; it was an essential constituent of the gunpowder of that period. This trade was initiated by the Dutch shortly after settling down on the Coromandel coast; a little later, Gujarat, Agra, the Konkan ports, and Patna also exported

saltpetre. In 1646 Prince Aurangzib, then viceroy of Gujarat, stopped the export of saltpetre on the grounds that the Europeans would use their gunpowder against Turkey.⁴⁴ After his transfer from Gujarat, however, the export was resumed. Because the Mughal artillery also used vast quantities of gunpowder, the export of saltpetre naturally declined.

The development of a European demand for Indian cloth goods, particularly Indian calico, increased with remarkable rapidity from 1619. Gujarat was unable to meet the orders, and the English factors began to buy calico in bulk from Patan, Avadh, Agra, and Samana. In 1640 some English merchants opened a factory in Lucknow to buy calico from Daryabad, east of Lucknow, and Khayrabad in the north. The export of yarn for European weavers also commenced. The European beet-sugar industry had not yet come into existence, and the principal sources of cane sugar were China and India in the East and Brazil and the Caribbean islands in the West.

These increased exports were paid for almost entirely in gold and silver. The only new feature — the import of copper from Japan into northern India — appears to represent not an increase in copper consumption but an attempt to make good the failure of some local sources.

European novelties, described by the English merchants as 'toys', were very popular with the Mughal aristocracy. European drinking glasses, platters for dainty sweets, a variety of looking-glasses, and paintings were much in demand.⁴⁵ The aristocracy took little interest in European mechanical inventions because of their aesthetic deficiencies. However, most interesting was the request by the East India Company's broker, Bhimji Parik, for a printing press, possibly to print his bills in order to save on the enormous quantity of 'papers and quills' that traditional commercial practices consumed. A printer was sent by the East India Company in 1671. Despite the considerable expense borne by Bhimji and the printer's efforts, they were nevertheless unsuccessful

226

'in contriving ways to cast the Banian (Gujarati) characters in the English manner'. The Surat council blamed the printer's lack of experience in casting, and it was suggested that a type-caster should be sent out at Bhimji's expense.⁴⁶ The plan seems to have petered out, for no further information on Parik's pioneering efforts at printing in India are available.

Western clocks could easily have been made in India, but since other means of knowing the time such as sun dials were easily available little interest was displayed in either using or manufacturing them. Western labour-saving devices were also considered irrelevant in a country with an abundant population.⁴⁷

COMMERCIAL PRACTICES

Even in the thirteenth century the Hindu merchants in Gujarat impressed the Muslims with their fair dealing. They quoted correct prices and did not bargain. The Lahore merchants, possibly Muslims, quoted double the correct price. This practice was so abhorrent to the Gujarati merchants that, according to Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya', they questioned how a city with such commercial practices could survive. Shortly afterwards, says the Shaykh, Lahore was

devastated by the Mongols. To the Shaykh, the Lahore merchants' malpractices were responsible for their town's destruction.⁴⁸

The ruler's dependence on the merchants for the import of overseas goods, particularly horses and slaves, had forced the Delhi sultans to allow them to act independently and in their own interests. For example, Lahore was invaded by the Mongols in 1241. It was inhabited by many merchants and traders who travelled to Khurasan and Turkistan in connection with their business. Because they had obtained passes from the Mongols they refused to help defend the city, and the Mongol invaders seized Lahore. When the city was liberated, no action was taken against these merchants because of their influence.⁴⁹

No organized Muslim merchant guilds or groups appear to have existed, but the leading business men were known as the maliku't-tujjar (merchant princes) and they exercised some influence over the rulers. According to Shaykh Nasru'd-Din Chiragh-i Dihli, the maliku't-tujjar Qazi Himidu'd-Din was Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din's favourite and could enter the Sultan's private apartments without notice.⁵⁰ It is not unlikely that Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji discussed his price control system with the maliku't-tujjar, but the belief

228

that the Sultan introduced this control for philanthropic reasons is naive. The leader of the Muslim merchants continued to be called the maliku't-tujjar until Mughal rule ended. For example, Hajji Zahid was the maliku't-tujjar until his death some time after 1664.

Even the Hindu merchants enjoyed considerable autonomy under the Delhi sultans and Mughal rule. The Hindu bankers and money-lenders called mulidnis and sahs (title indicating a privileged status) and mahajans freely indulged in usury. The sarraf moneychangers (Anglicized version: sharoff) monopolized all monetary transactions. Tavernier observes: 'In India a village must be very small if it has not a money-changer, whom they call sharoff, who acts as banker to make remittances of money and issues letters of exchange'.⁵¹ They issued bills of exchange called hundis and organized the insurance (bima) of goods. Muslim merchants do not seem to have become involved in usury and frequently made interest-free loans to the sufis, who did not receive their futuh (unsolicited gifts on which they depended for their livelihood) regularly.⁵² The bankers, on the other hand, made no exceptions, even for the Emperor Aurangzib. A news report in 1702 from Aurangzib's court shows that the Emperor requested the bankers of the imperial camp to advance him half a million rupees as an interest-free loan (qarz-i hasana). The bankers refused, declaring that if reports of such a loan reached the provinces the governors would also start demanding interest-free loans, and they would be ruined.⁵³

The European factory records give the exact amount of loan repayments and the interest charged by the bankers. English merchants generally financed their trade with loans raised in India. In 1646 the English had received 80,000 rupees in loans from Agra. By 1670 the English Company's debt in Surat was 200,000 rupees. The Dutch Company also took Indian loans, which amounted in 1639 to 800,000 rupees at the rate of 11/4 and 11/2 per cent per month.

Some Indian business men were very rich and influential. Virji Vohra, who frequently made loans to the English, was a Jain merchant who lent money to promote his 'commercial interest. He was a very well-known and powerful man, and in 1639 Shahjahan invited him to court to explain the Surat merchants' grievances against their governor. The English also recognized his unique position and requested the governor of Surat to issue passes for maritime trade only to those who were known to Virji Vohra in order to prevent the passes falling into pirate hands.

When Shahjahan's son Prince Murad rebelled in Gujarat after his father became sick, he asked the Surat merchants to lend him 10

228

million rupees. Virji Vohra and Hajji Zahid paid the amount as an interest-free loan on behalf of the Surat merchants and obtained a written bond from the mutsaddi (administrator) guaranteeing repayment.⁵⁵

When Shivaji invaded Surat in January 1664 he initially invited the Surat mutsaddi, Virji Vohra, Hajji Zahid, and Hajji Qasim to negotiate terms with him. When the merchants refused to pay the ransom for the town, Shivaji set it on fire and killed its inhabitants. He seized pearls, valuable jewels, rubies, emeralds, and an incredible amount of money, from Virji Vohra's house. Hajji Zahid's house was likewise ransacked.⁵⁶

In 1671 the sons of Virji Vohra and Hajji Zahid laid the Surat merchants' complaints about the administrator's extortions before Aurangzib's court. When they heard of the Emperor's proclamation inviting people to file any complaints they had against him, the sons of Virji and Hajji Zahid also petitioned the Emperor to repay the loan previously advanced to Prince Murad Bakhsh. The Emperor told them to prove their case. When they asked whether they should use the civil (diwdni) or shari'a procedures, the Emperor replied that both were admissible for redressing grievances. They proved their claim on the basis of a ruling from the Fatdwa al-'Almgliyya, which had recently been compiled. The imperial treasurer then reported that the sealed chest of money, which had been borrowed by the Prince, lay still unopened in the treasury. Before the Emperor could order its return, Hajji Zahid's son told him that they were interested only in proving their case and not in receiving any money. The chest and its contents were a humble gift to the Emperor from them. The Emperor was pleased, gave them robes of honour, and recalled the Surat mutsaddi.⁵¹ The story demonstrates both the wealth of the merchants and their influence at court.

Shantidas Jawhari, the leading Jain jeweller and banker in Ahmadabad, also had great influence at the Mughal court. He was a very devout Jain, and in 1629 Shahjahan granted land to the poshdlas (places for a Jain to stay when fulfilling a vow) built by Shantidas. He also built a very beautiful Jain temple near Ahmadabad. In 1654, however, Aurangzib, who was then governor of Gujarat, converted it into a mosque by building a mihrab (niche) for prayer in it. Shantidas complained to Shahjahan. Mulla 'Abdu'l-Hakim, the great scholar and philosopher, declared that Aurangzib had flagrantly violated the shari'a in usurping Shantidas's property. Consequently the mosque had no sanctity. Shahjahan ordered that a screen be erected in front of the mihrab and the temple be restored to Shantidas. The imperial farman also commanded that any

material taken from the temple be restored and compensation paid for any material lost.

In November 1656 Prince Murad Bakhsh, who was then governor of Gujarat, granted the village Palitana to Shantidas for the use of Jain pilgrims. Shahjahan confirmed the grant. Before leaving Ahmadabad, Murad borrowed 550,000 rupees from Shantidas and his family. On 30 January 1658 Murad reconfirmed the Palitana grant to Shantidas, who had followed him to his camp at Mathura. Two days later Murad issued another farman ordering the repayment of the loan from the Gujarat revenue. Aurangzib imprisoned Murad on 1 July. However, after his coronation in Delhi, Aurangzib issued two farmans dated August 1658. The first confirmed Murad's arrangements for repaying the loan; the second ordered Shantidas 'to conciliate all the merchants, mahajans and common inhabitants and general residents of the Ahmadabad region to his rule' and to urge them to carry on peacefully with their normal daily activities. He also ordered the regional officers to help Shantidas in his business. Aurangzib issued another farman in 1659 in favour of Shantidas's son, ordering the government officers in Gujarat to help him realize his outstanding debts. On 22 March 1660 the Emperor issued yet another farman acknowledging Shantidas's help in providing the army with provisions for its march during the war of succession. He also confirmed the grant of Palitana.⁵⁸

Brokers arranged for the supply of goods as middlemen between customers and small-scale producers. They also acted as clearing agents for their clients, paid customs duty, transported merchants' goods to warehouses, and arranged their sale. They obtained samples of cloth and other manufactured goods for their clients, paid advances to the manufacturers, and were helpful in many other ways. They controlled prices and the sale and purchase of commodities, exacting commission from both buyers and sellers. Barani called them profiteers and considered them responsible for rising prices. Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din effectively stopped their profiteering and seems to have obtained their co-operation in fixing prices in relation to production costs. Sultan Firuz abolished the tax which brokers were required to pay. In Akbar's reign the kotwals appointed and supervised the broker for each occupational group.

During the seventeenth century the brokers proved indispensable to the European merchants, who knew neither the language nor the local craftsmen and constantly demanded loans from the local bankers. According to Pelsaert, the Hindus were very clever brokers and were employed throughout the country, 'except for the

sale of horses, oxen, camels, elephants, or any living creatures, which they will not handle as the Moslems do'.⁵⁹ Tavernier says, 'The members of this caste are so subtle and skilful in trade that, as I have elsewhere said, they could give lessons to the most cunning Jews.'⁶⁰ Although there were Muslim and Parsi brokers, the Hindu brokers of the Vaishia class were preferred even by Muslim-merchants.

VI RELIGION

PHILOSOPHICAL MOVEMENTS

Islamic religious movements generally arose out of controversies about Allah's attributes and decrees and their impact on the universe. Such movements did not emphasize the dichotomy between the secular and religious or temporal and spiritual. Muhammad, unlike Christ, did not urge his followers to 'render unto Caesar the things that are Caesar's and to God the things that are God's'. Islamic religious and spiritual movements consequently have major political implications and repercussions. The founders of various religious movements sought state support to strengthen their ideologies, but this often recoiled upon the leaders' own heads.

It was in the wake of the battle of Siffin in June-July 657, between 'Ali and Mu'awiya, that a new movement, the 'ilm al-kalam (the science of defending orthodoxy by rational arguments), crystallized. One of the most important controversies within this movement concerned free will. One section, Jabriyya, denied man's freedom and claimed that human actions were subordinate to divine compulsion. Conversely another section, the Qadariyya, rejected predestination and believed that man produced his own actions; the word 'created' was never used. Their position was modified by the Mu'tazila, who founded the speculative dogmatics of Islam. According to them men are endowed with free will and are therefore rewarded for good deeds and punished for evil ones. God is aware of evil actions but He does not create them. He is just, neither desiring evil or ordaining it. His will and His commands are identical. The Mu'tazila recognize the divine attributes of knowledge, power, and speech but assert that they are not distinct from God's essence. They do not believe that there is an uncreated Word within God. 'Word of God' signifies that God gave the power of language to contingent beings so that He could communicate His law to man. The Qur'an, as the 'Word of God', according to the Mu'tazila refers to what God wants man to know.

The Mu'tazila were a pro-'Abbasid group but they were rejected by the 'Abbasid Caliph al-Mutawakkil (847-61). Several leading

232

Mu'tazila, who left the movement and founded their own schools, became pioneers of the defence of Sunni orthodoxy. The most prominent among them was Abu'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari (873-936), who attracted a large number of disciples. He opposed the Mu'tazila by asserting that God knows, sees, and speaks by His knowledge, sight, and speech, and that Qur'anic expressions such as 'God's hand and face' do not refer to corporeal attributes but denote His 'grace' and 'essence'. According to the Ash'arites, the Qur'an is the word of God, eternal and uncreated. Whereas the Mu'tazila rejected belief in the possibility of a human vision of God, because this implied that He is corporeal and limited, al-Ash'ari preached the reality of the beatific vision after death, although its nature cannot be explained. The Ash'arites believe that the same matter assumes different forms and that the world consists of atoms which are united, disconnected, and reunited again. Al-Ash'ari's contemporary, Abu Mansur al-Maturidi, also fostered the development of orthodox Sunnism although he differed from the Ash'arites on many significant points. To the Maturidis

predestination and free will stand side by side. Both systems flourished in India and provided the basis for orthodox Sunni intellectuals and kalam.

The 'Abbasid Caliph al-Ma'mun (813-33) set up an institution called the Baytu'l-hikma (House of Wisdom) where Greek scientific and philosophical literature of the late Hellenistic schools was translated into Arabic from Greek and Syriac. Some of the translators brought their conclusions into line with Islamic doctrines. Al-Kindi (c. 800-70), known as Faylsufu'l-'Arab (Philosopher of the Arabs), pioneered this strategy. Ar-Razi, known in Europe as Rhazes (d. 932) of Rayy (near Tehran), made original contributions to both philosophy and medicine. Al-Farabi (875-950), known as 'the second teacher' (Aristotle was the first), improved on al-Kindi's interpretations. His philosophy combined Aristotle and Plato's Republic and Laws with Neoplatonism. In the centre of Farabi's philosophy is the First Being or Absolute One, identified with Allah. Following Plato, Farabi identifies God with Absolute Good, while thinking and thought coincide in Being. Ibn Miskawayh's (d. 1030) Tahdhib al-akhlaq added a new dimension of deep ethical sensitivity to the understanding of Being. It was, however, Avicenna (Ibn Sina, 980-1037) who suggested that the entire knowledge of the physical world is subordinate to the knowledge of Being. He advocated an ontological distinction between essence (mahiya) or nature, and existence (wujud) or experience on the one hand, and a division between the necessary (wajib), the possible (mumkin), and the impossible (mumtani') on the other. Unity and existence are only accidents which may or may

233

not be added to essence for contingent humanity; but in the Necessary Being (Wajibu'l-Wujud) or God, essence and existence are inseparably united. The orthodox Islamic kalam preached that the world began at some point in time. They rejected the Greek system of the eternal heavens or any other order of reality which violated the notion of the transcendence of God. They believed that the entire creation is dependent upon the transcendence of the divine principle. Consequently the orthodox did not approve of the cosmological doctrines of Farabi and Avicenna, asserting that creation is the manifestation (ta'aqqul) by God of His own Essence. Ghazali (1058-1111) took both Farabi and Avicenna to task for advocating the eternity of the world and denying a specific act of creation. He contended that to state that earlier philosophers had believed that God was the maker or agent who created the world was to distort their philosophical writings. In fact, he claimed, according to the philosophers, God has no will or attributes, and whatever proceeds from Him is a necessary consequence of His nature. About a century later, Fakhru'd-Din Razi (1149-1209) carved out a new defence of Sunni Ash'arite doctrine. He neither totally rejected Greek philosophy nor, like Avicenna's peripatetic followers, adhered strictly to it. He wrote critical commentaries on Avicenna's best-known works, such as al-Isharat wa'l-tanbihat and the Qanun. Razi completely rejected the Muslim philosophers' theory that only unity can follow from unity, claiming that multiplicity is also possible.

The influence of Ghazali and Razi provided a firm basis for the Sunni intellectual system, but the generation following Razi depended mainly on the state for the defence of Sunni orthodoxy. The Sunnis expected the state to annihilate their opponents, particularly the philosophers. For example, Sayyid Nuru'd-Din Mubarak Ghazanawi (d. 1234-5), who was a highly respected scholar in Delhi, claimed that kings could not obtain salvation unless they banished philosophers

and stopped the teaching of philosophy.¹ According to Barani, if Avicenna, who had revived Greek philosophy and was the philosophical leader in Muslim countries, had fallen into the hands of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, his contemporary, the Sultan would have ordered him to be cut into pieces and his flesh given to vultures.² However, to Barani's utter disappointment, it proved impossible either to stop the study of philosophy or to bring about the expulsion of philosophers from India. The Qanun (Canon of Medicine) and the Kitab al-Shifa' (Book of Healing) by Avicenna were indispensable for physicians, whose numbers were rapidly increasing. The Kitdb al-Shifa' fascinated the Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq who was a great patron of philosophy.

234

According to Barani, it was the study of philosophy that had made Sultan Muhammad ruthless, stone-hearted, cruel, and irreligious; that study ought therefore to be taboo for rulers and their noblemen.³

In the fifteenth century Gujarat became the centre for Muslim intellectuals, the most prominent among whom was Abu'l-Fazl Gaziruni. Shaykh Abu'l-Fazl's father, Shaykh Mubarak, was Gaziruni's disciple and had studied the Kitdb al-Shifa' and al-Isharat wa'l-tanbihat under him. From Sultan Sikandar Lodi's reign the study of Avicenna's philosophy grew increasingly popular in Delhi. The pioneers in Delhi were Shaykh 'Abu'llah Tulambi (d. 1516) and Shaykh 'Azizu'llah Tulambi of Multan. When Shaykh Mubarak arrived in Agra in 1543 the study of philosophy and kalam was further increased. Abu'l-Fazl's mastery of philosophy and kalam enabled him to defeat the orthodox 'ulama' in the religious discussions at Akbar's court. The interest in philosophy and science was accelerated in northern India by Mir Fathu'llah Shirazi, who moved from 'Adil Shah's court in Bijapur to Akbar's court in 1582. Fathu'llah Shirazi remained at court until he died in 1589 while accompanying Akbar on his tour to Kashmir.

We learn from the Sunni puritan revivalist, the Mujaddid,⁴ that the philosophers at Akbar's court were inspired by Greek philosophy and by Persian translations of Sanskrit works by ancient Hindu sages. One of these philosophers was the famous Abu'l-Fazl, who referred to himself as 'the perfect and accomplished': al-fazilah wa'l-fazl. He claimed that the main aim of the institution of prophet hood was to promote knowledge and public welfare and to reform people's lives. Prophets were supposed to prevent strife, lawlessness, and licentiousness. They had nothing to do with ultimate salvation but were concerned merely with ethical regeneration and the promotion of the virtues contained in works of philosophy. According to him physical acts of worship did not affect salvation, since they did not influence the spiritual world. The Mujaddid wrote the Isbat al-Nubuwwa to strengthen the general belief in the prophets and to prove that Muhammad was the 'seal of the prophets'. In their defence the philosophers at Akbar's court asserted that they rejected neither the prophets nor Muhammad. They sought to emphasize the prophets' ethical mission and glossed over their miracles. Consequently the orthodox puritanical literature failed to undermine the study of philosophy. Both Jahangir and Shahjahan patronized philosophers. In Shahjahan's reign there flourished Mulla Mahmud Faruqi Jaunpuri (d. 1652), whose scholarship and learning had made a very deep impact even on Iranian philosophers. Prince Shah Shuja' and Shayista Khan

were his disciples. The *Shams al-bazigha*, by Mulla Mahmud, is an outstanding contribution to physics and metaphysics. It is even now an important text in the traditional Indian seminaries.

The most interesting philosopher in the courts of Shahjahan and Aurangzib was Danishmand Khan. He was a native of Yazd and entered Shahjahan's court in 1651. He resigned because of differences with Dara Shukoh, but Aurangzib re-employed him in the second year of his reign, awarded him a high *mansab*, and re-appointed him governor of Delhi. In consideration of his studious habits, Aurangzib exempted him 'from the ancient ceremony of repairing twice a day to the assembly, for the purpose of saluting the king'. Danishmand employed Dara Shukoh's principal Sanskrit scholar to explain Hindu philosophy to him. The French doctor Bernier taught him the medical discoveries of William Harvey (1578-1657) and Jean Pecquet (1622-74) and the philosophy of Pierre Gassendi (1592-1655) and Descartes (1596-1650).⁵ The *Dabistan-i Mazdhib*, the seventeenth-century encyclopaedia of religions, discusses the important and original philosophers of Shahjahan's reign in great length. They, however, drew mainly on Hindu and Islamic sources and were not interested in the Western philosophy which so fascinated Danishmand Khan.

SUFI MOVEMENTS

The philosophers' objective was to rationalize the nature of Necessary Being, while the *kalam* scholars were principally concerned to defend divine transcendence (God as above His creation and not one with it). Sufism, on the other hand, strove to achieve the inner realization of divine unity by arousing intuitive and spiritual faculties. Rejecting rational argument, the sufis plunged into contemplation and meditation. Some of them were overpowered by-ecstasy and frenzy, but sobriety was generally considered essential to sufism.

Such a system is bound to be studded with controversial judgements and marred by personal prejudices. We shall therefore follow the historical analysis of the eighteenth-century Indian scholar Shah Waliu'llah, who combined in himself both the sufi and *kalam* traditions. He contends, when outlining the history of sufism, that Islam is endowed with two aspects: the exoteric and esoteric. Islam's exoteric aspect is concerned with public good, while its esoteric one involves the purification of the heart through ethical regeneration. The Shah identifies the esoteric aspects with *ihsan*, the doctrine that Allah should be worshipped with the

certainty that either the worshipper is watching Allah or He is watching the worshipper. The holy men who were known as *awliyd'* Allah (protoges of God) or sufis upheld *ihsan*.

The Shah divides sufism into four epochs. The first began with the prophet Muhammad and his companions and extended until the time of Junayd of Baghdad (d. 910). The sufis of the first period devoted themselves to prayer, fasting, and *zikr* (invoking one of God's names). They were sometimes transported into spiritual ecstasy, but this was not considered necessary for spiritual life. The second epoch started during Junayd's time. Many sufis of the period lived in a state of

continued meditation and contemplation. This resulted in intuitive insights and intense spiritual experiences which could be expressed only symbolically or in unusual phrases. These sufis were so emotionally affected by sama' (religious music) that they swooned or tore their clothes in ecstasy. Their spiritual illumination enabled the sufis to see into people's hearts. To protect themselves from material desires or thoughts and from the devil's temptings, the sufis practised self-mortification. Many ate only grass and leaves, wore rags, and lived an isolated existence in the mountains and jungles.

From the advent of Shaykh Abu Sa'id bin Abu'l Khayr (d. 1049) and Shaykh Abu'l-Hasan Kharraqani (d. 1034), sufism entered upon its third stage. The emphasis among the sufi elite of this epoch was to live in a state of ecstasy which led to tawajjuh (spiritual telepathy), although many perfect sufis still followed earlier beliefs and practices. The sufis in tawajjuh overcame worldly constraints. The veils separating them from the divine dispersed, and they could see existence issuing from Being. In contemplating the union of temporal and eternal their individuality dissolved, and they even ignored their regular religious practices such as prayers and fasting.

The fourth epoch dates from just before the birth of Shaykh al-Akbar Muhiyu'd-Din Ibnu'l 'Arabi (1165-1240), when the sufis discovered the theory of the five stages of the descent from Wajibu'l-Wujud (Necessary Being). The first stage is Ahadiyya (Essence of the Primal One). The second stage is Wahdaniyya (Unity of God); the third descent is the sphere of Arwah (Sphere of Infinite Forms), the fourth is the sphere of Misal (Similitude or Angelic Forms), and the fifth the sphere of Ajsam (Bodies of the Physical World). The problems of the Wahdat al-Wujud lie in the perception of the steps of the descent of Being.⁶ The important question is whether these stages are really One or merely give this impression.

The Shah does not claim that the four historical epochs were

237

mutually exclusive. There was a considerable overlap; some of the sufis of the fourth epoch exhibited the characteristics found in the first. What is remarkable is that the contributions from the sufis of each epoch helped to make sufism a unique movement in the history of Islamic spiritual development.

The Shah says that sufism began with the Prophet Muhammad. Some of his companions, who led a retired life in the Medina mosque, given to poverty and self-mortification, are counted as sufi leaders. Among them were the Ethiopian Bilal, the Iranian Salman, Abu 'Ubaydah, 'Ammar bin Yasir, and Abu Dharr Ghifari. Although the first three successors to the Prophet are deeply respected by the sufis, 'Ali is regarded by them as their Shaykh (leader). Hasan Basri (642-728) is believed to be the link between 'Ali and the sufi sects. Hasan was both a Qadariyya and an ascetic. The word 'sufi' was not applied to the Prophet's companions, who were known as sahaba (companions), tabi'un (those who had seen one or more of the Prophet's associates), or tabatabi'un (those who had seen one or more of the tabi'un). The word 'sufi' — which is derived from suf meaning 'wool' - appeared before Hasan Basri's death, in reference to those ascetics who wore woollen garments in place of finer ones of silk or cotton as a mark of asceticism and

self-denial. Hasan Basri asserted: 'He who wears wool out of humility towards God increases the illumination of his insight and his heart, but he who wears it out of pride and arrogance will be thrust down to hell with the devil.'⁷ The greatest threat to sufism came from the impostors and charlatans who were innumerable even in the first century of Islam. In subsequent centuries their number became enormous.

Among the leading sufis of the first epoch was one of the greatest sufi women of all time. She was Rabi'a (d. 752) of Basra. Many famous sufis called on her in her lonely hermitage and even visited her when she had withdrawn into the wilderness. Her disinterested love of God added a major dimension to the sufi devotional attitudes.

Before the end of the first epoch, a sufi home, known as a *khanqah* (hospice), was built by a Christian dignitary in Ramla near Jerusalem. This enabled the sufis to share their ideas, but individual mystical experience is the true hallmark of sufism.

Towards the end of the first epoch, Bayazid or Abu Yazid Tayfur of Bistam in Iran (d. 874 or 877-8) became famous. According to Junayd, he occupied the highest rank among the sufis, as Gabriel did amongst the angels. He believed that he had shed his 'I' in mystical annihilation (*fand'*) 'as snakes their skin' and in that state of changed consciousness he shocked the orthodox by declaring:

238

'Glory be to me! How great is my majesty! Thy obedience to me is greater than my obedience to thee.'⁸ Some hagiologists suggest that Bayazid learnt the doctrine of *fana'* from his teacher, Abu 'All Sindi. From his surname it seems that the latter teacher came from Sind, and thus his ideas may have been influenced by Hindu or Buddhist mysticism. This very probable theory is supported by some Western scholars, although others reject it.⁹ The controversy is misplaced, however. Ancient Indian thought and mysticism were a source of continual interest to religious people of the eastern and central Iranian regions, and this knowledge naturally fused with Bayazid's expression of his own mystical experience.

Bayazid's utterance, in what is known as mystical intoxication (*sukr*), was matched by those of al-Hallaj. He was born at Tur in Fars in eastern Iran in 857-8. In 913 he was imprisoned after his theopathic cry, '*Ana'l-Haqq*' ('I am the Truth or God'). While in prison, Hallaj wrote his famous work on the case of Iblis, the Devil, *Ta Sin al-Azal*. Hallaj believed Iblis's monotheism had prevented him from prostrating before Adam. After nine years in prison Hallaj was cruelly tortured and hung on a gibbet. Junayd, who had supported Bayazid, repudiated his contemporary, Hallaj. Now entering its second epoch, sufism was divided into two groups: those who expressed themselves uninhibitedly (*sukr*) and those who restrained their expressions (*sahw*). The sufis of both schools believed that just as a raindrop is not annihilated in the ocean, although it ceases to exist individually, the sufi soul, in the unitive state, is indistinguishable from the universal divinity.

In the second epoch the sufis were better organized and were divided into sects according to the distinctive ideologies and practices evolved by their founders. Sufi literature on doctrine,

practice, and history was written in both poetry and prose. Sufi masters now began to send their disciples to distant lands to disseminate their teachings. This tendency increased in the third epoch. Many eminent sufis also moved to India.

Of these migrants, Shaykh Safiu'd-Din Gaziruni, the nephew of Shaykh Abu Ishaq Gaziruni, settled at Uch. It was apparently Mahmud of Ghazni's conquest of the Panjab that prompted many notable sufis to settle there. The sufi who left an indelible mark both on India and on the history of sufism was Abu'l-Hasan 'AH bin 'Usman al-Hujwiri, known as Data Ganj Baksh (Distributor of Unlimited Treasure). He seems to have reached Lahore in c. 1035 and died some time after 1089. His *Kashfu'l-mahjub*, in Persian, gives the biographies, thought, and practices of sufis from Prophet Muhammad's days to his own time.

The 'Awarifu'l-ma'arif by Shaykh Shihabu'd-Din Suhrawardi

239

(1234—5) was the second important sufi textbook on which the early Indian sufi doctrines and practices were based. Both works denounce those who believe that gnosis (spiritual knowledge) absolved sufis from the need to obey the shari'a. To them, shari'a (law), ma'rifa (gnosis), and haqiqa (reality) were interdependent. The achievement of particular states (hal) in sufism involved a changing psychological condition, while maqam (position in time and space) was relatively permanent. It was not essential that mystics lose all consciousness in a state of fana' (annihilation), since when the state of baqa' (abiding in God) was achieved a sufi regained his power of action. The section on sufi ethics and mystic ways of life in the 'Awarif is a marked improvement upon the corresponding discussion in Hujwiri's *Kashfu'l-mahjub*.

By the thirteenth century the division of sufis into fourteen orders or silsilas had already crystallized. The sufis of each silsila guarded their traditions strictly and urged their disciples to refrain from entering more than one order. Some of Shaykh Shihabu'd-Din's disciples migrated to India, but the real founder of the Suhrawar-diyya silsila was Shaykh Baha'u'd-Din Zakariyya. He was born at Kot Karor, near Multan, in about 1182-3. After completing his education he went on a pilgrimage to Mecca. Travelling through Jerusalem, he reached Baghdad and was initiated into the Suhra-wardiyya order by Shaykh Shihabu'd-Din, who appointed him his khalifa (deputy) in Multan, although it was already full of leading holy men and sufis. Baha'u'd-Din's scholarship and acute spiritual perception made a deep impact upon the people in Multan and neighbouring towns. It would seem that many merchants from Iraq and Iran admired him, and their gifts enabled him to build an enormous khanqah with granaries and stores. He did not mix with the common people, and the wandering dervishes, known as Qalandars, were not welcome in his khanqah. They were bitterly opposed to him. He invited Sultan Iltutmish to invade Multan and topple its ruler, Qabacha. After his annexation of Multan in 1228, Iltutmish appointed Baha'u'd-Din the Shaykhu'l-Islam (leader of the Muslim community). In his case this was not an administrative office, but it enhanced his prestige among the people. During the continued Mongol invasions of Multan the Shaykh raised public morale and once succeeded in negotiating peace between the invaders and the Muslim army, through the Muslim dignitaries serving with the Mongols. He died in 1262.¹⁰ His disciple and son-in-law, Shaykh Fakhru'd-Din Ibrahim 'Iraqi, was a born poet. At Qunya (Koniq in Turkey) he attended lectures given by Shaykh

Sadru'd-Din on the Fusus al hikam of Ibnu'l-'Arabi. Iraqi composed a treatise, called Lam'at (Flashes). This work constitutes a very

240

impressive commentary on the Unity of Being (Wahdat al-Wujud) around which the ideologies of the fourth epoch of sufism revolve. Before his death 'Iraqi sent a copy of his Lam'at to Baha'u'd-Din's son and successor, Shaykh Sadru'd-Din 'Arif. Shaykh 'Arif's disciple, Amir Husayn, the author of Zadu'l-musafirin, wrote several works comprising thoughtful commentaries on the doctrine of Wahdat al-WujQd.

Shaykh 'Arif's son, Shaykh Ruknu'd-Din, was highly respected by the Delhi sultans from 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji to Muhammad bin Tughluq; his fame spread as far as Alexandria, and Ibn Battuta was advised to call on him. According to Shaykh Ruknu'd-Din the leaders of the sufi community should possess three attributes. Property was essential in order that the sufi leaders could satisfy the Qalandars' demands for sherbet. Otherwise the disappointed Qalandars would commit the sin of abusing their sufi leaders and would be punished on resurrection day. Knowledge was the second requirement for a leader so that he could discuss scholarly questions with the 'ulama'. Hal (mystical enlightenment) was also necessary, or else the leaders would not be able to impress other sufis.¹¹ Shaykh Ruknu'd-Din died in 1334-5. After his death the Suhrawardiyya silsila declined in Multan, but the order became very popular in other provinces and spread from Uch to Gujarat, the Panjab, Kashmir, and even Delhi. It was revitalized by the sufi Sayyid Jalalu'd-Din Bukhari, popularly known as Makhdum-i Jahaniyan (Lord of the World's People). So widely travelled was he that he was called Jahangasht (World Traveller). During Firuz's reign he lived in Uch but frequently visited Delhi. He was an ardent puritan and strongly objected to the Hindu accretions to Muslim social and religious practices - for example, the celebration of the Shab-i barat festival which is held in the evening of the middle of Sha'ban, the eighth month in the Muslim calendar, when fireworks are let off and lighted lamps are placed on the newly whitewashed graves, in obvious imitation of the Hindu Diwali. Only in India, he commented, was there such a blatant disregard of the shari'a, for such customs were not found in Ghazni, Iran, or Arabia.¹²

Qutb-i 'Alam (d. 1553), a grandson of Makhdum-i Jahaniyan, settled near Ahmadabad, the new capital of Gujarat founded by Sultan Ahmad (1411-42). His son, Sayyid Muhammad, known as Shah Mahjhan, was also very famous. He was given the title Shah-i 'Alam (King of the Universe). Many leading Gujarati noblemen were among his disciples. One of them collected from his iqta' only those taxes sanctioned by the shari'a. Consequently all the peasants wished to move there, and his iqta' grew very prosperous.¹³

241

In the fourteenth century a collateral line of the Suhrawardiyyas, known as the Firdawsiyya, emerged. The outstanding sufi of this order was Shaykh Sharafu'd-Din Ahmad Yaha Munyari, whose ancestors had settled in Bihar in the early thirteenth century. He practised arduous ascetic exercises in the forests. Throughout the reigns of both Muhammad bin Tughluq and Firuz Tughluq, Shaykh Sharafu'd-Din's khdnqah in Munayr was the rendezvous for many seeking a

spiritual life. The Shaykh's letters to his disciples, which have been compiled in several volumes, exhibit his real talent as a teacher. The Shaykh was deeply disappointed in Sultan Firuz, who had mercilessly executed his friends and fellow-sufis, such as Shaykh Izz Kaku'i and Shaykh Ahmad Bihari, at the instigation of the bigoted 'ulama'. Shaykh Sharafu'd-Din expressed surprise that a town in which such killings were tolerated still remained standing and had escaped destruction at God's hands. The Shaykh was saved from execution by the intervention of Makhdum Jahaniyan. The sufi hagiologists ascribe the destruction of Delhi during Timur's invasion to the execution of two sufis there.¹⁴

The Shaykh believed in the Wahdat al-Wujud and drew heavily on the ideas of the exponents of this ideology such as the Persian poets Faridu'd-Din 'Attar (d. 1220), 'Iraqi, and Jalalu'd-Din Rumi (d. 1273). Shaykh Sharafu'd-Din died in 1381. His spiritual descendants were also influential, and their surviving letters epitomize the Firdawsiyya devotion to the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrine.

The fifteenth- and sixteenth-century Suhrawardiyya Delhi centres owed their reputation to the scholarship and impressive personality of Shaykh Sama'u'd-Din, who died in 1496. His disciple, known by his nom de plume Jamali, was an eminent poet who travelled throughout the Islamic world. Sultan Sikandar Lodi admired Jamall greatly, but after Babur's conquest Jamall wrote a panegyric to the new ruler. Later Jamall accompanied Humayun on his expedition to Gujarat, dying there in 1536. Of Jamali's two sons, Shaykh 'Abdu'l Hayy (d. 1551-2) was a member of Sher Shah's court, but his elder son, Shaykh Gada'i, remained loyal to the Emperor Humayun and his prime minister, Bayram Khan. After Akbar's restoration, Bayram Khan repaid Gada'i's services to the Mughal cause by appointing him the Sadru's-Sudur. Gada'i revoked the innumerable madad-i m'ash grants recklessly given by Sher Shah and the Lodis to the Afghan 'ulama' and dignitaries, so naturally the dispossessed Sunni orthodoxy turned against him. After Bayram's fall from power in 1560 Gada'i retired into obscurity and died in 1569 or a year later.¹⁶ The rise of new silsilas with influential friends at court undermined the Suhrawardiyya

242

silsila. Of the old silsilas, only the Chishtiyyas, who had never depended on court patronage, retained their popularity.

The Chishtiyya silsila is essentially an Indian one. The branches which were developed in Chisht or Khwaja Chisht about sixty miles east of Hirat have not survived. In India the Chishtiyya silsila was founded by Khwaja Mu'innu'd-Din. Unfortunately for us the records of his early career are legendary and arose from apocryphal literature written in the names of famous sufis. He was born in Sijistan (Sistan) in about 1142 and was educated at leading intellectual centres in eastern Iran. After travelling through many parts of the Islamic East, the Khwaja reached Lahore and arrived in Delhi after Sultan Mu'izzu'd-Din's death in 1206. He eventually settled in Ajmir. The stories of his encounter with Prithviraja's yogis, telling how the Khwaja's slippers brought a flying yogi down to the ground, are among the stock-in-trade of sufi legends. The surviving sayings of the Khwaja show that his life's mission was to inculcate piety, humility, and devotion to God. According to him those who know God avoid unduly mixing with other people and keep silent on matters relating to divine knowledge. Some of his sayings are no different from those of

Abu Yazid, the ninth-century sufi known for his ecstatic utterances. For example, he says: 'Like a snake we cast off our slough and look attentively. We did not find any distinction between lover, beloved and love. In the realm of divine unity they are identical.' He also comments: 'For years I used to go around the Ka'ba; now the Ka'ba goes around me.'¹⁷

Khwaja Mu'inu'd-Din died in 1236 at Ajmir. His tomb was at first tended by the sultans of Malwa, but from Akbar's reign it came under state management. The Mughal emperors' devotion to the Khwaja's tomb and their frequent visits for both political and spiritual reasons made Ajmir the leading Muslim pilgrim centre in India.

The Khwaja's young disciple, Shaykh Hamidu'd-Din, made Nagaur (Rajasthan), containing a predominantly Hindu population, the chief Chishtiyya centre. His father, Ahmad, had migrated from Lahore to Delhi, where Hamidu' d-Din was born after its conquest in 1192 by Mu'izzu'd-Din. Shaykh Hamidu'd-Din had in Nagaur a small plot of land which he worked himself. He and his wife lived in a hut and supported themselves on the produce of the land. He refused to accept gifts of either land or money from the rulers, although he had barely enough to keep body and soul together. A Muslim merchant took his letters to the Suhrawardiyya leader Shaykh Baha'u'd-Din in Multan. Baha'u'd-Din was wealthy, but his justifications of his affluence did not convince Hamidu'd-Din. Both stuck to their own principles; Baha'u'd-Din

243

lived prosperously, while Hamidu'd-Din chose to remain poor. Shaykh Hamidu'd-Din died in November 1274 and was succeeded by his grandson, Shaykh Faridu'd-Din Mahmud.¹⁸ Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq was deeply devoted to Shaykh Farid's family and married his daughter to Shaykh Farid's grandson. One of Shaykh Farid's disciples, Khwaja Ziya'u'd-Din Nakhshabi (d. 1350-1), was a famous scholar. He translated Chintamani Bhatta's Suka-saptati into Persian from Sanskrit and gave it the title Tuti-ndma (Stories from a Parrot). He also translated the Rati-rahasya (Mysteries of Passion) of Kokapandita, containing a classification of female physical types, into Persian poetry. To Nakhshabi, Islam was the religion of moderation, which trod a middle path between asceticism and extravagance.¹⁹ The Chishtiyyas' work in Delhi was organized by Khwaja Qutbu'd-Din Bakhtiyar Kaki, the most important disciple of Khwaja Mu'inu'd-Din. Khwaja Qutbu'd-Din had arrived in Delhi some time after 1221. The Emperor Iltutmish was deeply devoted to the Khwaja, but the sufis' indulgence in sama' (audition; sufi music and dancing) to arouse mystical ecstasy caused trouble with the 'ulama', who were hostile to the sufis in general and to sama' in particular. However, the Shaykh's towering personality popularized sama'. In 1235 he died in a state of ecstasy aroused by a verse in samd'²⁰

Of the Khwaja's disciples, Shaykh Faridu'd-Din, or Baba Farid, was very celebrated. The Shaykh's father was a scholar, but it was his mother, an exceedingly pious lady who spent her nightly vigils in lengthy prayers, who exerted the greatest influence on the future sufi saint. Baba Farid, however, decided to leave Delhi when his fame became an obstacle to his prayers and he finally settled at Ajodhan. In Ajodhan he built his jama 'at-khana - a thatched hall for communal living, with a separate cell for his own meditations. It had no furniture, and everyone slept on the floor. On special occasions a cot was provided for distinguished visitors. Among his few possessions Baba Farid had a small rug which, he used by night as a blanket but which barely

covered him. Khwaja Qutbu'd-Din's wooden staff lay behind his head as a pillow. His food consisted of wild fruit and millet bread. Abstaining from nourishment during the day, in the evening he broke his fast by taking sherbet, often mixed with dried grapes. After prayers, two pieces of bread smeared with ghi (clarified butter) were given to him. One he gave away to his visitors, the other he ate himself, sharing it with his favourite disciples. Because his jama 'at-khana was situated on a main trade route, men from all classes and sections of Indian society thronged there. The Qalandars were shockingly rude and insolent, but the Baba would not forbid them entry into his

244

communal hall. Towards the end of his life the local governor's hostility towards him scared off the common people, and their gifts to him stopped. His family suffered considerable deprivation, but he remained indifferent to these difficulties, concentrating on God alone.²¹ In 1265 he died.

The Baba's successor was Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awilya'. He came originally from Bada'un but had settled in Delhi. The stories of his own apprenticeship in the jama'at-khana at Ajodhan show that the Baba trained him in a very vigorous environment so that he could make the Chishtiyya order the dominant sufi silsila in India. The ethical influence radiating from Ghiyaspur, where the Shaykh resided, seems to have made a considerable impact upon the people of Delhi. The Shaykh was, however, completely estranged from Sultan Qutbu'd-Din Mubarak and Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq, although Nasiru'd-Din Khusraw had befriended him. When the future Sultan Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq invaded Delhi, Khusraw offered huge gifts to the holy men in Delhi to seek their blessing for his success. Three of the sufis rejected the gifts; others accepted them, intending to return them to the next ruler if Khusraw lost.

Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din accepted the gifts, but then, according to his custom, instantly distributed them among the needy. Naturally he could not return the gifts to the new Sultan. The 'ulama' and some other sufis, who were envious of the Shaykh, poured oil on the fire of growing enmity and reopened the old question of sama', accusing the Shaykh of frivolity and sin. More than two hundred and fifty scholars gathered to oppose the Shaykh at an assembly organized by the Sultan to settle the dispute. The Shaykh was accompanied only by his disciples. A heated discussion took place, but the Sultan refused to yield to 'ulama' pressure to deliver judgement against the Shaykh. The Shaykh died in April 1325, while the Sultan was away on his Tirhut expedition. They were still estranged. The Sultan died three months later, in July.

According to the Shaykh, the first lesson in sufism was not related to prayers or meditational exercises but began with the practice of the maxim: 'Do unto others what you would they do unto you; wish for yourself what you wish for them also.' Defining renunciation, the Shaykh said that it was not wearing a loincloth in a state of asceticism, for one should wear clothes and continue to eat, but rather the distribution of all unnecessary items to the poor. He was impressed by those people who fed all the hungry indiscriminately, ignoring caste and class distinctions. Like the contemporary 'ulama' and sufis, the Shaykh was hostile to the Muslim philosophers' cosmological theories and loved to relate

245

anecdotes from Shaykh Abu Sa'id and Shihabu'd-Din Suhrawardi, condemning Avicenna and other philosophers.²³

Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya' was succeeded in Delhi by his talented disciple Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din Mahmud, later known as Chiragh (the Lamp) of Delhi. Both he and some leading Chishtiyya saints were reluctant to serve the state, and this brought them into conflict with Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq, who wished the sufis to help him realize his political ambitions. During Sultan Firuz's reign many sufi khanqahs prospered as a result of state grants, although the Shaykh himself never abandoned his ascetic life. One of the Qalandars tried to assassinate him, but the Shaykh stopped his disciples taking revenge. He died in 1356. Because he considered none of his disciples worthy of receiving the relics bequeathed to him by Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya' they were buried with him in his grave.²⁴

Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din's teachings were embodied in the *Khayru'l-majalis*, compiled by one of his disciples. They represent a peak in the Chishtiyya philosophy which had evolved in India during the course of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. Following the tradition of his spiritual ancestors, the Shaykh emphasized the necessity for associating with the common people but simultaneously withdrawing from them. Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din was deeply distressed at the degeneration of Delhi sufism into mere formalism. Many of his disciples wisely decided to start new centres in the provinces rather than remain in the capital. This did not result in the disintegration of the centre, for other important Chishtiyyas stayed on in Delhi.

By the end of the fourteenth century the doctrine of *Wahdat al-Wujud* had become firmly rooted in India. Its principal Chishtiyya exponent was Mas'ud-i Bakk. Although he was related to Sultan Firuz, pressure from the 'ulama' compelled the Sultan to behead him. In a verse he cried out:

From Mas'ud-i Bakk there disappeared all human qualities.

Since he in reality was Essence, he ultimately became Essence.²⁵

Another follower of this doctrine was Sayyid Muhammad Husayni bin Ja'far al-Makki. His long life extended from the reign of Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq to that of Sultan Bahlul Lodi. He travelled widely. According to him the ecstatic cries of Bayazid and Hallaj did not emanate from themselves; their spiritual absorption had converted them into the same form as the Absolute Being.²⁶

Another sufi, Mawlana Burhanu'd-Din Gharib, an aged khalifa

246

of Nizamu'd-Din Awliya', was forced by Muhammad bin Tughluq to leave Delhi for Daulatabad in the Deccan. The sufi who did most to make the Chishtiyya silsila popular in the Deccan, however, was Sayyid Muhammad bin Yusuf al-Husayni, commonly known as Khwaja Banda Nawaz or Mir Gisu Daraz. He was Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din's leading disciple. Apparently the news of Timur's invasion of Delhi prompted Gisu Daraz to move to a safer place. He went first to Gujarat and later to Gulbarga on the western border of the Deccan. Mir Gisu Daraz was a prolific

writer. His earlier works are based on the Wahdat al-Wujud philosophy, but he was later converted to the Wahdat al-Shuhud doctrines. He was influenced by the works of 'Ala'u'd-Dawla Simnani (d. 1336), the founder of the Wahdat al-Shuhud movement, who was violently hostile to the Wahdat al-Wujud beliefs. The Wahdat al-Wujud followers held that there cannot be two orders of reality (Creator and created), independent of each other, while the Wahdat al-Shuhud considered that ideas undermining the divine transcendence were heretical. Mir Gisu Daraz was amazed that Ibnu'l-'Arabi's followers should call themselves sufis, when they did not recognize God's true transcendental form. Condemning the works of Ibnu'l-'Arabi and the sufi poets, such as 'Attar and Rumi, who ardently supported the Wahdat al-Wujud philosophy, Mir Gisu Daraz denounced them as enemies of Islam. He died in November 1422, having lived for about 101 years.²⁷

In Bengal the Chishtiyya centre was established by Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya's disciple, Shaykh Akhi Siraju'd-Din 'Us-man. At Pandua he made Shaykh 'Ala'u'l-Haqq, who held a high position in the government, his khalifa. Shaykh 'Ala'u'l-Haqq renounced the world. He died in 1398, and his spiritual descendants established Chishtiyya khanqahs in many parts of Bengal. In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, the Chishtiyya khanqahs in Jaunpur, Rudawli (near Lucknow), Lucknow, Kalpi, and Gangoh (east of Delhi) exerted a considerable influence on the spiritual life in their respective regions. In the sixteenth century Thaneshwar became an important Chishtiyya centre. Shaykh Jalal Thaneshwari and his disciple, Shaykh Nizam Thaneshwari, were famous Chishtiyya sufis, but in May 1606 Jahangir banished Shaykh Nizam to Mecca for blessing the rebel Prince Khusraw. The Shaykh died in Balkh in modern Afghanistan, having utterly condemned the Mughals as irreligious. The sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Chishtiyya centres in Delhi were also well known, although they could not compete with the popular Shaykh Salim Chishti, whose prayers, Akbar believed, were responsible for the birth of his son Prince Salim in August 1569. Akbar built Fathpur-Sikri to show his

247

gratitude to the Shaykh. At the same time the intellectually challenging Gujarat Chishtiyya centre pushed the Suhrawardiyyas even further into the background. The Chishtiyya centres in Burhanpur, Jaunpur, and Lucknow were also famous, but the outstanding Chishtiyya sufi scholar was Shaykh Muhibbu'llah Mubariz Ilahabadi. He was pitted against Mulla Mahmud Jaun-puri, one of the greatest Muslim philosophers India has produced. The Shaykh tried to undermine the importance of both philosophy and kalam. He also waged a battle royal against the opponents of the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrine and did not even spare 'Ala'u'd-Dawla Simnani and Gisu Daraz.

THE KUBRAWIYYA

The principal centre of the Kubrawiyyas was Kashmir. The order was introduced there by Mir Sayyid 'Ali Hamadani, who had been initiated by one of Shaykh 'Ala'u'd-Dawla Simnani's disciples. After travelling through different parts of the Islamic world, the Mir arrived in Uch, but Makhdum Jahaniyan, the Suhrawardiyya leader, took no notice of him. The Mir then proceeded to Kashmir, where preliminary propaganda in his favour had already been disseminated by his cousin. Apparently he reached Srinagar in 1381. The miracles allegedly performed by the Sayyid in order to convert the brahman priest of the Kali temple are

reminiscent of those attributed to Khwaja Mu'inu'd-Din Chishti and many other sufis. It is claimed that when the priest flew in the air, the Sayyid threw his slippers at him and brought him down. Ibn Battuta also states that he saw the yogis at Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq's court fly. The Kali temple was demolished, and a prayer platform was built there for the Sayyid. Like 'Ala'u'd-Dawla Simnani, the Mir was a zealous missionary and encouraged his followers to demolish Hindu temples and convert the Hindus to Islam. After staying three years in Kashmir, he left Srinagar but fell ill while travelling, dying in January 1385. His dead body was taken to Khuttalan (now in Tajikistan, USSR) and buried. However, a number of his disciples remained in Kashmir. They had been trained in the futuwwa (chivalric) Irani sufi tradition and resorted to forcible conversion. They also introduced the akhi (brotherhood) spirit of the Anatolian and Iranian dervishes who were either members of or associated with merchant and artisan guilds (isnaf). In Kashmir they appear to have found new avenues for promoting their commercial interests. They also ransacked Hindu temples in

248

order to enrich themselves and their local followers.²⁸

The arrival of Sayyid 'Alsi son, Mir Muhammad, in Srinagar in 1393 revived the evangelical spirit of the earlier Irani settlers. Sultan Sikandar (1389-1413) became a disciple of the young migrant and built a khanqah on the site where his father had first constructed a prayer platform. One of Sikandar's powerful and influential nobles, Suha Bhatta,²⁹ became Mir Muhammad's disciple, adopted Sayfu'd-Din as his Muslim name, and married his daughter to his young teacher.

Under the influence of Mir and Suha, Sultan Sikandar demolished many ancient temples in Kashmir. Many puritanical and discriminatory laws were implemented, and *jijya* was introduced for the first time in Kashmir. The persecution of brahmans, their exclusion from the top tiers of government, and their replacement by Irani migrants hastened the conversion of the brahman elite, because they were unwilling to give up their superior positions in the administration. Before long, however, Sultan Sikandar realized the effects of his bigoted policy and, according to the brahman historian Jonaraja, 'fixed with some difficulty a limit to the advance of the great sea of the Yavanas (Muslims)' and abolished *turush-kadanda* (*jizya*).³⁰ This change in state policy seems to have so disappointed Mir Muhammad that, after staying twelve years, he left Kashmir like his father before him. However, more than a dozen major disciples stayed behind and strengthened the already increasing predominance of Persian officers in the administration.

Another group of Irani immigrants, known as the Bayhaqi Sayyids, were also Kubrawiyyas; Sultan Zaynu'l-'Abidin (1420-70) became their patron. Paradoxically, they supported the Sultan's policy of crushing the fanatical Sunni elements in the administration and worked towards reconciling the Hindus and integrating the two.

In 1481 the Timurid Sultan, Husayn Mirza (1469-1506) of Hirat, sent Mir Shamsu'd-Din 'Iraqi to Kashmir as his envoy. The Mir preached the Nur Bakhshiyya sufi doctrines of Iran in Kashmir and became a fast friend of the leading Kubrawiyyas. After going back to Hirat he again returned to Kashmir in 1501 but this time he tried to convert the Kashmiris to Isna 'Ashari Shi'ism. Many

of the Sultan's leading nobles became his disciples. The spread of Shi'ism, however, was energetically checked by the well-known Kashmiri Suhrawardiyya, Shaykh Hamza Makhdum, and his disciple, Baba Dawud. After Akbar's annexation of Kashmir in 1586 the religious atmosphere stabilized, and the Shi'I faith was contained.³¹

249

THE QALANDARS

The development of the Qalandariyya is shrouded in obscurity. The movement had ripened in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and the Persian verses of this period glorify the Qalandars' (wandering dervishes') attainments. The movement flourished in Syria, eastern Iran, and Transoxiana. Early glimpses of their order in India are preserved in the Chishtiyya records. According to these works, the Qalandars hated the khanqah life of the sufis, considering it sacrilegious, and accused the sufis of transforming themselves into idols. They also refused to obey the shari'a laws. They used Indian hemp and other drugs, shaved their heads, moustaches, beards and eyebrows, and always kept a razor handy. They wore iron rings through their ears, on their hands, and on other parts of their bodies. Authentic sufi records recount some incredible miracles performed by them. Leading sufis like Shaykh Baha'u'd-Din Zakariyya and Baba Farid were always the targets of the Qalandars' attacks. The Qalandars travelled widely and went as far east as Bengal. In Balban's reign, his rebel governor, Tughril, was so deeply devoted to a Qalandar that he gave enough gold for him and his Qalandars to wear gold necklaces, bangles, and earrings instead of iron ones.

The Qalandars belonged to different groups. The more famous jwalqis wrapped themselves in blankets;³² others went naked except for a loincloth. The founder of the Haydari Qalandars belonged to Turbat-i Haydar near Mashhad in Iran. Jamali says that the Haydaris passed round iron rods through their genitals and called them sikh-i muhr (rod of the seal). This custom, acquired from the Hindu Naga sannyasis, indicated their determination to remain . celibate. The Haydaris, and other Qalandars too, pierced their ears and wore iron rings. This practice was borrowed from the kanphata (split-ear) yogis.

Shaykh Abu Bakr Tusi Haydari settled on the banks of the Jamuna in Delhi and built a khanqah there. Many important sufis, including Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya', used to call on him. Abu Bakr often visited the court and, at Sultan Jalalu'd-Din's instigation, mortally wounded the powerful dervish Sidi Mawla. The leading princes and noblemen were deeply devoted to the Sidi, but the Sultan considered him an arch-conspirator and a threat to his rule. In about 1342 Ibn Battuta also met a party of Haydaris at Amroha. Describing their feats, he records:

Their chief asked me to supply him with firewood that they might light it

250

for their dance, so I charged the governor of that district, who was 'Aziz known as al-Khammar, to furnish it. He sent about ten loads of it, and after the night prayer they kindled it, and at length, when it was a mass of glowing coals, they began their musical recital and went into that fire, still

dancing and rolling about in it. Their chief asked me for a shirt and I gave him one of the finest texture; he put it on and began to roll about in the fire with it on and to beat the fire with his sleeves until it was extinguished and dead. He then brought me the shirt showing not a single trace of burning on it, at which I was greatly astonished.³³

A most prominent Qalandar, Abu (Bu) 'Ali Qalandar (d. 1324), lived in Panipat. Like others of his kind he had previously been a trained religious scholar but, in a fit of ecstasy, gave away his books and became a Qalandar, though he kept using the shari'a laws. Although some of the sufi letters and verses ascribed to him are not genuine, the authentic ones are deeply impregnated with spirituality. A seventeenth-century Chishtiyya believed that Abu 'Ali had been initiated into the Chishtiyya order by Khwaja Qutbu'd-Din Bakhtiyar Kaki's spirit. This gave rise to a Chishtiyya-Qalandariyya silsila.³⁴

Although Shaykh Baha'u'd-Din Zakariyya was at war with the Qalandars, his son-in-law, Shaykh Fakhru'd-Din 'Iraqi, had followed their practices during his youth. In his old age 'Iraqi adopted the settled life of the khanqah, but he never gave up his independent thinking. La'l Shahbaz, another prominent Qalandar, was also a disciple of Shaykh Baha'u'd-Din Zakariyya. Many incredible miracles are ascribed to his tomb in Sihwan in Sind.

THE MUSLIM INTELLECTUAL PERCEPTION OF HINDUISM

The establishment of Turkic rule in India opened up many opportunities for contact between Hinduism and Islam. Only al-Biruni (d. after 1050), however, took the trouble to translate Sanskrit classics into Arabic. He then wrote his monumental *Kitab fi tahqiq ma li'l-Hind* in order to acquaint his Ghaznavid rulers with Hinduism. He admitted that there were many barriers separating Hindus from Muslims but claimed that they were based either on political reasons or on language barriers. The Sanskrit scientific and religious texts were composed in verse form; consequently many errors and interpolations had entered into them. This made it difficult to authenticate books without painstaking research.³⁵

251

Al-Biruni's task was made even more difficult because he never visited centres of brahmanic scholarship such as Kanauj, Varanasi, and Kashmir. He stayed in Ghazni, where his assistants were a few Sanskrit scholars and educated merchants. He mentions a man from Somnath, some people from Kanauj, and a man who had travelled through Nepal as his informants. He found the contemporary Hindus were full of religious prejudices, insularity, exclusiveness, national pride, and conceit.³⁶ Al-Biruni admits that previous generations of Hindus were more liberal but stresses that prejudices against foreigners were universal. He also acknowledges the fact that, although the Hindus he met refused to enter into religious arguments, many Muslims forbade any discussion at all on religious matters.

In the *Kitab fi tahqiq ma li'l-Hind*, al-Biruni's main thesis is that 'the beliefs of educated and uneducated people differ in every nation' and that the educated 'strive to conceive abstract ideas

and to define general principles', while the uneducated submit to derived rules and regulations. This dichotomy applied to both religion and science. Discussing the Hindu concept of God, al-Biruni says that Hindus believe that 'He is eternal, without beginning and end, acting by free will, almighty, all wise, living, giving life, ruling, preserving, one who in His sovereignty is unique, beyond all likeness and unlikeness.'³⁷ Al-Biruni quotes from Patanjali's Yoga-Sutra, the Bhagavad Gita, and the Sankhya-Karika to substantiate this assertion. He contends that, at the level of the common people, anthropomorphism is found in Hinduism, Islam, Jewry, and Christianity. He goes on to say that Caliph Mu'awiya, the founder of the Umayyad dynasty, thought idols 'were only memorials'. When his army brought back golden idols adorned with jewels after sacking Sicily in 672-3, the Caliph ordered their sale in Sind.³⁸ He considered the matter from an economic not a religious point of view and had no scruples about their use in 'abominable idolatry'. Al-Biruni upheld Mu'awiya's practical approach as meaningful, and suggested that Mahmud's policy of indiscriminate destruction of idols was malevolent.

Although al-Biruni, like other scholars, does not attempt to define Hinduism, he identifies it in relation to other religious communities. He says:

As the word of confession, 'There is no god but God, Muhammad is His prophet', is the shibboleth of Islam, the Trinity that of Christianity, and the institute of the Sabbath that of Judaism, so metempsychosis is the shibboleth of the Hindu religion. Therefore he who does not believe in it does not belong to them, and is not reckoned as one of them.³⁹

252

Al-Biruni's distinction between the religions of the masses and those of the elite is extended to differentiate scientific and legendary theories. He says that the Puranic version of the world's shape and other geographic details and the scientific truths discovered by the astronomers are contradictory. He contends, however, that the astronomers allowed religious prejudices to influence their own interpretation of their discoveries, so that the theory that the earth was a rotating ball and other natural scientific laws were glossed over by the scientists to conform to Hindu mythology. The common people who depended on the astronomers for their knowledge therefore received mainly religious explanations instead of scientific truths, an unscientific mixture of fact and fiction.

Proud of his mathematical and scientific heritage, al-Biruni was hostile to mystical ideas. He condemned sufi irrationalism and compared Muslim alchemy and Hindu rasayana (chemistry) with witchcraft. In his *Kitab fi tahqiq* he provides a penetrating study of human relationships and cultural complexities in various faiths. Although he concentrates mainly on Hindu society, he relates it to the social behaviour and psychology of other religious communities and investigates the intimate relationship between belief, religious philosophy, and social organization. Al-Biruni concludes that the strangeness of others' customs is essentially relative, and gives a historical explanation of cultural and social behaviour. He does not specifically defend the social customs and manners of the Hindus but explains their caste, class, and family organization, their cultural attitudes, folk customs, mores, and prejudices in a historical context. His analysis shows that a historical perspective and a knowledge of the history of ideas are required to understand society.

Al-Biruni defines the Hindu colour divisions as *tabaqat* (classes) and the castes (*jati*) as birth divisions (*nasab*). The brahmins were created from the head of Brahma, the Kshatriya from his shoulders and hands, the Vaishya from Brahma's thigh, and the Sudra from his feet. Below the Sudra were the Antyaja or casteless. They were divided into eight guilds: fullers, shoemakers, jugglers, basket- and shield-makers, sailors, fishermen, hunters of wild animals and birds, and weavers. The villages and towns were inhabited by the superior classes, while the Antyaja lived just outside them. The Hadi, Doma, and Chandala, who did the cleaning and scavenging, were outcasts. It was claimed that they were the result of an illegal act of fornication between a Sudra father and a brahmani mother and were therefore excluded from the recognized Hindu community. Foreigners were also regarded as 'unclean' or *mleccha*, and

253

39. Akbar controlling the elephants who cross the Jamuna, Akbar-Nama (p. 105)
40. Political lessons through animal behaviour, from the Anwar Suhayli by Kashifi (p. 156)
41. Black buck painted by Manohar with beautiful calligraphy on the borders (p. 301)
42. Dara Shukoh with Miyan Mir, Mulla Shah and the *khanqah* servants (pp. 266-7)
43. Jahangir weighing Prince Khurram (p. 117); the Khan-I Khanan holds the balance
44. Shahjahan with two princes, possibly Dara and Shuja', watching Sama' (Sufi music) c. 1650 (p. 243)
45. Jahangir riding, painted by Manohar (p. 301)
46. Integration of Sufi music with Bhaktas; Kabir is in the front on the left (pp. 361-3)
47. Babur visiting Gorakhtari from the Babu-Nama (p.256)
48. The heroine being served by a maid from Lor Chand (p.302)
49. Captivity of Himu painted by Shankar Akbar-Nama (p.105)
50. The news of the birth of Akbar communicated to Humayun, Akbar Nama (p.103)
51. Workmen building Agra fort, Akbar-Nama (p. 290)
52. Village life from Anwar Suhayli by Kashifi (p. 207)

Hindus were forbidden any contact, either matrimonial or social, with them.⁴¹ Al-Biruni asserts that, since the whole Hindu system had no parallel in Islam, contact and understanding between Hindus and Muslims was very limited. He contends, however, that Muslim and Hindu class divisions had a common ancestor in the ancient Aryan class distinctions.

Al-Biruni claimed that the Hindus considered sodomy, which was prevalent among the Turks, as revolting as eating beef. They permitted prostitution, but this was due to the laxity of their rulers. Prostitution had also existed in Muslim society. Both the Buwayhid Prince 'Azu'd-Dawla (949-83)⁴² of Iran and Nuru'd-Din Mubarak Ghaznavi justified it as a means of protecting the honour of Muslim women.⁴³

We might say that, at least until the eighteenth century, no non-Indian anywhere in the world understood so much about the religion and customs of the Hindus as this learned Central Asian scholar, whose knowledge was, for its time, universal and whose thought is characterized by tolerance, benevolence, and sound common sense.

Amir Khusraw was deeply impressed by India, but his studies of Hinduism were not based on Sanskrit sources. He was impressed by the depth of learning among Indians and their ability to speak any language. He also greatly admired the brahmins, who could teach all subjects without having to study overseas and who had devised the numerical system, written *Kalila wa Dimna* on the art of government, and invented chess. In considering that Hindus were metaphysically confused, Amir Khusraw was a Muslim chauvinist. He admitted, however, that they believed in the unity and eternity of God and were superior to materialists, star worshippers, and Christians. Although the Hindus worshipped stones, animals, plants, and the sun, they believed that these things were God's creations and they only imitated their ancestors.⁴⁴

As mentioned earlier, Nakhshabi, who had translated two Sanskrit works, had a better understanding of Sanskrit. Mir Gisu Daraz also studied Sanskrit, thereby intending to defeat the brahmins' arguments and convert them to Islam.⁴⁵ Following his conquest of Nagarkot in 1362 Firuz Shah Tughluq acquired some 1,300 books from the Jwalamukhi temple. He commissioned Sanskrit scholars to translate some of them into Persian. On the basis of the translations of works on physics and astronomy, 'Izzu'd-Din Khalid Khani compiled the *Dala'il-i Firuz Shahi*, a work that is not now available. One of the surviving Persian translations from Sanskrit is the *Brhatsamhita*, by the celebrated Indian astronomer Varahamihira. It had been translated earlier by al-Biruni, but the

254

new translator, 'Abdu'l 'Aziz Shams Baha-i Nuri, does not seem to have had access to this work. Sultan Zaynu'l-'Abidin of Kashmir, Sultan Sikandar Lodi, and several other Muslim rulers also ordered the translation of various Sanskrit works into Persian in order both to satisfy their own intellectual curiosity and to increase Muslim understanding of Hinduism.

Akbar's translation bureau (the *Maktab Khana*) also helped considerably to change the Muslim perception of Hinduism. Its most remarkable productions were the translations of the *Mahabharata*, the *Ramayana*, and the *Yoga Vashishta*. Abu'l-Fazl wrote the preface to the *Mahabharata*. Discussing Akbar's motives for ordering the translations, he claimed that the Emperor sought to heal the religious differences amongst his subjects. Akbar did not discriminate between Hindu and Muslim, friend and foe. He felt that reliably translated texts from both religions would form a basis for a united search for truth. He had also discovered that often the common people among the Hindus were forced to rely on distorted interpretations of

texts, while the theologians kept the standard works to themselves. Akbar therefore concluded that the translation of these texts into simple language would enable the people to understand the true spirit of their religion.

Abu'l-Fazl continually censured the ignorance and shortsightedness of his contemporaries. He was convinced that the Hindus followed their faith uncritically and were prey to superstition. Their fantastic beliefs shocked the Muslims, who had no means of learning the more profound Hindu doctrines. For their part, most Muslims had never studied their own great books, such as those by Imam Ja'far al-Sadiq (702-765) and Ibn al-'Arabi.⁴⁶

In the third volume of the *A'in-i Akbari*, Abu'l-Fazl gave a detailed description of Hinduism, although he was aware that his work was not the equal of al-Birum's *Tahqiq* in depth of analysis. He urged his Muslim readers to study his account of Hindu learning with open minds. He suggested that 'putting aside the estrangements of ignorance' they compare it with the religious teachings of the sufis and philosophers. The *Ain-i Akbari* includes some discussion on contemporary Hindu and Jain philosophy. Abu'l-Fazl was amazed at the flexibility of yogic postures and interestedly described the Hindu knowledge of *sakuna* (augury).

Yet more Sanskrit works were translated into Persian during Jahangir's reign. Dara Shukoh undertook to translate the *Up-anishads* in order to discover any *Wahdat al-Wujud* doctrines hidden in them, and not as a linguistic exercise. He accused the Hindu pandits (teachers) of hiding the Upanishadic truth from both Muslims and Hindus in order to keep their teachings on the

255

Wahdat al-Wujud doctrine secret. Dara Shukoh believed that his translation would help mystics of both faiths, although he stressed the primacy of the *Qur'an*, and the translation in fact proved to be of universal interest. Although he died before it was circulated, many copies are still extant throughout India; during Nawwab Shuja'u'd-Dawla's reign in Avadh (1754-75) the French Resident sent a copy to a Parisian scholar of ancient religions, Anquetil Duperron, who translated it into Latin and French. The French edition was never published, but the Latin version, published in 1801-2, was of particular interest to the German philosopher Schopenhauer, who found its study 'the solace of my life' and 'the solace of my death'.⁴⁷

The Muslim intellectuals believed that some prophets had been sent to India, but a fierce controversy raged as to their identification. Later, during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the Mujaddid (Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, 1564—1624) also considered that prophets had come to India, although the Indians generally had ignored their teachings. According to him, the Hindu works on divine being had been plagiarized from the works of ancient prophets. He asserted that the terms 'prophet' and 'apostle' occurred only in Arabic and Persian and had no Indian equivalents. Consequently, the Indians had no perception concerning prophets.⁴⁸ The Mujaddid did not believe that Rama and Krishna were prophets and could not tolerate the suggestion that they were divine names. Mirza Mazhar Jan-i Janan (d. 1781), however, a distinguished sufi scholar of the Mujaddid's sufi order, accepted both Rama and Krishna as prophets.⁴⁹ He also glossed over Hindu idol-worship, although he considered any Hindus who persisted in their faith

in Rama and Krishna after the advent of Islam to be infidels who had departed from the right path.

THE HINDU IMPACT ON SUFISM

According to al-Biruni, the sufi theories of the soul were similar to those in Patanjali's Yoga Sutra. Like the Yoga Sutra, sufi works also stated that 'the bodies are the snares of the souls for the purpose of acquiring recompense'. Al-Biruni also identifies the sufi doctrine of divine love as self-annihilation with parallel passages from the Bhagavad Gita.⁵⁰ Hujwiri comments that before he settled in Lahore some sufis believed in theories that he calls brahmanical. According to Hujwiri they wrongly believed that 'annihilation (fand') signifies loss of essence and destruction of the personality, and that

256

subsistence (baqa) indicates the subsistence of God in man'. Condemning the views as misguided, Hujwiri says that 'real annihilation from anything involves consciousness of its imperfection and the absence of desire for it', and subsistence means 'subsistence of the remembrance of God'.⁵¹ Sufi views on this question always remained divided, and arguments over annihilation and subsistence were endemic.

By the thirteenth century the Indian sufis were confronted with the kanphata (split-eared) yogis or the Nath followers of Gorakh-nath. Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya' 's description of his conversation with yogis shows that he was impressed with their theory of the division of the human body into the regions of Siva and Sakti. The area from the head to the navel, associated with Siva, was spiritual; the area below the navel, associated with Sakti, was profane.⁵² Shaykh Nizamu'd-Din Awliya' was also impressed with the yogic theory that a child's moral character was determined by the day of the month on which he was conceived.⁵³ Some sufis also learned from the yogis medicines to grow long hair.⁵⁴ The Hatha yogic treatise Amrita-Kunda, which had been translated into Arabic and Persian in the thirteenth century, had a lasting effect on sufism.

Shaykh Nasiru'd-Din Chiragh-i Dihli observed that controlled breathing is the essence of sufism. Controlled breathing is initially a deliberate action but later becomes automatic. He urged practising articulated breathing like the perfect yogis, known as siddhas. Yogic postures and breath control became an integral part of Chishtiyya sufi practice, and controlled breathing was incorporated finally as a vital aspect in all the sufi orders except the Indian Naqshbandiyyas.

The sufi theory of Wahdat al-Wujud and sufi analogies for it were remarkably similar to those of the yogis. Shaykh Hamidud-Din Nagauri's Hindi verses reflect this yogic influence.⁵⁵ The Nath doctrines had a far-reaching influence on the Chishtiyya Shaykh 'Abdu'l Quddus Gangohi (d. 1537). His Hindi nom de plume was Alakh (Imperceptible). His Rushd-nama contains Hindi verses composed by himself and his spiritual guides and is designed to support the truth of the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrine. The Imperceptible Lord (Alakh Niranjana), he says, is unseeable, but those who are able to perceive Him are lost to themselves. In another verse the Shaykh identifies Niranjana (the Imperceptible) with God (Khuda).⁵⁶ References to the yogi saint Gorakhnath in

the Rushd-ndma equate him with Ultimate Reality or Absolute Truth. Some references to these names imply 'perfect man' or 'perfect Siddha'.⁵⁷ The union of Sakti, the sun, and Siva, the moon, is according to the Shaykh symbolized by prayers performed hanging

257

upside down with the legs suspended from a roof or the branch of a tree. Here we find very clear evidence of the practices of Hindu tantricism influencing sufi beliefs.

The cross-fertilization of sufi beliefs with those expressed by the Kashmiri Saivite woman yogi Lalla or Lal Ded (Lalla Yogesvari) is reflected in the Rishi movement of Shaykh Nuru'd-Din Rishi (d. 1439) of Kashmir. The Shaykh's teachings are embodied in his Kashmiri verses, some of which are almost identical with those composed by Lalla. Through them the Shaykh emerges as an ardent devotee of God trying to reach the Unknowable in the heart by lighting the lamp of love. Nuru'd-Din and his disciples preferred to call themselves Rishis, using the well-known term for the Hindu sages, not sufis. Their main theme was universal love. They served the people without considering caste and class distinctions, planted trees to shade travellers, and tried to turn Kashmir into a haven for the neglected sections of society. Shaykh Nuru'd-Din believed that, although eating meat was permitted by the shari'a, it entailed cruelty to animals, and he became a vegetarian.⁵⁸

The Nath ideas found great popularity in fifteenth-century Bengal. The Amritakunda, a text on Hatha yoga, was first translated into Arabic in Bengal in the early thirteenth century. In 1498-9 Shaykh Zahid wrote a book in Bengali entitled the Adya-Parichaya, based on the Amritakunda. Sayyid Murtaza (d. 1662) later wrote the Yoga-Qalandar, identifying the Qalandariyya discipline of Abu 'All Qalandar with yoga practices. Sayyid Sultan (d. 1668) of Chitta-gong also composed a number of Bengali works on Muslim themes of absorption into God, with Hindu and yogic overtones. The Haqa'iq-i Hindi by 'Abdu'l-Wahid (d. 1608) of Bilgram (near Lucknow) was intended to crush orthodox opposition to the use of Vaishnavite themes in the Hindi poetry recited by the Chishtiyya sufis to arouse ecstasy. To Gisu Daraz, Hindi poetry was more subtle and elegant and transported the sufis to higher planes of mystical ecstasy than Persian verses did.⁵⁹

The sixteenth century saw a tremendous increase in the volume of Hindi poetry. Naturally its recitation at sufi gatherings required some defence. Mir 'Abdu'l Wahid sought to justify this practice by giving Islamic equivalents for features of the Krishna legend such as Krishna, Radha, Gopi, Braj, Gokul, Jamuna, Ganga, Mathura, and the flute in his Haqa'iq-i Hindi. He pleads that this identification renders unobjectionable the transport of sufis into ecstasy on hearing Hindu Vaishnavite poetry.

The translation of Sanskrit works into Persian at Akbar's court had made Muslims aware of the Vedanta School of Hindu philosophy. Jahangir identified the highest form of sufism with the

258

Vedanta. According to him the following lines by Baba Fighani (d. 1516 or 1519) embodied the essence of both the Vedanta and sufism:

There is one lamp in this house, by whose rays,

Wherever I look there is an assembly.⁶⁰

THE MAHDAWI MOVEMENT

In Islam messianic movements emerged shortly after the Prophet Muhammad's death. The idea was borrowed from the Zoroastrian and Christian faiths. The Muslim messiah is known as the Mahdi. Mahdi means 'guided one' or the 'directed one' - he who is fit to direct others. Except for the collection of ahadis compiled by Bukhari and Muslim all the important works of Sunni ahadis refer to prophecies concerning the Mahdi and state that all the Prophet's leading companions are in one way or the other associated with these stories. There are serious discrepancies among the traditions concerning the Madhi; the signs preceding his appearance and the descriptions of his features also differ. Ibn Khaldun says:

It has been well known (and generally accepted), by all Muslims in every epoch, that at the end of time a man from the family (of the Prophet) will without fail make his appearance, one who will strengthen the religion and make justice triumph. The Muslims will follow him, and he will gain domination over the Muslim realm. He will be called the Mahdi. Following him, the Antichrist will appear, together with all the subsequent signs of the Hour (the Day of Judgement), as established in (the sound tradition of) the Sahih. After (the Mahdi), Isa (Jesus) will descend and kill the Antichrist. Or Jesus will descend together with the Mahdi, and help him kill (the Antichrist), and have him as the leader in his prayers.

The Isna' 'Ashari Shi'i traditions, however, differ markedly from those of the Sunni sect. According to them the twelfth Imam, Muhammad son of Imam Hasan 'Askari, who disappeared from human sight after his occultation in 873, is still alive and will reappear before Judgement Day. This belief in the Mahdi is an indispensable part of the Isna' 'Ashari Shi'i faith, but the Sunnis attach much less importance to the Mahdi traditions.

According to some Sunni authorities, even the first four successors to the Prophet were known as mahdiyin ('guided ones'). From that time- to the end of the nineteenth century a large number of

259

Sunni adventurers declared themselves the Mahdi. The end of some of them was tragic; during Firuz Shah's reign, one Rukn declared himself the Mahdi, with the result that he was beheaded.⁶²

Sayyid Muhammad of Jaunpur left an indelible mark on the Mahdawi movement in India. He was born in September 1443, during Sultan Mahmud Shah Sharqi's reign. The Mahdawi sources, compiled within one hundred years of Sayyid Muhammad's lifetime, recount miracles at his birth reminiscent of those at the Prophet Muhammad's nativity. According to the Mahdawi traditions,

he started his education when he was four years, four months, and four days old. He proved a prodigy by completing it when he was only twelve years old. The legends say that, accompanied by Sultan Husayn Sharqi, Sayyid Muhammad marched against Ray Dalpat of Gaur and defeated him. The histories of the period do not mention such a battle, which seems to be a later myth created to make the Sayyid a leader in both war and peace, as was the Prophet. In c. 1489 the Sayyid, accompanied by 360 companions, travelled to Mecca. Although his followers had always believed him to be the promised MahdI, it was only after reaching Mecca in 1495-6 that he formally proclaimed his mission. After staying a few months in Mecca he returned to India, where he visited Ahmadabad. A considerable number of the local residents became the Sayyid's disciples. Even Sultan Mahmud I Begra wished to visit him, but the Sultan's nobles, concerned with maintaining peace in Gujarat, prevented him. In Gujarat the Sayyid twice publicly declared himself the promised Mahdi, thus arousing deep hostility among the orthodox 'ulama'. The Sayyid was not intimidated; he wrote letters to the neighbouring rulers, inviting them to recognize him as the MahdI, but the 'ulama' proved too powerful for him, and he was banished from Gujarat. He moved to Thatta and from thence to Farah in Afghanistan, where he died in 1505. His disciples belonged to all classes: soldiers, commanders, 'ulama', sufis, artisans, and ordinary men. They believed that the Mahdi had appeared and died and that no other MahdI would arise. This united them into a group separate from the other Sunnis, who did not believe that Sayyid Muhammad was the Mahdi. Some important Sunni 'ulama' recognized him as a scholar and an infallible guide but they glossed over his claims to be the Mahdi. They admitted to being deeply impressed by both the Sayyid and his followers, but that was as far as they would go.

Sayyid Muhammad was succeeded by his son, Sayyid Mahmud, who died in 1512. Mahmud's successor, Khwandamir, was also his brother-in-law. He fought many pitched battles against the Gujarat

260

troops and was killed in August 1524. Khwandamir was a scholar. Seven treatises that he wrote in Hindi and Persian, giving an authentic picture of the Sayyid's teachings, have survived.

As Mahdi, Sayyid Muhammad claimed that Allah had commissioned him to restore Islam to its original purity. He urged his followers to devote themselves whole-heartedly to the remembrance of God (zikr) and not to waste time in earning a living or other worldly pursuits. Unlike earlier Mahdis and subsequent claimants, the Sayyid was not interested in politics. Although he believed that non-Mahdawis were infidels he did not collect poll-tax from them, for he had not been ordered by Allah to do so. However, Mahdawis were not allowed to offer prayers behind a non-Mahdawi. Consequently they never travelled alone, in case they missed congregational prayers. They lived in their own settlements called da'iras which contained small huts for the women and a community hall with mud walls and a thatched roof, called the jamd'at khana, for the men. There the Mahdawis practised only those laws which were sanctioned by the shari'a. They depended generally for their living on unsolicited gifts (futuh). Those who worked at some profession or trade contributed one-tenth of their daily income to the da'ira. Each evening the entire futuh collection, and the wage contributions were distributed equally to the da'ira members. None was allowed more than the others. The distributor was also forbidden to look at

the recipients' faces in case this should influence the division. Nothing was kept for the next day; saving was considered contrary to dependence on God. 'Many a one,' says Mulla Bada'uni, 'thought it was his duty to empty his cooking vessel at a nightfall of all the necessities of life, even his salt and flour and water, and let them remain upside down, and they kept nothing in the way of means of existence by them, from their extreme faith in the providence of Almighty God, and the saying "Each day brings a new provision" was the basis of their practice.'⁶³

Da'ira members were not allowed to mix with their non-Mahdawi relations. New entrants could not marry the daughters of senior da'ira members without first serving one year's probation. As a pre-condition to their marriage they had to give an undertaking to leave their wives in the da'ira if they had to leave it. The da'ira members were not all equally dedicated; there were hypocrites and opportunists among them. At the end of each week the Mahdawis assembled to confess their sins publicly. Those who had violated any shari'a laws went to the da'ira leader to receive the punishment prescribed by the shari'a. The Mahdawis carried arms and forcibly stopped non-shari'a practices in their locality.⁶⁴

261

The da'iras in Gujarat, Sind, Rajasthan, and the Deccan rose to great prominence, but the most important Mahdawi leaders in Islam Shah Sur's reign were Shaykh 'Abdu'llah Niyazi and his disciple, Shaykh 'Ala'i. Makhdumu'l Mulk, the leading Sunni divine, convinced Islam Shah that 'Shaykh 'Ala'i was a revolutionary who laid claim to being the Mahdi, and that the Mahdi himself would be king of the whole world: consequently as he presumed to revolt he was deserving of death.' The military commanders were confused; pointing to Shaykh 'Ala'i, one of them remarked: 'This fellow, in this condition and with this miserable appearance, wishes to take away the kingdom from us. Does he imagine that we Afghans are all corpses!' Nevertheless Islam Shah was greatly concerned at the growing conversion of the Afghan commanders to the Mahdawi movement. In religious discussions the 'ulama' failed to subdue Shaykh 'Ala'i. In 1550, however, he was beaten to death at Makhdumu'l-Mulk's orders for holding Mahdawi beliefs.⁶⁵ This made him a Mahdawi martyr, and the movement was far from crushed. In Gujarat the Mahdawi scholars made life impossible for Shaykh 'All Muttaqi (d. 1567), one of the most famous Indian hadis scholars, and he moved permanently to Mecca. Shaykh 'All Muttaqi's talented disciple Shaykh Muhammad bin Tahir also failed to remove the Mahdawi influence from Gujarat.

After Akbar conquered Ahmadabad, he promised to crush the Mahdawi movement but he took no steps to persecute them. Although Mirza 'Aziz Koka, Akbar's governor in Gujarat, seems to have offered to help Shaykh Tahir, he left to seek further assistance from Akbar. He was assassinated on his way to Agra. In Akbar's reign the Mahdawis, like other religious communities, were also free to convert people to their faith but they were more successful farther south. Aurangzib did not succeed in destroying the Mahdawis, and they are still an important Muslim minority in Hyderabad and Mysore.

THE NEW SUFI ORDERS (THE SHATTARIYYAS)

The fifteenth and sixteenth centuries in India saw the development of some new sufi orders which quickly became popular. Of these the Shattariyyas were the spiritual successors to Shaykh Bayazid Bistami. In Central Asia and Iran the order was known as 'Ishqiyya (successors to Shaykh Abu Yazid 'Ishqi) and in Turkey as the Bistamiyya, after Abu Yazid Bistami. The order's Indian founder, Shah 'Abdu'llah, earned the name Shattar (Fast Runner)

262

when he claimed to make his disciples perfect by the shortest and quickest means.

Leaving his homeland in Transoxiana, Shah 'Abdu'llah reached India during the first half of the fifteenth century. He travelled in style through northern India, dressed like a king, while his dervishes marched wearing soldiers' uniforms, beating drums, and displaying their banners. He challenged all the sufis either to learn the principles of Wahdat al-Wujud from him and become his disciples or to teach them to him and make him their disciple. No sufi, the Shattariyya literature asserts, accepted the challenge. He went as far as Bengal and converted the leading sufi Shaykh Muhammad 'Ali, known as Shaykh Qazin of Hajjipur, to his order. From Bengal he travelled to Mandu, where Sultan Ghiyasu'd-Din Shah (1469-1500) also became his disciple. In Jaunpur, Shaykh Buddhan Shattari, a disciple of Shah 'Abdu'llah's khalifa Shaykh Hafiz, acquired several eminent sufis as his followers. Shah 'Abdu'llah died at Mandu in 1485.

The outstanding Shattariyya sufi, however, was Ghaws Shattari. His elder brother, Shaykh Phul, Emperor Humayun's great favourite, was killed by Humayun's rebel brother, Mirza Hindal, in 1539. For a long time before settling down at Gwalior, Shaykh Ghaws had been practising rigorous mystical ascetic exercises in the Chunar caves near the Ganges. When Sher Shah moved to Agra in 1540 Shaykh Ghaws fled to Gujarat for fear of persecution. Nevertheless he managed to keep in touch with Humayun. After Akbar took the throne the Shaykh returned to Gwalior; the young Emperor ignored him, but the Shaykh owned vast tracts of land and livestock and was able to live affluently until he died in 1563.

His books were controversial. In one of them he claimed that he had made a mystical ascent and had been close to God, like the Prophet Muhammad. He also re-translated the yogic Bahru'l hayat, but his most famous work is the Jawahir-i khamasa, which deals with mystical and magical practices, techniques in exorcism, and invoking the great names of Allah for material benefits. These mystical Shattariyya exercises were borrowed mainly from yogic practices and deeply impressed both Hindus and Muslims.

Many eminent sufis became Shaykh Ghaws's disciples. The most prominent among them was Shaykh Wajihu'd-Din Ahmad of Gujarat (d. 1589-90), who was celebrated for his profound learning and scholarly works on hadis and fiqh. His conversion to the Shattariyya order made it very popular from Gujarat to Burhan-pur. Shaykh Wajihu'd-Din's disciples introduced the Shattariyya order into Mecca and Medina, from where seventeenth-century pilgrims carried it to Syria, Indonesia, and Malaya.

263

In the reigns of Shahjahan and Aurangzib, Gujarat, Gwalior, Mandu, and Burhanpur were the principal Shattariyya centres. The Burhanpur Shattariyyas became prominent because Shaykh 'Isa, the well-known commentator on Ibnu'l Arabi, and his disciple, Shaykh Burhanu'd-Din, lived there. Shaykh Burhanu'd-Din would not see rich men and princes and even refused to allow the orthodox Prince Aurangzib, who was viceroy of the Deccan from 1636 to 1644 and 1652 to 1657, to visit him. Aurangzib again tried to obtain his blessing before leaving to march against Dara Shukoh, but the Shaykh refused to see him. Later, however, the Shaykh relented, agreeing to meet the Prince outside his khanqah when he went to pray and to bless him.⁶⁷ The Shaykh died in 1678-9, mourned by a large number of followers. The Shattariyya sufis attracted both scholars and common men as disciples and were eagerly sought as teachers of sufic mysteries outlined in the Jawahir-i khamsa.

THE QADIRIYYA ORDER

The Qadiriyyas originated from the great sufi Muhyiu'd-Din 'Abdul-Qadir Jilani (d. 1166). One of his descendants, Shaykh Muhammad al-Husayni, settled in Uch, and his son, Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Qadir (d. 1533), made the Qadiriyya order famous throughout the Panjab and Sind. 'Abdu'l-Qadir's son, Shaykh Hamid, was also very well known. After his death in 1571 his two sons, Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Qadir and Shaykh Musa, sought Akbar's decision on who should inherit their father's position. Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Qadir annoyed Akbar by offering prayers in the hall of audience at Fathpur instead of the mosque. The Emperor therefore favoured Shaykh Musa, who accepted a mansab and remained a lifelong supporter of Akbar and a friend to Abu'l-Fazl and his associates. Shaykh Musa, in his capacity as a mansabdar, was killed when suppressing a rebellion against Akbar in 1602.⁶⁸ Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Qadir retired to Uch, where he ran the silsila until he died.

Shaykh Hamid's disciple, Shaykh Dawud, became a great celebrity at Chati in Lahore because of his devoted followers. According to Bada'uni, each day the Shaykh converted fifty to one hundred Hindus and their families to Islam. The number is grossly exaggerated, for at this rate the whole of the Panjab would have been Islamicized in a short time. The story proves only the Shaykh's enthusiasm for proselytism.

In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries the Qadiriyya order

264

became famous for its teaching of the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrine in Dehli and its neighbourhood. Shah 'Abdu'r Razzaq (d. 1542) of Jhanjhana, not far from Dehli, was a very successful teacher of this doctrine. His disciple Shaykh Aman Panipati (d. 1550), wrote several treatises on the Wahdat al-Wujud. Although this was an advanced mystical philosophy not usually publicly discussed, Shaykh Aman claimed that he could convince anyone who was not prejudiced of its truth.⁶⁹ Among his favourite disciples was Shaykh Sayfu'd-Din, the father of Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq Muhaddis Dih-lawi.

Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq was born in 1551. He received his early education from his father and was initiated into the Qadiriyya order by Shaykh Musi in 1577. Although Shaykh Musa was friendly

to Akbar and his favourites, Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq despised them, considering them enemies of Islam. However, 'Abdu'l-Haqq's respect for Shaykh Musa did not wane, and he always praised his teacher. In 1586 the Shaykh left for Mecca for pilgrimage, returning in 1592. Dissociating himself from the court, he lived in Delhi. After Akbar's death he hoped that Jahangir would start a new policy by reinvigorating the shari'a. He wrote a short treatise, the *Nuriya-i Syltaniya*, in order to show Jahangir some aspects of Sunni polity. In 1619-20 Jahangir honoured him with an audience, and the Shaykh presented him with his biographical dictionary of Indian sufis, entitled the *Akhbaru'l-akhyar*.⁷⁰ Before his death, however, the Emperor turned against the Shaykh and his son, Nuru'l-Haqq, suspecting them of being friends with Prince Khurram, who was trying to seize the throne. Nuru'l-Haqq was banished to Kabul. The Shaykh was summoned to Kashmir, but, while he was in Lahore, the Emperor died. After Khurram's accession as Shahjahan, both father and son were allowed to return to Delhi. Nuru'l-Haqq was reappointed Qazi of Agra, and Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq lived in Delhi until he died in 1642. The Shaykh's fame rests on his works on hadis. His *Maddriju'n-Nubuwwah* is designed to satisfy both the mystics and the rationalists who misunderstood the holy and exalted status of the Prophet and minimized the importance of his miracles.

Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq's sufism was expressed as an unceasing wish to reconcile the exoteric with the esoteric, the shari'a with the sufi path, and fiqh with sufism. In his mystical writings he tried to cut across differences in sufic beliefs and practices and reminded sufis that dogmatism was alien to mysticism. To him a judicious combination of scholarship, sufic ecstasy, and ma'rifa (gnosis) was indispensable for a sufi, although he admitted that this ideal was rarely achieved. The Qadiri idea of a perfect life in the world,

265

according to the Shaykh, was to follow first the shari'a laws and the jurists' teachings and then the sufi path. Those who chose to become mystics without first obtaining mastery over fiqh had strayed from the safe path. It was possible for a scholar and an 'alim to obtain initiation into sufism and to achieve perfection in that realm, but after ecstasy and mystic illumination had filled a student, a return to scholarship was impossible.

To the Shaykh both the Jabriyya and Qadariyya were extremists. The former reduced men to inanimate stones by believing humanity was helpless and God was responsible for all their actions; while the Qadariyya maintained that men were completely responsible for their own actions, ignoring the divine will. Both, asserted the Shaykh, had strayed from the middle path.

The Shaykh also rejected the idea that rules of worship, prayers, and obedience to the shari'a laws were meant only for externalists and widows and that dervishes were naturally exempt. He asserted that these misguided sufis failed to remember that the laws had initially been laid down by the prophets and came in their final form from Muhammad, who by God's will had perfected human ethics.

Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq fiercely criticized those who lived dissolutely and ignored the shari'a laws in the name of *Wahdat al-Wujud*. He called them hypocrites who cried 'Hama Ust!' ('All is He!')

when their souls were foul and vicious. They used the Unity of Being as an excuse for licentious behaviour and grounds for abusing those sufis who lived virtuously.

In his famous letter to the Mujaddid, 'Abdu'l-Haqq wrote that Ibnu'l-'Arabi's explanation of the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrine was not based on revelation, since it was a subjective statement of his own convictions. The Shaykh believed that only the intelligible parts of Ibn al-'Arabi's books should be accepted by true Muslims, and these should be taken at their face value only, because God alone knew the author's true intentions.⁷¹

Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq's sons and disciples were both sufis and 'ulama' and followed the teachings in his khanqah closely. A mystical strand was nevertheless introduced into the Qadiriyya discipline by Miyan Mir and his disciples. They favoured a more emotional stance and many of them eventually left their careers as theologians and scholars to live as ascetics and hermits. Miyan Mir's ancestors Came from Siwistan in Sind. The Mir completed his formal education in Lahore and then turned to practical sufism. Accompanied by some disciples, he began to visit the graves of eminent sufis in Lahore. They would afterwards walk far into the jungle, where each would sit alone under a tree to meditate. At the prescribed

266

hours of obligatory prayer they would assemble for congregational prayers. Miyan Mir became very popular but in 1607-8, finding fame a burden, he left for a secluded life in Sirhind. There he fell ill and developed a chronic pain in his knee. He returned quietly to Lahore a year after leaving it, and although he moved to the quarter occupied by the gardeners, his presence soon became known. Miyan Mir tried to avoid his numerous admirers and returned any gifts, commenting that the giver had mistaken him for a beggar while in fact he was rich with God. Miyan Mir trusted God completely and even on hot Lahore evenings threw out all his water so that none remained for the next day. In 1620 the Emperor Jahangir, en route to Kashmir, invited Miyan Mir to visit his camp. Although he was greatly impressed with the Mir's mystical discourse, out of regard for his asceticism the Emperor dared present him with only the skin of a white antelope to pray on.⁷² He died in 1635."

The most renowned of Miyan Mir's disciples was Mulla Shah. He was born in a village near Rustaq in Badakhshan and settled down in India in 1614—15. He was a distinguished scholar and wrote very perceptive sufic literature. His most controversial work is a commentary on the Qur'an composed in 1647-8. Defining the infidel, he wrote:

Oh believer! The infidel who has perceived the Reality and recognized it [which is the acme of faith] is a believer. Conversely the believer who has not perceived the Reality and has not recognized it is an infidel. This shows that the spiritual elite see a believer and an unbeliever differently. The blessed are they who have seen the believer-infidel and have obtained the essence of faith through such an infidelity; the loser is one who has not met this type of kafir. Whatever is general knowledge and belief is commonplace and imperfect. Perfection is something different. Similarly 'ishq (love) and 'irfan (gnosticism) differ; everyone is found submerged in the ocean of love but love undoubtedly reminds one of dualism. 'Irfan involves a transcendence of the dichotomy between 'I and 'You'. It is easy for iconoclasts to smash idols but

the destruction of the ego depends on a deeply rooted spirituality. This attribute is not acquired through personal effort but by divine grace.⁷⁴

In 1639-40 both Prince Dara Shukoh and his sister Jahan Ara became Mulla Shah's disciples. The Emperor Shahjahan was also deeply devoted to him. Mulla Shah lived during the summer in Srinagar and in winter in Lahore. After Dara Shukoh was defeated by Aurangzib, the new Emperor sought to imprison Mulla Shah. He could find no excuse and had to be content with ordering him to reside permanently in Lahore, where he died in October 1661.

267

Aurangzib continually condemned Mulla Shah for discussing such an inflammatory theory of sufism as the Wahdat al-Wujud with his father and elder brother instead of keeping his mystical ideas for sufi cars only.⁷⁵

Dara Shukoh, Shahjahan's eldest son, was also his father's favourite, and the Emperor believed that he could make him his successor without much difficulty. Dara Shukoh therefore received a specialized literary education and military training, but he was no match for his brothers in political intrigue and far-sightedness.

Prince Dara Shukoh's interest in sufism aroused the attention of the Qadiriyya and Chishtiyya sufis. This in turn stimulated him further, and he became obsessed with the idea that the Indian sufi orders were the pivot on which all worldly and spiritual matters depended. Accepting the impossibility of a Muslim attaining his spiritual goal and final salvation without their aid, Dara Shukoh argued that all Muslims should be brought within the sufi discipline.⁷⁶ He attributed his own well-being to the Qadiriyyas.

From 1640 Dara Shukoh began to write sufi treatises. The *Sakinatu'l-awliyd'*, completed in 1642, includes a detailed biography of Miyan Mir and his disciples. He also wrote short sufi tracts, of which the *Hasandtu'l-'arifin* is devoted to the ecstatic sufi sayings. His growing interest in Hindu mysticism upset the orthodox. In his *Majma'u'l-bahrayn* (The Mingling of Two Oceans) he tried to prove that an appreciation of the deeper elements in sufism and Hindu mysticism could be achieved only by the elite of both religions. Comparing the Islamic sufi concepts and terminology with those of the Hindus, he proved they were identical. 'The *Majma'u'l-bahrayn* was singled out by the 'ulama' as justification for condemning Dara Shukoh to death. They accused him of calling infidelity and Islam 'twin brothers', even though the work in fact lies strictly within Ibnu'l-'Arabi's ideological framework. It asserts that the stage of universality and perfection was reserved for the Prophet Muhammad, and that divine transcendence was harmoniously blended with immanence. The Hindu equivalents are intended merely to reinforce the Muslim sufi beliefs. Dara's most important contribution was the Persian translation of the Upanisads, which, he said, contained subtle hints relating to the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrines.⁷⁷

Dara Shukoh's sister, Jahan Ara Begum, sometimes known as Begum Sahiba, was also devoted to Mulla Shah. In her early career she was interested in Chishtiyya sufism and she wrote a biography of Khwaja Mu'inu'd-Din Chishti and some of his disciples. She completed her

biographical account of Mullla Shah, entitled the Sahibiya, in 1641. It is a major contribution to sufi literature. Jahan

268

Ara served her father devotedly during his captivity and tried to allay his hatred of Aurangzib.⁷⁸ Aurangzib admired her and, after Shahjahan's death, sought her advice on state matters. She died unmarried in 1681. During Aurangzib's reign the Qadiriyya order lost the patronage of the court, but its general popularity did not wane.

THE NAQSHBANDIYYA ORDER

The Naqshbandiyya order, or the order of the Khwajas, originated in Transoxiana. Its distinctive features were formed by Khwaja 'Abdu'l-Khaliq (d. 1220) of Ghujduwan or modern Gizduvan, near Bukhara. The main principles of the order were controlled breathing and mental zikr, although strict observance of the shari'a was also strongly stressed. The order of the Khwajas came to be called the Naqshbandiyya following Khwaja Baha'u'd-Din Naqshband (d. 1389).

The Naqshbandiyya order was popularized in India by Babur, the first Mughal Emperor. Following in his father's footsteps, Babur was deeply devoted to the Naqshbandiyya leader Khwaja 'Ubaydu'llah Ahrar (d. 1490). The Khwaja was both a scholar and a political leader. His spiritual descendants supported Babur in his fight for the throne against Uzbeks. Some of them subsequently moved to India.

An important migrant to India was Khwaja Khawand Mahmud. He lived in Kashmir and visited the courts of Akbar and Jahangir. Later Jahangir stopped the Khwaja's anti-Shi'i and puritanically orthodox activities, and he moved from Kashmir to Kabul. The Khwaja returned to Kashmir during Shahjahan's reign, but the Emperor found his anti-Shi'i sermons a threat to law and order and expelled him. The Khwaja settled in Lahore, dying there in 1642. His son, Mu'inu'd-Din, was a scholar of both jurisprudence and sufism.⁷⁹

The sufi who did most to make the Naqshbandiyya order outstanding in India was Khwaja Baqi Bi'llah of Kabul. He was born in 1563 or 1564 and was initiated into Khwaja 'Ubaydu'llah Ahrar's Naqshbandiyya branch near Samarqand by a local leader. In 1599 he moved to Delhi and settled there. Many leading nobles from Akbar's court became his devotees. He died in 1603. Although he lived in India for only four years he left an indelible mark on its spiritual and intellectual life.

Two of his spiritual descendants, Shaykh Iahdad and Shaykh

269

Taju'd-Din Sambhali, left India when they failed to wrest the leadership from Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, the most talented disciple of Khwaja Baqi Bi'llah. Shaykh Ahmad was born at Sirhind in 1564. His father, Shaykh 'Abdul-Ahad, taught him when he was young and initiated him into the Chishtiyya and Qadiriyya orders. He seems to have visited Fathpur-Sikri some time before

the imperial court left for the Panjab in August 1585. Shaykh Ahmad was shocked by the dominance of rational and philosophical thinking at the court. In a discussion with Abu'l-Fazl he is said to have remarked that Imam Ghazali had written in the *Munqiz min al-zalal* that useful sciences which the philosophers claimed as their invention were astronomy and medicine, but these were in fact plagiarized from the books of the former prophets. The remaining sciences, such as mathematics, were of no use to religion. Abu'l-Fazl was annoyed at these remarks and declared that Ghazali was unreasonable. Each disliked the other. Like Shaykh 'Abdu'l-Haqq, Shaykh Ahmad also believed that Akbar's supporters were hostile to the idea of prophethood. He therefore wrote several short treatises on the subject. The *Isbdt al-Nubuwwa* asserts the importance of miracles and the prophets, particularly of Muhammad. Another treatise discusses the importance of the first clause of the Islamic credo, 'There is no God but Allah', while a third, *Radd-i Rawafiz*,⁸⁰ condemning the Shi'is, also became very popular. This treatise refutes the letter written by the Shi'i 'ulama' of Mashhad in response to the argument of the Transoxianan 'ulama' in about 1587 concerning the infidelity of the Shi'is.

In 1599 Shaykh Ahmad's father died, and he decided to leave for Mecca. He halted at Delhi and visited Khwaja Baqi Bi'llah, who initiated him into the Naqshbandiyya order. He revisited Delhi twice during the Khwaja's lifetime. Like his father, Shaykh Ahmad at first followed the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrines, but his sufi exercises under the Khwaja made him expert in the Wahdat al-Shuhud system. He wrote to the Khwaja discussing his mystical progress, and the Khwaja encouraged him to take an independent line.

The Shaykh also wrote to his contemporaries, particularly Shaykh Nizam Thanewari, urging him to abandon the Wahdat al-Wujud beliefs. After Akbar's death he wrote to various leading noblemen, urging them to persuade Jahangir to reverse Akbar's political and religious policies. He urged that *jizya* should be reimposed, that cow-slaughter should be resumed, and that positions in the finance department should no longer be offered to Shi'is and Hindus. Muslims should avoid infidels as they did dogs. In another letter he wrote that Shi'is were worse than infidels and that

270 271 272

trained by the Khwaja's talented disciple Khwaja Husamu'd-Din and by the Mujaddid himself, but they chose to follow Khwaja Baqi Bi'llah's Wahdat al-Wujud beliefs. Both Khwaja Kalan and Khwaja Khwurd wrote a number of short treatises in a bid to convert Khwaja Ma'sum and other Mujaddidiyyas to the Wahdat al-Wujud doctrines.⁸⁸ They did not oppose the use of sufi music, which the Mujaddid had strongly condemned. The eighteenth-century Shah Waliullah Dihlawi (d. 1762) was a devoted follower of Khwaja Khwurd's school of thought.

THE SHI'IS

The Shi'i sect was first established in India in Sind. Many Shi'is who had been persecuted by the Umayyad and 'Abbasid caliphate moved there. Around 982 the Sind governors, who had owed allegiance to the 'Abbasid caliphate, were replaced by governors whose allegiance was to the Egyptian Fatimid caliphs. The Fatimid were Isma'ili Shi'is and had introduced the hierarchical dais missionary system, which preached Isma'ili Shi'ism secretly.⁸⁹ In Sind they appear to have

converted both Hindus and Sunnis. Their missionaries had the gift of recognizing a promising candidate who would easily be converted. Initially they shook the potential convert's faith in his own religion and then taught him only as much Isma'ili doctrine as he would accept. 'Ali was presented to both Sunnis and Hindus as the perfect ideal for all mankind. It was not difficult to convince the Hindus that 'Ali was an incarnation of Vishnu. The Isma'ills interpreted their teachings esoterically and never bothered to change their Hindu converts' names, ancestral social customs, or laws of inheritance and succession.

In 1010 Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni tried ruthlessly to annihilate the Isma'ilis in Multan; they nevertheless emerged later as a powerful community. Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad of Ghur also fought them but was apparently killed himself by an Isma'ili assassin. In Raziyya's reign, a certain leader named Nur Turk, who had established a reputation for learning and piety, started a campaign against the Sunni 'ulama', condemning them as hostile to 'Ali. In 1237 he collected his devotees from Sind and Gujarat and attempted to seize power, but his coup d'etat was foiled by Raziyya. Nur Turk moved to Mecca and died there. The Isma'ili missionaries retired to Gujarat and Sind, where they continued preaching their religion. The south-eastern half of lower Sind remained Isma'ill, however, and the Sumra rulers of Sind practised the

273

Isma'ili faith until the fourteenth century before gradually changing to Sunnism.

The Bohra community of Gujarat was apparently converted to the Isma'ili sect in the thirteenth century. The stories of this conversion are legendary. As their main occupation was in trade and commerce, they maintained cordial relations with the Hindus and found no difficulty in trading in Gujarat and western India. A sub-sect of the Isma'ilis was known as the Khojas. Their da'is were also active missionaries who promoted cohesion within the sect.

The Isna' 'Ashari Shi'is⁹⁰ believed in the twelve Imams, the last being the hidden Imam Mahdi. The sect seems to have been introduced into India after the conversion of the Il-Khamd Mongol, Uljaytu Khudabanda (1304-14), to Shi'ism. Istikhan al-Dihlawi, the author of *Basdtinu'l-Uns*, a collection of Hindu tales compiled in 1326, credited Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq with making the Ja'fri faith (Isna' 'Ashari Shi'ism) strong in India. Its introduction brought to India Muharram, the mourning ceremonies commemorating Imam Husayn's martyrdom, which were initiated by the Shi'i immigrants and their converts. Sultan Firuz stated that the Rawafiz (Shi'is) produced their own religious books and treatises and continually sought converts. They also 'openly reviled and foully abused' the first three caliphs who succeeded the Prophet, the Prophet's beloved wife, 'A'isha Siddiqa, and all the respected sufis.⁹¹ According to Firuz the Shi'is also doubted the Qur'an's authenticity, claiming that the third Caliph, 'Usman, had included many baseless interpolations.⁹² Firuz tried unsuccessfully to crush Shi'ism by executing its partisans, burning Shi'i books, and censoring and threatening possible converts.

After Timur's invasion, the Shi'is and Sunnis with Shi'i leanings moved from Iran to the provincial courts in India, particularly to the Deccan. A leading Iranian sufi, Sayyid Muhammad Ashraf Jahangir Simnani (d. c. 1436), in an attempt to convert the Shi'is, arranged several debates against them. Yusuf Adil Shah of Bijapur (1490-1510) took the unprecedented step of

making Isna' 'Ashari Shi'ism the official religion of the sultanate. He may have been encouraged to do so by Shah Isma'il Safavi of Iran's (1501-24) decision to make Isna' 'Ashari Shi'i faith the state religion. Although 'Adil Shah replaced the names of Muhammad's successors with those of the twelve imams in the khutba,⁹³ he refused to allow the extremists to insult the Prophet's companions.

The Isna' 'Ashari Shi'i faith entered a new phase when Shah Tahir, son of Shah Raziu'd-Din, arrived in the Deccan from Iran. He converted Burhan Nizam Shah (1508-54) of Ahmadnagar to the Shi'i faith. Burhan sent Shah Tahir as an envoy to Bahadur

274 275

doctrines served as a stage in the transition from Sunnism to Isna' 'Ashari Shi'ism.

Mulla Bada'unI incorrectly gives us the impression that all the Iranis in Akbar's reign were Shi'is.⁹⁵ Among the leading nobles at Akbar's court who openly practised the Shi'i faith were Hakim Abu'l-Fath Gilani, Hakim Humam, and Hakim Fathu'llah Shirazi. All three were great scholars. Fathu'llah Shirazi's interest in mathematics and science has already been mentioned. Mulla Ahmad of Thatta, another famous Shi'i, was a historian and wrote a large portion of the *Tarikh-i Alfi*. He was assassinated in 1588 by a Sunni fanatic, Mirza Fawlad, in Lahore. After the Emperor Akbar had left for Kashmir, the Sunnis in Lahore exhumed his dead body and burnt it.⁹⁶ It is interesting that an important Shi'i leader, Mulla Muhammad Yazdi, combined with the Sunni 'ulama' to spearhead the movement to overthrow Akbar because of those ordinances that were heretical to them.⁹⁷

The most learned Shi'i of Akbar's reign was Qazi Nuru'llah Shustari. Mulla Bada'uni, who usually never mentions any Shi'i without abusing him, pays glowing tribute to the Qazi's piety and scholarship. As a qazi, Nuru'llah was impartial and just, and as a revenue administrator he was conscientious.⁹⁹ Nevertheless in September 1610 he was flogged to death on Jahangir's orders. The contemporary authorities give different reasons for his execution.¹⁰⁰ Since he had always been a well-known Shi'i, his faith could not have been the cause. The orthodox Sunni 'ulama' apparently claimed that his potential work, the *Ihqaqu'l-Haqq*, was subversive and posed a threat to Sunnism. The Qazi was undoubtedly executed solely to please the Sunni 'ulama'. Far more serious threats to Jahangir had been treated less drastically; Shaykh Nizam Thanewari, who had blessed the rebel Prince Khusraw, was merely banished to Mecca.¹⁰¹ The Shi'is consider the Qazi a martyr and a victim of the Emperor's bigotry. However, Jahangir did not subsequently adopt any anti-Shi'i policy and never even mentions the tragic incident in his *Memoirs*. Neither the Qazi's family nor the Shi'is were persecuted by Jahangir. Shahjahan appointed 'Ala'u'l-Mulk Husayni, one of the Qazi's sons, as tutor to Prince Shah Shuja' and sent him to Bengal with the Prince.¹⁰² Shuja's Shi'i leanings may be ascribed to 'Ala'u'l-Mulk's teachings.

Most of the Iranian mansabdars during the reigns of Jahangir, Shahjahan, and Aurangzib were Shi'is. However, they never exhibited their faith publicly and ran the Mughal administration on the basis of its recognized rules and traditions. Despite his Sunni orthodoxy and puritanism, even Aurangzib did not appoint mansabdars or award promotions on sectarian or religious

considerations.¹⁰³ Shi'i and Sunni conflicts frequently arose in Kashmir, but in other parts of the Mughal empire there were no sectarian tensions or riots. It was only in the wake of the disintegration of the empire in the eighteenth century that Shi'i proselytization was stepped up, and Shi'i—Sunni polemics and tensions increased. Shah Waliullah and his son, Shah 'Abdu'l 'Aziz, played a leading role in fomenting such sectarian conflicts.

VII FINE ARTS

PRE-MUGHAL ARCHITECTURE: THE FIRST PHASE

The excavations of Mansura—Brahmanabad and the ruins of Thatta in southern Sind tell us of the early mosque-building activity of the Arab rulers there. The palaces of Mahmud of Ghazni and of Mas'ud III (1099—1115) in Ghazni are largely Iranian in style, but the lavish use of marble in Ghazni palaces indicates an Indian influence. Parts of a minaret named after Mas'ud III and another called after Bahram Shah (1118-52) still survive. In the tenth and early eleventh centuries similar minarets with a polygon base and cylindrical shaft were built with great skill in north-west Iran. Nothing built by the Ghaznavid rulers in the Panjab province survives; possibly everything was destroyed by the Mongols.

The literary sources tell us that a variety of arts flourished under the Delhi sultans, but only architectural monuments are extant. Even in this sphere, the palaces and houses were grossly neglected after their original owners died. Their descendants chose different sites for their houses and sometimes demolished the earlier edifices for building materials. Only the mosques and mausoleums have been preserved - mainly out of religious sentiment.

Muslims can pray individually, but congregational prayers are preferred. When the Prophet moved from Mecca to Medina he built a mosque consisting of a hall with pillars of palm tree trunks and a roof of branches. It was extended, renovated, and rebuilt many times. After conquering a country, therefore, the first step the Muslim rulers took was to build a mosque there. Besides congregational prayers, mosques were used as assembly halls for religious and social needs, also serving as schools. Their structural plan was radically different from the Hindu temples. Each mosque contained a mihrab or niche indicating the direction for prayers or qibla. In India it is west, towards the Ka'ba, the cube-like ancient sanctuary in Mecca. On the right-hand side of the mihrab is the stepped pulpit or minbar (or mimbar) from which the khutba (sermon) is recited. Unlike in Christian churches, the covered area or hall is wider than it is deep. It is preceded by an open area, containing a water tank for ablution, and enclosed by walls whose main entrance in India is

Sultan Ghari (Sultan of the Cave), for the cenotaph is in an underground chamber. The roof is an octagonal platform; no trace remains of the pillared pavilion which it might have contained. The material for its fluted pillars, capitals, architraves, and corbelled pyramidal roof was taken from Hindu monuments, but the process of remodelling them to suit Muslim needs had already begun.

In the north-west corner of the Quwwatu'l-Islam mosque stands Iltutmish's mausoleum, built by himself before his death in 1235. The most interesting innovation is the use of squinches to transform the square base into the circular diameter of the corbelled dome. As the dome no longer exists, the richly sculptured motifs of both Islamic and ancient Indian origin on its walls and polylobed arches can easily be seen - they are open to the full daylight. The mausoleum is built of red and grey sandstone, the cenotaph of marble.

Balban's tomb, not far from the Qutb Minar, is in ruins, but it deserves mention for its unusual arches. These are not constructed by using horizontal courses after the ancient Indian structural technique but were built by means of voussoirs. This development opened up a new era in Indo-Islamic architecture.

'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji made some ambitious plans for enlarging the Qutb area. He wished to extend the mosque enclosure towards the north and east. He started building a rival Qutb Minar whose inner diameter was 27.43 metres; it was intended to rise to 145 metres, but he died before it was completed. The southern gateway to the Quwwatu'l-Islam mosque, known as 'Ala'i Darwaza (Gateway of 'Ala'u'd-Din), built in 1311, is a real monument to his glory. Undoubtedly he had heard of the celebrated Taq-i Kisra, the archway built by the Sasanid King Kisra Nushirwan at Ctesiphon in Iraq, and apparently some Iranian architects, who had moved to Delhi, translated his dreams into stone with the aid of Hindu stone-cutters and masons. The material used is red sandstone and white marble, with inlays of black marble and blue schist, indicating the contributions of Gujarat artisans.

The gateway is a cubical structure of 15.25 metres each side, covered by a flat dome. The three large pointed horseshoe arches supporting the dome are of dressed stone. They are true arches. On each side of the doorway there are two windows containing marble grilles one-third of their size. The facade on the north contains a semi-circular doorway of an ancient Indian pattern. The pendentives in the interior, which consist of simple inset arches, are remarkably beautiful. The adaptation of different styles in the 'Ala'i Darwaza has in no way undermined the proportion and harmony of the structure.

281

During the reign of the Tughluqs, ornamentation was replaced by lineaments and masses. The immense walls of Tughluqabad, built by Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq, are protected by circular bastions and crenellated parapets. The rough-hewn boulders used in the city's construction seem to have been quarried on the site. The Sultan's mausoleum, built in an artificial lake and connected with the citadel by an elevated causeway, looks like a fortress. Its plan is square, the walls rise upwards at acute angles, and lintels are set across the base of the three entrance archways to strengthen them. The hemispherical marble dome and the marble inlays running in broad bands around the building relieve the monotony of the grey and red sandstone structure.

The tomb was built by the Sultan himself, the angled walls inspired by the Perso-Arabian traditions of the Multan tombs. When Ghiyasu'd-Din Tughluq was governor of Dipalpur, or shortly after his accession to the throne of Delhi, he ordered the construction of a tomb for the remains of his patron sufi saint, Shaykh Ruknu'd-Din. This octagonal, double-storeyed brick structure stands on a terrace. The first storey is 15.25 metres high, and the second is 7.62 metres, while the dome rises 15.25 metres inside. Sunk into its walls are bricks inlaid with glazed tiles. Chiselled coloured bricks, carved timber, and terracotta make the walls shimmer and shine.

Many fulsome panegyrics praising Muhammad bin Tughluq's monuments were written, but because his edifices have not survived no comments can now be made. Firuz Tughluq's madrasa (seminary) reflects his scholarly ideals. The combination of Hindu columns, arch and lintel arcades, and kiosks is most striking. Sultan Firuz's tomb, however, has lost all its stucco and glazed tiles. On the whole, the structure is unpretentious and dignified.

Sultan Firuz was an indefatigable builder. Many of his citadels, mosques, and towns still stand, although now derelict. Most of them were built of rubble and plaster, with pillars, architraves, and brackets of local grey granite. The vigour and simplicity of these monuments with their tapering buttresses are a legacy from the early Tughluq architecture. Nevertheless, they are not entirely devoid of innovation. For example, the machicolations in the fortification at Kotla Firuz Shah and the pyramidal structure crowning the Asokan pillar demonstrate the Sultan's ingenuity. The mausoleum for Khan-i Jahan Maqbul, built by his son Jauna Shah in 1368, deserves mention for its structural innovations. Its outer enclosure contains the usual Tughluq strong walls and corner towers, but it is built on an octagonal plan instead of the usual square. Although the tomb at Sultan Ghari, already discussed, is

282 283 284

architecture. Sultan Hushang commenced the Jami' mosque in Mandu which his successor, Sultan Mahmud I, completed in 1440. It is built on a high plinth; the front is composed of rows of arched chambers. These arcades, the sculptured mihrab, and the imposing minbar with canopy in the columned hall of the prayer chamber create a majestic aura.

Near the Jami' mosque is the complex known as the Ashrafi Mahal (Gold Mohur Palace). It was hurriedly built of roughly prepared rubble, and a royal mausoleum was built projecting from the front of the seminary near the palace. Some time after 1443 Sultan Mahmud (1436-69) built a tower at Mandu to commemorate his victory over the Rana of Chitor. The Rana had earlier erected the Jaya Stambha (Victory Column) at Chitor to celebrate his defeat of Mahmud. The Rana's Jaya Stambha still stands, but only the basement of Mahmud's tower survives.

Hushang's (1405-35) mausoleum, which he had begun to build before he died, was finished by Sultan Mahmud (1436-69) around 1440. This square structure stands on a high plinth of about 30 metres and is faced with white marble. A cupola rests on each corner, and the roof is formed by a large central dome. Of all the monuments in Malwa the most bizarre is the Hindola Mahal. It consists of a long hall whose arches are supported by sloping buttresses. The resulting optical illusion led to its being called the 'Swinging Palace'. A marked contrast to it is the double-storeyed Jahaz Mahal (Ship Palace), which has an arcaded front, pillared inner rooms, and

luxurious bathing-halls. The open pavilions, kiosks, and corridors shed their reflection in two lakes near the palace. The palaces and pavilions associated with the romance of Baz Bahadur and Rupmati are delicately built, but they do not have any architectural or ornamental importance. The monuments in Chanderi broadly follow the Mandu traditions. The stilted domes and arches of the Jami' mosque there repeat the Mandu pattern, but the convoluted brackets supporting the eaves are predominantly local Hindu.

Raja Man Singh (1486-1517) built a famous palace in his capital, Gwalior. The entrance, or Elephant Gateway, is protected by two rounded bastions and consists of a circular archway surmounted by a guard room with a projecting balcony. The main palace has two storeys, but the rooms are small and dark with only low openings for light. The intricately moulded pillars, finely perforated lattices, and profuse carvings, however, make it a piece of decorative architecture.

The Gujarat monuments are known for their distinctive decorative features. The fourteenth-century edifices in Gujarat were built

285

from materials from Hindu and Jain monuments. Shaykh Farid's mausoleum at Patan is simply a Hindu temple with some additions and alterations. In Broach the pillared halls of three temples were rearranged to make a mosque. Beneath the lintel a pointed Islamic arch has been introduced. Its arched windows were fretted with stone tracery.

In the Jami' mosque in Cambay some structural improvements were made. As in the Arha'i Din Ka Jhunpra of Ajmir, the cloisters and entrance porches are relics from sacked Hindu shrines. The alternating narrow and broad courses of masonry seem to have been contributed by the Delhi architect. The mosque was built in 1235. The Jami' mosque built at Dholka eight years later is similar to the Cambay, but its turrets are the precursors of the tall slender minarets of the later Gujarat mosques.

The Cambay mosque also served as a model for that built by Ahmad Shah (1411—42) in the citadel of his newly founded capital, Ahmadabad. Here the mosque of Haybat Khan contains bastions similar to those in Sultan Firuz Tughluq's monuments, and the Sayyid 'Alam mosque anticipates some features of the celebrated Jami' mosque built in 1423 in Ahmadabad. On either side of the central arch of the latter stand lesser pointed arches flanked by colonnades, supported by round arches. The great pillars immediately within the central arch reach up to the massive architrave from which the central dome springs. The stylized trees on the niches, the hanging lamp and bell ornament, and the semi-geometrical decoration of the pierced and relief panels harmoniously blend Hindu and Jain features with Islamic ones.

Near by stands a gateway of three elegant arches of equal height: the Tin Darwaza, built in Ahmad Shah's reign. The buttresses projecting from the piers are richly carved. The tomb of Ahmad Shah is in an enclosure to the east of the Jami' mosque, and the contours of its arches are similar to those of the Tin Darwaza. The arrangement of its parapets is most elegant. Farther east is the Rani Ka Hujra, or the Tomb of the Queens, consisting of an open court enclosed by an arched screen with columned cloisters both inside and out. The marble cenotaphs are richly

carved and inlaid with metal and mother-of-pearl. Some nine kilometres south-west in Sarkhij are the mausoleum and mosque built in memory of the great sufi Shaykh Ahmad-i Khattu Maghribi (d. 1446). The complex was completed in about five years, and many palaces, a pavilion, and gateways were subsequently added by various religious people. The earlier mosque is marked by elegant pillars arranged in groups of unending variety. The central chamber is surmounted by an imposing dome.

286

The greatest builder in Gujarat was Sultan Mahmud Begarha (1459-1511). He founded three major cities: Batwa, Mahmudabad, and Champanir. He adorned all of them, and Ahmadabad as well, with mosques, tombs, and palaces. The arrangement of arches in the mausoleums of the period make them distinctive monuments. The Rani Sipri mosque, built in Ahmadabad in 1514, is an exquisite gem in both plan and detail. Although not large, its matchless beauty lies in its symmetry and decorative rhythm. The most famous of all the Gujarat monuments are the perforated screens which fill in the tympanums of the arches of the small mosque of Sidi Sayyid. The mosque has a unique feature - pierced stonework depicting patterns of natural trees and foliage, normally found only on brass and silver.

The Muslims built mosques and tombs out of the rubble, brick, and stone from Hindu temples in Kashmir also. From time immemorial, however, wood was the principal building material in Kashmir, which it still is. The Muslims in Kashmir, as in other places, also incorporated many ancient Hindu architectural features into their monuments. The double-storeyed wooden mosque of Mir Sayyid 'All Hamadani stands on the masonry foundation of an ancient temple on the right bank of the Jhelam river in Srinagar. Its low pyramidal roof is surmounted by an open pavilion from where the faithful are still called to prayer and over which rises the steeple with its finial. The Jami' mosque, founded by Sultan Sikandar, was built three times - in 1479, 1620, and 1674. It was rebuilt each time without changing the plan. The lofty colonnades around the court are screened by an arched facade, and each of the 378 pillars in the colonnades is made from a single deodar trunk.

The buildings in the Deccan are equally impressive. The Daula-tabad mosque, built in 1318, is the earliest surviving specimen of its kind in the region. Its prayer chamber stands on 106 pillars and is roofed by a flattish corbelled dome. A few Irani architects moved to Gulbarga and in collaboration with some Delhi and local architects created the Bahmanid school of architecture, which concentrated on mass and ornamentation. The remains of Gulbarga fort show that it was a massive structure. The Jami' mosque in the fort, which has escaped destruction, is unique in many respects. In it the Indian and Iranian elements are so intertwined as to be indistinguishable. Unlike other Indian mosques, the whole structure is a vast pillared hall covered by a roof. There is no open courtyard. Large domes overhang each corner, while a central dome, raised on a clerestory, covers the mirhab on the west side. The entire roof is covered by small domes arranged in seven rows. The tombs of the

287

Bahmanid kings largely follow the Tughluq style. Many mosques built in the Bahmanid region are still intact.

The fort and palaces in Bidar were built on the edge of the lateral scarp, overlooking the plain. They are also in a dilapidated condition, and only the rough cast remains; but they were finished in lime plaster and polished. The Iranian frescoes and the gold, red, and blue inscriptions, painted by Ahmad Shah Wali (d. 1436), are most elegant. The most prominent monument is the madrasa (seminary) of Mahmud Gawan, built in 1472. It contains four three-storeyed wings enclosing an open court; at each corner of the facade stood two imposing minarets in three stages. Despite the magnitude of the elevation, the homogeneity and proportion of the structure is remarkable. The surface was decorated with brightly coloured encaustic tiles of geometrical, floral, and calligraphic patterns, only a few of which now survive.

The chevron patterning on the encaustic tilework and bold bands of Qur'anic verses in the Chand Minar, built at Daulatabad in 1435, make it a typically Iranian monument. It is slightly tapered and rises in four stages to 30.50 metres.

In Amhadnagar the octagonal tomb of Salabat Khan, a minister under Sultan Murtaza I (1565-88), known as Chand Bibi's palace, stands at the centre of an octagonal terrace on a picturesque hill site. The grandeur and elegance of the later Bahmanid style were also repeated in the 'Adil Shahi monuments in Bijapur. Their arches are flattened, like those of the Tudor style in England, and their domes emerge from a band of conventional petals, bulging slightly as they rise. The most remarkable is the Gol Gumbad (Round Dome) built by Muhammad 'Adil Shah (1627-56) for his mausoleum. The plain outlines of the square structure, which supports the gigantic central dome, are broken by an enclosing row of small arches all around. Crowned with crenellations at the corners, and attached to the structure, stand six-sided towers with seven storeys of little arches, surmounted by bulbous domes. All these elements, however, are relegated to the background by the enormous hemispherical dome whose external diameter is about 44 metres - the largest dome in India.

The Qutb-Shahi monuments in Golkonda also incorporate Indo-Iranian features from the Bahmani and Bijapuri kingdoms. They are distinguished by large arches, ornamental fagades, corner minarets, and bulbous domes. They are generally built of ashlar stone and brick-and-lime masonry. The foliage and entwining creepers of the Qutb-Shahi stucco decorations exhibit considerable ingenuity, while the encaustic tiles and mother-of-pearl inlay in the stones are exquisite. Some of the Golkonda tombs are double-

288

storeyed; 'Abdu'llah Qutb Shah's (d. 1672) mausoleum is a huge two-storeyed monument. The profusion of little minarets and cupolas suggests Hindu influence. The archway in Hyderabad called the Char Minar (Four Minarets), however, is designed to symbolize the Shi'i faith of the Qutb-Shahi rulers. The four stately minarets, about 49 metres high, balance the four archways, one on each side of the square structure. A double screen of arcades of diminishing size helps to make the Char Minar more a piece of sculpture than of architecture. The mosque on the western end of the open roof is the embodiment of tranquillity and repose; it was completed about 1595.

To the north of the Char Minar are four monumental portals measuring double the height of its arches. They are known as Char Kaman.

Vijayanagara, on the south bank of the river Tungabhadra, is now in ruins, but the literary descriptions from both Irani and European visitors are impressive. It was 'as large as Rome'; the king's palace enclosed 'a greater space than all the castles of Lisbon'. The city was surrounded by seven fortifications. The hall of audience comprised three spacious stages at different levels and was reached by elaborate flights of steps. Although the halls and palaces no longer survive, some palace remains suggest the architectural glory of Vijayanagara. In a building known as the Elephant Stables, the Hindu and Muslim styles blend harmoniously. Its Islamic arches and facades are attractively balanced by the projected balconies on brackets. The Hindu resurgence of the period is reflected in the large number of temples that are built. The continuous panels of sculpture on the walls illustrate various myths and legends, while the carved pillars constitute a major architectural scheme in the temple complex. In many pillars the shafts are merely the central core of involved groups of statues, chiselled entirely in the round, with a horse as the most conspicuous element. Varieties of lotuses with large seed-pods dominate the ceiling slab. The temple of Hazara Rama is an exquisitely carved small building and seems to have been the private chapel of the Vijayanagara kings. A group of exuberantly carved and highly polished squat stone pillars support the roof. Even the brackets, beams, and undersides of the ceilings are elaborately ornamented. In 1513 the Vitthalasvami temple was planned on a grandiose scale of about three times the size of Hazara Rama but it could not be completed. The main complex of this unfinished temple is a long rectangular structure, and the entire scheme, raised over a profusely ornamented stylobate, ends in deep roll cornices surmounted by parapets and pyramidal rooflets in brick and plaster. The mandapas or the halls in some of the Vijayanagara temples are very large. The

289

Kalyana mandapa at Vellore is the richest and most beautiful structure of its kind. Its piers not only exhibit the exuberance and ingenuity of the sculpture but also demonstrate the vigour and forcefulness of the kingdom.

THE LODI AND SUR MONUMENTS

Returning again to north India, we find that Khan-i Jahan Maqbul's tomb inspired the Sayyid rulers (Mubarak and Muhammad) and Sikandar Lodi to build octagonal tombs for their earthly remains. Sikandar's tomb stands in an extensive walled enclosure with an ornamental gateway. The inner and outer shell of the masonry, with a space left between the two in the dome of Sikandar's tomb, marks the beginning of the double dome. The technique was perfected by the Mughals. During the reigns of the Sayyids and Lodis also many square-plan tombs were erected, but the Sur family tombs at Sahasram in the Shahabad district of Bihar are all octagonal. The architectural defects in early Sur tombs were remedied in Sher Shah's own mausoleum, which was built on a large lake and connected by a causeway to the guard rooms on the northern shore. The high plinth over which the massive octagonal tomb rises in three diminishing levels contains double stairways framed by corner pavilions and recessed windows. The crenellated parapet continuing the projecting eave of the arched first stage of the mausoleum has pillared kiosks of

open pavilions in the corners. This serves to balance the magnitude and dimensions of the structure. The second storey is a plain wall with a pillared kiosk in each right angle, and the sixteen-sided drum of the dome forms the third level. The imposing dome and artistic finial give this ponderous structure a unique fascination. The interior of the mausoleum is simple; the ascending rows of arches diminish in height but increase in number, and the decoration is confined to the inscriptions on the western wall.

Sher Shah died before he could complete the capital he planned at Delhi, now known as the Purana Qal'a (Old Fort). The gateways of the bastioned walls are built of red sandstone, picked out with white marble and tastefully embellished with blue glaze. Only the mosque built by Sher Shah and the bastion-type structure known as the Sher Mandal survive. The flatness in the curve towards the crown of the arches in the mosque's facade and the co-ordination of the archway's members are very artistic and pleasing.

290

THE MUGHAL MONUMENTS

Babur mentions his continued interest in erecting mosques and planting gardens in his autobiography. He built a mosque at Panipat and another at Sambhal, east of Delhi, but he was dissatisfied with the one he built in the old Lodi fort at Agra.³ Humayun, in the first years of his reign, also erected many new buildings, but Sher Shah destroyed Humayun's monuments.

The history of Mughal architecture therefore starts with Akbar. In 1564 Humayun's widow, Hajji Begum, settled in Delhi. There she built a tomb for her husband, under the supervision of Iranian architects, which synthesized Iranian and Indian architectural characteristics. In a large square garden, protected by high walls, an extensive sandstone square terrace, 6.71 metres in height, with arcaded sides, was built. In its centre stands Humayun's tomb, square in plan and faced with red sandstone picked out with marble. In the middle, facing each side, are four great arches, behind which open the tomb entrances. The space between each arch and the wall behind it is filled with Iranian conventional dappled work. Inside the tomb each corner is cut off and provided with an arch; and over all rises a magnificent dome, clad in white marble, dipping sharply to culminate in a delicate point. The vaulted ceiling of the main hall is covered by a second marble shell, making it a double dome. This device allows the ceiling to be hemispherical, whatever the outer shape of the dome.

In 1565 Akbar ordered the construction of a fort at Agra, containing several palaces. The north-western escarpment of the Sikri ridge was quarried for these works. Two massive octagonal towers flank the main entrance of the fort's walls on the west. It is known as the Delhi Gate. The front consists of an archway; at the back are arcaded terraces. The guard rooms are inside the gate. It is an improved model of the Elephant Gateway in Gwalior fort. Unfortunately the two free-standing stone elephants, which Akbar installed at the gate, were removed by Aurangzib in 1669. He was unable, however, to interfere with the inlay panels above the second storey depicting fabulous animals - partly lion, partly horse, partly elephant, and some partly bird and duck. Other animal motifs were too prominent to be ignored but were also not destroyed. In fact, in previous centuries, a large number of monuments in Iraq and Iran were adorned with animal

and human figures, yet the orthodox Muslims did not object. Aurangzib finally bowed before cultural realities and left the animal forms in decorations untouched.

291

None of the 'five hundred buildings of masonry, after the beautiful designs of Bengal and Gujarat', which according to Abu'l-Fazl were built in the fort, survive.⁴ They were doubtless swept away by Shahjahan, when he too altered the Delhi gate. The early Turkic conquerors had resorted to the trabeate style for want of master-masons trained in constructing arches and domes, but Akbar deliberately chose it, hoping to inject a Hindu atmosphere into his architectural enterprises. The Jahangiri Mahal in the Agra fort is the only surviving monument there from Akbar's reign. It is an uneasy blending of the design of the Man Mandir with a Muslim palace, and the halls and rooms are irregular and confused. The carvings on the red sandstone brackets and balconies are largely patterned after wood chiselling. The brackets on the oblong top-storey chamber, which is surrounded by verandas, passages, and staircases and stands to the west of the central quadrangle, are, however, exquisitely carved with peacock and serpent motifs. The repetitions of geese, flamingos, and lotuses in the carvings throughout this storey make it a predominantly Hindu living-room. Early in his reign Akbar built a palace fortress at Lahore. In 1570 he constructed another at Ajmir and in 1583 he completed a massive fort at Allahabad. In Fathpur-Sikri, where Akbar lived for about twelve years, most of his important buildings have survived. The Jami' mosque there was completed in 1571—2. It was supervised by Akbar's patron saint, Shaykh Salim Chishti, and it took five years to build. It is the principal and largest monument at Fathpur. Towards the rear of the vast courtyard is the majestic arch of the central prayer chamber with three mirhabs in each of its seven bays. In 1580—1 Shaykh Salim Chishti's tomb was completed, constructed on the spot where the Shaykh had prayed. The tomb was partly faced with marble. In the early years of Jahangir's reign, the outer marble screens were added, and the Walkway was paved also with marble. In the south-east corner is a particularly fine marble screen, offering a sober yet delicate pattern of hexagons enclosed within an interlacing eight-foil ornament and, in turn, enclosing elaborate eight-pointed stars. The hollow brackets supporting the steeply sloping stone eaves are so finely worked that they suggest a supple yet stylized snake, a rare achievement in stonework. Over the cenotaph in the interior rises a most remarkable and beautiful catafalque. It has a framework made of - or, at any rate, veneered thickly with - ebony, supported at the four corners by elaborate capitals and surmounted by a domed roof.

In 1573 Akbar added the Buland Darwaza (Lofty Gateway) to the mosque, to commemorate his Gujarat conquests. It was completed two years later. From the pavement in front of it, to the

292

apex of the central pinnacle screening it, the arch of the Buland Darwaza is 40.84 metres high. The pavement itself is raised on vaulting 13.52 metres above the level of the road below; so the total height of the Buland Darwaza from the ground is 53.63 metres. It has few equals in size in Islamic architecture. Its large arched recesses in the centre, and its range of kiosks and cupolas, partly screened by perforated parapets, ensure the archway's artistic success, even from the decorative viewpoint.

The complex of palaces, offices, and halls of audience in Fathpur-Sikri also contains innumerable gems of structural and decorative ingenuity. The Anup Talao (Peerless Pool) was completed in 1575. At its north-east angle is a small but very decorative structure. Unfortunately, only the principal room and the 'lean-to' stone roof of the veranda survive. It has often been described as a 'superb casket'; the elaborate carvings on its brackets, friezes, coupled columns, pillars, pilasters, and piers make it appear the work of woodcarvers from Kashmir rather than of stone-cutters. The luxuriant vegetation and the Chinese cloud forms on the dado panels were inspired by miniature paintings. In fact many stone-cutters at Akbar's court were also accomplished miniature artists. The structure itself is popularly known as the Turkish Sultana's palace, but no lady could ever live in the neighbourhood of the halls meant for imperial use, since they were so public. Most of the identifications at Fathpur-Sikri, as at other palaces, are figments of the ignorant guide's imagination. Although many structures towards the end of the vast courtyard have disappeared, two elegant chambers survive. One of the chambers is dominated by a massive and richly carved pillar which supports one of the most fantastic red stone capitals ever conceived. Possibly it was one of the treasuries built, according to Abu'l-Fazl, by Akbar, and not the Ibadat-Khana or the Diwan-i khass.⁵

The ladies' palaces also occupy a vast area. The principal haram sard, or ladies' palace, is known as Jodh Ba'i's palace. Its exterior is solemn and massive, and the entrance, once guarded by eunuchs, is double-storeyed. The passage leading to the harem passes through a dark vestibule, and turns sharply to the right, and then left, to prevent anyone seeing straight into the spacious quadrangle. The bases, columns, and capitals of the pillars in the central rooms are carved in the Hindu manner with small lozenges, pellets, semi-lotus rosettes, and bell-and-chain ornaments; the columns, first square in section, become octagonal, then sixteen-sided, and finally circular. However, there are marked differences in style and execution, despite a strong family resemblance in all of them.

A five-storeyed structure known as Panch Mahal (Five-Storeyed Palace)

293

was originally connected with the principal ladies' palace. It seems to have been designed to allow the ladies to take the cool air unseen. It is also a unique structure, entirely columnar, consisting of four storeys of decreasing size disposed asymmetrically upon a ground floor, which contains eighty-four columns. The carvings on each of these columns, representing different mythological stories, are still unexplained. To the north-east of the principal ladies' palace stands an elegant house which was splendidly decorated throughout with paintings glowing with gold. It is now known as Maryam's Palace, after Akbar's mother, Maryam Makani, but the golden paintings are commemorated in its other name - the Golden Palace. The carvings on the north side bracket show Rama being worshipped by Hanuman; another shows a pair of fat geese, while yet others depict elephants, geese, and rosettes.⁶ Although many other structures in the complex are also attractive, they cannot match the double-storeyed northern palace for the imperial harem, wrongly called Birbal's house. Its central core consists of four square rooms, of which the north-western and south-eastern ones have a domed upper room above, placed corner to corner. Each pilaster is finely carved in low relief with a pleasant geometrical pattern. The bases are cut with a deep double semicircle enclosed in a fan-like halo. A Hindi inscription on a pier at the western

side of the house says that the building was erected in Samvat 1629 to 1572. Few visitors notice this Hindu mason's pride in his work.

Before his death Akbar began to build his own tomb at Sikan-dara, near Agra. In 1607 Jahangir visited the site and decided that the work was not 'unique in the world'.⁷ He therefore ordered some experienced architects to make a new plan, which he finally approved. It was finished in 1613 and, out of respect for Akbar's cultural ideals, it deliberately departed from the prevalent domed structures. Upon a high foundation rests an edifice of three diminishing arcaded galleries furnished with small pavilions, some of which are roofed with oblong pyramids. The fourth storey is open to the air and paved with white marble; in the middle stands the Emperor's cenotaph. The enclosure is walled with perforated marble screens surmounted by a frieze upon which the ninety-nine names of Allah are carved. The Emperor's corpse was buried in a vault deep in the ground. The inlay on the main gateway contained Christian motifs, but Aurangzib had them plastered over. The present gateway is an early twentieth-century structure.

In 1628 Nur Jahan, Emperor Jahangir's wife, completed a tomb for her father, I'timadu'd-Dawla, by the Jamuna at Agra. In form it is not unlike a Turkish kiosk, being a double-storeyed and square

294

marble structure. The central chamber, containing the cenotaph, is surrounded by a series of rooms and passages corresponding to an enclosed veranda. It is finished with four short but elegant minarets, standing on each corner of the mausoleum platform. Earlier Mughal monuments were adorned with white and black marble, but the art called *pietra dura*, the technique of inlaying mosaic with hard and precious stones such as lapis, onyx, jasper, topaz, and cornelian, commenced with I'timadu'd-Dawla's mausoleum. The profusion of wine-vessels, cups, flower vases, and scent bottles depicted on the walls offered many opportunities to the designer to display his ingenuity. The handles of some wine-vessels are serpents with birds' beaks, some are dragon-shaped, others depict a lion motif, and some are plain. Animal motifs on the inlays of flower vases include dancing peacocks, peacocks accompanied by peahens, fish, and even mice. Geometrical patterns and floral designs, however, predominate. The excessive decoration on the dados in the interior reflects the designer's immaturity in planning. Later on the Mughal designers learned to restrain themselves. Indeed, I'timadu'd-Dawla's tomb marks the transition from Jahangir's ornamental extravagance to Shahjahan's finesse.

At Shahadra near Lahore, the elegant octagonal minarets in five stages, on the corners of the lofty platform of Jahangir's tomb, hide the mausoleum's structural defects. The marble pavilion in the middle of its terraced roof was a graceful addition but it no longer survives. Near Jahangir's tomb stands the mausoleum of Shahjahan's father-in-law, Asaf Khan, who died in 1641. Its marble facing has disappeared, but the surviving ornamentation of tile-work on the exterior walls indicates the intended contrast with the marble. The grandeur of the monument has not waned.

Shahjahan greatly admired white marble and he destroyed earlier buildings in Agra fort to make way for his own monuments, which used it more extensively. He built a broad marble-paved

embankment between some rocky hills at Ajmir to hold an artificial lake which he decorated with a series of elegant kiosks. He also constructed various palaces at Ajmir and Delhi. The Diwan-i 'Amm (Hall of Public Audience), which he built in Agra fort on his accession in 1627, set a model for posterity, and his own subsequent buildings are also derived from it. Its square pillars support ornate arches edged with small projections which incline into small ogees. The surface of the pillars and the walls is panelled with shallow arches in the same style. The hall itself has elegant double columns and a Bengal-style curved roof covered in copper. The roof is finished, rather artificially, with bronze finials projecting at right angles from the curve. The design was repeated in the curved

295

overhanging eaves on the pavilion on the top of the Musamman Burj or 'Eight-Sided Bastion'. The Burj's dados are framed by inlays which resemble the Mughal painted borders. On the dados themselves the carved plants merge naturally with each other. The effect of a stylized garden is reinforced by the fountain in the lotus basin on one of the verandas.

Shahjahan's most celebrated building is the Taj Mahal on the left bank of the Jamuna in Agra. Built as a tomb for his wife, Mumtaz Mahal (d. 1631), it marks the culmination of the evolving garden tombs. The three-storeyed gate of the Taj, opening to the south, has a massive archway. The upper lines in the ornamental inscriptions decorating the archway, which one would expect to appear smaller, seem just the same size as the lower ones.

The tomb itself, set in a lovely garden and clad in glistening white marble from Makran in Jodhpur, is reflected in a long narrow pool of water in front. On the other side it overlooks the flowing river Jamuna. To the west rises a contrasting red sandstone mosque, and opposite stands its duplicate, a hall known as a jawab (answer). Framing the tomb are four graceful minarets crowned with eight-windowed cupolas, their white marble revetment picked out with black stone in imitation of mortar. The dome, bulging gently before dipping towards its gilded bronze finial and rising from a plain broad band fringed with conventional petals, dominates the tomb. The square tomb has chamfered corners, framed by two broad arches. The Taj's magnificent recessed central arch leads into a smaller arch containing an entrance door and filled with marble screens. This opens into the dark octagonal tomb chamber, lit only by the light filtering through the screens and the high glazed windows. Another elegant marble screen encloses the finely cut marble cenotaphs of the Emperor and Empress. The chamber's hemispherical ceiling is the low face of the second dome enclosed within the outer shell. The conventional foliage on the outer walls of the cenotaph and their surrounding screen is depicted in the finest pietra dura work and bas-relief. The impression of richness, surpassing that of I'timadu'd-Dawla's tomb, derives from the increased use of semi-precious stones such as lapis lazuli and cornelian, although the work is in fact not so ornate.

This is the most famous building in India and is known throughout the world. Its glory springs from a perfection of balance and proportion such as few other buildings anywhere possess. On passing through the gateway the first sight of this great white tomb, reflected in the pool and surrounded by a beautiful garden, produces an intense aesthetic thrill that no other building can give. This is not the ordinary world; rather, it reflects the heaven of the

Islamic mystic, a perfection and security beyond space and time. Most other tombs are earthbound by comparison.

Shahjahan next concentrated on devising the palace buildings which would overlook the Jamuna and run along the eastern wall of his new fort at Shahjahanabad (Delhi). He built an elegant Diwan-i 'Amm which contains a two-storeyed pavilion studded with semi-precious stones. The Peacock Throne stood on its upper storey. The restrained decoration was intended to create an atmosphere of awe and grandeur so that the mansabdars, standing, with bated breath, would concentrate their gaze on the glittering throne and the pietra dura glowing in the alcove above it.

The adjacent Diwan-i Khass (Hall of Private Audience) has an arcaded facade of five arches. It contains an exquisite marble screen surmounted by a black inlay depiction of the scales of justice. It is extremely well proportioned, and its massive piers, supporting foliated arches, harmonize with the flat roof they carry. Both the walls and ceilings were decorated with gold, and pietra dura inlays added to the brilliance of its walls. This unique structure, where gold ran riot, was nevertheless relegated to the background by the Rang Mahal (Delightful Palace), the Emperor's private apartment. Unfortunately all traces of the beautiful ornamentation in the Rang Mahal have long since disappeared. A marble water-channel connected with the Nahr-i Bihisht (Canal of Paradise), which entered the fort through a sluice, runs through the central apartment of the Rang Mahal. Its dry fountains, enclosed in lotus-shaped basins, earlier sprinkled water in the shape of a flower. Little remains of this lost glory, but the literary sources pay glowing tribute to the splendour of the Rang Mahal.

In 1644 work commenced on the Jami' Masjid. It dominates the landscape, rising on a lofty terraced base on sloping ground, with three majestic flights of steps leading to the gates of its great courtyard. A row of little kiosks, finished with white marble cupolas, edge the gateway parapets. The prayer chamber rests on massive piers and is covered by three large white domes. Although they look most impressive from behind, rising above the plain red wall with engrailed arches in low relief, from the front they become confused with the surrounding parapets, because the band at their base is too narrow.

The Moti Masjid (Pearl Mosque) in Agra fort, built in white marble by Shahjahan in 1654, is also disproportionate, and so is Aurangzib's marble mosque built in Delhi fort in 1659, although it is a charming miniature. Its slightly exaggerated round domes and the awkward disparity between height and breadth hint at an impending decline in aesthetic standards. The Badshahi mosque at

Lahore, despite its grandeur, illustrates the final degeneration of Mughal architecture. The row of foliated arches seems too small to support the vast facade of the prayer chamber, while the three mediocre bulbous domes hover uncertainly, too small to be ignored and not large enough to merit attention. The corner minarets, recently restored, however, have helped to integrate the building.

MUGHAL GARDENS

Gardens were very popular in Iran, and Babur transplanted his love for them into Indian soil. Remnants of his Aram Bagh, or Garden of Repose, can still be seen in Agra. The Mughal formal square garden is divided into quarters by paved paths radiating from a central square on which a pavilion usually stood; hence the name 'fourfold plot' or char bagh. Gardens were included in all Mughal palaces and tombs, and many were laid out purely for enjoyment. Shahjahan completed the Shalimar Gardens in Lahore in 1637, and Jahangir cultivated many in his favourite summer retreat, the Vale of Kashmir. Fountains normally featured in these gardens; one can imagine how delightful and fresh they must have appeared to the Mughals seeking shelter from the heat and dust of Hindustan.

PAINTING

The art of painting was condemned by orthodox Muslim opinion, which considered that it blasphemously imitated God's creativity. It was therefore not fostered by religion, but depended upon royal patronage. In Iran, which had a long artistic heritage in this sphere, it developed rapidly.

The invasion of Iran by the nomadic Mongols, in the first quarter of the thirteenth century, resulted in the introduction of a strong Chinese influence. In the fourteenth century Iranian painters merely imitated the Chinese landscapes and confined their art to illustrating history, epic, and romance. They had no sense of perspective or depth. Their figures were two-dimensional stereotypes, and their settings were formal and stylized.

Shiraz (in southern Iran) was an important artistic centre in the fifteenth century. Many painters moved first there and then on to the Indian Muslim courts in Gujarat, Malwa, Jaunpur, and the

298

Deccan. This movement brought about the cross-fertilization of Shirazi and Indian art techniques which upset the rigid application of theoretical rules to contemporary Indian painting. A major watershed in Perso-Islamic painting is the Ni'mat-nama, or Cookery Book, illustrated in Malwa in the early sixteenth century. In it the Indian rounded body contours are displayed against a background of Shirazi formalized leaves and luxuriant vegetation.

The stiff Iranian forms also underwent considerable change. Bihzad (1450-1536), a painter at the Timurid court of Sultan Husayn Mirza of Herat, after studying human and animal life, fostered a naturalistic approach. The conventional stereotypes gave way to lively expressive figures in spatially organized groups. Bihzad was gifted with skill and originality in line drawing. His painting was distinctive in the frequency of low-toned browns and the lively combination of blues and greens with touches of bright red. His colour schemes were conventional, however, and the skies remained unchanged. His techniques were developed by his disciples, but none of them attained his mastery. Although he signed his miniatures, forgeries still appeared.

Bihzad's school remained influential, and a considerable number of talented Iranian painters, representing its best trends, gathered around Humayun during his exile in Iran, although his resources were slender. They included Sayyid 'Ali, Mulla 'Abdu's-Samad, and Mulla Dust Muhammad. 'Abdu's-Samad was appointed tutor to the young Prince Akbar by Humayun. Akbar enjoyed painting although he neglected his more formal lessons.

In about 1567 Akbar ordered the preparation of a lavishly illustrated manuscript of the Persian translation of the Hamza-nama, the celebrated Arab epic about a legendary Hamza (not the Prophet's uncle, Hamza bin 'Abdu'l-Muttalib). Sayyid 'Ali and 'Abdu's-Samad were appointed to lead a group of roughly one hundred painters. The project took fifteen years to complete, and most of the Indian painters who founded the Mughal school were trained during that period. By the end of the sixteenth century they had successfully synthesized ancient Indian plasticity with the Bihzad school's symmetry and proportion.

The Hamza-nama had 1,004 illustrated pages in its twelve volumes. The extant pages in Eastern and Western libraries provide a fascinating study of early Mughal painting in India, which initially followed the Bihzad school. Paintings made in the second half of Akbar's reign exhibit elements peculiar to India in costumes, buildings, and plant life, and a Mughal-Rajput colouring pervades the Iranian-Arab environment. The Tuti-nama (in the Chester Beatty Library, Dublin), illustrated in the 1580s, also

299

contains vivid representations of plants, flowers, animals, and men.

Mughal miniature painting, although based on the Iranian style, derives its distinctive character from indigenous painters whom Akbar employed. Until recently, apart from the N'imat-nama, some Jain paintings, and the continuation of Pala and Kashmir art in Nepal and Tibet, no specimens of Indian painting between the thirteenth and sixteenth centuries were available. Now, however, some illustrated manuscripts by the court painters to the provincial rulers in Malwa and Jaunpur have been discovered. These show how painting has always been part of Indian culture. As soon as Akbar offered his patronage, many local artists thronged the imperial court. According to Abu'l-Fazl, 'Few, indeed, in the whole world are found equal to them.'⁸

One of the leading painters at Akbar's court was a potter's son, Daswanth. He used to paint figures on walls, and Akbar, impressed by his talent, sent him to 'Abdu's-Samad around 1575. His illustrations of the Persian translation of the Mahabharata now belong to the Raja of Jaipur. Another painter, Basawan, was equally talented. Abu'l-Fazl claims that he excelled in 'preparing backgrounds, drawing of features, distribution of colours, portrait painting and in several other branches'. Abu'l-Fazl refers by name to only thirteen Hindu and five Muslim painters, although Akbar employed more than one hundred artists. Many signatures on the 112 large miniatures from the Tdrikh-i Khandan-i Timuriyya in the Khudabakhsh Library in Patna have been cut off by the careless binders.⁹ Out of the fifty-one legible names, only nine are Muslims, of whom three are Kashmiris. Of the six Hindus, one originated in Gwalior, four others came from Gujarat, while another was also a stone-cutter.

The *Tarikh-i Khandan-i Timuriyya* is not an original work, because it contains extracts relating to Indian history taken from the *Tarikh-i Alfi*, completed around 1592. These extracts were probably lifted from an earlier draft of the *Tarikh-i Alfi* in order to start the illustrations as soon as possible. Thus the paintings were prepared in the 1590s. A study of the signatures shows that in some instances the drawing was done by one artist and the colouring by another. In rare cases the outline was sketched in by one artist, the features were delineated by a second, and the faces were modelled in depth by a third. The work was designed to form a Timurid album covering the reign of Timur and his successors down to Akbar's time. The first miniature depicts Timur as a child playing with his younger comrades and assuming the position of a king. Of the Indian themes, the most interesting are Babur's rejoicing at Humayun's birth, when the Emperor invites his chiefs and nobles

300

to a grand feast. Another miniature presents Humayun's accession to the throne. The miniature depicting his campaign against Champanir shows Humayun, followed by Bayram Khan and thirty-nine commanders, ascending the fort at night, and also the slaughter of the garrison. The scene of Akbar's birth is a masterpiece; Akbar's mother, dressed in a green robe, lies exhausted on a couch, and the baby Akbar is seen in the arms of a nurse with a high conical Tatar cap. The background shows rejoicing throughout the palace. The lower part of the painting shows how the news is transmitted to Humayun.

Abu'l-Fazl mentioned the titles of nine works which Akbar's court painters illustrated. Except for one, all have been saved from destruction. Of these the *Babur-nama*, dated 1597, is in the National Museum, New Delhi. Another illustrated copy, in the British Museum, was completed about the same time. The *Akbar-nama*, a copy of which is in the Victoria and Albert Museum, London, and the Chester Beatty Library, Dublin, and the *Razm-nama* (the Persian translation of the *Mahabharata*) in the personal collection of the Raja of Jaipur, provide the best specimens of sixteenth- and early seventeenth-century miniature painting.

The scenes in the *Babur-nama* are a living memorial to Mughal vigour in battle and siege. They explicitly portray Babur's dynamic leadership. Some miniatures vividly highlight Babur's keen interest in everyday life; Indian animals are painted on the basis of his own descriptions. The exuberance of details in figure and animal drawing in the *Razm-nama* is also remarkable. Among other things this text portrays the colourful Rajput costumes and ornaments. The 117 miniatures in the *Akbar-nama* in the Victoria and Albert Museum present an exciting panorama of the many facets of Akbar's age.

The court painters had become aware of European miniature painting by the last years of Akbar's reign. In 1607 Father Jerome Xavier presented the Emperor Jahangir with an Iranian version of the *Lives of the Apostles*, *Dastan-i Ahwal-i Hawariyan*, which had been painted in India in the Italian style. Jahangir's artistic interests inspired his artists to draw upon European paintings for inspiration, and many copies were made of the miniature portrait by the famous and talented Isaac Oliver which King James I of England presented to the Emperor, through the ambassador Sir Thomas Roe, in 1615. Gradually the flat and clear-cut Iranian figures were abandoned for European line shading and chiaroscuro. In the late sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries a

clear sense of realism emerges in Mughal painting. The sixteenth-century Italian style of painting particularly influenced Miskin,

301

who in 1595 illustrated the story of 'the unfaithful wife' in the Baharistan of Jami.

The works of painters during Jahangir's reign, such as Abu'l-Hasan, Manohar, Bishun Das, Goverdhan, Mansur, and Dawlat, show the crystallization of European, Indian, and Iranian artistic trends. This combination provided the ground for individuality and distinctive characteristics in late Mughal painting. Jahangir himself particularly admired portraits. Individuals were usually presented either in profile or in a three-quarter stance, against a turquoise or dark-green background. Two fine examples of group portraits are the scene of an audience (c. 1619), now in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts, and the scenes of the weighing ceremony of Prince Khurram (later Shahjahan), now in the British Museum.

One of the imperial artists, Mansur, specialized in painting rare animals and birds, while Pidarath and 'Inayat also skilfully depicted subjects from the animal and vegetable worlds. Many court painters captured scenes of Jahangir's hunting prowess. The animals are in characteristic poses and stand amidst distant hills. After 1615 Jahangir is represented in some miniatures as superhuman, shown surrounded by the halo reminiscent rather of Italian paintings of Christian saints than of the haloes of gods.

Most of Jahangir's well-known artists remained at Shahjahan's court. The most important painters in his reign were Kalyan Das (alias Chaturman), Anup Chitr, Rai Anup, Manohar, Muhammad Nadir Samarqandi, Mir Hashim, and Muhammad Faqiru'llah Khan. They improved colour techniques and used more subtle shades. Their subjects were realistic scenes from everyday life, such as dancers, concerts, and firework displays, although themes illustrating emotional tensions and noble sentiments were also popular. The Emperor's son, Dara Shukoh, also displayed an interest in European art, and his artists were strongly influenced by European techniques. His album is preserved in the India Office Library in London.

Aurangzib's rule, however, heralded a period of decline. He withdrew imperial patronage, and many artists were forced to work for the nobles, who did not pay well. A sense of stagnation developed. A surviving painting of Aurangzib shows him as a haloed, mounted figure receiving a sword from a saint. An orthodox Muslim, he ordered that all the wall paintings be plastered over. After his death, the dynasty also began to decline. His successors were interested in fine art but they lacked the resources to maintain peace and order, let alone to patronize artists. Most artists migrated to the west Himalayas bordering the Panjab and worked in the more peaceful dominions of the hill chieftains.

302

The Mughal court frequently left the capital city, either for military reasons or on hunting expeditions. Jahangir in particular periodically visited his Kashmir retreat. This led to a productive mingling of the Mughal court style with that of the local artists, and interesting

provincial styles developed. The most notable were the Rajasthan schools, whose paintings are the work of indigenous artists. The painters at the courts of the chieftains in Bundelkand, Rajasthan, and the Himalayan foothills were also stimulated by the changing artistic trends in the Mughal court. Their themes were inspired by both literature, such as the Puranas, the Ramayana, and the Mahabharata and daily life in the towns and villages. The legends of Krishna were a most popular subject, and Shiva's dance was also often portrayed. Greater contact with the Mughal court resulted in new themes of court life and the relations between the Rajput princes and the Mughal rulers.

A unique and interesting synthesis was the symbolic representation of musical modes in Rajput painting. Ragas are a series of notes on which a melody is based. Grammatically and symbolically they are masculine, and the raginis or lesser modes are feminine, looked on as the wives of the ragas. They were personified and associated with particular scenes from Hindu mythology. Many of these were obtained from romantic-devotional literature, especially the stories of Krishna. The Ragamala (Garland of Song) paintings depict ragas and raginis in their emotive settings, usually in a series of thirty-six scenes. Each melodic root form was symbolically assigned a specific colour, which remained constant in all compositions. The functions and qualities of the melodic roots determined the mood of their representation. The Rajput court painters improved upon earlier traditions, as shown by a comparison of figures in their Ragamala paintings with those in the Laur Chanda or Chandayan (an eastern Hindi ballad by Mulla Dawud). The synthesis of the Mughal and Rajput way of life pervades customs, manners and fashions. The raginis were portrayed as Mughal ladies sitting under blossom-covered branches, but these are invariably the branches of Indian trees. Different Rajput states, such as Jaipur, Jodhpur, Mewar, Bundi, and Kishangarh, developed schools of miniature painting with specific characteristics.

Medieval wall paintings are also interesting. In south India attempts at perspective are noticeable in the fragments in remote temples and in some frescoes from the Chola period in the great temple at Tanjore. Perspective was abandoned in the Vijayanagara period (1336-1565), in whose wall paintings the naturally hidden further eye protrudes from the profiles of the vigorous, richly dressed figures. Similar figures were painted in the nineteenth

303

century under royal patronage on the walls of the maharajas' palaces in Trivandrum and Cochin. A cruder version appears on the ceiling of a Jain temple near Kanchipuram, on the walls of some of the courtyards of the Minakshi temple at Madurai and even in Tipu Sultan's summer pavilion at Seringapatam, where the outer walls are covered with scenes of his war against the British. There is no real development, however, and the work is indistinguishable from contemporary folk art. In fact, it bears a close resemblance to the soldiers and maidens, and lions and elephants, nowadays painted in vivid colours on white-walled Rajput houses. Unfortunately little is known of the history of wall painting under the Deccan Muslim rulers. The frescoes on the palaces of the Qutb-Shahi sultans of Golkonda fell to Aurangzib's fierce orthodoxy, leaving no trace.

MUSIC

In writing about medieval Indian music we are at a disadvantage in that there was no system of musical notation capable of recording anything more than the bare structure of a piece of music. From the sixteenth century onwards European musical compositions were regularly written down, but even here many of the finer points in their execution are lost. The situation in India was much worse. Only the basic notes of a melody could be recorded, and the subtle ornamentation and variations of the basic theme are lost for ever. We can separate performances of Bach and Scarlatti approximately as they were intended. The music of such a great performer and composer as Tansen is completely lost to us. Unlike architecture and painting, pre-Islamic music in Arabia was relatively advanced. As a result of their conquests, the music of the Arabs was rapidly impregnated with Byzantine and Iranian musical influences. Books on musical theory and performance, including works by the philosophers al-Kindi, al-Farabi, and Avicenna, were written in Arabic. At the end of the twelfth century two books in Persian are said to have been produced for Mu'izzu'd-Din Muhammad Sam. Dancing was also a recognized art form, as Barani's description of the revelries at Sultan Mu'izzu'd-Din Kayqabad's court suggests. The mere memory of the musicians and dancers at Sultan Jalalu'd-Din Khalji's court was sufficient to transport the aged Barani to the realm of youthful passions. According to Amir Khusraw, however, it was Indian music that burnt the heart and soul and was superior to that of all other

304

countries. He claimed that it was so difficult that foreigners, even after a stay of thirty or forty years in the country, could not play a single Indian tune correctly.¹⁰

The cross-fertilization of Perso-Arab and Indian music had started even before the conquest of Iran by the Arabs. It is said that the Sasanid monarch Bahram Gur (421-39) established colonies of 10,000 singers and dancers from Hindustan all over his country." They may have been the ancestors of the gypsies who later spread to Byzantium and Europe. In the thirteenth century many Hindu musicians and artisans were converted to Islam. Although the courts offered them patronage and livelihood, many musicians preferred to serve the sufis, w'o were also connoisseurs of music, and who sharpened the talents of the musicians. Many distinguished musicians thronged sufi gatherings both to earn a livelihood and to gain religious merit.

Even as early as the thirteen century, the sufis considered Indian classical music and poetry more effective than Persian.¹² The latter was not neglected, however, and the flood-gates of opportunity were opened for the development of a new form of music, pioneered by Amir Khusraw, which may be called Indo-Persian. Amir Khusraw was a favourite of both Shaykh Nisamu'd-Din Awliya' and the Delhi sultans. After Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji's conquest of the Deccan, many distinguished musicians from that region moved to Delhi. Amir Khusraw seized the opportunity to study the Deccani music of the Karnataka school, which preserved the musical tradition of ancient India with greatest purity. Among the DeccanI migrants, the most prominent was Naik Gopal. The literary sources recount several stories of the encounter between him and Amir Khusraw. What emerges is the fact that Amir Khusraw could successfully copy and adapt the most difficult DeccanI classical music to his own technique and style. Amir Khusraw is said to have written several treatises on music. In his third volume of poems, entitled Ghurrat al-kamal and completed in 1294, Khusraw wrote that he had already produced three volumes of poetry and could easily write three more on music.¹³ Unfortunately, none of them was written,

although he frequently refers to melodies and musical instruments in his other works. Rather surprisingly, he never mentions the sitar (a long-necked lute, now the most popular instrument of north India), which is popularly regarded as his invention. Later works credit him with inventing about nineteen melodic forms, of which khyal, tarana, and qawl are the most noteworthy.

Khyal in Arabic means 'imagination', 'reflection', or 'meditation'. The musical rhythms (talas) in khyal allow considerable variation

305

and manipulation, so a khyal musician is able to project his own personality effectively. Tarana is a form of singing which uses meaningless syllables to escape the bonds of language and treats the voice purely as a musical instrument. It is usually sung in fast tempo and is similar to the south Indian tillana. Qawl is the precursor of the Muslim sufi music called qawwali. It was designed to adapt ancient Indian musical rhythms to Persian or Arabic verses.

The continued interest in both Indian and Persian music is reflected in two important works written by an anonymous author during Firuz Shah's reign. Both works were dedicated to the author's patron, Malik Abu Raja, the governor of Gujarat from 1374 to 1375. Abu Raja, according to his protege, was a connoisseur of both Persian and Indian music and organized discussions between the expert musicians at his court. The author, who was elderly, had already translated into Persian an Arabic book on music entitled *Kitab Farighu'z-zaman fi ma'rifat al-ilhdn*. The only known copy of this work is the *Ghunyatu'l-munya*, which is in the India Office Library, London. It is based on seven Sanskrit works, three of which must have been destroyed.¹⁴ Of the surviving books, *Sangitaratnakara* by Sarngadeva (1210-47), a musician to the Yada-va kings of Devagiri, is a monumental study which stimulated many experts to write commentaries on it. Besides drawing upon these and various other sources, the author of *Ghunyatu'l-munya* makes valuable comment on contemporary musical trends and informs us of some important developments in his own time. For example, he says that the finger-board of the bin or vina (the form of lute still current in south India) was enlarged to accommodate twenty-one note-points marked over it at larger intervals than before. This, he contended, radically promoted musical development.

The rulers of the regional kingdoms in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries were also great patrons of music. In 1420 a musical treatise, *Sangitasiromani*, was dedicated to Ibrahim Shah Sharqi of Jaunpur. Husayn Shah Sharqi (1458-79) was a musical expert and devised many notes, scales, and melodies, of which Husayni or Jaunpuri is very famous. He composed an Arabic air known as 'Zangula' or 'Jangla' and is credited with making improvements to 'Khyal'. In Kashmir, Sultan Zaynu'l-'Abidin's patronage of musicians was responsible for the compilation of a commentary on the *Sangitaratnakara*.

Raja Man Singh Tomar of Gwalior (1450-1528) was himself a skilled musician as well as a patron of musicians. He transposed the classical material form known as dhrupad (Sanskrit: dhruvapada) into

306

Hindi. The musical rhythms of dhrupad are analogous to the poetic rhythm of Greek and Latin hexameter. The typical musical rhythm of this style is known as chawtala because four of its six bars (padas) are strongly accented. At his instigation his court musicians researched the rules governing ragas and enunciated them with greater precision. Their work was put into book form and entitled the *Man Kautuhal* (Curiosities of Raja Man). Man Singh's musicians publicized their results in various other Indian courts. One of the musicians, Baiju, known as Baora (Crazy), moved to the Court of Bahadur Shah of Gujarat and is said to have composed the melody 'Bahaduri' to commemorate his patron's name.

The fifteenth century is marked by even more significant developments in the realm of devotional music. A classical melodic form emerged for the songs of Kabir which was known as Kabira'i. Another development was the invention of a special vocal form for the Vaishnavite songs, known as Bishunpad. Changes were also made to various notes and airs to harmonize them with the hymns of Baba Nanak, the founder of Sikhism, who was always accompanied by his Muslim minstrel Mardana, a specialist in devotional music.

The last Delhi sultans and the Mughals were also great patrons of music. The *Lahjat-i Sikandari*, written under Sultan Sikandar's patronage, is a notable contribution to classical music. Akbar's court musicians were both male and female, Hindus, Iranis, Turanis, and Kashmiris. Abu'l-Fazl names thirty-six musicians who played vocal and instrumental music at Akbar's court; of these ten were from Gwalior. They were divided into seven ranks. The leading singer was Miyan Tan Sen of Gwalior (1555-1610), and according to Abu'l-Fazl, India had not seen a singer of his talent for the last thousand years.¹⁵ The literary sources recount fantastic anecdotes of the effects of his *dipaka* (lamp) raga. It was believed that Tan Sen's melodies could make rain fall out of season, while his *rdgas* were supposed to set candles alight. He is, however, blamed for introducing a Persian influence into Hindu music.

Shahjahan cultivated music in his court and himself acquired considerable proficiency in the art. For the first ten years of his reign Aurangzib generously rewarded his musicians and appeared to be devoted to music. From 1668, however, he tried to suppress it, although his sons and nobles continued their patronage.¹⁶ The greatest contribution to musical theory during this period was the *Tuhfatu'l-Hind*, written by Mirza Muhammad ibn Faku'd-Din Muhammad for Aurangzib's grandson, Prince Muhammad Mu'izzu'd-Din Jahandar Shah, who reigned from 1712 to 1713. During Muhammad Shah's reign (1719-48) Mughal military and

307

political glory declined rapidly, but music reached a new peak. The Emperor often performed himself, being expert in both singing and dancing.

The Deccan courts also cultivated music and dancing. Ibrahim 'Adil Shah II of Bijapur was both poet and musician. His poems, collected in the *Kitab-i Nawras* (The Sanskrit Navarasa — The Nine Emotions), were designed to be sung in different ragas which are identified as *maqams* (modes) in the Perso-Arabic system. Perso-Arabic music seems also to have considerably influenced the Deccani Karnataka music at the Vijayanagara court. Kallina acknowledges its influence in his commentary on the *Sangitarand-kara* in the mid-fifteenth century - as does

Ramamaya, a minister of the Vijayanagara King Rama Raya, in his well-known treatise, Svaramelakalanidhi, written in 1550.

The continued devotion of the musicians to the sufis, particularly the Chishtiyya sufis, stimulated the classical style of music. Famous musicians were proud to play before Shaykh Baha'u'd-Din of Barnawa (d. 1628) and frequently visited him. In his old age Tan Sen is also said to have performed before the Shaykh and to have sent his son to sit at the Shaykh's feet. According to the Shaykh, dhrupad, invented by Raja Man Singh, was a disservice to the classical forms of music and was designed to cheapen the art. The Shaykh, accompanied by his carpenters, would personally select the wood from local forests for musical instruments, which were made to his own specifications and under his supervision. Of all his inventions the most interesting was a musical instrument in the shape of a pen case (qalamdan) which opened to reveal a series of strings and pegs. This instrument, which the Shaykh called a sazkhyal, soon became popular. Unfortunately, none of the instruments described in his biography survive. The accounts of his contributions to the development of music, together with those of Hindu mystics and other sufis, are culturally very revealing, however. It is also remarkable that the Shaykh succeeded in establishing contact with Hindu devotees in the Deccan who were expert in Karnataka music.¹⁷

308

CONCLUSION

The history of the eighth to twelfth centuries in northern India is, in the words of The Wonder That Was India, Volume I,

a rather drab story of endemic warfare between rival dynasties. . . . In the 9th and 10th centuries the Gurjara-Pratiharas, who probably originated in Rajasthan, were masters of Kanyakubja, and the most powerful kings of northern India. They successfully resisted the Arabs, who, in 712, had occupied Sind, and who, for over a century, made frequent attacks on their eastern neighbours.*

Except during the Mauryan period, political unity was unknown, and the highly organized and tightly controlled administration of the ancient Indian state had no counterpart in inter-state relations, where endemic anarchy was only mitigated by a tradition of fair play in warfare, which was by no means always followed. †

Akbar was the greatest ruler ever to have governed India. . . . This is written advisedly with Asoka in mind. We know only the 'public image' which Asoka chose to present and thus we have no valid means of comparing Asoka's moral greatness with that of Akbar. Judged by results, however, Akbar was a far greater ruler than Asoka, since Asoka's reforms ended and his empire disintegrated with his death, while Akbar established a regime which lasted in full force for over a century after him and laid down principles of government which are still more or less valid in contemporary India. ‡

The ground was prepared for Akbar, however, by the Delhi sultans. Iltutmish carved out the north-west boundary of the Delhi sultanate, which he consolidated as far as Bengal and Assam in the east. Although the Mongols devastated the Muslim lands west of the Indus, the peace and prosperity of Iltutmish's reign made India a rendezvous for intellectuals, military leaders, and holy men from Iran and Central Asia. After his death, the religious classes supported Iltutmish's daughter, Raziyya, but the Turkic clique overthrew her. The subsequent scramble for power among this group plunged the country into anarchy. Balban, who emerged

* The Wonder That Was India, London, 1954, pp 69-70.

† Ibid, p. 77.

‡ A. L Basham, Foreword to Fathpur-Sikri by S. A. A. Rizvi and V. J. A. Flynn, Bombay 1975, p. VII.

309

triumphant, destroyed the strength of the other Turkic leaders. His understanding of the problems of foreign rule on Indian soil was realistic. Thus, although he shed some crocodile tears at his inability to govern the country by orthodox Islamic principles, he evolved firm administrative laws on the basis of expediency, and the shari'a (Islamic law) was not allowed to override considerations of jahandari (worldly administration) and jahangiri (world conquest).

Balban's ideals were firmly implemented by 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji, who ascended the throne by treacherously assassinating his uncle and father-in-law, after amassing vast riches from his conquest of Devagiri in western Deccan. He subsequently conquered Rajasthan and Gujarat and extended his rule in the Deccan to Madurai. The revenue reforms and price-control system he introduced made the rural areas and the capital interdependent.

The next great ruler, Muhammad bin Tughluq, wished to assert his authority over the regions under the Mongols, but his schemes were misunderstood and unimaginatively implemented by his officials. His energies and resources were needlessly frittered away in suppressing rebellions. An independent Muslim kingdom consequently arose at Madurai, lasting till it was overthrown by the newly established Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagara. In central Deccan the Muslim Bahmanid kingdom which came into being lasted for about 170 years. After its dismemberment, five independent sultanates were established in the Deccan. Of these, Ahmadnagar, Bijapur, and Golkonda remained autonomous for more than 150 years, and before long their capitals became prosperous towns, attracting merchants and adventurers from Arabia, Ethiopia, Iran, and Transoxiana.

Muhammad bin Tughluq's successor, Firuz Shah, restored the authority of the Delhi sultanate over Bengal and Sind, but Timur's invasion in 1398-9 again fragmented India. Innumerable Muslim provincial dynasties emerged; the Rajput rajas of Rajasthan in particular became very powerful.

In 1526 Babur, who was descended from Timur on his father's side and from Chingiz through his mother, founded the Mughal empire, but his son and successor, Humayun, was driven out of India by an able Afghan leader, Sher Shah Sur. Sher Shah founded a second Afghan empire in Delhi; the first one, ruled by the Lodis, had been overthrown by Babur. Sher Shah united the restless Afghan leaders into a powerful force. He introduced fiscal and land reforms of far-reaching importance. His network of roads, dotted with caravanserais in close proximity to each other, restored peace and prosperity to the regions he had conquered. His successors,

310

however, were unable to retain control when Babur's son, Humayun, reconquered India ten years later.

Humayun died after a few months, leaving the throne to this thirteen-year-old son, Akbar, who was the real architect of the Mughal empire, for which some foundations had thus been laid. Akbar's vast conquests convinced him that kingship was a divinely ordained institution which did not exist solely for the benefit of Muslims. His two immediate successors adhered to his policy, but his great-grandson, Aurangzib, gave preferment to Muslim religious law, to the detriment of the empire. Aurangzib's heirs tried to revert to Akbar's policies but they were unable to inject his dynamism into the government system, although there was no dearth of gifted Muslim and Hindu political leaders in eighteenth-century India. A prevailing apathy weakened Mughal rule to such an extent that the empire became vulnerable to local rebellions and foreign domination.

Hindu polity was governed by the concept of the chakravartin raja, or the overlord emperor. That position was achieved by 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji through brute force, but Akbar invested his kingship with an additional mystical aura in order to make his dignitaries sacrifice life, religion, honour, and wealth to help him gain his political ambitions. He made these four stringent requirements of discipleship an intrinsic element of his system of rule, and his descendants retained this mystical dimension. Even Aurangzib, as a prince, always addressed Shahjahan as a pir wa murshid (spiritual guide), and Aurangzib's sons spoke to him in the same manner.

The Delhi sultans had introduced a decimal chain of military command and had granted their commanders iqta's, or the right to collect land revenues from the peasants in their assigned areas through a hierarchy of local leaders. In return they maintained troops to extend and consolidate their conquests and placed these at the sultan's disposal as and when ordered. Akbar's mansabdari system was based on the same principle, with an iqta' called a jagir, but the Mughal system of classification was more complex and stratified than that of the Delhi sultans. Muslims of different racial groups, and even Hindus, were admitted to the rank of mansabdar. Akbar and his successors opened government positions to talent and awarded mansabs to competent candidates of all races and religions. Among the more successful and prominent groups were the Turanis from the Mughal Sunni ancestral lands, Iranis from the Shi'i regions, Hindu Rajputs, Indian Muslims, and Afghans. Even Aurangzib was not influenced by religious and sectarian considerations when granting the most important mansabs and senior government positions. By the eighteenth century, however,

the emperors were unable to harness religious and racial interests to consolidate and unite the empire.

During the reigns of the early Delhi sultans, village leaders were known as ranas and rawats. From the reign of Akbar, however, all those who were invested with higher rights and duties than the peasantry were known as zamindars. The hereditary rulers of Rajasthan were given the more respectful title of zamindar rajas. The process of integrating the rajas into the administration was further augmented under the Mughals. Loyalty became more profitable to them than rebellion. They helped graft Mughal urban culture upon villages, and the entire administration, from the capital to the villages, was unified. The presence of Muslim zamindars and Muslim madad-i ma'ash (subsistence grant-holders) in villages promoted cultural rapprochement between religious communities there.

Muslim rule also stimulated urbanization. Even the Arab rulers of Sind had founded new towns and had added an Islamic character to those already existing, by establishing mosques, schools, and bazaars where the Hindu caste and class taboos were shaken. From the thirteenth century the pace of urbanization, which had been retarded by the feudal Rajputs of ancient India, gained impetus. The jungles were cleared, facilitating military movement and trade and breaking the isolation of villages from the towns. In ancient times, pilgrimage centres and trade settlements had developed into new towns; now the headquarters of leading iqta' holders, strategic fortifications, and military cantonments gave rise to a proliferation of new towns. The growing number of sufi khanqahs and tombs transformed many villages into towns. Many caravanserais also developed into towns due to the escalation of trade and commerce. As they grew in size near the rural hinterlands from which they obtained food and materials, the harmony between government, artisans, craftsmen, merchants, and villagers intensified. Most important was the role of the Hindu moneylender, who dominated the economic life of both village and town. Iqta' holders and mansabdars alike paid money-lenders high rates of interest in order to borrow funds to raise troops at short notice and to meet the wasteful needs of their luxurious way of life. In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, villages such as Khairabad and Daryabad in Avadh developed into towns, mainly through the fame of their textiles. The urban sprawl, in many cases vast, beyond the ramparts of the capital towns led to the growth of prosperous suburbs and satellite towns.

In the technological and industrial fields there was much development. The Muslims improved the ancient Indian araghatt,

the precursor of the Persian wheel, for irrigation purposes. By the time Babur arrived in India, it was mechanically more sophisticated. The growing demand for different varieties of cloth stepped up the use of the bow-string for carding cotton and of the spinning-wheel. Refined sugar was also much in demand. Mulberry trees, silk worms, and cocoons were introduced into Bengal, and silk weaving, which had earlier depended upon imported raw materials, thus made rapid progress. Sericulture was commenced in Kashmir. Firuz Tughluq's orchards in the vicinity of

Delhi produced grapes in abundance, while Babur introduced new varieties of fruit trees and planted orchards and Mughal gardens known as charbaghs.

In 1508 the Portuguese introduced tobacco cultivation into the Deccan. Early in the seventeenth century Asad Beg Qazwini, Akbar's envoy to Bijapur, brought some tobacco and a pipe back to Agra. Akbar himself smoked it and asked his foster-brother, the Khan-i A'zam Mirza 'Aziz Koka, to try it. The royal physician refused to copy European customs blindly, wishing to test it himself. Akbar supported Asad Beg, observing that it was not advisable to reject a popular innovation on the grounds that Muslim books did not mention it. Even so, Akbar himself did not smoke again, although he did not prohibit it. Jahangir forbade the use of tobacco, and the 'ulama' issued fatwas (legal decrees) condemning it. But the habit was too firmly entrenched; by the end of Aurangzib's reign, tobacco was widely cultivated in the Surat and Agra regions. The Portuguese also introduced cashew nuts (badam-i farangi) and pineapples.

Before the rise of Islam, Indian merchants had settled in the Yemen, and the Jat population in the Persian Gulf ports was substantial. After the Arab conquest of Sind and the establishment of the Delhi sultanate, a phenomenal expansion occurred in both maritime and overland trade and communication. The Delhi sultans exchanged gifts, luxuries, and novelties with West Asian and Central Asian courts; Muhammad bin Tughluq sent Ibn Battuta as his envoy to China; horses from Arabia were exported to India from all the southern ports on the Persian Gulf and were bought by both Hindu rajas and Muslim sultans. The sultans and the Hindu rulers owned ships on the western coast of India, as did rich Hindu and Muslim merchants and the Mughal emperors and dignitaries. Although Portuguese control over the west coast ports was politically disastrous, the Indians learnt improved shipbuilding techniques from them and other Europeans. According to Ovington, in 1689 the Indian ships' carpenters at Surat could build a ship after the 'Model of any English Vessel, in all curiosity of its

313

building . . . as exactly as if they had been the first contrivers'.*

Under the Mughals the demand for luxury goods to meet the extravagance of the court and nobles improved the quality and quantity of manufactured commodities. The enormous variety of cotton fabrics mentioned in the English factory records emerged in response to the escalation of export demands; the same was true of the production and export of silk from Bengal. Indigo was now extensively produced to meet the needs of European merchants. Both the court dignitaries and members of the middle income group acquired valuable jewellery and used silver and gold utensils. The imperial karkhanas employed a variety of meticulous craftsmen, and there was an equal degree of talent and specialization among the local artists. The mining of diamonds developed, due to demand from both the imperial court and Europeans. European labour-saving devices were not used in Indian mining, however, and, although the Indians cut and polished the diamonds skilfully, they could not compete with the more sophisticated European finish. According to Tavernier, had the Indians possessed iron wheels like those used in Europe they 'could give the stones a better finish than they do'.† No wonder that in 1584 Akbar took the English gem expert William Leeds into his service. Jahangir also employed European jewellers,

including a Venetian. Mir Jumla contributed a great deal to the refinement of lapidary works in India.

The superiority of Indian manufactured goods resulted from the skill and workmanship of the artisans and not from the tools, which remain primitive even to the present day. Mughal karkhanas employed highly skilled craftsmen, while Europeans sometimes hired an entire village of weavers to mass-produce textiles for export purposes. The Mughal rulers and dignitaries were so confident of the competence of their artists and craftsmen that they believed any rare commodity imported from Europe could be easily imitated in India. European travel narratives suggest that they were not wrong.

It was the Mughal indifference to improvements in artillery manufacture that proved disastrous for their rule. Akbar himself took a keen interest in the development of guns, and Mir Fatu'llah Shirazi produced valuable inventions at his court. As Manrique points out, however, matchlockmen, known as tufangis in the Mughal army, were without rank‡; it was skill with the sword that

* Ovington, *A Voyage to Surat in the year 1689*, ed. H. C. Rawlinson, London, 1929, p. 166.

† Tavtrnier, *Travels in India, 1640-67*, tr. V. Ball, 2 vols., London, 1949, II, p. 58.

‡ Manrique, *Travels, 1629-43*, tr. C. E. Luard, 2 vols., London, 1927, II, p. 125.

314

Mughals and Rajputs valued. The strength of their enormous manpower resources allowed Akbar's successors to neglect the new techniques of warfare. Even Shahjahan's repeated failure to seize Qandahar did not open his eyes in this respect, while Aurangzib plunged himself into the thick of the war against Shivaji's hill-forts and guerrillas without improving his artillery.

The most fascinating aspect of Muslim history in India is Indo-Islamic architecture. This is characterized by the adaptation of Indian resources, expertise, design, and motifs to the needs of Islam. The unique stalactite bracketing beneath the balconies of the tapering cylindrical Qutb Minar was executed by Hindu workmen under the direction of their Muslim masters. The horseshoe shape of the central opening of the 'Ala'i Darwaza was never imitated, but its grace and charm cannot be questioned. Tughluq architecture, with its heavy, severe lines, influenced monuments in Malwa and the Deccan. Iranian curvilinear architecture is juxtaposed with traditional Hindu ornamentation in mosques at Cambay, Ahmadabad, and Champanir.

Although Akbar deliberately chose to follow Hindu architectural styles, what emerged was an eclectic pattern. In the Fathpur-Sikri palaces, Hindu imagination was superimposed on Iranian simplicity. The niches and false windows give a unique lightness and airiness to Humayun's tomb. The kiosks, or chains, at its corners make the mausoleum typically Indo-Islamic. The terraced structure of Akbar's tomb at Sikandra, near Agra, reminds one of Buddhist monuments. It seems that the imposing Panch Mahal (the five-storeyed palace) of Fathpur-Sikri was transferred to Sikandra in a new form. The elegant mausoleum of Jahangir's father-in-law,

Itimadu'd-Dawla, marks the transition from the pre-Shahjahan era to the phase of Shahjahan's imperial structures. Its delicate inlay work, in hard stone, foreshadows the ornamentation of Shahjahan's monuments in Delhi and Agra. The elegance and majesty of the Taj Mahal, which Shahjahan built to immortalize his queen, Mumtaz Mahal, ensured its place as one of the wonders of the world; the imagination and sensitivity of its designer made it the unparalleled flower of Indo-Islamic civilization.

The Mughal miniature was another important aspect of the blossoming of Indo-Islamic civilization. It offered an opportunity for the blending of influences from European figurative art, particularly Flemish and Belgian, with the art of the East.

Indian influence on Islam was markedly chequered. The puritanically orthodox Muslim leaders of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries exhibited deep hostility towards the brahmins and pleaded with their rulers to annihilate them or reduce them to

315

abject poverty. The Chishtiyya sufi leader Shaykh Nizamud-Din Awliya', however, urged his own disciples to learn a lesson from the brahmins' devotion to their faith, which Muslim persecution could not destroy. The sight of Hindus bathing in the Jamuna transported the Shaykh into a state of ecstatic joy. As early as the thirteenth century Nath yogis visited the khanqahs of Chishtiyya sufis, who had adapted such important Nath yogi practices as breath control to their own meditational exercises.

The death anniversaries and other celebrations in sufi monasteries developed into significant cultural institutions eagerly awaited by the whole population, rich and poor alike. Sufis began to write Hindi poetry for their sama' (musical) parties from the very beginning of the thirteenth century. The subtle refinement of Hindi music, combined with Persian conventions and artistry, gave fresh meaning and depth to Indian sufi sama'. A knowledge of the local dialect offered sufis a spiritual satisfaction they could then share with Hindu bhaktas, whose spirit equally thirsted for the higher reaches of reality. Hindi sufi poets and bhaktas rebelled against all forms of religious orthodoxy, hypocrisy, and stupidity, and tried to create a new world in which spiritual bliss was the all-consuming goal. They were unconcerned with converting each other to their respective religious beliefs, and their main desire was to promote spiritual consciousness and the understanding of different religious symbols. The followers of the philosophy of Ibn al-'Arabi (1165-1240) were not confined to mystics; they founded a religious and social movement seeking to eradicate religious differences and disputes. Akbar incorporated these ideals into politics and made them the corner-stone of his policy of universalism, aimed at promoting peace and concord between all religious communities. In Jahangir's reign, Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, the Mujaddid, reinterpreted the Wahdat al-Shuhjud (Unity of Appearances) doctrines of 'Ala'u'd-Dawla Simnani (1261-1336) in order to influence Jahangir's dignitaries to reverse Akbar's broadly based policies; but the Mujaddid's ideology made little impact during the reigns of Jahangir and Shahjahan. Although Aurangzib respected the Mujaddid's descendants, he never gave them unqualified support either. The 'ulama' of Aurangzib's time, particularly those from the Panjab, declared the Mujaddid's theology to be sacrilegious, and the Emperor banned the teaching of the Mujaddid's letters at Aurangabad.

In the eighteenth century the conflict between the two groups gained further momentum. The Sunni and Shi'i polemics at the end of the century, and the impact of the Wahhabi ideologies from the Arabian peninsula in the nineteenth century, almost resulted in

316

open religious and sectarian warfare. Nevertheless, despite their inanity and loss of power, Aurangzib's successors to the Mughal throne in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries never changed their policy of peace and friendship with all religious communities. Religious polarization did not take effect until the end of the nineteenth century, when competition for positions in the newly constituted British civil service was one of the major factors in exacerbating the differences which eventually led to the partition of India at Independence in 1947.

317

BIBLIOGRAPHY AND REFERENCES

The following standard abbreviations are used:

b. Born.

ed. Edited by.

edn Edition.

Encyclopaedia

of Islam² The Encyclopaedia of Islam, ed. by H. A. R. Gibb et al., new edition (Leiden and London, 1960).

Ethe Manuscript in the India Office Library, London, in the Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the Library of the India Office, by H. E. Ethe (Oxford, 1902, 1937).

JASB Journal of the Astatic Society of Bengal.

JRAS Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society.

M. Muhammad.

n.d. Manuscript undated.

Rieu Manuscript in the British Library, London, described in the Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the British Museum, but C. R. Rieu (London, 1879-83).

S. Sayyid.

Sh. Shaykh.

Storey Manuscript mentioned in the Persian Literature: A Bio-Bibliographical Survey, by C. A. Storey (London, 1953, 1970).

tr. Translated by.

I, II, III Volume numbers.

A NOTE FOR THE READER WHO WISHES TO READ FURTHER

The present work is based on contemporary Persian and Arabic sources; sources in regional languages have also been used. Since the book is intended primarily for those who know no Arabic or Persian, reference is made to English translations wherever possible. In the notes to each chapter, the names of authors and books are only briefly mentioned if their full names, titles, and publishing details appear in any section of the bibliography.

The following general histories deal mainly with political events

318

but also discuss matters of social, economic, and cultural interest. The histories on dynasties and monarchs mentioned in relation to Chapters I, II, and III also consider social, economic, and cultural topics. But neither the general histories nor the works listed for Chapters I, II, and III have been repeated in the bibliographies for Chapters IV to VII. Similarly, works cited for Chapters IV to VII also refer to political events although they have not been mentioned in the bibliographies of Chapters I, II, and III.

GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

General Histories in Persian

Bada'uni, Mulla 'Abdu'l-Qadir, Muntakhabu't-tawarikh, Calcutta, 1864; Engl. tr. I, G. S. A. Ranking, Calcutta, 1885-9; II, W. H. Lowe, Calcutta 1884-98; III, T. W. Haig, Calcutta, 1899-1925.

Firishta, M. Qasim Hindu Shah, Gulshan-i Ibrahimi or Tarikh-I Firishta, Kanpur, 1884; Engl. tr. J. Briggs, Calcutta, 1908-10, reprint.

Khafi Khan, Muhammad Hashim, Muntakhabu'l-lubab, Calcutta, 1860-74; Engl. tr. summarized Annees Jahan Syed, Aurangzib, Bombay, 1977.

Nizamu'd-Din Ahmad, Khwaja, *Tabaqat-i Akbari*, Calcutta, 1913-31; Engl. tr. B. De, Calcutta, 1913-40.

Sujan Ray Bhandari, Munshi, *Khulasatu't-tawarikh*, Delhi, 1918.

Modern Works in English

Ahmad, Aziz, *Studies in Islamic Culture in the Indian Environment*, Oxford, 1964.

Elliot, H. M. and Dowson, J., *History of India as Told by its Own Historians (the Muhammedan Period)*, 8 vols., London, 1866-77; Allahabad, 1964, reprint.

Hodivala, S. H., *Studies in Indo-Muslim History - Critical Commentary on Elliot and Dowson's 'History of India as Told by its Own Historians', I*, Bombay, 1939; II (Supplement), Bombay, 1957.

Ikram Sh. M., *Muslim Civilization*, ed. T. Embree Ainslie, New York, 1969.

—, and Rashid, Sh. A., *History of Muslim Civilization in India and Pakistan*, Lahore, 1962.

Mujeeb, M., *The Indian Muslims*, London, 1969.

319

Bibliographical Works

Blochet, E., *Catalogue des manuscrits persans de la Bibliotheque Nationale*, Paris, 1905-12.

Brockelmann, C. B., *Geschichte der arabischen litteratur*, Weimar-Berlin, 1898-1902.

Ethe, H. E., *Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the Library of the India Office*, Oxford, 1902, 1937.

Morley, W. H. M., *A Descriptive Catalogue of the Historical Manuscripts in the Arabic and Persian Languages Preserved in the Library of the Royal Asiatic Society*, London, 1854.

Muqtadir, Maulavi 'Abdu'l, *Catalogue of the Arabic and Persian Manuscripts in the Oriental Public Library at Bankipore*, Patna, 1903, 1937.

Rieu, C. R., *Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the British Museum*, London, 1879-83.

—, *Supplement to the Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the British Museum*, London, 1895.

Sachau, C. E., and Ethe, H. E., *Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library*, Oxford, 1889.

Storey, C. A., *Persian Literature: A Bio-Bibliographical Survey*, London, 1953, 1970.

I : THE ARABS AND THE TURKS

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Contemporary Persian Sources

'Afif, Shams-i Siraj, *Tdrih-i Firuz Shahi*, Calcutta, 1888-91; Engl. tr. Elliot and Dowson, III, pp. 271-373, abridged.

Amir Khusraw Dihlawi, *Qiranu's-sa'dayn*, Aligarh, 1918; Engl. abstract.

—, E. B. Cowell, *JASB*, 1860, pp. 225-39.

—, *Mifhau'l-futuh*, Aligarh, n.d.

—, *Khaza'inu'l-futuh*, Calcutta, 1953; Eng. tr. Muhammad Habib, Bombay, 1931, abstract.

—, *Diwal Rani Khizr Khan*, Aligarh, 1917; Engl. tr. Elliot and Dowson, III, pp. 544-57, abstract.

—, *Nuh Sipahr*, Bombay, 1931, Engl. tr. Elliot and Dowson, III, pp. 557-66, abstract.

—, *Tughluq-ndma*, Hyderabad, 1933.

Barani, *Ziya'u'd-Din, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, Calcutta, 1860-2; Eng.

320

tr. A. R. Fuller, *JASB*, 1869, pp. 181-220; P. Whalley, *JASB*, 1870, pp. 1-51; 1871, pp. 185-216; Auckland Colvin, *JASB*, 1871, pp. 217-47. Incomplete.

al-Bayhaqi, Abu'l-Fazl, *Tarikh-i Bayhaqi*, Calcutta, 1861-62; Engl. tr. Elliot and Dowson, II, pp. 53-154, extracts.

Firuz Shah Tughluq, *Futuh-i Firuz Shahi*, Aligarh, n.d.; Engl. tr. Elliot and Dowson II, pp. 374-88.

Hasan Nizami, *Taju'l-ma'asir*, MS. British Library; Rieu, I, 239a; Engl. tr. Elliot and Dowson II, pp. 204-43

'Isami, *Futuhu's-salatin*, Madras, 1948; Engl. tr. Mahdi Husain, 3 vols., Bombay, 1967, 1976, 1977.

Juwayni, 'Ala'u'd-Din 'Ata 'Malik, *Tarikh-i Jahan-gushay-i Juwayni*, Leiden and London, 1912, 1916; Engl. tr. J. Boyle, Manchester, 1958.

Kufi, 'Ali b. Hamid, Chach-nama, Hyderabad, n.d.; Engl. tr. Mirza Kalichbeg Fredunbeg, Karachi, 1900; Delhi, 1979, reprint.

Minahj, Siraj, Tabaqat-i Nasiri, Calcutta, 1863-4; Engl. tr. H. G. Raverty, Calcutta, 1873-81.

Ni'matu'llah al-Harawi, Tarikh-i Khan-jahani u Makhzan-i Afghani, Dacca, 1960; Engl. tr. B. Dorn, London, 1829-36.

Timur, Malfuzat-i Timuri, Oxford, 1783; Engl. tr. Major C. Stewart, London, 1830.

al-'Utbi, Abu Nasr, al-Yamini (Arabic); Persian tr. Tarjama-i Yamini, after 1205-6, Tehran, 1856; Engl. tr. J. Reynolds, London, 1858.

Yahya, Sirhindi, Tarikh-i Mubarak Shahi, Calcutta, 1931; Engl. tr. K. K. Basu, Baroda, 1932.

Yazdi, Sharafu'd-Din 'Ali, Zafar-nama, Calcutta, 1885-6; Engl. tr. from French tr., incomplete, Paris, 1722.

Anonymous, Sirat-i Firuz Shahi, MS. Bankipur, Patna; Engl. tr. (Jajnagar expedition), JASB, 1942, pp. 58-77.

Modern Works in English

Ahmad, M. A., Political History and Institutions of the Early Turkish Empire of Delhi, Lahore, 1949; New Delhi, 1972, reprint.

Banerjee, J. M., History of Firuz Shah Tughluq, Delhi, 1967.

Bosworth, C. E., The Ghaznavids, Edinburgh, 1977.

Digby, S., War-Horse and Elephant in the Delhi Sultanate, Oxford, 1971.

Habib, M., Hazrat Amir Khusrau of Delhi, Bombay, 1927.

—, Sultan Mahmud of Ghaznin, Delhi, 1951.

— and Nizami, K. A. (eds.), A Comprehensive History of India, V, Delhi, 1970.

321

Habibullah, A. B. M., The Foundation of Muslim Rule in India, Allahabad, 1961, 2nd rev. edn.

Haig, W. (ed.), The Cambridge History of India, III, New York, 1928.

Halim, A., History of the Lodi Sultans of Delhi and Agra, Dacca, 1961.

- Haq, S. M., Barani's History of the Tughluqs, Karachi, 1959.
- Hardy, P., Historians of Medieval India, London, 1960.
- Husain, Mahdi, Tughluq Dynasty, Calcutta, 1963.
- Jauhari, T. C, Firuz Tughluq, Agra, 1968.
- Lal, K. S., Twilight of the Sultanate, Bombay, 1963; New Delhi, 1980, rev. edn.
- , History of the Khaljis, Bombay, 1967; New Delhi, 1980, rev. edn.
- , Growth of Muslim Population in India, Delhi, 1973.
- Majumdar, R. C, The Struggle for Empire, Bombay, 1957.
- and Pusalker, A. E., (eds.), The Delhi Sultanate, Bombay, 1967, 2nd edn.
- Nazim, M., The Life and Times of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna, Cambridge, 1931; New Delhi 1971, reprint.
- Nigam, S. B. P., Nobility under the Sultans of Delhi, Delhi, 1968.
- Nizami, K. A., Studies in Medieval Indian History and Culture, Allahabad, 1966.
- (ed.), Politics and Society during the Early Medieval Period, New Delhi, 1974.
- Prasad, I., A History of the Qaraunah Turks in India, Allahabad, 1936.
- Qureshi, I. H., The Muslim Community of the Indo-Pakistan Subcontinent, The Hague, 1962.
- Siddiqi, I. H., Some Aspects of Afghan Despotism in India, Aligarh, 1969.
- Srivastava, A. L., The Sultanate of Delhi, Agra, 1953, 2nd rev. edn.
- Thomas, E., The Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Delhi, reprint, Delhi, 1967.
- Venkataramanayya, N., Early Muslim Expansion in South India, Madras, 1942.

REFERENCES

1. Qur'an, Engl. tr. M. Pickthall, Chapter II, verse 136.
2. C. L. Cohen, 'Kharadj' in The Encyclopaedia of Islam², IV, pp. 1030-4; A. K. S. Lambton, 'Kharadj in Persia', *ibid.*, pp. 1034-52.

3. Qureshi, *The Muslim Community*, p. 35.

4. The copper or silver unit of the Arab monetary system, which

322

is still prevalent in some countries. It weighed around three to four grams of silver, copper, or brass.

5. Fredunbeg (tr.), *Chach-nama* p. 165.

6. *Ibid.*, p. 166.

7. *Ibid.*, pp. 168-9.

8. *Ibid.*, pp. 170-1.

9. The dynasty which ruled in North Africa, and later in Egypt from 909 until 1171; M. Canard, 'Fatimids', in *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*², II, pp. 850-62.

10. Qureshi, *The Muslim Community*, pp. 40-2.

11. Nazim, *Mahmud of Ghazna*, pp. 96—101.

12. *Ibid.*, pp. 98-9.

13. *Ibid.*, pp. 49, 88, 89, 91, 97, 98, 195.

14. *Ibid.*, pp. 104-5.

15. *Ibid.*, pp. 107-8.

16. *Ibid.*, pp. 209-10.

17. *Ibid.*, pp. 209-24.

18. C. E. Bosworth, *Mahmud of Ghazna in Contemporary Eyes and in Later Persian Literature*, pp. 85-92; Rizvi, *Shah Wali Allah and his Times*, pp. 293-4.

19. Nazim, *Mahmud of Ghazna*, p. 124.

20. Bosworth, *The Ghaznavids*, pp. 98-128.

21. *Ibid.*, pp. 77-82.

22. *Ibid.*, p. 110.

23. Ibid., pp. 210-18.
24. Ibid., p. 128.
25. Abu'l-Qasim al-Junayd (d. 910) strongly opposed the growing eclectic tendencies among the sufis.
26. Habibullah, *The Foundation of Muslim Rule in India*, pp. 53-7.
27. Taju'l-ma'asir, in Elliot and Dowson, II, p. 215.
28. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, *Tabaqdt-i Ndsiri*, I, pp. 512-14.
29. Ibid., I, pp. 515-19; Taju'l-ma'asir, in Elliot and Dowson, II, pp. 219-21.
30. Taju'l-ma'asir, in Elliot and Dowson, II, pp. 227-8.
31. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, I, pp. 518-22.
32. Taju'l-ma'asir, in Elliot and Dowson, II, pp. 231-2.
33. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, I, pp. 548-51.
34. Ibid., I, pp. 552-95.
35. Ibid., I, pp. 472-86.
36. A. L. Srivastava, *The Sultanate of Delhi, Agra*, 1964, 4th edn, pp. 84-7.
37. K. A. Nizami, 'Foundation of the Delhi Sultanate', in Habib and Nizamu (eds.), *A Comprehensive History of India*, V, p.185.
- 323
38. Ibid., p. 182.
39. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, I, pp. 511-51.
40. Ibid., pp. 496-507.
41. Ibid., I, pp. 530-8.
42. Ibid., I, pp. 285-99.
43. Ibid., I, pp. 538-44.

44. Ibid., I, pp. 540-1.
45. Ibid., I, pp. 628-9.
46. S. Rizvi, History of Sufism in India, I, pp. 135-6.
47. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, I, p. 638.
48. Ibid., I, pp. 631-3.
49. Ibid., I, pp. 635-7.
50. Ibid., I, pp. 637-8.
51. Ibid., I, pp. 639-48.
52. Barani, Tankh-i Firuz Shahi, p. 25.
53. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, I, pp. 649-51.
54. Ibid., I, pp. 655-60.
55. Ibid., I, pp. 660-4.
56. Ibid., I, pp. 666-9.
57. Ibid., I, pp. 675-82.
58. Ibid., I, pp. 683-6.
59. Ibid., II, pp. 825-40.
60. Habibullah, Foundation of Muslim Rule, pp. 210-11, 213, 215, 216, 220.
61. 'Isami, Futuhu's-salatin, pp. 161-6.
62. Habibullah, 'Foundation of Muslim Rule', pp. 161-4.
63. Barani, pp. 65-6.
64. Ibid., pp. 50-1.
65. Ibid., p. 56.
66. Ibid., pp. 57-8.

67. Ibid., pp. 54-5.
68. Ibid., pp. 81-6.
69. Yahya Sirhindi, Tankh-i Mubarak Shahi, pp. 42-3.
70. Barani, pp. 89-107.
71. Ibid., pp. 109-10.
72. Ibid., pp. 120-3.
73. Ibid., pp. 130-56; Amir Khusraw, Qiranu's-sa'dayn, pp. 11- 15.
74. Amir Khusraw, Qiranu's-sa'dayn, pp. 158-73.
75. Ibid., pp. 175-80.
76. Ibid., pp. 183-7; Khusraw, Miftahu'l-futuh, pp. 35-9.
77. Khusraw, Miftahu'l-futuh, p. 189.
78. Barani, p. 218.
79. Ibid., p. 213.
80. Ibid., pp. 208-12; Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, pp. 308-9.
- 324
81. Barani, pp. 221-36.
82. Ibid., pp. 237-40, 242-50.
83. Amir Khusraw, Khaza'inu'l-futuh, pp. 36-44.
84. Barani, pp. 300-1.
85. Khaza'inu'l-futuh, pp. 49-54; Barani, pp. 251-2.
86. Khaza'inu'l-futuh, pp. 59-64; Barani, pp. 272-3.
87. Ibid., pp. 264-72.
88. Ibid., pp. 282-7.

89. Ibid., pp. 288-90.
90. Coins of high value mainly of silver, but gold tankas were also minted.
91. Barani, pp. 305-11.
92. Ibid., pp. 312-17.
93. Ibid., pp. 318-19.
94. Rizvi, *A History of Sufism*, I, p. 189.
95. Barani, p. 300.
96. *Khaza'inu'l-futuh*, pp. 60-1.
97. 'Isami, *Futuhu's-salatin*, pp. 273-81.
98. *Khaza'inu'l-futuh*, pp. 113-21.
99. Ibid., pp. 128-32; Barani, pp. 325-34.
100. Amir Khusraw, *Diwal Rani Khizr Khan*, pp. 233—64.
101. Barani, pp. 372-87.
102. The territories directly under the administration of the sultans or the emperors were known as khalisa.
103. Amir Khusraw, *Tughluq-nama*, p. 19.
104. Ibid., pp. 20-1; Barani, pp. 389-409.
105. Ibid., pp. 432-3; Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, p. 161.
106. Barani, pp. 446-9.
107. Ibid., p. 450.
108. 'Isami, *Futuhu's-salatin*, pp. 417-20.
109. Gibb (tr.), *The Travels of Ibn Battuta*, III, pp. 654-6.
110. Barani, p. 452.

111. Yahya, Sirhindi, Tarikh-i Mubdrak-Shahi, pp. 36-7; Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarret, A'in-i Akbari, III, p.275.

112. Barani, p. 505.

113. 'Isami, Futuhu's-salatin, pp. 423-4.

114. Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, pp. 175-6.

115. Ibid., p. 182.

116. Barani, pp. 476-7

117. Ibid., pp. 477-8.

118. Badr-i Chach, Qasd'id, Lucknow, n.d., pp. 27-8.

119. Barani, pp. 475-6.

120. K. A. Nizami, 'Sultan Muhammad bin Tughluq', in Habib and Nizami (eds.), Comprehensive History, V, p. 539.

325

121. Mahdi Husain (tr.), The Rehla of Ibn Battuta, Baroda, 1976, pp. 189-91.

122. Gibb (tr.), Travels of Ibn Battuta, III, pp. 720-7.

123. Barani, pp. 498-9.

124. Ibid., pp. 500-5.

125. 'Isami, Futuhu's-salatin, pp. 550-7.

126. Barani, pp. 509-14.

127. Bada'uni, tr. Ranking, Muntakhabu't-tawarikh, I, p. 317.

128. Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, p. 186.

129. B. P. Saksena, 'Firuz Shah Tughluq', in Habib and Nizami (eds.), Comprehensive History, V, pp. 566-7.

130. Firuz Shah, Futuhat-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 18, 24; Barani, pp. 555-8; 'Afif, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 178-84.

131. 'Afif, *Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, pp. 109-24, 145-72.

132. *Ibid.*, pp. 183-250.

133. Yazdi, *Zafar-nama*, II, pp. 99-125.

134. *Ibid.*, pp. 126-82.

135. See below, p. 240.

II : THE INDEPENDENT RULING DYNASTIES

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Contemporary Persian Sources

'Abdu'r-Razzaq Samarqandi (d. 1446-7), *Matla'u's-Sa'dayn*, Lahore, 1933; Engl. tr. (a small portion) R. H. Major, London. (Hakluyt Society), 1859.

'Ali bin Mahmud al-Kirmani, *Ma'asir-i Mahmud Shahi*, MS. Cambridge, Browne Supplement 249.

—, *Mir'at-i Ahmadi*, supplement; tr. Syed Nawab 'Ali, Baroda, 1928.

Dughlat, Mirza Haydar, *Tarikh-i Rashid*, Engl. tr. E. D. Ross and N. Elias, London, 1895.

Ghulam Murtaza, *Basdtinu's-salatin*, Hyderabad, n.d.

Mahmud Gawan, *Riyazu'l-insha'*, Hyderabad, 1948.

Nairn, Mir Muhammad Ma'sum, *Tarikh-i Sind*, Poona, 1938.

Sikandar bin Muhammad Manjhu, *Mir'at-i Sikandari*, Bombay, 1890; Engl. tr. Fazlu'llah Lutfu'llah Faridi, Bombay, 1899.

Tabataba, Sayyid 'Ali bin 'Aziz, *Burhan-i Ma'asir*, Hyderabad, 1936.

326

Portuguese Sources

Albuquerque, Alfonso de, *The Commentaries of Albuquerque*, ed. and tr. Walter de Gray Birch, 4 vols., London, 1875-84.

Gama, Vasco da, *Journal of the First Voyage*, tr. E. G. Ravenstein, London, 1898.

Modern Works in English

- Acharya, N. N. *The History of Medieval Assam*, Gauhati, 1966.
- Commissariat, M. S., *A History of Gujarat*, 2 vols., Bombay, 1938- 57.
- Danvers, F. C., *The Portuguese in India*, 2 vols. London, 1894.
- Hasan, M., *Kashmir under the Sultans*, Calcutta, 1959.
- Husaini, A. Q., *Bahman Shah*, Calcutta, 1959.
- Nuniz, Fernao, *Chronicle*; tr. R. Sewell in *A Forgotten Empire*, London, 1900.
- Pannikkar, K. M. *A History of Kerala*, Annamalai University, 1960.
- Radhey Shyam, *The Kingdom of Ahmadnagar*, Delhi, 1966.
- Saeed, Mian M., *The Sharqi Sultans of Jaunpur*, Karachi, 1972.
- Sharma, G. N., *Mewar and the Mughal Emperors*, Agra, 1962.
- , *Social Life in Medieval Rajasthan*, Agra, n.d.
- Sherwani, H. K., *The Bahmanis of the Deccan*, Hyderabad, 1953.
- , *Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah*, Bombay, 1968.
- , *History of the Qutb-Shahi Dynasty*, Delhi, 1974.
- and Joshi, P. M.(eds.), *History of Medieval Deccan*, 2 vols., Hyderabad, 1973-4.
- Sufi, G. M. D., *Kashir*, Lahore, 1948-9.
- Tarafdar, M. R., *Husain Shahi Bengal*, Dacca, 1965.
- Tod, J., *Annals and Antiquities of Rajasthan*, Oxford, 1920.
- Venkataramanayya, N., *Early Muslim Expansion in South India*, Madras, 1942.

REFERENCES

1. See below, p. 65.
2. Tarafdar, *Husain Shahi Bengal*, pp. 1—32.

3. Barbosa, tr. Dames, *The Book of Duarte Barbosa*, II, pp. 147-8.
 4. Acharya, *The History of Medieval Assam*, pp. 41, 87, 100.
 5. Tarafdar, *Husain Shahi Bengal*, pp. 69, 74.
 6. S. Dutta, 'Rajput States', in R. C. Majumdar (ed.), *Delhi Sultanate*, Bombay, 1960, VI, pp. 331-2.
- 327
7. Shyamal Das, *Vir Vinod*, I, in Hindi, Udaipur, n.d., p. 308; G. H. Ojha, *Udaipur rajya ka itihas*, Ajmir, 1938, I, pp. 260-2.
 8. Nizamu'd-Din, tr. De, *Tabaqat-i Akbari*, III, pp. 131-3.
 9. Dutta, *Majunder* (ed.), *Delhi Sultanate*, pp. 332-4.
 10. Babur, tr. Beveridge, *Babur-nama*, II, pp. 426-529; Sharma, *Mewar and the Mughal Emperors*, pp. 7-20.
 11. G. N. Sharma, 'The Rathors of Marwar', in Habib and Nizami (eds.), *A Comprehensive History of India*, III, pp. 812-14.
 12. Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, pp. 289-90.
 13. J. C. Dutt (tr.), *Kings of Kashmir*, Bombay, 1896, pp. 15, 22, 26, 28.
 14. Hasan, *Kashmir under the Sultans*, pp. 48-53.
 15. Dutt, *Kings of Kashmir*, pp. 59-60, 112.
 16. Dughlat, tr. Ross and Elias, *Tarikh-i Rashidi*, pp. 3-4, 434; R. K. Parmu, 'Kashmir', in Habib and Nizami (eds.), *Comprehensive History*, V, pp. 754-5.
 17. Hasan, *Kashmir under the Sultans*, pp. 79-90.
 18. *Tabaqat-i Akbari*, III, p. 273.
 19. Yahya Sirhindi, *Tarikh-i Mubarak Shahi*, pp. 153-5, 159.
 20. Ram Babu Saksena, *Kirti Lata* (Hindi), Allahabad, 1929, pp. 14-18; *Tabaqat-i Akbari*, III, pp. 275-8.
 21. *Tabaqat-i Akbari*, III, pp. 279-83.

22. Ibid., III, pp. 284-7.
23. Ibid., III, pp. 310-12, 318-19.
24. Ibid., III, p. 288.
25. Ibid., III, pp. 161-2.
26. Tabataba, Burhan-i Ma'asir, p. 68.
27. Tabaqat-i Akbari, III, pp. 312-49.
28. Ibid., III, p. 35.
29. Ibid., III, pp. 351-6.
30. Ibid., III, p. 357.
31. Ibid., III, p. 384-92.
32. Ibid., III, p. 403.
33. Hajjiu'd-Dabir, Zafaru 'l-Walih, p. 52.
34. Tabataba, Burhan-i Ma'asir, p. 68.
35. Sikandar bin Muhammad, Mir'at-i Sikandari, pp. 5—18.
36. Ibid., pp. 19-21.
37. Ibid., pp. 33-6.
38. Ibid., pp. 44-6.
39. A. K. Forbes, Ras Mala, ed. H. G. Rawlinson, London, 1924, I, pp. 318-25.
40. Tabaqat-i Akbari, III, p. 147.
41. Ibid., III, pp. 152-68.
42. Albuquerque, The Commentaries, II, pp. 208-14; R. S.

328

Whiteway, The Rise of Portuguese Power in India 1497-1550, London, 1916, II, pp. 114-20.

43. Varthema, *Travels*, pp. 109-10.
44. *Tabaqat-i Akbari*, III, p. 173.
45. *Zafaru'l-Walih*, I, p. 230.
46. Danvers, *The Portuguese in India*, I, p. 406,
47. Mahdi Husain (tr.), *The Rehla of Ibn Battuta*, Baroda, 1976, pp. 189-91.
48. Danvers, *Portuguese in India*, I, pp. 50-69.
49. *Ibid.*, I, pp. 77-116.
50. Pearson, *Merchants and Rulers in Gujarat*, pp. 67—73.
51. *Ibid.*, pp. 73-77.
52. Husain (tr.) *The Rehla of Ibn Battuta*, pp. 226-7.
53. See above, p. 49.
54. J. Briggs (tr.), *History of the Rise of the Mahomedan Power in India*, Calcutta, 1966, reprint, II, pp. 175-6.
55. *Burhan-i Ma'asir*, pp. 43-52.
56. *Ibid.*, pp. 56-61.
57. Briggs (tr.), *Mahomedan Power*, II, p. 279.
58. R. J. Major (tr.), *India in the Fifteenth Century*, New York (Hakluyt Society), 'The Travels of Nicolo Conti', reprint from first series, 1857, p. 14.
59. Briggs (tr.), *Mahomedan Power*, II, pp. 300-2.
60. Mahmud Gawan, *Riyazu'l-insha'*, pp. 122, 163, 170, 181, 233, 238, 244, 249.
61. Briggs (tr.), *Mahomedan Power*, II, pp. 309-18.
62. Sherwani and Joshi (eds.), *History of Medieval Deccan*, I, pp. 285-7.
63. Fuzuni Astarabadi, *Tazkiratu'l-muluk*, British Library, Rieu, I, 317a, ff. 36b-40b.
64. Sherwani, *Qutb-Shahi Dynasty*, pp. 119-75.

65. Tazkiratu'l-muluk, ff. 41b-46b.
66. Briggs (tr.), Mahomedan Power, III, pp. 250-5.
67. Danvers, Portuguese in India, I, pp. 551-7.
68. Gurty Venkat Rao, 'The Vijayanagara Empire', in Habib and Nizami (eds.), Comprehensive History, V, pp. 1031-43.
69. Ibid., pp. 1044-5.
70. Ibid., pp. 1049-50.
71. Major (tr.), India in the Fifteenth Century, pp. 23-32 (Journey of Abd-er-Razzak).
72. Briggs (tr.), Mahomedan Power, II, pp. 265-6.
73. Gurty Venkat Rao, 'The Vijayanagara Empire', in Habib and Nizami (eds.), Comprehensive History, V, pp. 1062-3.
74. R. Sewell, Forgotten Empire, Madras, 1932, pp. 236-90.
- 329
75. Habib and Nizami (eds.), Comprehensive History, V, pp. 1074-84.
76. Ibid., V, pp. 1087-9.
77. See above, p. 83.

III : THE AFGHANS AND THE MUGHALS

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Contemporary Persian Sources

- 'Abbas Khan Sarwani, Tuhfa-i Akbar Shahi, Dacca, 1964.
- 'Abdu'l-Hamld Lahauri, Badshah-nama, Calcutta, 1866-72.
- Abu'l-Fazl 'Allami, Akbar-nama, Calcutta 1873-87; Engl. tr. H. Beveridge, Calcutta, 1897-1921.
- 'Arif Qandahari, Tarikh-i Akbari, Rampur, 1962.
- Asad Beg, Halat-i Asad Beg, MS. British Library, Rieu, III, 979b.

Babur, Zahiru'd-Din Muhammad, Babur-nama (Turki text), Leiden and London, 1905; Engl. tr. A. S. Beveridge, London, 1921.

Bayazid Biyat, Tarikh-i Humayun, Calcutta, 1941.

Bhim Sen, Dilkusha, MS. British Library, Rieu, I, 271a; Engl. tr. in V. G. Khobrekar (ed.), Sir Jadunath Sarkar Birth Centenary Volume, Bombay, 1972.

Gulbaden Begam, Humayun-nama, text and Engl. tr. A. S. Beveridge, London, 1902.

Isar Das Nagar, Futuh-at-i 'Alamgiri, MS. British Library, Rieu, I, 269a.

Jahangir, Emperor, Tuzuk-i Jahangiri, Aligarh, 1863-4; Engl. tr. A. Rogers and H. Beveridge, London, 1909-14.

Jawhar Aftabchi, Tazkiratu'l-waqi'at, MS. British Library, Rieu, I, 246; Engl. tr. C. Stewart, London, 1832.

Kazim, Munshi M., 'Alamgir-nama, Calcutta, 1865-73.

Khafi Khan, M. Hashim, Muntakhabu'l-lubab, Calcutta, 1860-76; Engl. tr. Anees Jahan Syed, Aurangzeb, Bombay, 1977.

Khwand-Amir, Humayun-nama, Calcutta, 1940; Engl. tr. Bainsi Prasad, Calcutta, 1940.

Muhammad Salih Kanbo Lahauri, 'Amal-i Salih, Calcutta, 1912.

Musta'id Khan, Muhammad Saqi, Ma'asir-i 'Alamgiri, Calcutta, 1870-3; Engl. tr. J. N. Sarkar, Calcutta, 1947.

Mu'tamad Khan, Iqbal-nama-i Jahangiri, Lucknow, 1870.

330

Razi, 'Aqil Khan, Waqi'at-i 'Alamgiri, Lahore, 1936.

Sadiq Khan, M., and Abu'l-Fazl Ma'muri, Shahjahan-nama, MS. British Library, Rieu, I, 262.

Sujan Ray Bhandari, Khulasatu't-tawarikh, Delhi, 1918; Engl. tr. (a part) J. N. Sarkar, The India of Aurangzib, Calcutta, 1901.

Talish, Shihabu'd-Din, Fathiya-i 'ibriya, Calcutta, 1847; Engl. tr. H. Blockmann, JASB, 1872, pp. 49-101; J. N. Sarkar, Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society, 1915, pp. 179-95 (incomplete).

European Sources

Broughton, T. D., *Letters Written in a Mahratta Camp*, Constable, London, 1892, rev. edn.

Camps, A., Jerome Xavier, SJ, and the Muslims of the Mogul Empire, Schoneck-Beckenried, 1957.

Correla-Allfonso, J., *Jesuit Letters and Indian History*, Bombay, 1955.

Dar, Harihar, *The Norris Embassy to Aurangzib*, Calcutta, 1959.

Monserrate, A., *The Commentary of Father Monserrate*, tr. and ed. J. S. Hoyland and S. N. Banerji, London, 1922.

Payne, C. H. (tr. and ed.), *Akbar and the Jesuits*, London, 1926.

———, *Jahangir and the Jesuits*, London, 1930.

Modern Works in English

'Ali, Athar, *The Mughal Nobility under Aurangzib*, Bombay, 1968.

Bangerjee, S. K., *Humayun Badshah*, 2 vols., London, 1938.

Chandra, S., *Parties and Politics at the Mughal Court*, Aligarh, 1959.

Commissariat, M. S., *Studies in the History of Gujarat*, Bombay, 1935.

Duff, James G., *History of the Mahrattas*, ed. S. M. Edwards, 2 vols., London, 1921.

Faruki, Z., *Aurangzib and his Times*, Bombay, 1935.

Gokhale, Kamal, *Chatrapati Sambhaji*, Pune, 1978.

Haig, Wolseley (ed.), *The Cambridge History of India*, IV, Cambridge, 1937.

Irwin, W., *Later Mughuls*, 2 vols., Calcutta, 1921-2; New Delhi, 1971, reprint.

Islam, R., *Indo-Persian Relations*, Tehran and Lahore, 1970.

Khan, I. A., *Political Biography of a Mughal Noble*, New Delhi, 1973.

Kincaid, C. A., and Parasnis, R. B., *A History of the Maratha Power*, 3 vols., London, 1931, 2nd ed.

Kulkarni, A. R., *Maharashtra in the Age of Shivaji*, Poona, 1969.

MacKenzie, D. N., *Poems from the Diwan of Khushhal Khan Khattak*, London, 1965.

- Maclagan, E. D., *The Jesuits and the Great Mogul*, London, 1932.
- Majumdar, R. C, and Pusalker, A. D., (eds.), *The Mughal Empire*, Bombay, 1974.
- Malik, Z., *The Reign of Muhammad Shah*, Bombay, 1977.
- Malleson, G. B., *History of the French in India*, London, 1893, 2nd edn.
- Modi, J. J., *The Parsees at the Court of Akbar and Dastur Mehergee Rana*, Bombay, 1903.
- Moreland, W. H. (ed.), *Relations of Golconda in the Early 17th Century*, London, 1931.
- Owen, S. J., *The Fall of the Mogul Empire*, Varanasi, 1960, 2nd edn.
- Polier, A. L. *Shah 'Alam II and his Court*, Calcutta, 1947.
- Prasad, B., *History of Jahangir*, Allahabad, 1940, 3rd edn.
- Prasad, I. *The Life and Times of Humayun*, Bombay, 1956, rev. edn.
- Qanungo, K. R., *Dara Shukoh*, Calcutta, 1935.
- , *Sher Shah and his Times*, Bombay, 1965.
- Rahim, M., *History of the Afghans in India*, Karachi, 1961.
- Rizvi, S. A. A., *Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*, Agra, 1965.
- , *Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign*, Delhi, 1975.
- , *Shah Wali-Allah and his Times*, Canberra, 1980.
- , *Shah 'Abd al-'Aziz*, Canberra, 1982.
- Saksena, B. P., *History of Shahjahan of Delhi*, Allahabad, 1959.
- Sardesai, G. S., *A New History of the Marathas*, 3 vols., Bombay, 1948-56.
- , *Main Currents of Maratha History*, Bombay, 1959.
- Sarkar, Jadunath, *The India of Aurangzib*, Calcutta, 1901.
- , *History of Aurangzib*, 5 vols., Calcutta, 1925-34.

- , Bihar and Orissa during the Fall of the Mughal Empire, Patna, 1932.
- , Fall of the Mughal Empire, 4 vols., Calcutta, 1932-50.
- , Studies in Aurangzib's Reign, Calcutta, 1933.
- (ed.), The History of Bengal, II, Calcutta, 1948.
- , The Persian Sources of Maratha History, Bombay, 1953.
- , House of Shivaji, Calcutta, 1955, 3rd rev. edn.
- , Shivaji and his Times, Calcutta, 1961, 6th rev. ed.
- , A Short History of Aurangzib, Calcutta, 1962, 3rd rev. edn.
- , Anecdotes of Aurganzib, Calcutta, 1963, 4th edn.
- , Nadir Shah in India, Calcutta, 1973, reprint.
- Sarkar, Jagdish, Islam in Bengal, Calcutta, 1972.
- , Some Aspects of Military Thinking and Practice in Medieval India, Calcutta, 1974.
- 332
- Sarkar, Jagdish, History of History Writing in Medieval India, Calcutta, 1977.
- , The Life of Mir Jumla, New Delhi, 1979, rev. edn.
- Singh, Khushwant, A History of the Sikhs, 2 vols. Princeton, 1963.
- Smith, V. A., Akbar, the Great Mogul, Delhi, 1958, reprint.
- Spear, T. G. P., Twilight of the Mughuls, Cambridge, 1951; New Delhi, 1970, reprint.
- Srivasta, A. L., A Short History of Akbar the Great, Agra, 1957.
- , The Mughal Empire, Agra, 1957, 2nd rev. edn.
- , Akbar the Great, 2 vols., Agra, 1962, 1967.
- , Studies in Indian History, Agra, 1974.
- Williams, L. F. R., An Empire Builder of the Sixteenth Century, reprint, Delhi, 1962, reprint.

REFERENCES

1. Barani, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, p. 483.
2. Shaykh Rizqu'llah Mushtaqi, Waqi'at-i Mushtaqi, British Library, Rieu, II, 802b, ff. 14-81.
3. Ibid., ff. 81-207.
4. Babur, tr. Beveridge, Babur-nama, pp. 456-74.
5. Ibid., pp. 550-3.
6. Ibid., pp. 554-74.
7. Ibid., pp. 531-3, 543-4, 548, 616-34.
8. Ibid., pp. 132, 604, 619-20.
9. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Beveridge, Akbar-nama, I, Delhi, 1972, reprint pp. 300-3.
10. Qanungo, Sher Shah and his Times, pp. 154-62.
11. Akbar-nama, I, pp. 337-9.
12. Ibid., pp. 349-97.
13. Qanungo, Sher Shah, pp. 330, 343-4.
14. Ibid., pp. 395-418.
15. Ibid., pp. 270-302.
16. Akbar-nama, I, pp. 364, 50-68.
17. Ibid., I, pp. 600-8.
18. Ibid., I, pp. 652-8.
19. Ibid., II, pp. 4-12.
20. Ibid., II, pp. 67-8.
21. Ibid., II, pp. 111-16.
22. Ibid., II, pp. 240-3.

23. Ibid., II, pp. 246-7, 294-5.
24. Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign, pp. 107-20.
25. Smith, Akbar, the Great Mogul, pp. 178-81; see also Rizvi, 333 Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign, pp. 141-60.
26. Ibid., pp. 161-5.
27. Smith, Akbar, the Great Mogul, pp. 210-15; Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History, pp. 374-418.
28. Payne (tr.), Akbar and the Jesuits, p. 68.
29. Ibid., p. 68.
30. Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History, pp. 394-403.
31. Akbar-nama, III, p. 1043.
32. Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History, pp. 472-81.
33. Ibid., pp. 482-5.
34. Jahangir, tr. Rogers and Beveridge, The Tuzuk-i Jahangiri, I, pp. 5-10.
35. Ibid., I, p. 60.
36. Ibid., II, pp. 247-99.
37. Prasad, History of Jahangir, pp. 337-59.
38. Roe, ed. Foster, The Embassy of Sir Thomas Roe to India, p. 270.
39. Saksena, History of Shahjahan of Delhi, pp. 66—78.
40. Ibid., pp. 80-90.
41. Manrique, tr. and ed. Luard and Holsen, Travels of Fray Sebastian Manrique, II, pp. 325-39; 'Abdu'l-Hamid Lahauri, Badshah-nama, I, pp. 435-6.
42. The oration delivered on Fridays at the time of meridian prayer and after the two 'id prayers. The Sunnis in their khutba eulogize the first four successors to the Prophet; the Shi'is extol the

virtue of the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law (the fourth Caliph in order of succession) and his eleven successors.

43. Rizvi, *A Socio-Intellectual History of the Isna 'Ashari Shi'is in India*, I, pp. 328-34.

44. *Ibid.*, I, pp. 280-1.

45. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, I, pp. 265-346.

46. *Ibid.*, II, pp. 348-420.

47. Rizvi, *Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India*, pp. 393-4.

48. *Ibid.*, pp. 362-4; Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, II, pp. 440-550.

49. Khafi Khan, *Muntakhabu'l-lubab*, tr. Anees Jahan Syed, *Aurangzeb*, pp. 135-6.

50. Singh, *A History of the Sikhs*, I, pp. 89-94.

51. MacKenzie, *Poems from the Diwan of Khushal Khan Khattak*, pp. 215-16.

52. H. Beveridge and Bains Prasad (trs.), *The Ma'athir-ul-umara'*, Patna, 1979, I, pp. 247-53.

53. Satish Chandra et al., *Marwar under Jaswant Singh, Meerut*, 1976, pp. 255-68.

334

54. Jagdish Sarkar, *The Military Despatches of a Seventeenth-Century Indian General*, Calcutta, 1969; Jadunath Sarkar and Raghbir Singh, *Shivaji's Visit to Aurangzib at Agra*, Calcutta, 1963, pp. 1-27.

55. Jadunath Sarkar, *Shivaji and his Times*, Calcutta, 1961, pp. 201-15.

56. Gokhale, *Chatrapati Sambhaji*, pp. 33-50.

57. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, IV, pp. 362-94.

58. *Ibid.*, IV, pp. 395-456.

59. Bhim Sen, *Dilkusha*, in Rizvi, *Shah Wali-Allah and his Times*, pp. 99-100; Engl. tr. Khobreakar, *Tdnkh-i Dilkusha*, pp. 230-2.

60. Manucci, *Storia de Mogor*, II, p. 505.

61. Singh, *History of the Sikhs*, I, pp. 94-5.

62. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, V, pp. 232-91.
63. Rizvi, Shah Wali-Allah and his Times, p. 108.
64. *Ibid.*, pp. 120-41.
65. *Ibid.*, pp. 142-6.
66. S. C. Hill (ed.), 'Bengal in 1756-57', *Indian Record Series*, II, pp. 459-63.

V : THE STATE

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Basic Arabic and Persian Sources

'Abdu'l-Haqq Muhaddis Dihlawi, *Nuriyya-i Sultaniyya*, India Office, Delhi, Persian 659b.

Abu'l-Fazl, *A'in-i Akbari*, 3 vols., Lucknow, 1892: Engl. trs. I, H. Blochmann, rev. D.C. Phillot, Calcutta, 1939, 2nd edn.; II and III, H. S. Jarrett, rev. Jadunath Sarkar, Calcutta, 1948.

Barani, *Fataw-i jahandari*, Lahore, 1972; Engl. tr. Mohammad Habib and Mrs Afsar Umar Salim Khan, Allahabad, n.d.

Ghazali, Abu Hamid, *Nasihatu'l-muluk*, Tehran, n.d.; Engl. tr. F. R. C. Bagley, *Ghazali's Book of Counsel for Kings*, Oxford, 1964.

Hamadani, Mir Sayyid 'Ali, *Zakhiratu'l-muluk*, Lucknow, n.d.

Ibn Khaldun, *The Muqaddimah* (Arabic); Engl. tr. F. Rosenthal, 3 vols. New York, 1958.

Nizamu'l-Mulk, *Siyasat-nama*, Tehran, 1956; Engl. tr. H. Darke, *The Book of Government or Rules for Kings*, London, 1960.

Qabil Khan (ed.), *Addb-i 'Alamgiri*, Lahore, 1971.

al-Turtushi, Muhammad b., al Walid, *Siraju'l-muluk*, Alexandria, 1872-4 (Arabic); Persian tr. MS. in Oriental Institute, Dushanbe.

335

Modern Works in English

Ahmad, M. B., *The Administration of Justice in Medieval India*, Aligarh, 1941.

Arnold, T. W., *The Caliphate*, London, 1965, 2nd rev. edn.

- Aziz, Abdul, *The Mansabdari System and the Mughal Army*, London, 1946; Delhi, 1972, reprint.
- , *Arms and Jewellery of the Indian Mughals*, London, 1947.
- Day, U. B., *Administrative Systems of Delhi Sultanate*, Allahabad, 1959.
- Habib, I. *The Agrarian System of Mughal India*, Bombay, 1963.
- Hasan, S. N., *Thoughts on Agrarian Relations in Mughal India*, New Delhi, 1973.
- Ibn Hasan, *The Central Structure of the Mughal Empire*, Karachi, 1967, reprint.
- Irvine, W., *The Army of the Indian Moguls*, New Delhi, 1962, reprint.
- Lambton, A. K. S., *Landlord and Peasant in Persia*, London, 1953.
- Qureshi, I. B., *The Administration of the Sultanate of Delhi*, Lahore, 1944, 2nd edn.; Karachi, 1958, rev. edn.
- , *The Administration of the Mughal Empire*, Karachi, 1966.
- Richards, J. F., *Mughal Administration of Golconda*, Oxford and London, 1975.
- Saran P., *The Provincial Government of the Mughals*, Allahabad, 1941.
- , *Studies in Medieval Indian History*, Delhi, 1952.
- Sarkar Jadunath, *Mughal Administration*, Calcutta, 1952, 4th edn.
- Sen, S.B., *Administrative System of the Marathas*, Calcutta, 1925, rev. edn.
- Sharma, Sri Ram, *Mughal Government and Administration*, Lahore, 1959, 3rd rev. edn.
- Topa, I., *Politics in Pre-Mughal Times*, Delhi, 1976, reprint.
- Tripathi, R. P., *Some Aspects of Muslim Administration*, Allahabad, 1956, rev. edn.

REFERENCES

1. Qur'an, Chapter III, verse 25.
2. Abu'l 'Ala' Maududi, Abu Hanifah and Abu Yusuf, in M. M. Sharif (ed.), *A History of Muslim Philosophy*, Wiesbaden, 1963, I, pp. 687-8.
3. Qur'an, Chapter IV, verse 62.

4. Ghazali, tr. Bagley, Ghazali's Book of Counsel for Kings, pp. 45- 6.
 5. See above, p. 333.
 6. Ghazali, Ihya' 'ulum al-din', in H. A. R. Gibb, Islamic Society and the West, London, 1960, reprint, I, p. 31.
- 336
7. Al-Turtushi, Sijaj al-muluk, pp. 88, 92.
 8. Ibid., p. 12.
 9. Barani, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 70-1.
 10. Ibid., p. 147.
 11. Amir Khusraw, Qiranu's-s'dayn, Aligarh, 1918, pp. 21-2.
 12. Amir Khusraw, Khaza'inu'l-futuh, p. 6.
 13. Badr-i Chach, Qasd'id-i Badr-i Chach, pp. 14-16.
 14. Mohammad Habib arid Mrs Afsar Umar Salim Khan, The Political Theory of the Delhi Sultanate, Allahabad, pp. 39-40.
 15. Ibid., pp. 64-5.
 16. Arnold, The Caliphate, pp. 140-1.
 17. Bada'uni, tr. Ranking, Muntakhabu't-tawdrih, I, p. 480.
 18. Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign, p. 360.
 19. Turtushi, Siraju'l-muluk, Persian tr. Dushanke, USSR, f. 3a.
 20. 'Abdu'l-Haqq, Nuriyya-i Sultaniyya, ff. 6-11a, 14a.
 21. Ibid., ff. 10b-11a.
 22. Rizvi, Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India, pp. 223-32.
 23. Qabil Khan (ed.), Abdb-i 'Alamgiri, Lahore, 1971, II, pp. 1146-7.
 24. Encyclopaedia of Islam², III, pp. 510-13.

25. Habib and Salim Khan, Political Theory of the Delhi Sultanate, p. 65.
 26. Qur'an, Chapter IX, verse 29.
 27. Barani, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, p. 97.
 28. Ibid., pp. 509-11.
 29. Ibid., p. 522.
 30. Nizamu'd-Din, tr. De, Tabaqdt-i Akbari, I, p. 239.
 31. 'Afif, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 382-4.
 32. Bada'uni, tr. Lowe, Muntakhabu't-tawarikh, II, pp. 367-8.
 33. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, A'in-i Akbari, I, pp. 287-8.
 34. Bada'uni, tr. Lowe, II, p. 388.
 35. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarrett, A'in-i Akbari, II, pp. 42-3.
 36. Muhammad Salih Kamboh, 'Amal-i Salih, Calcutta, 1923-46, III, pp. 246-8.
 37. Bada'uni, tr. Ranking, Muntakhabu't-tawarikh, I, p. 497.
 38. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarrett, I, pp. 166-9.
 39. Ibid., I, p. 165.
 40. Manucci, Storia do Mogor, II, pp. 361, 400.
 41. Qureshi, The Administration of the Sultanate of Delhi, 1958, IV, pp. 69-71.
 42. Monserrate, Commentary, p. 201; Manucci, Storia do Mogor, II, p. 419.
- 337
43. Adabu'l-harb wa'sh-Shuja'a, India Office, London, Ethe, I, 2767, f. 52a.
 44. Ibn Hasan, The Central Structure of the Mughal Empire, pp. 173-87.
 45. Chandra, Parties and Politics at the Mughal Court, pp. 25-6.
 46. Ibn Hasan, Central Structure, pp. 188-209.

47. Barani, *Tarik-i Firuz Shahi*, p. 145.
48. 'Umari, tr. Spies, *Masalik al-absar fi mamalik al-amsar*, p. 29.
49. Irfan Habib, 'Agrarian Economy', in Raychaudhuri and Habib (eds.), *The Cambridge Economic History of India*, I, pp. 70-1.
50. 'Afif, *Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, pp. 296-7.
51. Manucci, *Storia do Mogor*, II, p. 377.
52. Aziz, *The Mansabddri System and the Mughal Army*, pp. 46-93; 'Ali, *The Mughal Nobility under Aurangzib*, pp. 40-7.
53. 'Abdu'l-Hamid Lahauri, *Badshah-nama*, II, pp. 715-16.
54. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Beveridge, *Akbar-nama*, III, p. 1032.
55. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, I, p. 259-60.
56. De Laet, tr. Hoyland and Banerjee, *The Empire of the Great Mogal*, Bombay, 1928, pp. 113-14.
57. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, I, pp. 261-4.
58. I. A. Khan, 'Early Use of Cannon and Musket in India', *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 1981, pp. 146-64.
59. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, I, pp. 119-21.
60. Thevenot, ed. Sen, *Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri*, New Delhi, 1949, p. 62.
61. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, I, p. 121.
62. Bada'uni, tr. Lowe, *Muntakhabu't-tawarikh*, II, p. 206.
63. Pelsaert, tr. Moreland and Geyl, *Jahangir's India: The Remonstrantie of Francisco Pelsaert*, p. 42.
64. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, III, pp. 275-8.
65. Manrique, tr. and ed. Luard and Holsen, *Travels*, pp. 224—5, 236.
66. Monserrate, *Commentary* p. 214.
67. Pelsaert, tr. Moreland and Geyl, *The Remonstrantie*, pp. 54-5.

68. Encyclopaedia of Islam², II, p. 566—7.
69. Firuz Shah, *Futuhāt-i Firuz Shah-i*, p. 21.
70. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Beveridge, II, pp. 316-7; Rizvi, *Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India*, pp. 69—70.
71. Khafi Khan, tr. Anees Jahan, *Muntakhabu'l-lubab*, pp. 275—6.
72. See above, note 4, Chapter 1, p. 321.
73. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, III, pp. 268-75; S. Chandra, 'Jizyah and the State in India during the 17th Century', *Journal of Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 1969, pp. 322-40.
- 338
74. Manucci, *Storia do Mogor*, II, p. 234.
75. Barani, p. 287.
76. Habib, *The Agrarian System of Mughal India*, pp. 204—14.
77. *Ibid.*, pp. 301, 353-63.
78. Barani, *Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, p. 497.
79. Bada'uni, tr. Haig, *Muntakhabu't-taswarikh*, III, p. 194.
80. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Beveridge, III, p. 1063.
81. *Ma'athir al-umara'*, I, p. 77.
82. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, III, pp. 82-92.
83. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, I, p. 278.
84. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarrett, II, pp. 43-5.
85. Qureshi, *The Administration of the Sultanate of Delhi*, pp. 197-9.
86. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarrett, II, pp. 37-41.
87. Ibn Battuta, tr. Gibb, *The Travels of Ibn Battuta*, p. 594.
88. Pelsaert, tr. Moreland and Geyl, *The Remonstrantie*, p. 58.

89. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarrett, II, pp. 41-2.

V : SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC CONDITIONS

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Travels and Geography: Arabic

Abu Zayd, Relation des voyages fails par les Arabes et les Persans dans l'Inde et a la Chine (Silsilat al-tawarikh); The Account of Sulayman the Merchant, written in AD 851 and compiled by Abu Zayd Hasan towards AD 916 (Arabic text), Langles (1811); French tr. and commentary, M. Reinaud, 2 vols., Paris, 1845.

Ibn Battuta, Voyages d'Ibn Batoutah, ed. C. Defremery and B. R. Sanguinetti, 4 vols., Paris 1853-8; Engl. tr. and selected, H. A. R. Gibb, London, 1953; Engl. tr. H. A. R. Gibb, 3 vols., Cambridge 1958-71 (Hakluyt Society), tr. Mahdi Husain, Rehla, Baroda, 1976.

Ibn Khurradazbih, Kitab al masalik wa 'l-mamalik. Leiden, 1889.

al-Idrisi, al-Sharif, Kitab Nuzhat al-Mushtaq fi 'Khtiraq al 'Afaq; Engl. tr. and commentary, S. Maqbul Ahmad, Leiden, 1960.

Khwarizmi, Abu Ja'far Muhammad, Kitdb Surat al-Arz, Leipzig, 1926.

Marvazi, Tahir, Sharaf al-zaman Tahir Marvazi on China, the Turks and India; Arabic text with Engl. tr. and commentary, V. Minorsky, London, 1942.

Mas'udi, Kitab Muruj al-Zahab wa ma'adin al-jawhar; Arabic text with French tr. C. Barbier de Meynard and Pavet de Courteille,

339

Les Prairies d'Or, Paris, 1861-77.

al-Qalqashandi, Shihabu'd-Din, Subh al-A'sha, Cairo; Engl. tr. of chapters on India, Otto Spies, Muslim University Journal, Aligarh, June 1935, pp. 1-77.

al-'Umari, Shihabu 'd-Din, Masalik al-absar fi mamalik al-amsar; Engl. tr. of Indian portion, Otto Spies, Muslim University Journal, Aligarh, March 1943, pp. 1-63.

Travels: Chinese

Ma Huan, Ying-yai Sheng-lan 1433; Engl. tr. J. V. G. Mills, The Over-All Survey of the Ocean's Shores, Cambridge (Hakluyt Society), 1970.

Travels: Europeans

Barbosa, Duarte, *The Book of Duarte Barbosa: An Account of the Countries Bordering on the Indian Ocean and their Inhabitants*; Engl. tr. M. L. Dames, 2 vols., London (Hakluyt Society), 1918, 1921.

Bernier, Francois, *Travels in the Mogul Empire, 1656-68*; Engl. tr. Irving Brock; rev. and annotated, A. Constable, London, 1891; rev. and annotated, V. A. Smith, London, 1914, 1916.

Birch, Walter de Gray, *The Commentaries of the Great Alfonso D'Albuquerque*, 4 vols., London (Hakluyt Society), 1880.

Cabral, Pedro Alvares, *The Voyage of Pedro Alvares Cabral to Brazil and India*; Engl. tr. W. N. Greenlee, London, 1938.

Foster, W., *Early Travels in India*, London, 1921.

Fryer, John, *A New Account of East India and Persia, Being Nine Years' Travels 1672-81*, ed. W. Crooke, 3 vols., London (Hakluyt Society), 1909, 1912, 1915.

Jourdain, John, *The Journal of John Jourdain 1608-17*, ed. W. Foster, Cambridge (Hakluyt Society), 1905.

de Laet, John, *De Imperio Magni Mogolis, Sive India Veri Commentarius e Variis Sactoribus Congestes*, Amsterdam, 1631; Engl. tr. J. S. Hoyland and S. N. Banerjee, Bombay, 1928.

Locke, John C. (ed.), *The First Englishmen in India*, London, 1930.

Major, R. H., *India in the Fifteenth Century*, London (Hakluyt Society), 1857.

Manrique, F. S., *The Travels of Fray Sebastian Manrique*; 2 vols., Engl. tr. and ed. C. E. Luard and H. Holsten, London (Hakluyt Society), 1927.

Manucci, N., *Storia do Mogor*; Engl. tr. W. Irvine, 4 vols., London, 1906-8; New Delhi, 1981, reprint.

340

Moreland, W. H. (ed. and tr.), *Relations of Golconda in the Early Seventeenth Century*, London (Hakluyt Society), 1931.

Mundy, P., *The Travels of Peter Mundy*, ed. R. C. Temple, 5 vols., Cambridge (Hakluyt Society), 1914.

Oaten, E. F., *European Travellers in India during the 15th, 16th and 17th Centuries*, London, 1909.

Ovington, J., *A Voyage to Surat in the Year 1689*, ed. H. G. Rawlinson, London, 1929.

Pelsaert, F., *Jahangir's India: The Remonstrantie of F. Pelsaert*; Engl. tr. W. H. Moreland and P. Geyl, Cambridge, 1925, Delhi, 1972, reprint.

Pinkerton, T., (compiler), *A General Collection of the Best and Most Interesting Voyages and Travels in All Parts of the World*, 17 vols., London, 1908-14.

Polo, Marco, *Marco Polo: The Description of the World*, Engl. tr. A. C. Moule and P. Pelliot, 2 vols., London, 1938.

Purchas, S. (compiler), *Purchas, his Pilgrimes*, 20 vols., Glasgow, 1905-7.

Rawlinson, H. G. (ed.), *Narratives from Purchas, his Pilgrimes*, Cambridge, 1931.

Roe, Sir Thomas, *The Embassy of Sir Thomas Roe to the Court of the Great Mogul*, ed. W. Foster; London, 1926, rev. edn; 1970, reprint.

Tavernier, J. B., *Tavernier's Travels in India*; Engl. tr. V. Ball, ed. W. Crooke, 2 vols., London, 1889; 2nd edn. 1925, New Delhi, 1977, reprint.

Thevenot, Jean de, *Indian Travels of Careri and Thevenot*, ed. S. N. Sen, Delhi, 1949.

Valle, Pierto della, *The Travels of Pietro della Valle in India*, ed. E. Grey, 2 vols. London, 1892.

Varthema, Lodovic de, *Travels in Egypt, Syria, Persia, India, Ethiopia*, tr. J. W. James, ed. G. P. Badger, London (Hakluyt Society), 1863.

Wheeler, J. T. and Macmillan, M., *European Travellers in India*, Calcutta, 1956.

Modern Works on Numismatics

Agarwala, V. S., 'A Unique Treatise on Medieval Indian Coins' in H. K. SherwanI (ed.), *Ghulam Yazdani Commemoration Volume*, Hyderabad, 1936.

Ahmad, S., *Supplement to Volume III of the Catalogue of Coins in the Indian Museum, Calcutta (Mughal Emperors of India)*, Calcutta, 1939.

341

Husain, M. K., *The Catalogue of Coins of the Mughal Emperors (Treasure trove collection, Bombay)*, Bombay, 1968.

Lane-Poole, S., *The Coins of the Mughal Emperors of Hindustan in the British Museum*, ed. R. Stuart Poole, London, 1892.

Rodgers, C. J., *Catalogue of Coins in the Government Museum, Lahore*, 1891.

——, Coins of the Mughal Emperors of India, Calcutta, 1893.

Wright, H. N., Catalogue of Coins in the Indian Museum, Calcutta, II (sultans of Delhi and contemporary dynasties), III (Mughal emperors), Oxford, 1907, 1908.

——, Coinage and Metrology of the Sultans of Delhi, incorporating 'The Catalogue of Coins in the Author's Cabinet now in the Delhi Museum', Delhi, 1936; Delhi, 1974, reprint.

General Modern Works in English

Alvi, M. A., and Rahman, A., Fathullah Shirazi- A Sixteenth Century Indian Scientist, New Delhi, 1968.

Appadorai, A., Economic Conditions in Southern India (1000-1500 AD), Madras, 1936.

Baden-Powell, B. H., Land Systems of British India, 3 vols., Oxford, 1892.

Buchanan, F., A Journey from Madras through the Countries of Mysore, Cavara and Malabar, Madras, 1807.

Chaudhuri, K. N., The Trading World of Asia and the English East India Company, 1660-1760, Cambridge, 1978.

Chicherov, A. I., India, Economic Development in the 16th-18th Centuries: Outline History of Crafts and Trade, Moscow, 1971.

Chopra, P. N., Some Aspects of Social Life during the Mughal Age (1526-1707), Jaipur, 1963.

Datta, K. K., Survey of India's Social Life and Economic Conditions in the Eighteenth Century, 1707-1813), Calcutta, 1961.

Goiten, S. D., Studies in Islamic History and Institutions, Leiden, 1966.

Gokhale, B. G., Surat in the Seventeenth Century, London, 1979.

Gopal, S., Commerce and Craft in Gujarat: 16th and 17th Centuries, New Delhi, 1975.

Gupta, A. Das, Malabar in Asian Trade, 1740-1800, Cambridge, 1967.

Haque, Ziaul, Landlord and Peasant in Early Islam: A Study of the Legal Doctrine of Muzara'a/Share Cropping, Islamabad, 1977.

Hourani, G., Arab Seafaring in the Indian Ocean, Princeton, 1951.

Khan, Ahsan Raza, Chieftains in the Mughal Empire during the Reign of Akbar, Simla, 1979.

Kurz, Otto, *European Clocks and Watches in the Near East*, London, 1975.

342

Lambton, A. K. S., *Islamic Society in Persia*, London, 1954.

——, *Landlord and Peasant in Persia*, London, 1954.

Maddison, Angus, *Class Structure and Economic Growth - India and Pakistan since the Mughals*, London, 1971.

Mookerji, R. K., *Indian Shipping*, Bombay, 1912.

Moreland, W. H. *India at the Death of Akbar*, London, 1920.

——, *From Akbar to Aurangzeb, a Study in Indian Economic History*, London, 1923.

——, *Agrarian Systems of Moslem India*, Cambridge, 1929.

Naqvi, H. K., *Urban Centres and Industries in Upper India, 1556-1803*, Bombay, 1968.

——, *Urbanization and Urban Centres under the Great Mughals*, Simla, 1972.

Ojha, P. N., *Some Aspects of North Indian Social Life, 1556-1707*, Patna, 1961.

Pearson, M. N., *Merchants and Rulers in Gujarat*, Berkeley, Calif., 1976.

Qaisar, A. J., *The Indian Response to European Technology and Culture (1498-1707)*, Delhi, 1982.

Rashid, A., *Society and Culture in Medieval India*, Calcutta, 1969.

Raychaudhuri, T., *Bengal under Akbar and Jahangir*, Calcutta, 1953; New Delhi, 1969, reprint.

—— and Habib, I. (eds.), *The Cambridge Economic History of India, I (c. 1200-c. 1750)*, Cambridge, 1982.

Richards, D. S. (ed.), *Islam and the Trade of Asia*, Oxford and Pennsylvania, 1970.

Saletore, B. A., *Social and Political Life in the Vijayanagara Empire*, Madras, 1934.

Serjeant, R. B., *The Portuguese of the South Arabian Coast*, Oxford, 1963.

Siddiqi, N. A., *Land Revenue Administration under the Mughals*, Bombay, 1970.

White, Lynn, jnr., *Medieval Technology and Social Change*, New York, 1964.

Wolf, E., Peasants, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1960.

REFERENCES

1. Ar-Rawandi, Muhammad ibn 'Ali ibn Sulayman, The Rahatu's sudur, London, 1921, p. 17.

2. 'Umari, tr. Spies, Masdlik al-absar, p. 28.

3. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Beveridge, Akbar-nama, I, p. 642.

4. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Jarrett, A 'in-i Akbari, II, tables of Sarkars.

343

5. Rizvi, Shah 'Abd al-'Aziz, pp. 182-3.

6. Rizvi, Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India, p. 142.

7. Bada'uni, tr. Lowe, Muntakhabu't-tawarikh, II, pp. 211-13.

8. Rizvi, A History of Sufism in India, I, p. 124.

9. Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign, pp. 183-4.

10. Monserrate, The Commentary, p. 209.

11. Barani, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 156-8.

12. 'Umari, tr. Spies, Masalik al-absar, pp. 45-6.

13. See above, p. 106.

14. Babur, tr. Beveridge, Babur-nama, p. 487.

15. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, p. 276.

16. Babur, tr. Beveridge, pp. 486-7.

17. 'Afif, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 99-100, 1078-84.

18. Satish Chandra, 'Standard of Living', in Raychaudhuri and Habib (eds.), The Cambridge Economic History of India, I, pp. 458-60.

19. Hasan, Nurul, 'Zamindars under the Mughals', in R. E. Frykenberg (ed.), Land Control and Social Structure in Indian History, Wisconsin, 1969, pp. 17-28.

20. Habib, *The Agrarian System of Mughal India*, p. 164.
21. Jadunath Sarkar, *History of Aurangzib*, V, pp. 333-4.
22. Gibb (tr.), *The Travels of Ibn Battuta*, III, pp. 624-5.
23. *Ibid.*, III, pp. 619-22.
24. 'Umari, tr. Spies, *Masalik al-absar*, pp. 18—19.
25. 'Afif, *Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, pp. 124-6, 148.
26. 'Ali bin Mahmud, tr. Syed Nawab 'Ali, *Mir'at-i Ahmadi*, supplement, pp. 8—17.
27. Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, p. 158.
28. Bernier, ed. Constable, *Travels in the Mogul Empire*, pp. 247- 8.
29. See below, p. 243.
30. Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, p. 153.
31. Manucci, *Storia do Mogor*, II, p. 453.
32. BaranI, *Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, pp. 116-7.
33. Rizvi, *Religious and Intellectual History*, p. 322.
34. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, *A 'in-i Akbari*, I, pp. 275-6.
35. Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, p. 164.
36. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, *Tabaqat-i Nasiri*, I, p. 646.
37. K. A. Nizami, *Studies in Medieval Indian History and Culture*, Allahabad, 1966, pp. 73-9.
38. Rizvi, *A Socio-Intellectual History of the Isna 'Ashari Shi 'is in India*, II, pp. 203-11.
39. Rizvi, *Religious and Intellectual History*, pp. 196-7.
40. W. Foster (ed.), *The English Factories in India, 1637-1641*, Oxford,

1912, p. 134; K. N. Chaudhuri, 'The Structure of Indian Textile Industry in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries', *Indian Economic and Social History Review*, New Delhi, 1974, XI, Nos. 2-3, p. 136.

41. Birch, *The Commentaries of the Great Alfonso D'Albuquerque*, III, p. 58.

42. Gibb (tr.), *Travels of Ibn Battuta*, III, p. 288.

43. Pearson, *Merchants and Rulers in Gujarat*, pp. 40-4, 76-7, 83-4, 93-5, 99-100.

44. W. Foster (ed.), *The English Factories in India 1646-50*, Oxford, 1914, p. 34.

45. Qaisar, *The Indian Response to European Technology and Culture*, pp. 70-104.

46. *Ibid.*, pp. 60-4.

47. *Ibid.*, pp. 64-9.

48. Hasan Sijzi, *Fawa'idu'l-fu'ad*, pp. 130-1.

49. Minhaj, tr. Raverty, *Tabaqat-i Nasiri*, II, p. 1133.

50. Hamid Qalandar, *Khqyru'l-majalis*, p. 241.

51. Tavernier, *Travels in India*, 1889 edn., I, p. 28.

52. Anecdote of Khwaja Qutbu'd-Din Bakhtiyar Kaki in Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, p. 137.

53. Irian Habib, 'Usury in Medieval India', *Comparative Studies in Society and History* (The Hague), VI, 1964, p. 413.

54. Pearson, *Merchants and Rulers in Gujarat*, pp. 125-7, 135, 149-50.

55. M.F. Lokhandwala (tr.), *Mir'at-i Ahmadi*, pp. 210-11.

56. Jadunath Sarkar, *Shivaji and his Times*, pp. 96-8, 171-5.

57. Khafi Khan, tr. Anees Jahan, *Muntakhabu'l-lubab*, pp. 271-2.

58. M. S. Commissariat, *Studies in the History of Gujarat, Bombay*, 1935, pp. 54-76.

59. Pelsaert, tr. Moreland and Geyl, *The Remonstrantie of Francisco Pelsaert*, p. 78.

60. Tavernier, *Travels in India*, II, p. 183.

VI : RELIGION

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Primary Sources in Persian

'Abdu'l-Haqq Muhaddis Dihlawi, Akhbaru'l-akhyar, Delhi, 1914.

Amir Hasan Sijzi, Fawa'idu'l-fu'ad, Bulandshahr, 1855-6.

Amir- Khwurd, Siyaru'l-awliya', Delhi, 1882.

345

Ardistani, Zu'lfaqr, Dabistan-i Mazahib, Lucknow, n.d.; Engl. tr. David Shea and Anthony Troyer, The Dabistan or the School of Manners, Paris, 1843.

al-Biruni, Kitab fi tahqiq ma li'l-Hind, Hyderabad, 1958 (Arabic); Engl. tr. E. C. Sachau, Alberuni's India, London, 1887; Delhi, 1964, reprint.

Dara Shukoh, Sakinat'ul-awliya', Tehran, n.d.

——, Safinatu'l-awliya', Kanpur, 1900.

Ghulam Sarwar, Mufti, Khazinat'u'l-asfiya', Kanpur, 1894.

Hamid Qalandar, Khayru'l-majalis, Aligarh, 1959.

Hashim Badakhshani, Muhammad, Zubdatu'l-maqamat, Kanpur, 1890.

Hujwiri, 'Ali b., 'Usman, Kashfu'l-mahjub, Lahore, 1923; Engl. tr. R. A. Nicholson, London, 1959, reprint.

Jamall, Kanboh Dihlawi, Siyaru 'l-'arifin, Delhi, 1893.

——, Lawa'ih, ed. and tr. E. H. Whinfield and Mirza Muhammad Qazwini, London, 1906.

Jami, Maulana 'Abdu'r-Rahman, Nafahatu'l-uns, Tehran, 1947.

Mujaddid Alf-i Sani, Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, Maktubat-i Imam-i Rabbani, Karachi, 1972.

Qasuri, 'Abdull'ah, Khweshgi, Ma'ariju'l-wilayat, MS. Azar Collection, Panjab University, Lahore.

Rumi, Jalalu'd-Din, The Mathnam, ed. R. A. Nicholson, 8 vols., London, 1925-40.

——, Tales of Mystic Meaning; Engl. tr. R. A. Nicholson, London, 1931.

——, Selections (from the Masnavi, Divan and Fiki ma fih), Engl. tr. R. A. Nicholson, ed. A. J. Arberry, London, 1950.

——, Discourses of Rumi, Engl. tr. A. J. Arberry, London, 1961.

——, Tales from the Masnam, Engl. tr. J. A. Arberry, London, 1961. Wallu'llah Dihlawi, Shah, Anfasu'l-'arifin, Delhi, 1897.

——, Hama'at, Hyderabad Sind, n.d.; Urdu tr. Lahore, n.d.

Modern Works in English

Abdel-Kader, A. H., The Life, Personality and Writings of al-Junayd, London, 1962.

Afifi, A. A., The Mystical Philosophy of Muhyi'd-Din Ibnu'l-'Arabi, Cambridge, 1939.

Ahmad, Aziz, Studies in Islamic Culture in the Indian Environment, Oxford, 1964.

——and von Grunebaum, G. E., Muslim Self-Statement in India and Pakistan, 1857-1968, Wiesbaden, 1970.

346

Ahmad Shah, The Bijak of Kabir, Hamirpur, 1917.

Arberry, A. G., An Introduction to the History of Sufism, Oxford, 1962.

——, Muslim Saints and Mystics, London, 1966.

Arnold, T. W., The Preaching of Islam, London, 1896.

Burkhardt, T., An Introduction to Sufi Doctrine, tr. D. M. Matheson, Lahore, 1963.

Carpenter, J., Theism in Medieval India, London, 1921; New Delhi, 1977, reprint.

Cunningham, J. D., A History of the Sikhs, ed. H. L. O. Garrett and R. R. Sethi, Delhi, 1955.

Dasgupta, S., Obscure Religious Cults, Calcutta, 1962.

Faruqi, Burhan Ahmad, The Mujaddid's Conception of Tauhid, Lahore, 1940.

Friedmann, Johanan, Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi: An Outline of his Thought and a Study of His Image in the Eyes of Posterity, Montreal, 1971.

Gibb, H. A. R., Mohammedanism, New York, 1958.

- Grewal, J. S., *The Mughals and the Jogis of Jakhbar*, Simla, 1967.
- , *Guru Nanak in History*, Chandigarh, 1969.
- Halepota, A. J., *Philosophy of Shah Waliu'llah*, Lahore, n.d.
- Haqq, Enamul, *Muslim Bengali Literature*, Karachi, 1957.
- Hasrat, B.J., *Dara Shikoh*, (sic) Santiniketan, 1953; New Delhi, 1982, rev. edn.
- Hodgson, G. S., *The Order of Assassins*, The Haque, 1955.
- Hourani, G. F., *Essays on Islamic Philosophy and Science*, New York, 1975.
- Husain, Y., *Glimpses of Medieval Indian Culture*, Bombay, 1957.
- Izutsu, T., *A Comparative Study of the Key Philosophical Concepts in Sufistn and Taoism*, Tokyo, 1966.
- , *Ethico-Religious Concepts in the Qur'an*, Montreal, 1966, rev. edn.
- Landau, R., *The Philosophy of Ibn 'Arabi*, London, 1960. Macauliffe, M. A., *The Sikh Religion*, Oxford, 1909.
- Mcleod, W. *Guru Nanak and the Sikh Religion*, Oxford, 1968.
- Mirza, M. W., *The Life and Works of Amir Khusrau*, Calcutta, 1935.
- Misra, S. C., *Muslim Communities in Gujarat*, Bombay, 1964.
- Nicholson, R. H. A., *The Mystics of Islam*, London, 1914.
- , *The Idea of Personality in Sufism*, Cambridge, 1923.
- , *Studies in Islamic Mysticism*, Cambridge, 1967, reprint.
- Nizami, K. A., *The Life and Times of Shaikh Farid al-Din Ganj-i Shakar*, Aligarh, 1955.
- , *Religion and Politics in India during the Thirteenth Century*, Bombay, 1961.
- Oddie, G. A. (ed.), *Religion in South Asia*, Delhi, 1977.
- 347
- Oman, J. C., *The Mystics, Ascetics and Saints of India*, London, 1903.

- , *The Brahmans, Theists and Muslims of India*, London, 1907.
- Orr, W. G., *A Sixteenth-Century Indian Mystic*, London, 1947.
- Qureshi, I. H., *The Muslim Community of the Indo-Pakistan Subcontinent*, The Hague, 1962.
- Rafiqi, A. Q., *Sufism in Kashmir*, Varanasi, n.d.
- Rizvi, S. A. A., *Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*, Agra, 1965.
- , *Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign*, Delhi, 1975.
- , *A History of Sufism in India*, 2 vols., Delhi, 1978, 1982.
- , *Shah Wall Allah and his Times*, Canberra, 1980.
- , *Shah 'Abd al-'Aziz*, Canberra, 1982.
- , *A Socio-Intellectual History of the Isna' 'Ashari Shi 'is in India*, Canberra and Delhi, 1986.
- Roy, Asim, *The Islamic Syncretistic Tradition in Bengal*, Princeton, 1983.
- Sarkar, Jadunath, *Anecdotes of Aurangzib*, Calcutta, 1963, 4th edn.
- Schimmel, A., *Gabriel's Wing*, Leiden, 1963.
- , 'Islamic Literatures of India, Sindhi Literature, Classical Urdu Literature', in J. Gonda (ed.), *History of Indian Literature*, Wiesbaden, 1973-5.
- , *Mystical Dimensions of Islam*, Chapel Hill, 1975.
- , *Pain and Grace*, Leiden, 1976.
- , *The Triumphal Sun*, London, 1978.
- Sharif, Jafar, *Islam in India*, tr. G. A. Herklots, London, 1921, rev. edn.; New Delhi, 1972, reprint.
- Singh, D., *Indian Bhakti Tradition and Sikh Gurus*, Ludhiana, 1968.
- Singh, Mohan, *Kabir and the Bhakti Movement*, Lahore, 1934.
- , *A History of the Punjabi Literature*, Amritsar, 1956.
- Subhan, J. A., *Sufism, its Saints and Shrines*, Lucknow, 1960, reprint.

Tara Chand, *Influence of Islam on Indian Culture*, Allahabad, 1963, 2nd edn.

Titus, M. T., *Islam in India and Pakistan*, Calcutta, 1959, rev. edn.

Trilochan Singh, *Guru Nanak's Religion*, Delhi, 1968.

Trimingham, J. S., *The Sufi Orders in Islam*, Oxford, 1971.

Vaudeville, Charlotte, *Kabir, I*, Oxford, 1974.

Watt, M., *The Faith and Practice of al-Ghazali*, London, 1953.

——, *Muslim Intellectual: A Study of al-Ghazali*, Edinburgh, 1963.

Wescott, G. H., *Kabir and the Kabir Panth*, Calcutta, 1953, 2nd edn.

Zaehner, R. C., *Hindu and Muslim Mysticism*, London, 1960.

348

REFERENCES

1. Barani, *Tarikh-i Firiz Shahi*, pp. 41-4.
2. M. Habib, *The Political Theory of the Delhi Sultanate*, Allahabad, 1961, p. 5.
3. Barani, *Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi*, p. 465.
4. See below, pp. 269-70.
5. Bernier, ed. Constable, *Travels in the Mogul Empire*, pp. 324-5.
6. Rizvi, *A History of Sifism in India*, I, pp. 103-3; II, pp. 36-53; see below, pp. 245, 265.
7. Rizvi, *History of Sifism*, I, p. 28.
8. *Encyclopaedia of Islam*², I, pp. 162-3.
9. Zaehner, *Hindu and Muslim Mysticism*, pp. 93-134, 198-218.
10. Rizvi, *History of Sufism*, I, pp. 190-4.
11. *Ibid.*, I, pp. 210-14.
12. *Ibid.*, I, pp. 277-82.

13. Ibid., I, pp. 283-4.
14. Ibid., I, pp. 228-40.
15. Ibid., I, pp. 285-8.
16. Rizvi, A Socio-Intellectual History of the Isna' 'Ashari Shits in India, I, pp. 202-5.
17. Amir Khwurd, Siyaru'l-awliya', pp. 55-6.
18. Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, pp. 127-31.
19. Ibid., I, pp. 131-3.
20. Ibid., I, pp. 133-8.
21. Ibid., I, pp. 139-54.
22. Ibid., I, pp. 154-64.
23. Ibid., I, pp. 165-3.
24. Ibid., I, pp. 184-90.
25. Ibid., I, pp. 242-3.
26. Ibid., I, pp. 244-7.
27. Ibid., I, pp. 251-6.
28. Ibid., I, pp. 289-96.
29. Ibid., I, p. 297.
30. Jonaraja, Rajatarangini, p. 112.
31. Rizvi, Socio-Intellectual History, I, p. 167-76, 183-5.
32. Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, pp. 300-3.
33. Gibb (tr.), Travels of Ibn Battuta, II, pp. 273-4.
34. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, p. 289.
35. Al-Biruni, tr. Sachau, Alberuni's India, I, pp. 7-8.

36. Ibid., I, pp. 19-23.
37. Ibid., I, p. 31.
38. Ibid., I, p. 124.
39. Ibid., I, p. 50.
- 349
40. Ibid., I, p. 233.
41. Ibid., I, pp. 19-20, 101-2; II, pp. 76, 137.
42. Ibid., II, p. 157.
43. Barani, Tarikh-i Firuz Shahi, pp. 42-3.
44. Mirza, The Life and Works of Amir Khusrau, pp. 143-4.
45. Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, p. 254.
46. Rizvi, Religious and Intellectual History of the Muslims in Akbar's Reign, pp. 207-9.
47. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, pp. 423-4.
48. Ibid., II, pp. 398-9.
49. Rizvi, Shah Wali Allah and his Times, pp. 329-35.
50. Alberuni's India, I, p. 55.
51. Hujwiri, tr. Nicholson, The Kashfu'l-mahjub, pp. 236, 243, 260- 6, 271.
52. Amir Hasan Sijzi, Fawa'idu'l-fu'ad, p. 97; Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, p. 143.
53. Fawa'idu'l-fu'ad, pp. 257-8; Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, p. 144.
54. Fawa'idu'l-fu'ad, p. 250; Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, p. 143.
55. Rizvi, History of Sufism, I, pp. 327-8.
56. Ibid., I, p. 337.
57. Ibid., I, pp. 339-40.

58. Ibid., I, pp. 350-1.
59. Rizvi, Muslim Revivalist Movements in Northern India, p. 57.
60. Jahangir, tr. Rogers and Beveridge, Tuzuk-i Jahangiri, I, p. 359.
61. Ibn Khaldun, tr. Rosenthal, The Muqaddimah, II, p. 156.
62. Firuz Shah, Futuhat-i Firuz Shahi, p. 8.
63. Bada 'uni, tr. Ranking, Muntakhabu't-tawarikh, I, p. 511.
64. Rizvi, Muslim Revivalist Movements, pp. 104-10.
65. Bada'uni. tr. Ranking, I, pp. 523-5.
66. Rizvi, Muslim Revivalist Movements, pp. 133-4.
67. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, pp. 151-73.
68. Ibid., II, pp. 58-61.
69. Ibid., II, pp. 76-80.
70. Jahangir, tr. Rogers and Beveridge, II, p. 111.
71. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, pp. 94—6.
72. Jahangir, tr. Rogers and Beveridge, II, p. 119.
73. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, pp. 103-6.
74. Ibid., II, p. 121.
75. Ibid., II, pp. 122-5.
76. Ibid., II, pp. 133-4.
77. Ibid., II, pp. 413-24.
78. Ibid., II, 480-1.
79. Ibid., II, pp. 181-5.

80. Ibid., II, p. 198.
81. Mujaddid, Maktubat-i Imam-i Rabbani, I, No. 11.
82. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, p. 218.
83. Ibid., II, pp. 242-3.
84. Ibid., II, p. 223.
85. Ibid., II, p. 339-42.
86. Rizvi, Shah Wali Allah, pp. 317-53.
87. Ibid., pp. 343-58; Schimmel, Pain and Grace.
88. Rizvi, History of Sufism, II, pp. 249-51.
89. Rizvi, Socio-Intellectual History, I, pp. 142-8.
90. Ibid., I, pp. 8-12.
91. Flruz Shah, Futuhat-i Firuz Shahi, p. 7.
92. Rizvi, Socio-Intellectual History, I, pp. 157-8.
93. Ibid., I, pp. 262-4.
94. Ibid., I, pp. 166-36.
95. Bada'uni, tr. Lowe, II, p. 337.
96. Rizvi, Socio-Intellectual History, I, pp. 227-35.
97. Ibid., I, pp. 215, 218, 219.
98. Ibid., I, pp. 348, 349.
99. Ibid., I, p. 350.
100. Ibid., I, pp. 376-34.
101. Jahangir, tr. Rogers and Beveridge, I, p. 60.
102. Rizvi, Socio-Intellectual History, II, pp. 3-4.

103. Sarkar, Anecdotes of Aurangzib, 4th edn. p. 88.

VII : FINE ARTS

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Architecture

Batley, C, Indian Architecture, Bombay, 1965.

Brown, P., Indian Architecture (Islamic Period), Bombay, 1975, 2nd rev. edn.

Briggs, Martin S., Everyman's Concise Encyclopaedia of Architecture, London, 1959.

Fergusson, James, History of Indian Art and Architecture, 1876; Delhi, 1967, reprint.

Ghurye, G. S, Rajput Architecture, Bombay, 1968.

Havell, E. B., Indian Architecture, London, 1919.

——, A Handbook to Agra and the Taj, Calcutta, 1924.

Hurlimann, M., Delhi, Agra, Fathpur-Sikri, London, 1963.

351

Husain, A. B. M., Fathpur-Sikri and its Architecture, Dacca, 1970.

Kittoe, M., Illustrations of Indian Architecture from the Muhammadan Conquest downwards, Calcutta, 1838.

Kuhnel, E., Islamic Art and Architecture, New York, 1962.

Latif, S. M., Agra Historical and Descriptive, Calcutta, 1896.

Lockwood, de Forest, Indian Domestic Architecture, New York, 1885.

Nath, R., The Immemorial Taj Mahal, Bombay, 1972.

——, Some Aspects of Mughal Architecture, New Delhi, 1976.

Rizvi, S. A. A., and Flynn, V. J., Fathpur-Sikri, Bombay, 1975.

Smith, V. A., A History of Fine Art in India and Ceylon, rev. K. de B. Codrington, Oxford, 1930; third edn enlarged and rev. Karl Khandalavala, Bombay, 1969.

Terry, J., *The Charm of Indo-Islamic Architecture*, London, 1955.

Toye, Sydney, *The Strongholds of India*, London, 1957.

Painting and Music

Archer, W. G., *Indian Miniatures*, Greenwich, 1960.

Arnold, T. W., *Painting in Islam*, London, 1928.

——, and Wilkinson, J. V. S., *The Library of Chester Beatty; Catalogue of the Indian miniatures*, 3 vols., Bloomsbury, London, 1936.

Barrett, D., *Painting of the Deccan, XVI-XVII Century*, London, n.d.

——and Gray, Basil, *Painting in India*, Skira, 1963.

Binyon, L., and Arnold, T. W., *The Court Painters of the Grand Moguls*, Oxford, 1921.

Brown, P., *Indian Painting under the Mughals, A.D. 1550 to 1750*, New York, 1975, reprint.

Clarke, C. Stanley, *Mughal Painting: The School of Jahangir*, New Delhi, 1983.

Coomaraswamy, A. K., *Indian Drawings*, London, 1910 - 12.

——, *Catalogue of the Indian Collections in the Museum of Fine Arts*, Boston, Cambridge, Mass., 1930.

Das, A. K., *Mughal Painting during Jahangir's Time*, Calcutta, 1978.

Ettinghausen, R., *Paintings of Sultans and Emperors of India*, New Delhi, 1961.

Goeshuis, M., *Indian Painting*, London, 1978.

Gray, Basil, *Treasures of Indian Miniatures in the Bikaner Palace Collection*, Oxford, 1951.

——, *Persian Painting*, Skira, 1961.

Ha'jek Lubor, *Indian Miniatures of the Moghul School*, Prague, 1960.

——, *Miniatures from the East*, London, 1960.

Jones, William, and Willard, N.A., *Music of India*, Calcutta, 1962.

Khandelala, K., *Pahari Miniature Painting*, Bombay, 1958.

— and Chandra, M., *Miniatures and Sculptures from the Collection of the Late Sir Cowasji Jehangir, Bart.* Bombay, 1965.

— and —, *New Documents of Indian Painting: A Reappraisal*, Prince of Wales Museum of Western India, Bombay, 1969.

Krishnadasa, Rai, *Mughal Miniatures*, New Delhi, 1953.

Kuehnel, E., and Goetz, H., *Indian Book Paintings from Jahangir's Album in Berlin*, London, 1926.

Raiff, R., *Indian Miniatures: The Rajput Painters*, Tokyo, 1959.

Randhawa, M. S., *Basohli Painting*, New Delhi, 1956.

—, *The Krishna Legend*, New Delhi, 1956.

—, *Kangra Paintings of the Bhagavata Purdna*, New Delhi, 1960.

Rawson, P. S., *The Indian Sword*, London, 1968.

Ray, Niharranjan, *Mughal Court Paintings: A Study in Social and Formal Analysis*, Calcutta, 1975.

Robinson, B and W., et al., *Islamic Painting and the Arts of the Book*, London, 1976.

Stchoukine, I., *Miniatures indiennes du musee du Louvre*, Paris, 1919.

—, *La peinture indienne a l'epoque des grand moghols*, Paris, 1929.

Stuart, C. M. Villiers, *Gardens of the Great Mughals*, London, 1913.

Verma, S. P., *Art and Material Culture in the Paintings of Akbar's Court*, New Delhi, 1978.

Welch, S. C, *The Art of Mughal India*, New York, 1963.

—, *Imperial Mughal Painting*, London, 1978.

Wellesz, E., *Akbar's Religious Thought Reflected in Mogul Painting*, London, 1952.

REFERENCES

1. Gibb (tr.), *The Travels of Ibn Battuta*, p. 622.

2. R. H. Major (tr.), *India in the Fifteenth Century (Journey of Abd er-Razzak)*, New York (Hakluyt Society), 19, pp. 23-35.
 3. Brown, *Indian Architecture (Islamic Period)*, p. 89.
 4. *Ibid.*, p. 93.
 5. Rizvi and Flynn, *Fathpur-Sikri*, pp. 37-8.
 6. *Ibid.*, pp. 53-4.
 7. Jahangir, tr. Rogers and Beveridge, *Tuzuk-i Jahangiri*, I, p. 152.
 8. Abu 'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, *A 'in-i Akbari*, I, p. 114.
 9. A. Muqtadir, *Catalogue of the Arabic and Persian Manuscripts in the Oriental Public Library at Bankipore, Patna, 1921*, VII, pp. 40-9.
 10. Mohammad Wahid Mirza, *The Life and Times of Amir Khusrau*, Calcutta, 1935, pp. 237-9.
 11. Firdawsi, *Shahnama*, Tehran, n.d., IV, pp. 1961-2.
- 353
12. Rizvi, *History of Sufism in India*, I, pp. 326-7.
 13. *The Life and Times of Amir Khusrau*, pp. 164—6.
 14. Ethe (*Catalogue of Persian Manuscripts in the Library of the India Office*), No. 2005. For a paper on the work, see Mrs K. N. Hasan, *Proceedings of the Indian History Congress, Delhi session, 1961*, pp. 177-9.
 15. Abu'l-Fazl, tr. Blochmann, *A 'in-i Akbari*, I, p. 681.
 16. Jadunath Sarkar (tr.), *Ma'dsir-i 'Alamgiri*, Calcutta, 1947, p. 45.
 17. Rizvi, *History of Sufism in India*, II, pp. 468-70.

354

APPENDIX

MEDIEVAL INDIAN LITERATURE AND THE BHAKTI MOVEMENT

In ancient times the enormous body of sacred Hindu literature written in Sanskrit, comprising the Vedas, the Brahmanas (meaning texts of sacrificial rituals; not to be confused with the highest Hindu priestly class, the brahmins or Anglicized brahmins), and the Upanishads, were the exclusive preserve of the learned brahmins, who in succeeding centuries interpreted and reinterpreted them in the light of new challenges and demands. The two epics, the Mahabharata and the Ramayana, the compendia of legends and religious instructions, of which there are eighteen main ones, in the Puranas, and the books of sacred law and numerous hymns and religious poems, although in Sanskrit, were available to all, including men of low caste and women.

At least a century before the birth of Christ, the influence of the Bhagavad Gita from Book VI of the Mahabharata, comprising the ethical sermons of Lord Krishna to Arjuna on the battlefield when the Kurus were drawn up against the Pandavas, changed Hindu religious attitudes. They moved away from sacrifice and mystical techniques based on the ascetic virtues of renunciation and self-forgetfulness towards the impassioned religion of self-abandonment in God. The three paths to the Absolute whereby spiritual fulfilment was attained, as spelled out in the Bhagavad Gita, are the path of knowledge (jnana), the path of action (karma), and the path of deep adoration (bhakti). The goal of the paths of knowledge and action is for the soul to realize itself by its own efforts; but according to the path of bhakti, God actively helps the soul to liberation by the exercise of His grace. Bhakti does not recognize Hindu class and caste distinctions. Referring to Krishna's teachings on the subject, al-Biruni says:

All these things originate in the difference of the classes or castes, one set of people treating the others as fools. This apart, all men are equal to each other, as Vasudeva says regarding him who seeks salvation: 'In the judgement of the intelligent man, the brahman and the Candala are equal, the friend and the (be, the faithful and the deceitful, nay, even the serpent and the weasel. If to the eyes of intelligence all things are equal, to ignorance they appear as separated and different.'¹

355

In the face of attacks from the materialists, the Buddhists, and Jainas, and the indifference of their own members towards the ossified ceremonies, the more enlightened brahmins elevated Vishnu from his role of sun deity in the Rig-Veda to the state of supreme spirit. They identified him with Bhagavan, Vasudeva, Krishna, Narayana, and other less widely known divine figures. Similarly, the worship of the Rig-Vedic deity, Rudra, was transformed into Shaivism or Shiva worship.

Much of the vernacular sacred poetry was produced in the Peninsula. Some is of great value, and is considered to be very holy. A beautiful collection of moral aphorisms in Tamil verse, the Tirukkural (Sacred Couplets), attributed to Tiruvalluvar, perhaps dates from the fourth or fifth century AD, though some authorities would put it much earlier. Later, from the seventh to the tenth centuries, the eleven sacred books (Tirumurai) of the Tamil Shaivites were composed, anthologies of hymns by the sixty-three Nayanars, or Teachers. Chief of these eleven works are the Tevaram, containing songs by the three poets Appar, Nanasambandar, and Sundaramurti, and the Tiruvasagam of Manikka Vasagar. The Tamil Vaishnavites produced at about the same

period the *Nalayiram* (Four Thousand), a collection of stanzas attributed to the twelve Alvars or saints of the sect.²

The Alvar hymns in Tamil were composed in honour of the god Vishnu and his avatars (incarnations) Rama and Krishna, particularly Krishna. They proposed bhakti (fervent devotion) as a path for all - outcaste and caste Hindu alike. The name Alvar, based on a Tamil root meaning 'be immersed', epitomizes the intuitive mystical content of their devotionalism. Rebelling against the superior caste claims of the brahmins, the greatest of the Alvars was Nammalvar (c. AD 800), himself a lowly Shudra. In the hymns of Antal, a female Alvar, both the childhood of the incarnate god Krishna and his youthful days are lyrically depicted.

In the realm of philosophy, the influence of the south Indian Shaivite brahmin, Shankara (?788-820), strengthened the classical Vedanta, which is one of the six systems of salvation in Hinduism. Shankara's greatness lies in his brilliant dialectic. By able use of logical argument - and, we must admit, by interpreting some phrases very figuratively - he reduced all the apparently self-contradictory passages of the Upanishads to a consistent system which, though not unchallenged, has remained the standard philosophy of intellectual Hinduism to this day. The comparison of Shankara in Hinduism with St Thomas Aquinas in the Roman Catholic Church is a very fair one. The doctrine of Shankara is often known as *advaita* ('allowing no second', i.e. 'monism') or

356

kevaladvaita ('strict monism'). On the everyday level of truth, the world was produced by Brahma, and went through an evolutionary process similar to that taught by the Sankhya school, from which Shankara took over the doctrine of the three *gunas* (constituent qualities, causing virtue [*sattva*], passion [*rajas*] and dullness [*tamas*]). On the highest level of truth the whole phenomenal universe, including the gods themselves, was unreal; the world was *maya*, illusion, a dream, a mirage, a figment of the imagination. Ultimately the only reality was Brahman, the impersonal world-soul of the Upanishads, with which the individual soul was identical.³

Despite his rigid Upanishadic doctrine of salvation of knowledge, Shankara was the reputed author of some fine devotional poems in Sanskrit. In fact the Tamil country was absorbed in impassioned devotionalism, and Shankara could not remain unaffected. Hinduism remains indebted, however, to Ramanuja (?1017—1137), who was also a south Indian brahmin. He taught in the great temple of Srirangam. Although he admitted Shankara's doctrine of salvation by knowledge, he declared 'that those so saved would find a state of bliss inferior to the highest'. The best means of salvation was devotion, and the best yoga (mystical training) was *bhakti-yoga* - such intense devotion to Vishnu that the worshipper realized that he was but a fragment of God, and wholly dependent on Him. Another means of salvation was *prapatti*, the abandonment of self, putting one's soul completely in the hands of God, trusting in His will, and waiting confidently for His grace.

Ramanuja's god was a personal being, full of grace and love for his creation. He could even override the power of karma to draw repentant sinners to him. Unlike the impersonal world-soul of Shankara, which made the illusory universe in a sort of sport (*lila*), Ramanuja's God needed

man, as man needed God. By forcing the sense, Ramanuja interpreted the words of Krishan, 'the wise man "I" deem my very self, to imply that just as man cannot live without God, so God cannot live without man. The individual soul, made by God out of His own essence, returned to its maker and lived for ever in full communion with Him, but was always distinct. It shared the divine nature of omniscience and bliss, and evil could not touch it, but it was always conscious of itself as an 'I', for it was eternal by virtue of its being a part of godhead, and if it lost consciousness it would cease to exist. It was one with God, but yet separate, and for this reason the system of Ramanuja was called visistadvaita ('qualified monism').⁴

It was the compilation of the Bhagavata Purana by some Bhagavata brahman community in the Tamil country between 850 and 950,

357

however, that made bhakti popular with both intellectuals and non-intellectuals. The tenth book of the Bhagavata Purana, describing the life and achievements of Krishna, highlights important Hindu cosmological and philosophical theories. The ecstatic and passionate love of the gopis (herd-girls) for Krishna, and his reciprocal love for them, went a long way to making bhakti-yoga predominant in the Hindu ways of salvation. In the Bhagavata Purana, the Supreme Being is predominantly qualified (saguna) and is conceived of as personal. Although the achievements of the cowherd god as an avatar (incarnation of a god, especially of Vishnu) satisfy the intense spiritual cravings of the devotee, the Bhagavata Purana also emphasizes the nirguna (unqualified) approach to the deity. In a very remarkable manner the great work blends devotionalism with non-dualism by focusing its attention on the worship of Krishna as the transcendent and supreme deity of the Vaishnavites.

The translation of the Bhagavata Purana from Sanskrit into Indian regional languages (some forty in Bengali alone) made the bhakti movement predominant in Hinduism. In short, the deification of Krishna, Rama, or Shiva and the devotional religion of the saints of the bhakti movement shook the foundation of brahmanical dominance of Hinduism. Bhaktas ('devotees') adopted gurus or spiritual directors, many from the lower castes, as their supreme authority. The guru was not necessarily a living being or an historical personality; legendary figures or abstract ideas of divinity were elevated to the position of guru. The devotees, or bhaktas, reverently treasured the hymns composed by gurus or ascribed to them, although interpolations were frequently made as they passed from generation to generation. Supernatural feats were freely credited to these gurus and were gullibly accepted as historical facts by the devotees.

The twelfth- and thirteenth-century Hindu mystics, such as Madhva (1197-1276), a Kanarese brahman and the founder of the Madhava sect, and the Telegu brahman Nimbarka (c. 1130-1200), who settled near Mathura, also greatly influenced the bhakti movement. In northern India the cumulative impact of the Buddhist Sahajiyas,⁵ Tantrics,⁶ and Nath yogis led to the development of the north Indian sant (saintly) traditions, whose followers organized themselves into spiritual orders known as panths.

Bhakti devotion was not confined to a simplistic, singular attitude, or the bhava to god or gods. It could assume the form of a servant's attitude to his master, such as the monkey god Hanu-man's

devotion to Rama (dasya-bhava); that of a friend to a friend (sakhya-bhava), such as that of Arjuna to Krishna; a parent's

358

attitude to his or her child, as that of Kausalya to Rama (vatsalya-bhava); a child's attitude to his or her parent, such as Dhurva to Suniti (santa-bhava); a wife's attitude to her husband, such as Sita's to Rama (kanta-bhava); the beloved's attitude to her lover, such as Radha's to Krishna; or even the attitude of hatred, such as that of an atheist or god-hater towards God, as Sisupala's to Krishna. The overriding feature of the attitudes in the bhakti movement is self-abandonment to a personal God, and this tends to be highly emotional.

These bhavas were aroused by hymns and songs in regional dialects of the twelfth century onwards and helped to fill the heart of devotees from all classes with warmth and ecstasy. They gave rise to a rich corpus of devotional literature in these languages.

The tenth- and eleventh-century mystic songs, in the north Indian dialects known as charyapadas, are a curious mixture of a decadent Mahayana Buddhism and Tantric and Nath cult beliefs, but the devotional elements in them are deeply appealing. The most valuable contribution to the bhakti movement in Maharashtra was made, however, by the Marathi commentary on the Bhagavad Gita entitled the Bhavarthaipika, popularly known as Jnanesvari, by Jnanesvara (1271-96), also known as Jnanadeva.

Jnanesvara's contemporary, Namdev (1270-1350), belonged to a low-caste family of Pandharpur tailors. Although his hymns are predominantly Vaishnavite, the notes of devotion to the invisible and formless God of the nirguna (unqualified) bhakti are obvious. There is a story that Namdev once fell into a trance and believed himself to be playing the cymbals in God's honour. God finally appeared and took the instrument from him. On awakening, Namdev composed the following hymn:

Come, God, the Qalandar Wearing the dress of an Abdali. Nama's Lord is the searcher of all hearts, And wandereth in every land.⁷

The sufi terminologies such as 'Qalandar' and 'Abdal' in these verses suggest that, even before the conquest of the region by Sultan 'Ala'u'd-Din Khalji, sufi ideas were already strongly entrenched there.

The most remarkable feature of Namdev's leadership was his indomitable courage in abolishing class and caste distinctions. This was decidedly an Alvar legacy, but the sufi traditions also contributed to the opening of the doors of devotion to the Lord of all classes. A galaxy of hymnodist saints of low caste — such as Gora

359

the potter, Samvata the gardener, Chokha the untouchable, Sena the barber, and Janaba'i the maid - were Namdev's friends. Even though the low-caste Chokha was forbidden access to the temple,

the god Vitthal carried him into the sanctum sanctorum and, according to the legend, gave him his own necklace. The townspeople refused to believe Chokha's story, however, and along with other untouchables he died a miserable death whilst performing forced labour. In a touching abhang (hymn), his friend Namdev describes how he was asked by Vitthal to go and find Chokha's remains in order to erect a monument over them.

The mystic Eknath (?1533-99) was a brahman but he made kirtan (group singing) in Marathi into the highest form of worship to the Lord. He published a reliable edition of the Jnanesvari and wrote a commentary on the Ramayana entitled the Bhavartha-Ramayana. He also made no distinction between a brahman and a mahar (outcaste) and frequently ate with untouchables.

Tukaram (1598-1650), the greatest bhakti poet in the Marathi language, was the son of a grocer. He would never have succeeded in life, because he gave away whatever he possessed or earned to the needy. He wrote emotional abhanga (hymns) in order to arouse devotion to Krishna. The great Maratha ruler Shivaji respected him greatly, but Tukaram did not attend his court.

The Marathi poet and saint Ramdas (1608-81) exerted a strong influence on Shivaji. He was the son of a Nasik brahman. When the priest who was officiating at his wedding uttered the word 'svadhan' ('be constant'), Ramdas interpreted it as a divine command to serve God and left the place. He began to wander through the Maratha region as a devotee of Rama and gathered a considerable following. He rebuilt dilapidated temples, established mathas (monasteries), and wrote several works to reinvigorate Hindu devotion to Rama.

The Bengali movement was inspired both by Vaishnavite and Sahajiyā sources. The Bhagavata Purāna gave a new form and meaning to the Gita-Govind (Songs of the Cowherd) by Jayadeva (c. 1199), a poet at the court of Lakshman Sena of Bengal, which features the love stories of Krishna and his celestial consort, Radha, who in later Krishna bhakti themes assumes the form of the supreme hladini shakti or joy-giving energy of Krishna. Even uninitiates are fascinated by the romance of Krishna, Radha, and the gopis; to the bhaktas it is an allegory of the soul's love and craving for the divine. It has been suggested that Jayadeva's Sanskrit version is based on the apabrahmsa (traditional vernacular or archaic Bengali) and that the Krishna cult was predominant in Bengal much earlier than the twelfth century. Chandidas (c.

360

1350-1430) and other Vaishnavite poets identified themselves with Krishna's female companions. Chaitanya (1485-1533) proved even more radical by personally identifying himself with Radha and her love for Krishna, which symbolized the soul's search for God. Chaitanya's emotional attachment to Krishna immersed him in long spells of ecstasy and epileptic fits. His favourite form of worship as a bhakta was kirtan or samkirtan (group singing and dancing) accompanied by drums, cymbals, or a one-stringed fiddle, during which the words 'Hari' and 'Krishna' were constantly chanted. The singing sessions were not confined to private homes and temples, but spilled over into the streets. For three centuries hymns, ballads, legends, and dramas centring around Chaitanya's interpretations of Krishna multiplied in Bengali literature. In the seventeenth century Govind Das reinvigorated the Chaitanya traditions.

A unique offshoot of the Chaitanya tradition was the baul movement. This began in Nadia and spread all over Bengal. Although Hindus and Muslims adapted their own version, they both wrote their rapturous songs in Bengali. The Muslim bauls followed the sufi tradition, while the Hindu bauls were Vaishnavites. They are both regarded as 'men of the heart'. The bauls were non-dualistic, conceiving the body as the microcosm of the universe. A baul poet wrote: 'The man of the house is dwelling in the house - in vain have you become mad by searching for Him outside.'⁸

The Indo-Aryan dialects, such as Bhojpuri, Magadhi, and Maithili of modern Bihar, Avadhi, of the Avadh region, Braj Bhasha of the Mathura region, and Rajasthani, Panjabi, Kashmiri, Sindi, and Gujarati, also assumed new forms and meaning through bhakti poetry. The love ballads on Radha and Krishna by Vidyapati (fourteenth to fifteenth centuries), in Maithili, are a legacy from Chandidas. Their vigour and refined diction made them popular even in Bengal, Assam, and Nepal.

In the fifteenth century the area which may loosely be called 'the land of Hindi' saw a new turn in the bhakti movement under the influence of Ramananda (c. 1360-1470). In his early days, Ramananda probably lived in South India and was initiated into Ramanuja's Srivaishnava sect. Later he travelled all over India, spending some time teaching in Banaras and Agra. He advocated devotion to the incarnation of Vishnu in the form of Rama and his consort Sita, and worshipped their close companion, the monkey god Hanuman. His Adhyatma-Ramayana in Sanskrit is a remarkable literary achievement which re-aligns the saguna and nirguna forms into parallel currents. His disciples belonged to both the Vaishnavite

361

and nirguna bhakti north Indian sant (Hindu saints) traditions. Ramananda firmly repudiated the injustices of caste, and among his twelve outstanding disciples were an outcaste, a woman, and a Muslim. Raidas, the chamar (shoemaker) disciple of Ramananda, wrote songs condemning brahmanical rituals and caste prejudices. The famous bhakti poet Kabir was also one of Ramananda's disciples, but he reorientated the prevailing north Indian nirguna bhakti traditions. He uninhibitedly declared:

I am not Hindu nor Muslim Allah-Ram is the breath of my body!

Kabir's history is shrouded with myths. Some legends state that Kabir was the illegitimate son of a brahman widow. One version claims that he was conceived by a widow because of Ramananda's blessings, and that, as with Christ, this occurred without a natural father. In order to protect herself from public slander, the widow left her baby near a pond some way out of the city. A Muslim weaver called 'Ali, popularly known as Niru, saw the baby; being childless, he and his wife Nima decided to adopt it as their own. This story is reminiscent of the adoption of Moses by the Pharaoh's daughter after she had found him abandoned in the bulrushes. The local qazi gave the child the name Kabir. This story was an obvious invention and was an attempt to associate Kabir's parentage with Hinduism. What is more probable is that Kabir was born into a Muslim family, the members of which were deeply imbued with Nath beliefs. That his parents' ancestors were yogis is not impossible. Of various dates for his birth, 1425 is the most likely.

Kabir constantly travelled around the Banaras area and was directly in touch with a number of Hindu sants and sufis. It is not unlikely that he exchanged ideas with eminent sufis in Kara, Manikpur, and Rudawli. Their views on the Wahdat al-Wujud ('unity of being' doctrine), expressed in Hindi, revolutionized Kabir's spiritual sensitivity. Although Kabir's mythology was predominantly Hindu, Muslim equivalents are commonplace and laboured. His verses were generally memorized by his disciples after they had been uttered, and then written down immediately or soon afterwards. This process gave rise to considerable interpolation, and naturally many inauthentic verses are included. Those in the *Adi Granth*, the *Kabir Granthawali*, and the *Bijak* (Treasury) are the most reliable.

Kabir was married and although he was unhappy with his role as a husband and a father he preached neither renunciation nor celibacy. Throughout his life, when he was not travelling he lived

362

the traditional life of a married man. Before his death he is said to have migrated from Banaras to Maghar. Some authors suggest that Maghar was close to Banaras; others believe it was in the district of Basti, near Gorakhpur in Uttar Pradesh. The decision was deliberately taken by Kabir in order to belie the Hindu superstition that one who died in Maghar would return in a following life as an ass. Of the many dates given for Kabir's death, 1505 is the most probable.

The earliest sufi traditions refer to Kabir as muwahhid (unitarian, or a follower of the Wahdat al-Wujud), who could not be called either an orthodox Hindu or an orthodox Muslim.⁹ According to the seventeenth-century *Mir'atu'l-asrar*, he was a Firdawsiyya sufi, but the Irani author of the *Dabistan-i Mazahib* places Kabir against the background of the legend of the Vaishnavite vairagis (mendicants). 'Abdu'llah Khweshgi, the author of the early eighteenth-century *Ma'ariju'l-wilayat*, says:

Shaykh Kabir Julaha [weaver] is the disciple of Shaykh Taqi.¹⁰ Kabir was one of the perfect awliya' (sufis) and the most famous gnostic of his age, but he chose for himself the path of the malamatiyya.¹¹ He adopted this technique in order to remain unknown. His Hindi poetry is sublime and is a proof of the greatness of the author. If his poetry is carefully examined it is found full of ideas of unification (wisal), with little mention of separation. He was a pioneer in expressing spiritual truth and gnosis through the medium of Hindi. He wrote a great variety of Hindi poetry, and his Bishunpads and sakhis (forms of Hindi poetry) are very famous. Those who do proper justice to Kabir's poetry are convinced that no other poetry can match it in the expression of divine secrets and spiritual truth. *Muhaqqiq-i Hindi* (Malik Muhammad Ja'isi) imitated the style of Kabir but he chose the soratha and dohas (forms of Hindi poetry) through which to express his thoughts. Kabir's spiritual eminence attracted both Muslims and Hindus to his discipleship. Each religious group considered him to be a member of its own religion, but in reality he transcended all such distinctions. Were someone to assert that Kabir had only Hindu followers, this claim would still not undermine his wilayat (position as an eminent sufi). An earlier example of a similar situation was the devotion of the Rafizis (Shi'is) to the fourth Caliph, 'Ali; this did not undermine the reputation of the latter, but on the contrary established the greatness of 'Ali, to whom even the irreligious (Shi'is) were drawn.¹²

'Abdu'llah Khweshgi concludes his obituary of Kabir by quoting about twenty of Kabir's verses with sufic explanations.

Modern scholars overemphasize the Hindu aspect of Kabir and Nanak, but both sages mirror the spiritual movement which relentlessly fought against simple-minded Hindu and Muslim ritualism, die-hard fanaticism, and religious, sectarian, class, and

363

colour distinctions. They were the devotees of an omnipotent and omniscient God and intensely loved all living beings.

Kabir's nirguna Brahma (Supreme Being) has both a transcendental and an immanent nature. He is the God of gods, Supreme Lord, primal and omnipotent. Kabir's notion of the void, referred to as sunya, is based on Mahayana Buddhism and on Hindu esoteric philosophy. It represents his concept of the 'ultimate reality'. Although he refers to 'reality' by more commonly used Hindu and Muslim names, the word he most frequently uses is 'Rama' who, as he himself explains, is nirguna Rama. He reminds us:

Kabir, call Him Ram who is omnipresent; We must discriminate in mentioning the two Rams; The one Ram (God) is contained in all things; The other (Ram Chandra) is only contained in one thing, himself.¹³

Kabir equated Ram with Rahim (the Merciful), Hari with Hazrat, and Krishna with Karim, but it was his frequent identification of Ram with Rahim that went a long way to make the bhakti movement a unique religious experience in the Indian subcontinent. Denouncing idolatry, Kabir wrote that if God were found worshipping stone, he would worship it in a hand-mill, which 'grindeth corn for the world to eat'. To him, the prayers, pilgrimages, and fasting of the Muslims were equally mechanical. Essentially a bhakta (devotee), Kabir was totally absorbed in his devotion to the Supreme. But he was also deeply upset by Hindu and Muslim intolerance and religious chauvinism. Ironically, after his death, his Hindu and Muslim disciples could not even agree on the disposal of his corpse. The Hindus wished to cremate him; the Muslims fought to bury him. There are two samadhis (graves) of Kabir at Maghar; one is venerated by Hindus, the other by Muslims. The Hindu Kabir Panthis and their branches are more prominent than the Muslim ones, although his verses were frequently quoted by Muslims, even by the puritan Naqshbandiyya leaders such as the Mujaddid Alf-i Sani and his descendants. The rawza (tomb) of Kabir is maintained by a Muslim keeper who collects the offerings, but the modern politicized Muslim of the subcontinent is indifferent to Kabir.

Unlike that of Kabir, the broad outline of Guru Nanak's life is reasonably clear. He was born in the village of Talwandi, later known as Nankana Sahib, south-west of Lahore, now in Pakistan, in 1469. His father, Kalu, a khatri (member of the Hindu commercial classes), was a village accountant and, as was customary with members of that profession, supplemented his income through

364

agriculture. Attempts were made to give Nanak lessons in Hinduism and the official Persian language, but Nanak was interested in meditation, not in formal learning. When Nanak was sixteen, his parents arranged his marriage, and under pressure from his family he later became a merchant and a farmer. Nevertheless, most of his time was spent with yogis who lived in the surrounding jungles.

Guru Nanak's brother-in-law, Jai Ram, a steward of Dawlat Khan of Sultanpur, the Lodi governor of the region lying between Sirhind and Dipalpur, secured a position for him in the Khan's commissariat. There, the minstrel Bha'i Mardana joined him, and they became lifelong friends. While at Sultanpur, the Guru shocked both Muslims and Hindus by declaring that there was neither a (true) Hindu nor a (true) Muslim. His spiritual sensitivity had reached its climax. Soon afterwards, accompanied by Bha'i Mardana, Nanak travelled from Panipat to Assam, visiting Hindu and sufi pilgrim centres. According to the Sikh hagiological literature, he conversed with sufis and bhaktas who had died long ago, but these dialogues in fact took place spiritually in Nanak's mental vision. By 1520 the Guru and his friend were back in the Panjab to witness the carnage during Babur's third invasion of India. Nanak's sensitive heart was poured into the verses known as Babur-Vani. They are invaluable as an historical document.

Guru Nanak's second journey took him down south, as far as Ceylon. Returning from there he visited Kashmir. It is not unlikely that later on he travelled as far as Mecca and Baghdad; such travels were customary with Muslim wandering dervishes and yogis who did not bind themselves with religious forms and taboos. In later life, Guru Nanak lived mainly in the Panjab, occasionally visiting Ajodhan, Multan, and Gorakhtari in Peshawar. On 22 September 1539 he died at Kartarpur. Before his death he had appointed his disciple Lihna as his successor.

Although Lihna came from a rich family, in keeping with the traditions of sufi khanqahs, he had previously been made to perform such humiliating duties as carrying loads of wet grass. As the first Guru he was known as Guru Angad (1539-42). This title, meaning 'of my own limb', was bestowed on him by Guru Nanak himself. Although the word 'guru' in Nanak's teachings stood for the voice of God, and not necessarily for an individual, posterity recognizes him as the personification of the light of God. The Hindu incarnation theories became the cardinal feature of Guru Nanak's movement. The sufi idea of the transmission of a pir's light to his successor was also emphasized. The disciples of Guru Nanak and his successors formed themselves into a panth or the order of Gurmats, the followers of the Guru's doctrine. During the lifetime

365

of the third Guru, Amar Das (1552-74), the hymns of the first three Gurus, and those of the sants and sufis whose teachings were compatible with the Guru's aphorisms, were compiled. In 1603-4 the fifth Guru, Arjan Deva (1581-1606), added his own compilation and that of his father to the earlier collection. The volume was entitled the Adi Granth, later known as Guru Granth Sahib. It became the divine scripture of the panth, and the followers of the Guru's teachings, as recorded in it or expressed in the corporate will of the community, were known as Sikhs.

The execution of Guru Arjan by Jahangir, for blessing the rebel Prince Khusraw, transformed the Sikhs into a martial race. Although the Gurus themselves belonged to the urban mercantile

community of khattris, their followers, who were rural Jats, are the backbone of the Sikh community. Before his death the tenth Guru, Gobind Singh (1675-1708), closed the line of personal Gurus; henceforth the scripture, or the Guru Granth Sahib, and the corporate will of the community, the panth or Khalsa Panth of Guru Gobind Singh, were to be recognized as their sole guide. Their political struggles made the followers of Gurmat - the Sikhs - radically different from the panths or orders of earlier bhaktas or saints.

Guru Nanak's doctrine of salvation through the divine name (nam) was similar to the teachings of the sants, but it was more consistently sufic. Their Upanishadic interpretations are also equally valid. In His primal aspect, Guru Nanak's Lord is the eternally unchanging formless one (nirankar), inscrutable (agam), boundless (apar), beyond time (akal), ineffable (alakh), with divine will (qudrat) - in the technical sense of sufism, beyond comprehension. Nanak's loving devotion to God is expressed in the forms of address he uses, such as Pita (Father), Pritam (Lover), and Khasam (Husband or Master). According to the nature of the occasion and mood, Guru Nanak selected traditional terms used by Hindus and Muslims to invoke God, such as Allah, Khuda, Rabb, Rama, Govinda, Hari, and Murari. But it is Guru Ka Sabad, or the Guru's word (a divine voice mystically heard within the human heart), that reinvigorates the spiritual sensitivity of the devotee. This is the mysterious Ism-i A'zam (the Great Name) of the sufis. A meditation upon the essence of the nam (divine name) is the real nam simaran (holding the divine name in remembrance) or nam japan (repetition of the divine name) and not mechanical repetition of the name of God. This is. sufi zikr par excellence. The creative activity of the Supreme is His hukam (the divine 'order'), the counterpart of riza (divine will) in sufi terminology.

Nanak's teachings infused a stern ethical tone and a practical approach into the problems of life. He advocated living a normal

366

life accompanied by piety and righteousness. He envisaged a society in which cultivators prepared the soil for sowing properly, and merchants were honest. Income earned from dishonest means included the sale of the forbidden products of pork and beef to Muslims and Hindus respectively. He condemned the social prejudices surrounding the concepts of high and low castes, believing that only those who considered themselves nich (low) before God attained salvation.

Like those of Kabar, Dadu's biographical details are shrouded with myths and legends. There are many other similarities. It is generally agreed that he was born in 1544, but that his birthplace was Ahmadabad is disputed. His father, Lodi Ram, was said to have been a merchant but possibly he was a converted Muslim cotton-carder, and Dadu's name was also Dawud with interchangeable Persian letters in the words 'Dadu' and 'Dawud'. Dadu's life was spent at Sambhar in Rajasthan, and it is not improbable that he was even born in one of the villages of the region. The teacher who revolutionized Dadu's ideas belonged to the Ramanandi tradition; Dadu's Hindu disciple, Sundar Das, refers to him as Vriddhananda. In the Muslim tradition he is called Buddhan. Both names suggest that he was an elderly sage. The traditions also relate that the Supreme Being appeared to Dadu in the character of an old ascetic and initiated him into

divine truth. His growing fame in Rajasthan resulted in the Emperor Akbar's leading dignitary, Raja Bhagavan Das, becoming his disciple. The Raja introduced him to the Emperor before Akbar's departure from Fathpur-Sikri for Kabul in 1584. After a short stay at the capital, Dadu left for Rajasthan. In the last days of his life he left for Nara'ina in Rajasthan, where he died in 1603.¹⁴

Dadu's eldest son, Garib Das, performed his father's last rites and was accepted by his father's disciples as his successor. Before long, however, Garib Das resigned from this position, and the responsibility for the direction of the panth was assumed by his disciples. Dadu's hymns and poems, known as Bani (inspired utterances or oracles), were compiled by his favourite disciples such as Tila (a Jat), Mohan Daftari, Rajjab Das, and Sundar Das the younger. The eighteenth-century decline of the Mughals and Rajputs transformed the Dadu Panthis into nagas or professional fighters.

Dadu was deeply influenced by Kabir, who is frequently mentioned in his Bani. In his hymns Dadu reiterates that Ram, Govind, and Allah are his spiritual teachers and he occupies a distinctive place in the galaxy of the saints such as Namdev, Pipa, Sena, Raidas, and Kabir. Dadu's cosmology and the stages of the soul's

367

pilgrimage are markedly sufic. Like later Kabir Panthis, Dadu Panthis also became predominantly Hindu.

The Hindu traditions treasure the memory of the sants and bhaktas for their subtle mystical thought and lyrical verses in regional languages; but Hindu spiritual devotion was, and is, satisfied only by accepting the son of Dasratha, or Krishna, as the human incarnation (avatara) of the Absolute. Their saguna, rather nirguna, form is dear to the Hindu heart. It was this spiritual yearning that made the sixteenth-century Mirabal, Surdas, and Tulsidas the greatest poets of the bhakti movement in Hindi, although their imagery and terminology are impregnated with sant traditions.

Mirabal, the only daughter of Ratna Singh, a Rajput noble of the House of Rathor, was born in c. 1498 in a village in Merta near Ajmir. In 1516 she was married to Bhoja Raj, the heir apparent of Rana Sanga of Mewar. Her husband died before his father, however, and she had no children. In her poems Mira speaks of herself as a virgin. She invited sadhus (Hindu mendicants) to the women's quarters in the palace and mingled with Hindu holy men in the temples in her town. The members of her royal household could not tolerate her devotion to these ascetics; in order to discipline her they frequently chastised her, locked her up, and even tried to poison her. Such stories are, however, discounted by many authorities. What her poems suggest is that her fervent devotion to Lord Krishna had made her totally indifferent to worldly life. She seems to have died around 1546.

Mirabai's extraordinarily brilliant poetry, known as Padavati (a series of poems), portrays a feeling of deep personal association with the Lord Krishna and a yearning to dissolve herself in Him. Her Lord is not nirguna, nor totally indescribable, but is interchangeable with her beloved

Shyama (Krishna). She advocates image worship and the observance of special fasts and takes delight in describing Vishnu's descent to earth. Like Chaitanya, she is transported to the heights of ecstasy and bliss by singing and dancing. She had no hesitation in saying:

My Beloved dwells in my heart, I have actually seen that Abode of Joy. Mira's Lord is Hari, the Indestructible. My Lord, I have taken refuge with Thee, Thy slave.¹⁵

Vallabhacharya (1479-1530), of the Telugu-speaking region of south India, reinvigorated the Krishna bhakti traditions with his

368

Sanskrit works. Besides the Vedanta and Bhagavad Gita, they are greatly influenced by the Bhagavata Purana. In them Krishna is sat-cit ananda (existence, intelligence, and bliss) personified. When the devotee's soul is dissolved in Krishna, he is transported into the Lord's own ineffable bliss. The Lord's grace is attainable by singing hymns praising Krishna, listening to His legends, worshipping His image, and making pilgrimages to Vaishnava shrines. Vallabha established the Srinath temple on Goverdhan hill, west of Mathura. He almost ignored Radha, who was later made predominant in Vallabha's system by his son Vitthalnath (1515—88?).

In 1571 Vitthalnath established his centre at Gokul near Mathura and gathered together a group of singers and poets known as asht chap (the eight seals or insignia). They believed themselves to be Krishna's favourites and wrote in the Braj Bhasha dialect with great refinement and ecstasy. Nanddas and Surdas were the most venerated poets among them.

Nanddas's (?1533—85) padas (poems for singing) have been rendered into English by R. S. McGregor under the title *The Round Dance of Krishna and Uddhav's Message*. They portray the soul's love and longing for God, matched by God's perfect love and grace, through the symbolism of the herd-girls' revels with Krishna on the bank of the Jamuna.¹⁶

Nanddas's contemporary, the blind poet Surdas (c. 1478-1583), vividly deals with all the details of Krishna's life, from His birth, and His activities as a child, including the theft of butter, to the herd-girls' love for Him and His for them. He portrays Radha with great devotion in his magnum opus, the *Sur Sagar* (Sir's Ocean), as well as in other poems. The melody of Krishna's defence in the poem 'I Didn't Eat the Butter Ma' transports the listener to the realm of spiritual ecstasy. But all Sur's poetry symbolizes the truth that social duties and even the universe and life itself are meaningless without the love of the Lord.

Surdas's contemporary, Tulsidas (1532-1623), identifies Lord Rama with the Absolute, although he does not reject the nirguna Absolute. His magnum opus, the *Ram-charit-manas* (The Lake of the Story of Rama), or the *Rdmadyana* in Hindi, is the bible of north Indian Hindus. Tulsidas is believed to be a reincarnation of Valmiki, the author of the Sanskrit Ramayana. Its lyrical fervour and devotional sensitivity are miraculous. In Tulsidas's *Vinaya-patrika* and the *Kavitavali* there are references to some details of his own life and his political, social, and economic environment, but it is misleading to interpret them literally. They are designed to

remind his readers of the sinful condition of Kal-yuga (the Dark Age), beginning from the Christian era, when alien kings ruled much of India and

369

plunged the country into a progressive decline of piety and ethical values. Akbar's rule is not necessarily the target of Tulsidas's attack. In his world-view, hypocrisy and tyranny were common to all temporal rulers, whom he compares with Ravana (the Demon); and he invokes Rama to kill them in order to restore the environment in which devotion to the Lord could be promoted uninterruptedly. The messianic hopes of Muslim mystics are similar to those of Tulsidas.

The Ram-charit-manas idealizes all forms of human relationships, but the most impressive is the devotion of Hanuman to Rama. Not only does the monkey devotee imprint 'Rama's lotus feet upon his heart', Rama's affection for his devotee is also deep and warm. Indeed human beings and God are indispensable to each other. The only counterpart of the lyrical idealization of Hanuman by Tulsidas is the visionary treatment of the gopts by Krishna. Both open the doors of bhakti (devotion) to men and women of all classes and reinvigorate touching streaks of tender human relations between all fellow-beings and their Lord.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Ahmad Shah, *The Bijak of Kabir*, Hamirpur, 1917.

———, *Hindu Religious Poetry*, Cawnpore, 1925.

Ajwani, L. H. *History of Sindhi Literature*, New Delhi, 1970.

Allchin, F. R. (tr.), *Kavitavali*, New York, 1964.

———, *Tulsi Das' Petition to Ram*, London, 1966.

Alston, A. J., *The Devotional Poems of Mirabai*, Delhi, 1980.

Archer, W. G., *The Loves of Krishna*, London, 1957.

Babineau, E. J., *Love of God and Social Duty in the Ramcaritmanas*, Delhi, 1979.

Barua, B. K., *History of Assamese Literature*, New Delhi, 1964.

Barz, R., *The Bhakti Sect of Vallabhacharya*, Faridabad, 1976.

Bhandarkar, R. G., *Vaisnavism, Saivism and Minor Religious Systems*, Strasbourg, 1913.

Bharadwaj, K. D., *Philosophy of Ramanuja*, New Delhi, 1958.